EXHIBIT A

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE

GENENTECH, INC., Plaintiff, v. AMGEN INC., Defendant.	C.A. No. 18-924-CFC JURY TRIAL DEMANDED

THIRD AMENDED COMPLAINT

Plaintiff Genentech, Inc. ("Genentech") brings this Third Amended Complaint against Defendant Amgen Inc. ("Amgen") to address Amgen's infringement of patents relating to Genentech's groundbreaking breast cancer drug Herceptin®.

NATURE OF THE CASE

1. Breast cancer is a serious disease affecting over 2.8 million women in the United States. Approximately 20-25% of those women suffer from "HER2-positive" breast cancer. This is a particularly aggressive form of the disease characterized by overexpression of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (i.e., "HER2") proteins due to excessive HER2 gene amplification.

2. In the early 1990s, a diagnosis of HER2-positive breast cancer was effectively a death sentence: patients had an average life expectancy of only 18 months. The quality of life for those patients was markedly poor—the disease rapidly metastasized (*i.e.*, spread to other parts of the body). The only available treatments were invasive and disfiguring surgery and chemotherapeutic drugs with harsh side effects, and those treatments added little to the patient's life span.

3. The treatment of HER2-positive breast cancer, and the lives of millions of women suffering from the disease, changed dramatically with Genentech's development of Herceptin®. Herceptin® was the first drug of its kind—an antibody called trastuzumab that specifically targeted the biological mechanism that makes HER2-positive breast cancer such an aggressive form of the disease.

4. Although the scientific community was initially skeptical that such an antibody-based therapy could work, Genentech's specific methods of using Herceptin® proved remarkably effective. Indeed, after Genentech revealed the results of its clinical studies, the scientific community hailed Herceptin® as "the beginning of a whole new wave of biological drugs that modulate the causes of cancer"[1] and a sign that "the whole field of cancer research has turned a corner."[2]

5. Since FDA approval of Herceptin® in 1998, Genentech has worked diligently to develop new methods of using Herceptin®—including improved dosing schedules and broader indications—to expand access to therapy and improve the quality of life for millions of patients worldwide. This research has greatly expanded the number of patients who are able to benefit from Herceptin®. To further expand access to this lifesaving drug, Genentech also provides Herceptin® free of charge to patients who are uninsured or cannot afford treatment and assists with out-of-pocket prescription-related expenses. All told, Genentech has spent over two decades, and billions of dollars, developing Herceptin® into the life-saving drug it is today.

6. Genentech's groundbreaking work developing Herceptin® was the result of years of research from a group of talented scientists. The United States Patent and Trademark Office

[1] Gina Kolata and Lawrence M. Fisher, *Drugs to Fight Breast Cancer Near Approval*, NEW YORK TIMES (FRONT PAGE) (Sept. 3, 1998).

[2] Robert Langreth, *Breast-Cancer Drug Is Backed by FDA Panel*, Wall Street J. (Sept. 3, 1998).

recognized that innovative work by granting Genentech numerous patents claiming Herceptin®, its manufacture, and its use.

7. Seeking to profit from the success of Genentech's innovations, Amgen sought FDA approval of a biosimilar version of Herceptin® called ABP 980 (trastuzumab-anns). The FDA approved ABP 980, which Amgen markets under the tradename Kanjinti, on June 13, 2019 for the same label indications and usage as Herceptin®. In fact, Amgen relied upon Genentech's own studies demonstrating the safety and efficacy of Herceptin® to obtain approval of its biosimilar product.

8. In 2010, Congress provided a pathway for resolving patent disputes relating to biosimilar products through the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act ("BPCIA"). Amgen initially purported to follow the process outlined in the BPCIA, which requires biosimilar applicants and innovator companies to exchange certain information concerning the biosimilar product and the patents that may be infringed by the manufacture and sale of the biosimilar product. *See* 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*).

9. Genentech thus brings this action for infringement pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2) based upon Amgen's submission of its Abbreviated Biologics License Application ("aBLA") for ABP 980. Genentech also seeks a judgment of infringement under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), and (g) that Amgen's manufacture, use, offer to sell, sale, or importation into the United States of Amgen's biosimilar product has infringed the patents described below. Genentech also seeks a declaratory judgment pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201 that the manufacture, use, offer to sell, sale, or importation into the United States of Amgen's biosimilar product would infringe the patents described below. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283,

Genentech also seeks a preliminary and/or permanent injunction barring Amgen's manufacture, use, offer to sell, sale, or importation of its biosimilar product prior to the expiration of those patents. Genentech also seeks monetary damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of Genentech's patents, and any further relief as this Court may deem just and proper.

PARTIES

10. Plaintiff Genentech is a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware with its corporate headquarters at 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080.

11. Genentech was founded in 1976 and for four decades has been at the forefront of innovation in the field of therapeutic biotechnology. Today, Genentech employs a large number of researchers, scientists, and post-doctoral staff members who routinely publish in top peer-reviewed journals and are among the leaders in total citations to their work by researchers. Genentech currently markets numerous approved pharmaceutical and biologic drugs for a range of serious or life-threatening medical conditions, including various forms of cancer, heart attacks, strokes, rheumatoid arthritis, and respiratory diseases.

12. Upon information and belief, Defendant Amgen is a company organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware with its principal place of business located at One Amgen Center Drive, Thousand Oaks, California 91320.

13. Amgen is, among other things, engaged in the development of biologic drugs, including a biosimilar version of Genentech's Herceptin® product, ABP 980 ("Amgen's aBLA product"). Upon information and belief, Amgen's aBLA product is or will be distributed and sold in the State of Delaware and throughout the United States.

JURISDICTION AND VENUE

14. This action arises under the BPCIA, 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*) and the Patent Laws of the United States, Title 35, United States Code, and the Declaratory Judgment Act, 28 U.S.C. §§ 2201-2202. This Court has subject matter jurisdiction pursuant to 28 U.S.C. §§ 1331, 1332, and 1338.

15. Venue is proper with respect to Amgen in this Court pursuant to 28 U.S.C. §§ 1391 and 1400(b) because Amgen is incorporated in Delaware.

16. This Court has personal jurisdiction over Amgen because it is incorporated in Delaware. In addition, among other things, Amgen has been approved by the FDA to market its aBLA product and has announced that its aBLA product is now available to customers in the United States, including in Delaware.

THE PARTIES' EXCHANGES UNDER THE BPCIA

17. On July 31, 2017, Amgen announced that it had submitted an aBLA for ABP 980 to the FDA seeking approval for the commercial manufacture, use, offer for sale, or sale of the Amgen aBLA product, a biosimilar version of trastuzumab, which is subject to BLA No. 103792 to Genentech.[3]

18. The FDA accepted Amgen's aBLA for review on September 26, 2017.

19. On October 16, 2017, Amgen provided Genentech with a copy of Amgen's aBLA, which included a small amount of manufacturing information.

20. On November 3, 2017, Amgen provided Genentech with additional manufacturing information regarding Amgen's aBLA product.

[3] http://www.amgen.com/media/news-releases/2017/07/amgen-and-allergan-submit-biosimilar-biologics-license-application-for-abp-980-to-us-food-and-drug-administration/

21. Genentech responded on November 20, 2017, to identify deficiencies in Amgen's production of manufacturing information and request specific information concerning the manufacture of Amgen's biosimilar product. Amgen provided additional manufacturing information on December 1, 2017, and December 4, 2017, but did not satisfy its disclosure obligations. Genentech then responded on December 15, 2017, to explain that Amgen's production was deficient in that it failed to provide all of the requested information in contravention of 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2).

22. Amgen did not disclose all of the information relevant to establishing whether the manufacture of Amgen's aBLA product will infringe each of the patents identified on Genentech's operative list pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A), despite Genentech's request that Amgen provide sufficient "other information that describes the process or processes used to manufacture" as required by 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(A). Amgen's failure to provide sufficient information under those circumstances justifies Genentech's contention that manufacturing Amgen's aBLA product will infringe such patents.

23. Despite Amgen's non-compliance (and without waiving Genentech's objection to such non-compliance), Genentech provided its operative list of 36 patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) on December 15, 2017.

24. Amgen replied on December 20, 2017, to assert its position that it had complied with its disclosure obligations based on Amgen's earlier production of its aBLA and two manufacturing documents.

25. Genentech responded on December 27, 2017, to reiterate that Amgen's production was insufficient to provide Genentech with a complete understanding of Amgen's trastuzumab manufacturing process.

26. Amgen replied on February 1, 2018, with an additional supplemental production.

27. On February 6, 2018, Genentech supplemented its § 262(*l*)(3)(A) list to include a newly issued manufacturing patent: U.S. Patent No. 9,868,760.

28. On February 13, 2018, Amgen purported to provide its detailed statement concerning non-infringement and invalidity pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(B) ("Amgen's 3B Statement"). Amgen's 3B Statement was deficient in numerous ways. For example, it—like Amgen's document productions—failed to fully describe Amgen's manufacturing process, such that Genentech was unable to evaluate many of Amgen's non-infringement arguments.

29. On February 27, 2018, March 12, 2018, and April 13, 2018, Amgen produced additional documents regarding Amgen's correspondence with the FDA regarding its aBLA submission. These supplemental productions still failed to fully describe Amgen's manufacturing process.

30. On April 13, 2018, and subject to its objections, Genentech provided its response to Amgen's 3C Statement pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(C) ("Genentech's 3C Statement"). Genentech included responses to Amgen's non-infringement and invalidity statements for each of the patents addressed in Amgen's 3B Statement and maintained that ABP 980 will infringe at least 18 Genentech patents. With its 3C Statement, Genentech proposed that Amgen agree that all 18 of these patents be included in a first-phase infringement action under § 262(*l*)(6).

31. On April 25, 2018, and April 30, 2018, Amgen produced additional documents regarding Amgen's correspondence with the FDA regarding its aBLA submission. These supplemental productions still failed to fully describe Amgen's manufacturing process.

32. After Genentech served its 3C Statement, the parties initiated negotiations under § 262(*l*)(4). On May 23, 2018, Genentech and Amgen agreed that the 37 patents addressed in the

exhibits to Genentech's 3C Statement shall be the subject of an action for patent infringement under § 262(*l*)(6).

33. In light of the parties' agreement, § 262(*l*)(6)(A) required Genentech to bring an action for patent infringement with respect to each of the 37 patents that were part of the parties' agreement. This action is Genentech's action pursuant to § 262(*l*)(6)(A).

34. On May 15, 2018, while the parties' negotiations pursuant to § 262(*l*)(4) were underway, Amgen purported to notify Genentech pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(A) that it intends to commence commercial marketing of ABP 980 in the United States no earlier than 180 from May 15, 2018 (i.e., October 28, 2018).

35. On June 21, 2018, Genentech and City of Hope (collectively, "Plaintiffs") sued Amgen for infringement of all 37 patents that the parties agreed to litigate during their § 262(*l*)(4) negotiations. On July 19, 2018, Plaintiffs and Amgen stipulated to dismiss with prejudice all claims for infringement of U.S. Patent Nos. 6,242,177, 6,489,447, 6,586,206, 6,870,034, 7,449,184, 7,501,122, 8,044,017, 8,314,225, 8,357,301, 8,460,895, 8,691,232, 8,710,196, 8,771,988, 9,047,438, 9,080,183, 9,428,766, 9,487,809, 9,493,744, and 9,868,760 relating to ABP 980, subject to certain conditions.

36. In a letter dated November 7, 2018, pursuant to the Court's scheduling order (D.I. 44), Genentech identified to Amgen a narrowed list of 10 patents which it intended to assert against Amgen in this litigation. In the same letter, Genentech notified Amgen that it intended to assert infringement of claims 10 and 11 of U.S. App. No. 14/073,659 ("the '659 application") once issued by the U.S. Patent Office. On December 25, 2018, the '659 application issued as U.S. Patent No. 10,160,811 ("the '811 patent"). Claims 6 and 7 of the '811 patent as issued

correspond to claims 10 and 11 of the '659 application. Genentech further supplemented its § 262(*l*)(3)(A) list to include the '811 patent.

37. On July 23, 2019, Plaintiffs and Amgen stipulated to dismiss with prejudice all claims for infringement of U.S. Patent Nos. 6,331,415, 7,923,221, 6,407,213, 6,417,335, 9,249,218, 6,121,428, and 6,620,918 relating to ABP 980. City of Hope was dismissed as a plaintiff to this case through that stipulation. That stipulation was so-ordered by the Court on July 24, 2019. D.I. 325

38. On August 2, 2019, Genentech and Amgen stipulated to a judgment of non-infringement of U.S. Patent Nos. 8,512,983 and 9,714,293 under the Court's claim construction of "a glutamine-free production culture medium," while preserving Genentech's ability to challenge that claim construction on appeal. That stipulation was so-ordered by the Court on August 20, 2019. D.I. 340.

AMGEN'S aBLA PRODUCT

39. Amgen has publicly stated that its aBLA product is biosimilar to Herceptin®. For example, Amgen has issued press releases claiming that ABP 980 is "a biosimilar candidate to Herceptin®" and "ABP 980 is a biosimilar candidate to trastuzumab,"[4] and it has announced the results of an Amgen study that purports to conclude that "[e]fficacy, safety and immunogenicity data support ABP 980 as a trastuzumab biosimilar."[5]

40. Given Amgen's claim of biosimilarity, Amgen's aBLA product must "utilize the same mechanism or mechanisms of action [as Herceptin®] for the condition or conditions of use

[4] http://www.amgen.com/media/news-releases/2017/07/amgen-and-allergan-submit-biosimilar-biologics-license-application-for-abp-980-to-us-food-and-drug-administration/

[5] https://www.amgen.com/media/news-releases/2017/09/amgen-and-allergan-present-phase-3-data-on-biosimilar-trastuzumab-candidate-abp-980-at-the-european-society-for-medical-oncology-2017-congress/

prescribed, recommended, or suggested in the proposed labeling." 42 U.S.C. § 262(k)(2)(A)(i)(II).

41. Under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C), Amgen has committed a statutory act of patent infringement with respect to patents identified by Genentech under 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3), through the submission of its aBLA application for ABP 980.

42. On June 13, 2019, Amgen's aBLA product was approved by the FDA.

43. On July 18, 2019, Amgen issued a press release announcing that "KANJINTI™ (trastuzumab-anns), a biosimilar to Herceptin® (trastuzumab), [is] now available in the United States (U.S.)."[6]

44. Since making its aBLA product available to customers in the United States, Amgen has stated that it "has received confirmation from its customers that they have begun administering Kanjinti® to cancer patients."[7]

GENENTECH'S ASSERTED PATENTS

45. Genentech has spent over two decades and significant resources developing Herceptin®, and the USPTO has awarded to Genentech numerous patents on innovations resulting from this massive undertaking.

46. Upon information and belief, Amgen's aBLA product infringes or will infringe at least the following patents, which Genentech has asserted in this lawsuit: U.S. Patent No. 7,846,441, U.S. Patent No. 7,892,549, U.S. Patent No. 6,627,196, U.S. Patent No. 7,371,379,

[6] http://investors.amgen.com/news-releases/news-release-details/amgen-and-allergans-mvasitm-bevacizumab-awwb-and-kanjintitm

[7] Second Declaration of Robert Jacobson in Support of Amgen Inc.'s Opposition to Genentech, Inc.'s Emergency Motion for an Injunction Pending Appeal, *Genentech, Inc. v. Amgen Inc.*, No. 19-2156 (Fed. Cir.), ECF No. 28 (July 29, 2019).

U.S. Patent No. 10,160,811, U.S. Patent No. 8,574,869, U.S. Patent No. 7,993,834, U.S. Patent No. 8,076,066, and U.S. Patent No. 8,440,402.

The Combination Chemotherapy Patents

47. U.S. Patent No. 7,846,441 ("the '441 patent"), claims the administration of Herceptin® in combination with a chemotherapy agent known as a taxoid, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative (another chemotherapy agent) in an amount effective to extend time to disease progression without overall increase in severe adverse events. This specific method of treatment unexpectedly resulted in a significant improvement in patient outcomes. It nearly doubled the time until disease progression compared to treatment using a taxoid alone, and it also avoided the serious cardiotoxicity associated with Herceptin® in combination with anthracycline derivatives that unexpectedly presented during the Herceptin® clinical trials.

48. The '441 patent, titled "Treatment with Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on December 7, 2010. A true and correct copy of the '441 patent is attached as Exhibit A. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '441 patent.

49. U.S. Patent No. 7,892,549 ("the '549 patent") is a continuation to the '441 patent that claims a method of treating a patient with HER2-positive breast cancer by administering Herceptin® in combination with a taxoid and a further growth inhibitory agent or further therapeutic agent.

50. The '549 patent, titled "Treatment with Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on February 22, 2011. A true and correct copy of the '549 patent is attached as Exhibit B. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '549 patent.

The Method of Administration Patents

51. U.S. Patent Nos. 6,627,196, 7,371,379, and 10,160,811 (collectively, the "Method of Administration Patents") generally cover the most common administration method for Herceptin®: an initial dose of 8 mg/kg, followed by 6 mg/kg doses once every three weeks. Herceptin® was initially approved for administration on a weekly regimen, but Genentech discovered that the drug could be dosed only once every three weeks without reducing safety or effectiveness. The discovery of three-weekly dosing has had a marked impact on patients' quality of life by providing the same life-saving effects of Herceptin® while allowing patients to receive treatment less frequently.

52. U.S. Patent No. 6,627,196 ("'196 patent"), titled "Dosages for Treatment with Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on September 30, 2003. A true and correct copy of the '196 patent is attached as Exhibit C. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '196 patent.

53. U.S. Patent No. 7,371,379 ("the '379 patent"), titled "Dosages for Treatment with Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on May 13, 2008. A true and correct copy of the '379 patent is attached as Exhibit D. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '379 patent.

54. U.S. Patent No. 10,160,811 ("the '811 patent"), titled "Treatment with Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on December 25, 2018. A true and correct copy of the '811 patent is attached as Exhibit E. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '811 patent.

HER2 Diagnostic Patents

55. U.S. Patent Nos. 7,993,834, 8,076,066, and 8,440,402 claim novel techniques for identifying patients who might benefit from trastuzumab therapy using gene amplification techniques even where immunohistochemistry techniques suggest that the patient may not overexpress HER2.

56. U.S. Patent No. 7,993,834 ("the '834 patent"), titled "Detection of ErbB2 Gene Amplification to Increase the Likelihood of the Effectiveness of ErbB2 Antibody Breast Cancer Therapy," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on August 9, 2011. A true and correct copy of the '834 patent is attached as Exhibit F. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '834 patent.

57. U.S. Patent No. 8,076,066 ("the '066 patent"), titled "Gene Detection Assay for Improving the Likelihood of an Effective Response to a HER2 Antibody Cancer Therapy," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on December 13, 2011. A true and correct copy of the '066 patent is attached as Exhibit G. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '066 patent.

58. U.S. Patent No. 8,440,402 ("the '402 patent"), titled "Gene Detection Assay for Improving the Likelihood of an Effective Response to a HER2 Antibody Cancer Therapy," was duly and legally issued by the Patent Office on May 14, 2013. A true and correct copy of the '402 patent is attached as Exhibit H. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '402 patent.

The Kao Patent

59. U.S. Patent No. 8,574,869 ("the '869 patent"), titled "Prevention of Disulfide Bond Reduction During Recombinant Production of Polypeptides," was duly and legally issued

by the Patent Office on November 5, 2013. A true and correct copy of the '869 patent is attached as Exhibit I. Genentech is the owner by assignment of the '869 patent.

COUNT I
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,846,441

60. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

61. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '441 patent. Genentech included the '441 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the '441 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

62. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the '441 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the '441 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

63. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the '441 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech's 3C Statement. Such

infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

64. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '441 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

65. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the '441 patent, including due to Genentech's disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen's infringement of the '441 patent is willful.

66. By obtaining FDA approval of a package insert having directions that instruct patients to administer and/or use and medical practitioners to prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product, Amgen has an affirmative intent to actively induce infringement by others of one or more claims of the '441 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

67. Upon information and belief, Amgen is aware, has knowledge, and/or is willfully blind to the fact that patients will administer and/or use and medical practitioners will prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product according to Amgen's package insert and, therefore, will directly infringe at least one claim of the '441 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

68. Upon information and belief, Amgen knows or should know that it will aid and abet another's direct infringement of at least one of the claims of the '441 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, by at least Amgen's package insert for the Amgen aBLA product.

69. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of the '441 patent.

70. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the '441 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

71. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT II
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,892,549

72. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

73. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '549 patent. Genentech included the '549 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the '549 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

74. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the '549 patent. Amgen has

therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the '549 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

75. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the '549 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech's 3C Statement. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

76. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '549 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

77. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the '549 patent, including due to Genentech's disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen's infringement of the '549 patent is willful.

78. By obtaining FDA approval of a package insert having directions that instruct patients to administer and/or use and medical practitioners to prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product, Amgen has an affirmative intent to actively induce infringement by others of one or more claims of the '549 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

79. Upon information and belief, Amgen is aware, has knowledge, and/or is willfully blind to the fact that patients will administer and/or use and medical practitioners will prescribe

and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product according to Amgen's package insert and, therefore, will directly infringe at least one claim of the '549 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

80. Upon information and belief, Amgen knows or should know that it will aid and abet another's direct infringement of at least one of the claims of the '549 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, by at least Amgen's package insert for the Amgen aBLA product.

81. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of the '549 patent.

82. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the '549 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

83. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT III
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 6,627,196

84. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

85. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '196

patent. Genentech included the ’196 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the ’196 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

86. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the ’196 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the ’196 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

87. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the ’196 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech’s 3C Statement and Genentech’s infringement contentions served in this case. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

88. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen’s manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen’s ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the ’196 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

89. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the ’196 patent, including due to Genentech’s disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen’s infringement of the ’196 patent is willful.

90. By obtaining FDA approval of a package insert having directions that instruct patients to administer and/or use and medical practitioners to prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product, Amgen has an affirmative intent to actively induce infringement by others of one or more claims of the ’196 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

91. Upon information and belief, Amgen is aware, has knowledge, and/or is willfully blind to the fact that patients will administer and/or use and medical practitioners will prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product according to Amgen’s package insert and, therefore, will directly infringe at least one claim of the ’196 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

92. Upon information and belief, Amgen knows or should know that it will aid and abet another’s direct infringement of at least one of the claims of the ’196 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, by at least Amgen’s package insert for the Amgen aBLA product.

93. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen’s infringement of the ’196 patent.

94. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the ’196 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

95. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT IV
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,371,379

96. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

97. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '379 patent. Genentech included the '379 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the '379 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

98. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the '379 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the '379 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

99. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the '379 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech's 3C Statement and Genentech's infringement contentions served in this case. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

100. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '379 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

101. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the '379 patent, including due to Genentech's disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen's infringement of the '379 patent is willful.

102. By obtaining FDA approval of a package insert having directions that instruct patients to administer and/or use and medical practitioners to prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product, Amgen has an affirmative intent to actively induce infringement by others of one or more claims of the '379 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

103. Upon information and belief, Amgen is aware, has knowledge, and/or is willfully blind to the fact that patients will administer and/or use and medical practitioners will prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product according to Amgen's package insert and, therefore, will directly infringe at least one claim of the '379 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

104. Upon information and belief, Amgen knows or should know that it will aid and abet another's direct infringement of at least one of the claims of the '379 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, by at least Amgen's package insert for the Amgen aBLA product.

105. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of the '379 patent.

106. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the ’379 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

107. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT V
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 10,160,811

108. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

109. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the ’811 patent. Genentech included the ’811 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) as supplemented.

110. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the ’811 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the ’811 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

111. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the ’811 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the

manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product as explained in Genentech's infringement contentions served in this case. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

112. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '811 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

113. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the '811 patent, including due to Genentech's disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) as supplemented and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen's infringement of the '811 patent is willful.

114. By obtaining FDA approval of a package insert having directions that instruct patients to administer and/or use and medical practitioners to prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product, Amgen has an affirmative intent to actively induce infringement by others of one or more claims of the '811 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

115. Upon information and belief, Amgen is aware, has knowledge, and/or is willfully blind to the fact that patients will administer and/or use and medical practitioners will prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product according to Amgen's package insert and, therefore, will directly infringe at least one claim of the '811 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents.

116. Upon information and belief, Amgen knows or should know that it will aid and abet another's direct infringement of at least one of the claims of the '811 patent, either literally

or under the doctrine of equivalents, by at least Amgen's package insert for the Amgen aBLA product.

117. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of the '811 patent.

118. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the '811 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

119. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT VI
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,993,834

120. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

121. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '834 patent. Genentech included the '834 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the '834 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

122. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the '834 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the '834 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

123. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the '834 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech's 3C Statement and Genentech's infringement contentions served in this case. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

124. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '834 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

125. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the '834 patent, including due to Genentech's disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen's infringement of the '834 patent is willful.

126. By obtaining FDA approval of a package insert having directions that instruct patients to administer and/or use and medical practitioners to prescribe and/or administer the Amgen aBLA product, Amgen has an affirmative intent to actively induce infringement by others of one or more claims of the '834 patent, either literally or under the doctrine of

equivalents.

127. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of the '834 patent.

128. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the '834 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

129. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT VII
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 8,076,066

130. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

131. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '066 patent. Genentech included the '066 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the '066 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

132. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the '066 patent. Amgen has

therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the ’066 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

133. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the ’066 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech’s 3C Statement and Genentech’s infringement contentions served in this case. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

134. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen’s manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen’s ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the ’066 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

135. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the ’066 patent, including due to Genentech’s disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen’s infringement of the ’066 patent is willful.

136. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen’s infringement of the ’066 patent.

137. Genentech will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the ’066 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

138. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT VIII
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 8,440,402

139. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

140. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the ’402 patent. Genentech included the ’402 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the ’402 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

141. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the ’402 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the ’402 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

142. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the ’402 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug

substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech's 3C Statement. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

143. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '402 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

144. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the '402 patent, including due to Genentech's disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen's infringement of the '402 patent is willful.

145. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen's infringement of the '402 patent.

146. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the '402 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

147. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

COUNT IX
INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 8,574,869

148. Genentech incorporates by reference paragraphs 1-59 as if fully set forth herein.

149. Upon review of publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Genentech believes that a claim of patent

infringement, either literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, could reasonably be asserted by Genentech if a person not licensed by Genentech engaged in the making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing into the United States of ABP 980 prior to the expiration of the '869 patent. Genentech included the '869 patent in its disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A). Genentech also provided Amgen with a detailed statement that describes, on a claim-by-claim basis, the factual and legal basis of its opinion that the '869 patent will be infringed by the commercial marketing of ABP 980, pursuant to 42 U.S.C.§ 262(*l*)(3)(C).

150. Amgen submitted its aBLA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, or sale of ABP 980 before the expiration of the '869 patent. Amgen has therefore committed a technical act of infringement of one or more claims of the '869 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C)(i).

151. Likewise, based on publicly available information and/or information provided by Amgen pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(2), Amgen has infringed or will infringe the '869 patent in violation of 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g) as a result of its activities relating to the manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and its ABP 980 drug product, as explained in Genentech's 3C Statement and Genentech's infringement contentions served in this case. Such infringement either has occurred or is imminent because, among other things, Amgen has announced that its aBLA product is now available in the United States.

152. Pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(9)(A) and 28 U.S.C. § 2201, Genentech is entitled to a declaratory judgment that Amgen's manufacture, importation, sale, offer for sale, use, and promotion of the use of the ABP 980 drug substance and Amgen's ABP 980 drug product has infringed or will infringe the '869 patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. §§ 271(a), (b), and/or (g).

153. Amgen has knowledge of and is aware of the ’869 patent, including due to Genentech’s disclosure of patents pursuant to 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(3)(A) and the filing of this Complaint. Amgen’s infringement of the ’869 patent is willful.

154. Pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284, Genentech is entitled to damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, for Amgen’s infringement of the ’869 patent.

155. Genentech has suffered or will suffer irreparable injury for which damages are an inadequate remedy unless Amgen is enjoined from infringing the claims of the ’869 patent. Genentech has no adequate remedy at law.

156. Genentech is entitled to an injunction pursuant to at least 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), 42 U.S.C. § 262(*l*)(8)(B), 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), (g), and/or 35 U.S.C. § 283 preventing Amgen from the commercial manufacture, use, offer to sell, or sale within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product.

PRAYER FOR RELIEF

WHEREFORE, Genentech respectfully requests that this Court enter judgment in their favor against Amgen and grant the following relief:

a. a judgment that Amgen has infringed or induced infringement of one or more claims of the asserted patents under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(C);

b. a judgment that Amgen has infringed or will infringe, or has induced or will induce infringement, of one or more claims of the asserted patents by engaging in the manufacture, import, offer for sale, sale, or use within the United States of the Amgen aBLA product before the expirations of the asserted patents under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), (b), and/or (g);

c. preliminary and/or permanent equitable relief, including but not limited to a preliminary and permanent injunction that enjoins Amgen, its officers, partners, agents, servants,

employees, parents, subsidiaries, affiliate corporations, other related business entities, and all other persons acting in concert, participation, or in privity with Amgen and/or its successors or assigns from infringing the asserted patents, or contributing to or inducing anyone to do the same, by acts including the manufacture, use, offer to sell, sale, distribution, or importation of any current or future versions of a product that infringes, or the use or manufacturing of which infringes the asserted patents;

d. monetary damages, including lost profits and/or a reasonable royalty, and an accounting and/or ongoing royalty for any post-judgment infringement;

e. a judgment that Amgen's infringement was willful and enhancement of any monetary damages pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 284;

f. a declaration that this is an exceptional case and an award to Plaintiffs of their attorneys' fees, costs, and expenses pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4) and 35 U.S.C. § 285; and

g. such other relief as this Court may deem just and proper.

JURY DEMAND

Plaintiff Genentech, Inc., by and through its undersigned counsel, hereby demand, pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 38, a trial by jury on all claims so triable in this action.

Dated: August 27, 2019

Respectfully submitted,

/s/ Daniel M. Silver

Michael P. Kelly (#2295)
Daniel M. Silver (#4758)
Alexandra M. Joyce (#6423)
McCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP
Renaissance Centre
405 North King Street, 8th Floor
Wilmington, DE 19801
(302) 984-6300
mkelly@mccarter.com
dsilver@mccarter.com
ajoyce@mccarter.com

Counsel for Plaintiff Genentech, Inc.

Of Counsel:

William F. Lee
Lisa J. Pirozzolo
Emily R. Whelan
Kevin S. Prussia
Andrew J. Danford
WILMER CUTLER PICKERING
HALE AND DORR LLP
60 State Street
Boston, MA 02109
william.lee@wilmerhale.com
lisa.pirozzolo@wilmerhale.com
emily.whelan@wilmerhale.com
kevin.prussia@wilmerhale.com
andrew.danford@wilmerhale.com

Robert J. Gunther Jr.
WILMER CUTLER PICKERING
HALE AND DORR LLP
7 World Trade Center
250 Greenwich Street
New York, NY 10007
robert.gunther@wilmerhale.com

Daralyn J. Durie
Adam R. Brausa
DURIE TANGRI LLP
217 Leidesdorff St.
San Francisco, CA 94111
ddurie@durietangri.com
abrausa@durietangri.com

EXHIBIT A

US007846441B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Hellmann

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,846,441 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Dec. 7, 2010**

(54) **TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES**

(75) Inventor: **Susan D. Hellmann**, San Carlos, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/208,649**

(22) Filed: **Dec. 10, 1998**

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/069,346, filed on Dec. 12, 1997.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
A61K 39/395 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **424/143.1**; 424/130.1; 424/133.1; 424/135.1; 424/136.1; 424/141.1; 424/142.1; 424/152.1; 424/155.1; 424/156.1; 424/172.1; 424/174.1

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 424/137.1, 424/138.1, 141.1, 227.1, 152.1, 130.1, 133.1, 424/135.1, 136.1, 142.1, 143.1, 155.1, 156.1, 424/172.1, 174.1
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,017,471	A		4/1977	Davies
4,753,894	A		6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,935,341	A		6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A		7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A		11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A		12/1990	Senter et al.
4,994,558	A		2/1991	Armour et al.
5,169,774	A		12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A		2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A		2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A		10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A		11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A		3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A		11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A		1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,514,554	A		5/1996	Bacus
5,571,894	A		11/1996	Wels et al.
5,578,482	A		11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,587,458	A		12/1996	King et al.
5,604,107	A		2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A		6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,663,144	A		9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,171	A		10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A		1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A		2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A		2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A		3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A		3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A		3/1998	Bissery
5,747,261	A		5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A		6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A		6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A		7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A	*	7/1998	Arakawa et al. 424/143.1
5,783,404	A		7/1998	Koski
5,801,005	A		9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,804,396	A		9/1998	Plowman
5,821,337	A		10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A		10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A		11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A		11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A		11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A		11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A		12/1998	Cheever et al.
5,846,749	A		12/1998	Slamon et al.
5,856,089	A		1/1999	Wang et al.
5,856,110	A		1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A		1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A		2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A		3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A		3/1999	Huston et al.
5,908,835	A		6/1999	Bissery
5,910,486	A		6/1999	Curiel et al.
5,922,845	A		7/1999	Deo et al.
5,925,519	A		7/1999	Jensen et al.
5,939,531	A		8/1999	Wels et al.
5,977,322	A		11/1999	Marks et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	599274	6/1994

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Seidman et al., Seminars in Oncology, vol. 22, No. 5, Suppl 12, Oct. 1995, pp. 108-116.*

(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Alana M. Harris
Assistant Examiner—Anne L Holleran
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Ginger R. Dreger; Atulya R. Agarwal

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

14 Claims, 2 Drawing Sheets

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,985,553	A	11/1999	King et al.	
5,994,071	A	11/1999	Ross et al.	
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel et al.	
6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter et al.	
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring	
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver et al.	
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,214,388	B1 *	4/2001	Benz et al.	424/143.1
6,214,863	B1	4/2001	Bissery	
6,267,958	B1	7/2001	Andya et al.	
6,270,765	B1	8/2001	Deo et al.	
6,316,462	B1	11/2001	Bishop et al.	
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel et al.	
6,339,142	B1	1/2002	Basey et al.	
6,387,371	B1 *	5/2002	Hudziak et al.	424/138.1
6,395,272	B1	5/2002	Deo et al.	
6,395,712	B1	5/2002	Hung et al.	
6,399,063	B1 *	6/2002	Hudziak et al.	
6,407,213	B1	6/2002	Carter et al.	
6,458,356	B1 *	10/2002	Arakawa et al.	
6,512,097	B1	1/2003	Marks et al.	
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman et al.	
6,639,055	B1	10/2003	Carter et al.	
6,685,940	B2	2/2004	Andya et al.	
6,719,971	B1	4/2004	Carter et al.	
6,800,738	B1	10/2004	Carter et al.	
6,821,515	B1	11/2004	Cleland et al.	
7,041,292	B1	5/2006	Sliwkowski	
7,060,268	B2	6/2006	Andya et al.	
7,097,840	B2	8/2006	Erickson et al.	
2001/0014326	A1	8/2001	Andya et al.	
2002/0001587	A1	1/2002	Erickson et al.	
2002/0076408	A1	6/2002	Buchsbaum	
2002/0155527	A1	10/2002	Stuart et al.	
2003/0103973	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.	
2003/0108545	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.	
2003/0147884	A1	8/2003	Paton et al.	
2003/0170234	A1	9/2003	Hellmann	
2003/0202972	A1	10/2003	Andya et al.	
2004/0013660	A1	1/2004	Bissery	
2004/0037823	A9	2/2004	Paton et al.	
2004/0037824	A1	2/2004	Baughman et al.	
2004/0106161	A1	6/2004	Bossenmaier et al.	
2004/0236078	A1	11/2004	Carter et al.	
2004/0258685	A1	12/2004	Brunetta et al.	
2005/0002928	A1	1/2005	Hellmann	
2005/0208043	A1	9/2005	Adams et al.	
2005/0238640	A1	10/2005	Sliwkowski	
2005/0244417	A1	11/2005	Ashkenazi et al.	
2006/0013819	A1	1/2006	Kelsey	
2006/0018899	A1	1/2006	Kao et al.	
2006/0034840	A1	2/2006	Agus	
2006/0034842	A1	2/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0073143	A1	4/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0083739	A1	4/2006	Sliwkowski	
2006/0088523	A1	4/2006	Andya et al.	
2006/0099201	A1	5/2006	Andya et al.	
2006/0121044	A1	6/2006	Amler et al.	
2006/0165702	A1	7/2006	Allison et al.	
2006/0188509	A1	8/2006	Derynck et al.	
2006/0193854	A1	8/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0198843	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0204505	A1	9/2006	Sliwkowski et al.	
2006/0210561	A1	9/2006	Baughman et al.	
2006/0228745	A1	10/2006	Mass	
2006/0275305	A1	12/2006	Bryant	
2006/0275306	A1	12/2006	Andya et al.	
2007/0020261	A1	1/2007	Sliwkowski et al.	
2007/0026001	A1	2/2007	Ashkenazi et al.	
2007/0037228	A1	2/2007	Moecks et al.	
2007/0166753	A1	7/2007	Mass	
2007/0184055	A1	8/2007	Sliwkowski	
2007/0202516	A1	8/2007	Mass	
2007/0224203	A1	9/2007	Friess et al.	
2007/0269429	A1	11/2007	Kelsey et al.	
2007/0292419	A1	12/2007	Hellmann	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0616812	A1	9/1994
EP	711565		8/1998
JP	95006982	B2	5/1987
JP	2761543	B2	6/1990
JP	2895105	B2	8/1991
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	7-59588		3/1995
WO	WO 87/07646		12/1987
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 89/10412		11/1989
WO	WO 91/02062		2/1991
WO	WO 91/05264		4/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 93/03741		3/1993
WO	WO 93/12220		6/1993
WO	WO 93/16185		8/1993
WO	WO 93/21232		10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319		10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136		1/1994
WO	WO 94/22478		10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/07321		3/1996
WO	WO 96/16673		6/1996
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/40789		12/1996
WO	WO 97/00271		1/1997
WO	WO 97/20858		6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/38731		10/1997
WO	WO 98/02463		1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797		4/1998
WO	WO 98/18489		5/1998
WO	WO 98/33914		8/1998
WO	WO 98/45479		10/1998
WO	WO 99/24401		5/1999
WO	WO 99/25320		5/1999
WO	WO 99/31140		6/1999
WO	WO 00/61145		10/2000
WO	WO 00/61185		10/2000
WO	WO 00/69460	A1	11/2000
WO	WO 01/87334		11/2001
WO	WO 02/055106		7/2002
WO	WO 2007/145862	A2	12/2007

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Davidson, Seimanars in Oncology, vol. 22, No. 6, Suppl. 14, Dec. 1995, pp. 2-6.*

van Oosterom, et al. Anti-Cancer Drugs, 6(3): 356-368, 1995; Abstract only.*

Merlin, et al, Annals of Oncology 13: 1743-1748, 2002.*

Kaye, S.B. et al. European Journal of Cancer 33(13) 2167-2176, 1997.*

Grant, D.S., et al, Int. J. Cancer 104: 121-129, 2003.*

Nallani, S.C., et al, Cancer Chemother Pharmacol (2004) 54: 219-229.*

Untch, M. et al, Anticancer Drugs, 5(1): 24-30, 1994; abstract only.*

The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, Houghton Mifflin, Chicago, from http://www.credoreference.com/entry/4085073.*

Cottin, Y, et al. Br. Heart Journal, 73: 61-64, 1995.*

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal antibodies directed against growth factor receptors enhance the efficacy of chemotherapeutic agents" *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor blockade and chemotherapy: a new approach to combination cancer therapy" *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1):22 (1996).

Arteaga et al., "p185$^{c\text{-}erbB\text{-}2}$ signaling enhances cisplatin-induced cytotoxicity in human breast carcinoma cells: association between an oncogenic receptor tyrosine kinase and drug-induced DNA repair" *Cancer Research* 54(14):3758-3765 (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of cultured human breast cancer cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) associated with loss of cell surface HER-2/neu antigen" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(6):350-362 (1990).

Bacus et al., "Tumor-inhibitory monoclonal antibodies to the HER-2/Neu receptor induce differentiation of human breast cancer cells" *Cancer Research* 52(9):2580-2589 (May 1, 1992).

Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" *Proceedings of ASCO-13th Annual Meeting* (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63 (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "HER2 overexpression and paclitaxel sensitivity in breast cancer: therapeutic implications" *Oncology* 11(3 Suppl 2):43-48 (Mar. 1997).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14(3):737-744 (1996).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an anti-p185^{HER2} antibody for human cancer therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 89:4285-4289 (1992).

D'souza et al., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in human mammary epithelial cells signals inhibition of transcription of the E-cadherin gene" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91(15):7202-7206 (Jul. 19, 1994).

DiFiore et al., "erbB-2 is a potent oncogene when overexpressed in NIH/3T3 cells" *Science* 237(4811):178-182 (Jul. 10, 1987).

Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of and Oncogene Protein Product an Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cell* 41(3):695-706 (1985).

Drebin et al., "Inhibition of tumor growth by a monoclonal antibody reactive with an oncogene-encoded tumor antigen" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 83:9129-9133 (1986).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal antibodies reactive with distinct domains of the neu oncogene-encoded p185 molecule exert synergistic anti-tumor effects in vivo" *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2(4):387-394 (1988).

Fendly et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Fleiss, JL *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions*, 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13-17 (1981).

Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector" *Cancer Research* 54(3):738-741 (Feb. 1, 1994).

Guy et al., "Expression of the neu protooncogene in the mammary epithelium of transgenic mice induces metastatic disease" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(22):10578-10582 (Nov. 15, 1992).

Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines" *Cancer Research* 51:4575-4580 (Sep. 1, 1991).

Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal antibodies against the extracellular domain of the erbB-2 receptor function as partial ligand agonists" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 267(21):15160-15167 (Jul. 1992).

Hudziak et al., "Increased expression of the putative growth factor receptor p185^{HER2} causes transformation and tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 cells" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 84:7159-7163 (1987).

Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165-1172 (1989).

Hynes and Stern, "The biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and its role in cancer" *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1198(2-3):165-184 (Dec. 30, 1994).

Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an animal model of human gastric cancer using a combination of anti-erbB-2 monoclonal antibodies" *Cancer Research* 52(10):2771-2776 (May 15, 1992).

Kotts et al., "Differential growth inhibition of human carcinoma cells exposed to monoclonal antibodies directed against the extracellular domain of the HER2/ERBB2 protooncogene" In Vitro (Abstract #176) 26(3):59A (1990).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 gene product by a monoclonal antibody and serum growth factor(s) in human mammary carcinoma cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 11(2):979-986 (Feb. 1991).

Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993).

Maier et al., "Requirements for the internalization of a murine monoclonal antibody directed against the HER-2/neu gene product c-erbB-2" *Cancer Research* 51(19):5361-5369 (Oct. 1, 1991).

McKenzie et al., "Generation and characterization of monoclonal antibodies specific for the human neu oncogene product, p185" *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989).

Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185^{neu}" *Methods in Enzymology* 198:277-290 (1991).

Norton, L, "Evolving concepts in the systemic drug therapy of breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 24(4 Suppl 10):S10-3-S10-10 (Aug. 1997).

Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994).

Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular markers—a review" *Gene* 159(1):19-27 (Jun. 14, 1995).

Sarup, "Characterization of an Anti-P185$^{HER\text{-}2}$ Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991).

Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} signal transduction in breast cancer cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 266(22):14300-14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).

Seifert et al., "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity" *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28(9):1063-1072 (Sep. 1994).

Shawver et al., "Ligand-like effects induced by anti-c-erbB-2 antibodies do not correlate with and are not required for growth inhibition of human carcinoma cells" *Cancer Research* 54(5):1367-1373 (Mar. 1, 1994).

Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991).

Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-induced cardiomyopathy" *New England J. of Medicine* 339(13):900-905 (Sep. 24, 1998).

Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardiomyopathy" *Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology* 27(4):1055-1063 (Apr. 1995).

Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" *Science* 235:177-182 (1987).

Slamon, et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science* 244:707-712 (May 1989).

Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 proteins reconstitutes a high affinity receptor for heregulin" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994).

Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic aspects of the opposing effects of monoclonal antibodies to the ERBB2 receptor on tumor growth" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88(19):8691-8695 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Tagliabue et al., "Selection of monoclonal antibodies which induce internalization and phosphorylation of $p185^{HER2}$ and growth inhibition of cells with HER2/NEU gene amplification" *International Journal of Cancer* 47(6):933-937 (Apr. 1, 1991).

Vitetta et al., "Monoclonal antibodies as agonists: an expanded role for their use in cancer therapy" *Cancer Research* 54(20):5301-5309 (Oct. 15, 1994).

Xu et al., "Antibody-induced growth inhibition is mediated through immunochemically and functionally distinct epitopes on the extracellular domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER- 2/neu) gene product p185" *International Journal of Cancer* 53(3):401-408 (Feb. 1, 1993).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpessing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts" *Cancer Research* 58:2825-2831 (Jul. 1998).

"Herceptin (Trastuzumab)" *Product Information* (2000).

Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" *Oncogene* 18:2241-2251 (1999).

Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First- or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress HER2" *Proceedings of ASCO* (Abstract #523) 18:137a (1999).

Baselga et al., "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies As Anti-Cancer Therapy" *Pharmac. Ther.* 64:127-154 (1994).

De Santes et al., "Radiolabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" *Cancer Research* 52:1916-1923 (1992).

Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract #3209) 37:470 (Mar. 1996).

Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (Mar. 15, 1996).

Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 44(3):1002-1007 (Mar. 1984).

Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" *Jpn J. Cancer Res.* 80:10-14 (Jan. 1989).

McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" *Cancer* 65(1):88-92 (Jan. 1, 1990).

Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" *J. Cellular Biochem.* 35(4):315-320 (1987).

Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" *Molecular Foundations of Oncology*, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter 6, pp. 95-134 (1991).

Sliwkowski et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpressing breast cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* 37:625-626 (Mar. 1996).

Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti-$p185^{her2/neu}$ monoclonal antibodies" *Experimental and Molecular Pathology* 67:15-25 (1999).

Baselga et al., "Antitumor activity of paclitaxel in combination with anti-growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies in breast cancer xenografts" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 2262) 35:380 (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "Antitumor effects of doxorubicin in combination with anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies" *Journal of the National Cancer Institute* 85(16):1327-1333 (Aug. 18, 1993).

Bunn et al., "HER2/neu expression and effects of Herceptin alone and in combination with cytotoxic agents in lung cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 4571) 41:719 (Mar. 2000).

Carmichael et al., "Advanced breast cancer: a phase II trial with gemcitabine" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 13(11):2731-2736 (Nov. 1995).

Carmichael et al., "Advanced breast cancer: investigational role of gemcitabine" *European Journal of Cancer* 33(Suppl. 1):S27-S30 (Jan. 1997).

Clemons et al., "Review of recent trials of chemotherapy for advanced breast cancer: studies excluding taxanes" *European Journal of Cancer* 33(13):2171-2182 (Nov. 1997).

Fornier et al., "Trastuzumab in combination with chemotherapy for the treatment of metastatic breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 27(6 Suppl 11):38-45 (Dec. 2000).

Gatzemeier et al., "A randomised phase II study of gemcitabine/cisplatin alone and with Herceptin in patients with HER2-positive non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC)" (Poster to be presented at the 2001 ECCO meeting).

Hansen, H., "Gemcitabine—a review" *Annals of Oncology* (Abstract #058 from the 9th NCI-EORTC Symposium on New Drugs in Cancer Therapy held in Amsterdam on Mar. 12-15, 1996) 7(Suppl. 1):29 (1996).

Konecny et al., "Therapeutic advantage of chemotherapy drugs in combination with Herceptin against human breast cancer cells with HER-2/NEU overexpression" *Breast Cancer Res Treat* (Abstract No. 467) 57:114 (1999).

Llombart et al., "Biweekly gemcitabine and paclitaxel in advanced breast cancer. Phase II trial and predictive value of HER2 extracellular domain (ECD)" *European Journal of Cancer* (Abstract No. 390) 36(Suppl 5):S121-S122 (Sep. 2000).

Miller et al., "Gemcitabine, paclitaxel, and trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer" *Oncology* 15(2 Supp 3):38-40 (Feb. 2001).

Mosconi et al., "Combination therapy with gemcitabine in non-small cell lung cancer" *European Journal of Cancer* 33 (Suppl. 1):S14-S17 (Jan. 1997).

Nagourney et al., "Trastuzumab (Herceptin) enhancement of cytotoxic drug activity in human tumor primary cultures" *Breast Cancer Res Treat* (Abstract No. 475) 57:116 (1999).

Nelson and Fry, "Inhibition of ERBB family receptors by C1-1033 enhances the cytotoxicity of gemcitabine via modulation of AKT and map kinases" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 1533) 41:241 (Mar. 2000).

Safran et al., "Herceptin and gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic cancers that overexpress HER-2/neu" *Proc. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol.* (Abstract No. 517) 20:130A (2001).

Tsai et al., "Cytotoxic effects of gemcitabine-containing regimens against human non-small cell lung cancer cell lines which express different levels of $p185^{neu}$" *Cancer Research* 56(4):794-801 (Feb. 15, 1996).

van Moorsel et al., "Combination chemotherapy studies with gemcitabine" *Seminars in Oncology* 24(2 Suppl. 7):S7-17-S7-23 (Apr. 1997).

Zinner et al., "Cisplatin and gemcitabine combined with Herceptin in patients (Pts) with HER2 overexpressing, untreated, advanced, non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC); a phase II trial" *Proc. Am. Clin. Oncol.* (Abstract No. 1307) 20:328A (2001).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).

"Are adjuvant Herceptin trials using the wrong drugs?" *Serip* 2493:21 (Nov. 26, 1999).

Burris et al., "Phase II trial of docetaxel and Herceptin(R) as first- or second-line chemotherapy for women with metastatic breast cancer whose tumours overexpress HER2" *European Journal of Cancer* (Abstract No. 1293) 35(4):3322 (Sep. 1999).

Albanell et al., "Trastuzumab, a humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody, for the treatment of breast cancer" *Drugs of Today* 35(12):931-946 (1999).

"Aminoglutethimide" *Martindale—The Complete Drug Reference—Monographs* (website version of product information) pp. 1-4 (2003).

Argiris and DiGiovanna, "Synergistic interactions between tamoxifen and Herceptin TM" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract #4565) 41:718 (Mar. 2000).

"Arimidex (anastrozole) Tablets" *Physicians' Desk Reference* (website version of product information) pp. 1-14 (2003).

"Aromasin (exemestane tablets)" *Physicians' Desk Reference* (website version of product information) pp. 1-9 (2003).

Benz et al., "Estrogen-dependent, tamoxifen-resistant tumorigenic growth of MCF-7 cells transfected with HER2/neu" *Breast Cancer Research & Treatment* 24(2):85-95 (1992).

Brueggemeier, R., "Aromatase, aromatase inhibitors, and breast cancer" *American Journal of Therapeutics* 8(5):333-344 (Sep.-Oct. 2001).

"A concerted attack on cancer" *Scrip Magazine* 2617 (Review Issue 2000):68-70 (Feb. 14, 2001).

Dati et al., "Inhibition of c-erbB-2 oncogene expression by estrogens in human breast cancer cells" *Oncogene* 5(7):1001-1006 (Jul. 1990).

"Femara (letrozole tablets)" *Physicians' Desk Reference* (website version of product information) pp. 1-13 (2003).

Grem et al., "A phase II evaluation of combination chemotherapy plus aminoglutethimide in women with metastatic or recurrent breast carcinoma. An Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Pilot Study" *American Journal of Clinical Oncology* 11(5):528-534 (Oct. 1988).

Hamilton and Piccart, "The contribution of molecular markers to the prediction of response in the treatment of breast cancer: a review of the literature on HER-2, p53 and BCL-2" *Annals of Oncology* 11(6):647-663 (Jun. 2000).

Kaufmann et al., "Exemestane is superior to megestrol acetate after tamoxifen failure in postmenopausal women with advanced breast cancer: Results of a phase III randomized double-blind trial" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 18(7):1399-1411 (Apr. 2000).

Konecny et al., "New drugs in breast cancer therapy: Current position and future perspectives" *Gynaekologisch-Geburtshilfliche Rundschau* (English language abstract only) 37(2):54-61 (Oct. 1997).

Kunisue et al., "Anti-HER2 antibody enhances the growth inhibitory effect of anti-oestrogen on breast cancer cells expressing both oestrogen receptors and HER2" *British Journal of Cancer* 82(1):46-51 (Jan. 2000).

Leyland-Jones et al., "Phase III comparative study of trastuzumab and paclitaxel with and without carboplatin in patients with HER-2/neu positive advanced breast cancer" (Abstract #35. Presented at the 2002 SABCS meeting.) (2002).

Lohrisch and Piccart, "Breast cancer: new aspects of adjuvant hormonal therapy" *Annals of Oncology* 11(Suppl. 3):13-25 (2000).

Miller et al., "Phase II study of gemcitabine, paclitaxel and trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer; a Hoosier Oncology Group trial" (Abstract #437. Presented at the 2002 SABCS meeting.) (2002).

Mizukami et al., "Effects of tamoxifen, medroxyprogesterone acetate and estradiol on tumor growth and oncogene expression in MCF-7 breast cancer cell line transplanted into nude mice" *Anticancer Research* 11(3):1333-1338 (May-Jun. 1991).

Pegram et al., "Effect of erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) overexpression on chemotherapeutic drug sensitivity in human breast and ovarian cancer cells" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 152) 34:26 (Mar. 1993).

Piccart and Kaufmann, "Introduction" *European Journal of Cancer* 37(Suppl. 1):S1-S2 (Jan. 2001).

Piccart et al., "HER2: a 'predictive factor' ready to use in the daily management of breast cancer patients?" *European Journal of Cancer* 36(14):1755-1761 (Sep. 2000).

Piccart, M., "Closing remarks and treatment guidelines" *European Journal of Cancer* 37(Suppl. 1):S30-S33 (Jan. 2001).

Pietras et al., "HER-2 tyrosine kinase pathway targets estrogen receptor and promotes hormone-independent growth in human breast cancer cells" *Oncogene* 10(12):2435-2446 (Jun. 15, 1995).

Pietras et al., "Heregulin promotes growth of human breast cancer cells with HER-2 (erb B2) recptors" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 573) 34:96 (Mar. 1993).

Read et al., "Hormonal modulation of HER-2/neu protooncogene messenger ribonucleic acid and p185 protein expression in human breast cancer cell lines" *Cancer Research* 50(13):3947-3951 (Jul. 1, 1990).

Warri et al., "Estrogen suppression of erbB2 expression is associated with increased growth rate of ZR-75-1 human breast cancer cells in vitro and in nude mice" *International Journal of Cancer* 49(4):616-623 (Oct. 21, 1991).

Witters et al., "Enhanced anti-proliferative activity of the combination of tamoxifen plus HER-2-neu antibody" *Breast Cancer Research & Treatment* 42(1):1-5 (Jan. 1997).

Yardley et al., "Final results of the Minnie Pearl Cancer Research Network first-line trial of weekly paclitaxel/carboplatin/trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer" (Abstract #439. Presented at the 2002 SABCS meeting.) (2002).

Buzdar et al., "Anastrozole, a potent and selective aromatase inhibitor, versus megestrol acetate in postmenopausal women with advanced breast cancer: results of overview analysis of two phase III trials" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 14(7):2000-2011 (Jul. 1996).

Buzdar et al., "Fadrozole HCL (CGS-16949A) versus megestrol acetate treatment of postmenopausal patients with metastatic breast carcinoma: results of two randomized double blind controlled multiinstitutional trials" *Cancer* 77(12):2503-2513 (Jun. 15, 1996).

Dickman, S., "Antibodies stage a comeback in cancer treatment" *Science* 280(5367):1196-1197 (May 22, 1998).

Kim et al., "Both the epitope specificity and isotype are important in the antitumor effect of monoclonal antibodies against Her-2/neu antigen" *International Journal of Cancer* 102(4):428-434 (Dec. 1, 2002).

Klijn et al., "Clinical breast cancer, new developments in selection and endocrine treatment of patients" *Journal of Steroid Biochemistry & Molecular Biology* 43(1-3) :211-221 (Sep. 1992).

Nabholtz et al., "Results of 2 open label multicentre phase II pilot studies with Herceptin in combination with docetaxel & platinum salts (Cis or Carboplatin) (TCH) as therapy for advanced breast cancer in women with tumors over-expressing the HER2-neu" *Eur. J. Cancer* (Abst 695) 37(Sup 6):S190 (2001).

Nabholtz et al., "Results of two open-label multicentre pilot phase II trials with Herceptin in combination with docetaxel and platinum salts (Cis or Carboplatin) (TCH) as therapy for advanced breast cancer in women overexpressing HER2" *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment* (Abstract #327) 64(1):82 (2000).

Santen and Harvey, "Use of aromatase inhibitors in breast carcinoma" *Endocrine-Related Cancer* 6(1):75-92 (Mar. 1999).

Agus et al., "Clinical Activity in a Phase I Trial of HER-2-Targeted rhuMAb 2C4 (pertuzumab) in Patients with Advanced Solid malignancies (AST)" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 771) 22:192 (2003).

Agus et al., "Clinical Activity in a Phase I Trial of HER2-Targeted rhuMAb 2C4 (pertuzumab) in Patients with Advanced Solid Malignancies" (Slides presented at the 2003 ASCO Annual Meeting) pp. 1-32 (2003).

Gordon et al., "Clinical activity of pertuzumab (rhuMab 2C4) in advanced, refractory or recurrent ovarian cancer (OC), and the role of HER2 activation status" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract #5051 from the 41st Annual Meeting of ASCO) 23(16S):467s (Jun. 1, 2005).

Gordon et al., "Clinical activity of pertuzumab (rhuMab 2C4) in advanced, refractory or recurrent ovarian cancer and the role of HER2 activation status" (Poster #5051 from the 41st Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO)) (May 15, 2005).

Herzig and Herzig, "Medical Oncology" (website link: http://www.qualitysurgical.org/Chapter%2033.htm) pp. 1-11 (2006).

Hirsh et al., "Preclinical studies of gemcitabine and trastuzumab in breast and lung cancer cell lines" *Clinical Breast Cancer* (abstract only) 3(Suppl 1):12-16 (May 2002).

O'Shaughnessy et al., "Phase II trial of gemcitabine plus trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer patients previously treated with chemotherapy: preliminary results" *Clinical Breast Cancer* (abstract only) 3(Suppl 1):17-20 (May 2002).

Perez and Hartmann, "Paclitaxel and carboplatin for advanced breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 23(5 Suppl 11):41-45 (Oct. 1996).

Brufsky et al., "Phase II study of gemcitabine (Gem) and trastuzumab (T) combination therapy in first line metastatic breast cancer (MBC) patients (pts) with HER2 overexpression" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract No. 10591) 24(18S) (Jun. 20, 2006).

Bunn et al., "Expression of Her-2/neu in human lung cancer cell lines by immunohistochemistry and fluorescence in situ hybridization and its relationship to in vitro cytotoxicity by trastuzumab and chemotherapeutic agents" *Clinical Cancer Research* 7(10):3239-3250 (Oct. 2001).

Christodoulou et al., "Combination of trastuzumab and gemcitabine as salvage treatment in metastatic breast cancer: The experience of

the Hellenic Cooperative Oncology Group (HeCOG)" (Poster presented at the 39th Annual ASCO Meeting held in Chicago, Illinois; May 31-Jun. 3, 2003).

Christodoulou et al., "Gemcitabine and trastuzumab combination as salvage treatment in patients with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer" *Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol* (Abstract No. 166) 22:42 (2003).

Hirsch et al., "Preclinical studies of gemcitabine and trastuzumab in breast and lung cancer cell lines" *Clinical Breast Cancer* 3(Suppl 1):S12-S16 (May 2002).

Nogueras et al., "Pilot study of gemcitabine (G) plus trastuzumab (H) in metastatic breast cancer patients with erb-2 overexpression previously treated with anthracyclines (A) and taxanes (T)" *European Journal of Cancer* (Abstract No. 416) 4 (Suppl):169 (Mar. 2006).

O'Shaughnessy et al., "Phase II study of trastuzumab plus gemcitabine in chemotherapy-pretreated patients with metastatic breast cancer" *Clinical Breast Cancer* 5(2):142-147 (Jun. 2004).

Peacock et al., "Phase II trial of gemcitabine plus trastuzumab in minimally pretreated HER2 overexpressing metastatic breast cancer" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract No. 704) 23(16S Part I of II):54s (Jun. 1, 2005).

Marty, M., "Randomized Phase II Trial of the Efficacy and Saftey of Trastuzumab Combined with Docetaxel in Patients with Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor 2-Positive Metastatic Breast Cancer Administered An First-Line Treatment" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 23(19):4265-4274 (Jul. 1, 2005).

Brodowicz et al., "Single-agent gemcitabine as second- and third-line treatment in metastatic breast cancer" *The Breast* 9:338-342 (2000).

Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185 HER-2 Monoclonal Antibody (rhuMAb HER-2) Plus Cisplatin in Patients with HER-2/NEU Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Proceedings of the ASCO-31st Annual Meeting* (Abstract #124) 14:106 (1995).

Voskoglou-Nomikos et al., "Clinical predictive value of the in vitro cell line, human xenograft, and mouse allograft preclinical cancer models" *Clinical Cancer Research* 9(11):4227-4239 (Sep. 15, 2003).

"equivocal" *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language* (Definition found on http://www.credoreference.com/entry/4085073) (2003).

Johnson, et al., "Relationships between drug activity in NCI preclinical in vitro and in vivo models and early clinical trials", British Journal of Cancer, 84(10): 1424-1431, (2001).

Lane, et al., "ErbB2 potentiates breast tumor proliferation through modulation of $p27^{Kip\ 1}$-Cdk2 complex formation: Receptor overexpression does not determine growth dependency", Molecular and Cellular Biology, vol. 20, No. 9, pp. 3210-3223, (2000).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer Therapy." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #040) 7(Supp. 1):22 (1996).

Osborne, et al., "Antagonism of chemotherapy-induced cytotoxicity for human breast cancer cells by antiestrogens", Journal of Clinical Oncology, vol. 7, No. 6, pp. 710-717, (1989).

Robert, et al., "Phase III comparative study of trastuzumab and paclitaxel with and without carboplatin in patients with HER-2/neu positive advanced breast cancer", SABCS Meeting, Abstract #35, (2002).

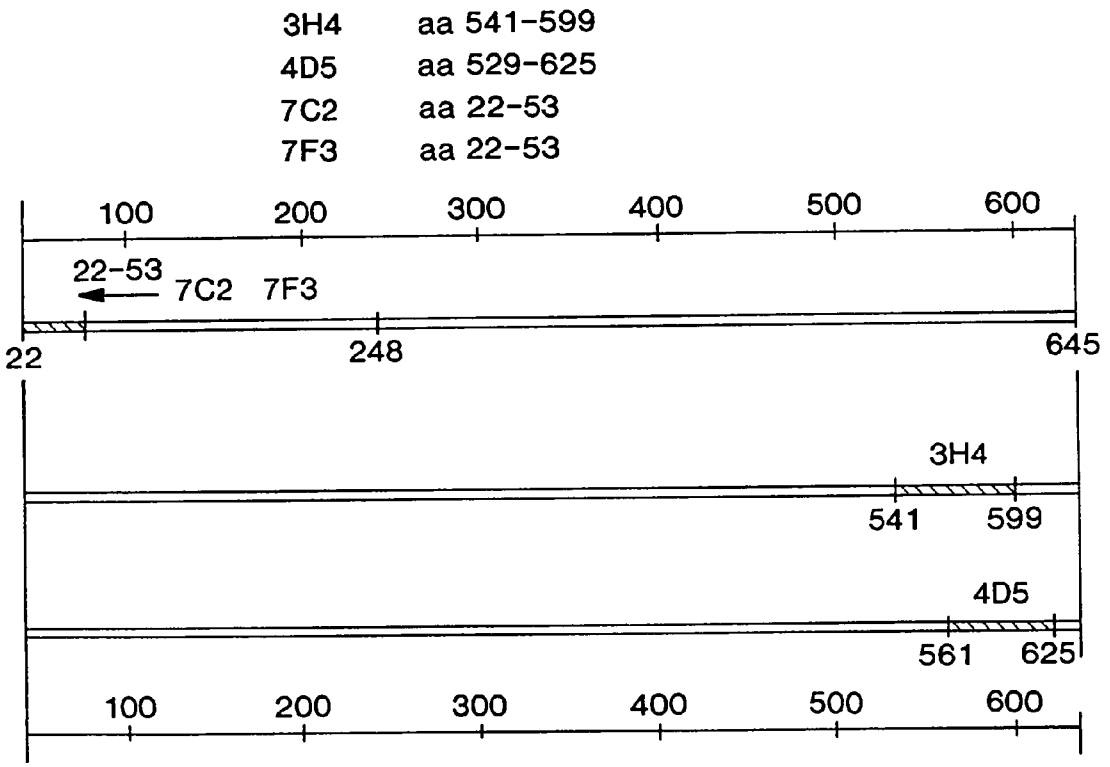
Untch, et al., "Comparison of paclitaxel and docetaxel (Taxotere) in gynecologic and breast cancer cell lines with the ATP-cell viability assay", Anti-Cancer Drugs, 5, pp. 24-30, (1994).

Woods. C, et al., "Taxol-induced mitotic block triggers rapid onset of a p53-independent apoptotic pathway", Molecular Medicine, vol. 1, No. 5, pp. 506-526, (1995).

Woods. K, et al., "Antagonism between tamoxifen and doxorubicin in the MCF-7 human breast tumor cell line", Biochemical Pharmacology, vol. 47, No. 8, pp. 1449-1452, (1994).

* cited by examiner

FIG. 1



3H4 epitope (SEQ ID NO:8) 58 residues

VEECRVLQGLPREYVNARHCLPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVAR

541 599

4D5 epitope (SEQ ID NO:9) (64 residues)

LPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVARCPSGVKPDLSYMPIWKFPDEEGACQP

561 625

1 MELAALCRWGLLLALLPPGAASTQVCTGTDMKLRLPA
38 SPETHLDMLRHLYQGCQVVQGNLELTYLPTNASLSFL
75 QDIQEVQGYVLIAHNQVRQVPLQRLRIVRGTQLFEDN
112 YALAVLDNGDPLNNTTPVTGASPGGLRELQLRSLTEI
149 LKGGVLIQRNPQLCYQDTILWKDIFHKNNQLALTLID
186 TNRSRA

FIG. 2

TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES

This is a non-provisional application claiming priority to provisional application No. 60/069,346, filed Dec. 12, 1997, the entire disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Proto-oncogenes that encode growth factors and growth factor receptors have been identified to play important roles in the pathogenesis of various human malignancies, including breast cancer. It has been found that the human ErbB2 gene (erbB2, also known as her2, or c-erbB-2), which encodes a 185-kd transmembrane glycoprotein receptor ($p185^{HER2}$) related to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), is overexpressed in about 25% to 30% of human breast cancer (Slamon et al., *Science* 235:177-182 [1987]; Slamon et al., *Science* 244:707-712 [1989]).

Several lines of evidence support a direct role for ErbB2 in the pathogenesis and clinical aggressiveness of ErbB2-overexpressing tumors. The introduction of ErbB2 into non-neoplastic cells has been shown to cause their malignant transformation (Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7159-7163 [1987]; DiFiore et al., *Science* 237: 178-182 [1987]). Transgenic mice that express HER2 were found to develop mammary tumors (Guy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:10578-10582 [1992]).

Antibodies directed against human erbB2 protein products and proteins encoded by the rat equivalent of the erbB2 gene (neu) have been described. Drebin et al., *Cell* 41:695-706 (1985) refer to an IgG2a monoclonal antibody which is directed against the rat neu gene product. This antibody called 7.16.4 causes down-modulation of cell surface p185 expression on B104-1-1 cells (NIH-3T3 cells transfected with the neu proto-oncogene) and inhibits colony formation of these cells. In Drebin et al. *PNAS (USA)* 83:9129-9133 (1986), the 7.16.4 antibody was shown to inhibit the tumorigenic growth of neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells as well as rat neuroblastoma cells (from which the neu oncogene was initially isolated) implanted into nude mice. Drebin et al. in *Oncogene* 2:387-394 (1988) discuss the production of a panel of antibodies against the rat neu gene product. All of the antibodies were found to exert a cytostatic effect on the growth of neu-transformed cells suspended in soft agar. Antibodies of the IgM, IgG2a and IgG2b isotypes were able to mediate significant in vitro lysis of neu-transformed cells in the presence of complement, whereas none of the antibodies were able to mediate high levels of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) of the neu-transformed cells. Drebin et al. *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions on the p185 molecule result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice. Biological effects of anti-neu antibodies are reviewed in Myers et al., *Meth. Enzym.* 198:277-290 (1991). See also WO94/22478 published Oct. 13, 1994.

Hudziak et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 9(3):1165-1172 (1989) describe the generation of a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5 which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel, including 7C2 and 7F3, reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. Hudziak et al. conclude that the effect of the 4D5 antibody on SKBR3 cells was cytostatic rather than cytotoxic, since SKBR3 cells resumed growth at a nearly normal rate following removal of the antibody from the medium. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize $p185^{erbB2}$-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-α. See also WO89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. The anti-ErbB2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. are further characterized in Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. *In Vitro* 26(3):59A (1990); Sarup et al. *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11(2): 979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. *Cancer Research* 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:14300-5 (1991); and D'souza et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 91:7202-7206 (1994).

Tagliabue et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933-937 (1991) describe two antibodies which were selected for their reactivity on the lung adenocarcinoma cell line (Calu-3) which overexpresses ErbB2. One of the antibodies, called MGR3, was found to internalize, induce phosphorylation of ErbB2, and inhibit tumor cell growth in vitro.

McKenzie et al. *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies with varying epitope specificities, including the antibody designated TA1. This TA1 antibody was found to induce accelerated endocytosis of ErbB2 (see Maier et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:5361-5369 [1991]). Bacus et al. *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350-362 (1990) reported that the TA1 antibody induced maturation of the breast cancer cell lines AU-565 (which overexpresses the erbB2 gene) and MCF-7 (which does not). Inhibition of growth and acquisition of a mature phenotype in these cells was found to be associated with reduced levels of ErbB2 receptor at the cell surface and transient increased levels in the cytoplasm.

Stancovski et al. *PNAS (USA)* 88:8691-8695 (1991) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies, injected them i.p. into nude mice and evaluated their effect on tumor growth of murine fibroblasts transformed by overexpression of the erbB2 gene. Various levels of tumor inhibition were detected for four of the antibodies, but one of the antibodies (N28) consistently stimulated tumor growth. Monoclonal antibody N28 induced significant phosphorylation of the ErbB2 receptor, whereas the other four antibodies generally displayed low or no phosphorylation-inducing activity. The effect of the anti-ErbB2 antibodies on proliferation of SKBR3 cells was also assessed. In this SKBR3 cell proliferation assay, two of the antibodies (N12 and N29) caused a reduction in cell proliferation relative to control. The ability of the various antibodies to induce cell lysis in vitro via complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) and antibody-mediated cell-dependent cytotoxicity (ADCC) was assessed, with the authors of this paper concluding that the inhibitory function of the antibodies was not attributed significantly to CDC or ADCC.

Bacus et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2580-2589 (1992) further characterized the antibodies described in Bacus et al. (1990) and Stancovski et al. of the preceding paragraphs. Extending the i.p. studies of Stancovski et al., the effect of the antibodies after i.v. injection into nude mice harboring mouse fibroblasts overexpressing human ErbB2 was assessed. As observed in their earlier work, N28 accelerated tumor growth whereas N12 and N29 significantly inhibited growth of the ErbB2-expressing cells. Partial tumor inhibition was also observed with the N24 antibody. Bacus et al. also tested the ability of the antibodies to promote a mature phenotype in the human breast cancer cell lines AU-565 and MDA-MB453 (which overexpress ErbB2) as well as MCF-7 (containing low levels of the receptor). Bacus et al. saw a correlation between tumor inhibition in vivo and cellular differentiation; the tumor-stimulatory antibody N28 had no effect on differentiation, and the tumor inhibitory action of the N12, N29 and N24 antibodies correlated with the extent of differentiation they induced.

Xu et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401-408 (1993) evaluated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies for their epitope binding specificities, as well as their ability to inhibit anchorage-independent and anchorage-dependent growth of SKBR3 cells (by individual antibodies and in combinations), modulate cell-surface ErbB2, and inhibit ligand stimulated anchorage-independent growth. See also WO94/00136 published Jan. 6, 1994 and Kasprzyk et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2771-2776 (1992) concerning anti-ErbB2 antibody combinations. Other anti-ErbB2 antibodies are discussed in Hancock et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:3758-3765 (1994); and Harwerth et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:15160-15167 (1992).

A recombinant humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody (a humanized version of the murine anti-ErbB2 antibody 4D5, referred to as rhuMAb HER2 or HERCEPTIN®) has been clinically active in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14:737-744 [1996]).

ErbB2 overexpression is commonly regarded as a predictor of a poor prognosis, especially in patients with primary disease that involves axillary lymph nodes (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra; Ravdin and Chamness, *Gene* 159:19-27 [1995]; and Hynes and Stern, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1198: 165-184 [1994]), and has been linked to sensitivity and/or resistance to hormone therapy and chemotherapeutic regimens, including CMF (cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluoruracil) and anthracyclines (Baselga et al., *Oncology* 11(3 Suppl 2):43-48 [1997]). However, despite the association of ErbB2 overexpression with poor prognosis, the odds of HER2-positive patients responding clinically to treatment with taxanes were greater than three times those of HER2-negative patients (Ibid). rhuMab HER2 was shown to enhance the activity of paclitaxel (TAXOL®) and doxorubicin against breast cancer xenografts in nude mice injected with BT-474 human breast adenocarcinoma cells, which express high levels of HER2 (Baselga et al., *Breast Cancer, Proceedings of ASCO*, Vol. 13, Abstract 53 [1994]).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by overexpression of ErbB2, and is based on the recognition that while treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibodies markedly enhances the clinical benefit of the use of chemotherapeutic agents in general, a syndrome of myocardial dysfunction that has been observed as a side-effect of anthracycline derivatives is increased by the administration of anti-ErbB2 antibodies.

Accordingly, the invention concerns a method for the treatment of a human patient susceptible to or diagnosed with a disorder characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline derivative, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient.

The disorder preferably is a benign or malignant tumor characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor, e.g. a cancer, such as, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer. The chemotherapeutic agent preferably is a taxoid, such as TAXOL® (paclitaxel) or a TAXOL® derivative.

Although an antiproliferative effect is sufficient, in a preferred embodiment, the anti-ErbB2 antibody is capable of inducing cell death or is capable of inducing apoptosis. Preferred anti-ErbB2 antibodies bind the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor, and preferably bind to the epitope 4D5 or 3H4 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence. More preferably, the antibody is the antibody 4D5, most preferably in a humanized form.

The method of the present invention is particularly suitable for the treatment of breast or ovarian cancer, characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to avoid the use of anthracycline-type chemotherapeutics in combination with the composition.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** shows epitope-mapping of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 as determined by truncation mutant analysis and site-directed mutagenesis (Nakamura et al. *J. of Virology* 67(10):6179-6191 [October 1993]; Renz et al. *J. Cell Biol.* 125(6):1395-1406 [June 1994]). The anti-proliferative MAbs 4D5 and 3H4 bind adjacent to the transmembrane domain. The various ErbB2-ECD truncations or point mutations were prepared from cDNA using polymerase chain reaction technology. The ErbB2 mutants were expressed as gD fusion proteins in a mammalian expression plasmid. This expression plasmid uses the cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer with SV40 termination and polyadenylation signals located downstream of the inserted cDNA. Plasmid DNA was transfected into 293S cells. One day following transfection, the cells were metabolically labeled overnight in methionine and cysteine-free, low glucose DMEM containing 1% dialyzed fetal bovine serum and 25 μCi each of ^{35}S methionine and ^{35}S cysteine. Supernatants were harvested either the ErbB2 MAbs or control antibodies were added to the supernatant and incubated 2-4 hours at 4° C. The complexes were precipitated, applied to a 10-20% Tricine SDS gradient gel and

electrophoresed at 100 V. The gel was electroblotted onto a membrane and analyzed by autoradiography. SEQ ID NOs:8 and 9 depict the 3H4 and 4D5 epitopes, respectively.

FIG. **2** depicts with underlining the amino acid sequence of Domain 1 of ErbB2 (SEQ ID NO:1). Bold amino acids indicate the location of the epitope recognized by MAbs 7C2 and 7F3 as determined by deletion mapping, i.e. the "7C2/7F3 epitope" (SEQ ID NO:2).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

I. Definitions

The terms "HER2", "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" are used interchangeably. Unless indicated otherwise, the terms "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" and "HER2" when used herein refer to the human protein and "her2", "erbB2" and "c-erb-B2" refer to human gene. The human erbB2 gene and ErbB2 protein are, for example, described in Semba et al, *PNAS* (*USA*) 82:6497-6501 (1985) and Yamamoto et al. *Nature* 319:230-234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363). ErbB2 comprises four domains (Domains 1-4).

The "epitope 4D5" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) binds. This epitope is close to the transmembrane region of ErbB2. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 4D5 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed (see FIG. **1**) to assess whether the antibody binds to the 4D5 epitope of ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more residues in the region from about residue 529, e.g. about residue 561 to about residue 625, inclusive).

The "epitope 3H4" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 3H4 binds. This epitope is shown in FIG. **1**, and includes residues from about 541 to about 599, inclusive, in the amino acid sequence of ErbB2 extracellular domain.

The "epitope 7C2/7F3" is the region at the N terminus of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the 7C2 and/or 7F3 antibodies (each deposited with the ATCC, see below) bind. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 7C2/7F3 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to establish whether the antibody binds to the 7C2/7F3 epitope on ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more of residues in the region from about residue 22 to about residue 53 of ErbB2; SEQ ID NO:2).

The term "induces cell death" or "capable of inducing cell death" refers to the ability of the antibody to make a viable cell become nonviable. The "cell" here is one which expresses the ErbB2 receptor, especially where the cell overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. A cell which "overexpresses" ErbB2 has significantly higher than normal ErbB2 levels compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type. Preferably, the cell is a cancer cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Cell death in vitro may be determined in the absence of complement and immune effector cells to distinguish cell death induced by antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Thus, the assay for cell death may be performed using heat inactivated serum (i.e. in the absence of complement) and in the absence of immune effector cells. To determine whether the antibody is able to induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as evaluated by uptake of propidium iodide (PI), trypan blue (see Moore et al. *Cytotechnology* 17:1-11 [1995]) or 7AAD can be assessed relative to untreated cells. Preferred cell death-inducing antibodies are those which induce PI uptake in the "PI uptake assay in BT474 cells".

The phrase "induces apoptosis" or "capable of inducing apoptosis" refers to the ability of the antibody to induce programmed cell death as determined by binding of annexin V, fragmentation of DNA, cell shrinkage, dilation of endoplasmic reticulum, cell fragmentation, and/or formation of membrane vesicles (called apoptotic bodies). The cell is one which overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably the "cell" is a tumor cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3 cell, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Various methods are available for evaluating the cellular events associated with apoptosis. For example, phosphatidyl serine (PS) translocation can be measured by annexin binding; DNA fragmentation can be evaluated through DNA laddering as disclosed in the example herein; and nuclear/chromatin condensation along with DNA fragmentation can be evaluated by any increase in hypodiploid cells. Preferably, the antibody which induces apoptosis is one which results in about 2 to 50 fold, preferably about 5 to 50 fold, and most preferably about 10 to 50 fold, induction of annexin binding relative to untreated cell in an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" (see below).

Sometimes the pro-apoptotic antibody will be one which blocks HRG binding/activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 complex (e.g. 7F3 antibody). In other situations, the antibody is one which does not significantly block activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 receptor complex by HRG (e.g. 7C2). Further, the antibody may be one like 7C2 which, while inducing apoptosis, does not induce a large reduction in the percent of cells in S phase (e.g. one which only induces about 0-10% reduction in the percent of these cells relative to control).

The antibody of interest may be one like 7C2 which binds specifically to human ErbB2 and does not significantly cross-react with other proteins such as those encoded by the erbB1, erbB3 and/or erbB4 genes. Sometimes, the antibody may not significantly cross-react with the rat neu protein, e.g., as described in Schecter et al. *Nature* 312:513 (1984) and Drebin et al., *Nature* 312:545-548 (1984). In such embodiments, the extent of binding of the antibody to these proteins (e.g., cell surface binding to endogenous receptor) will be less than about 10% as determined by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA).

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide which activates the ErbB2-ErbB3 and ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complexes (i.e. induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the complex upon binding thereto). Various heregulin polypeptides encompassed by this term are disclosed in Holmes et al., *Science,* 256:1205-1210 (1992); WO 92/20798; Wen et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.,* 14(3):1909-1919 (1994); and Marchionni et al., *Nature,* 362:312-318 (1993), for example. The term includes biologically active fragments and/or variants of a naturally occurring HRG polypeptide, such as an EGF-like domain fragment thereof (e.g. $HRG\beta1_{177\text{-}244}$).

The "ErbB2-ErbB3 protein complex" and "ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complex" are noncovalently associated oligomers of

the ErbB2 receptor and the ErbB3 receptor or ErbB4 receptor, respectively. The complexes form when a cell expressing both of these receptors is exposed to HRG and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., *J. Biol. Chem.,* 269(20): 14661-14665 (1994).

"Antibodies" (Abs) and "immunoglobulins" (Igs) are glycoproteins having the same structural characteristics. While antibodies exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen, immunoglobulins include both antibodies and other antibody-like molecules which lack antigen specificity. Polypeptides of the latter kind are, for example, produced at low levels by the lymph system and at increased levels by myelomas.

"Native antibodies" and "native immunoglobulins" are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies among the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light-chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light- and heavy-chain variable domains.

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) or hypervariable regions both in the light-chain and the heavy-chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework region (FR). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FR regions, largely adopting a n-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the n-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *NIH Publ. No.* 91-3242, Vol. I, pages 647-669 [1991]). The constant domains are not involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen-binding fragments, called "Fab" fragments, each with a single antigen-binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. Pepsin treatment yields an $F(ab')_2$ fragment that has two antigen-combining sites and is still capable of cross-linking antigen.

"Fv" is the minimum antibody fragment which contains a complete antigen-recognition and -binding site. This region consists of a dimer of one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain in tight, non-covalent association. It is in this configuration that the three CDRs of each variable domain interact to define an antigen-binding site on the surface of the V_H-V_L dimer. Collectively, the six CDRs confer antigen-binding specificity to the antibody. However, even a single variable domain (or half of an Fv comprising only three CDRs specific for an antigen) has the ability to recognize and bind antigen, although at a lower affinity than the entire binding site.

The Fab fragment also contains the constant domain of the light chain and the first constant domain (CH1) of the heavy chain. Fab' fragments differ from Fab fragments by the addition of a few residues at the carboxy terminus of the heavy chain CH1 domain including one or more cysteines from the antibody hinge region. Fab'-SH is the designation herein for Fab' in which the cysteine residue(s) of the constant domains bear a free thiol group. $F(ab')_2$ antibody fragments originally were produced as pairs of Fab' fragments which have hinge cysteines between them. Other chemical couplings of antibody fragments are also known.

The "light chains" of antibodies (immunoglobulins) from any vertebrate species can be assigned to one of two clearly distinct types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequences of their constant domains.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called α, δ, ε, γ, and μ, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

The term "antibody" is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers intact monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g. bispecific antibodies) formed from at least two intact antibodies, and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of an intact antibody, preferably the antigen binding or variable region of the intact antibody. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, and Fv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies (Zapata et al. *Protein Eng.* 8(10):1057-1062 [1995]); single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to conventional (polyclonal) antibody preparations which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they are synthesized by the hybridoma culture, uncontaminated by other immunoglobulins. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies" may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the

techniques described in Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991), for example.

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison et al, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 81; 6851-6855 [1984]).

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric immunoglobulins, immunoglobulin chains or fragments thereof (such as Fv, Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$ or other antigen-binding subsequences of antibodies) which contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementarity determining region (CDR) of the recipient are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat or rabbit having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, Fv framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues which are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences. These modifications are made to further refine and maximize antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the CDRs correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Reichmann et al, *Nature,* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.,* 2:593-596 (1992). The humanized antibody includes a PRIMATIZEDT™ antibody wherein the antigen-binding region of the antibody is derived from an antibody produced by immunizing macaque monkeys with the antigen of interest.

"Single-chain Fv" or "sFv" antibody fragments comprise the V_H and V_L domains of antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Preferably, the Fv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains which enables the sFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding. For a review of sFv see Plückthun in *The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies*, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 269-315 (1994).

The term "diabodies" refers to small antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites, which fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) in the same polypeptide chain (V_H-V_L). By using a linker that is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain, the domains are forced to pair with the complementary domains of another chain and create two antigen-binding sites. Diabodies are described more fully in, for example, EP 404,097; WO 93/11161; and Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:6444-6448 (1993).

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the antibody will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

As used herein, the term "salvage receptor binding epitope" refers to an epitope of the Fc region of an IgG molecule (e.g., IgG_1, IgG_2, IgG_3, or IgG_4) that is responsible for increasing the in vivo serum half-life of the IgG molecule.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time to disease progression (TTP), or determining the response rates (RR) (see the Example below).

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g., I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90} and Re^{186}), chemo-

therapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include adriamycin, doxorubicin, epirubicin, 5-fluorouracil, cytosine arabinoside ("Ara-C"), cyclophosphamide, thiotepa, busulfan, cytoxin, taxoids, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and docetaxel (Taxotere®, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France), methotrexate, cisplatin, melphalan, vinblastine, bleomycin, etoposide, ifosfamide, mitomycin C, mitoxantrone, vincristine, vinorelbine, carboplatin, teniposide, daunomycin, caminomycin, aminopterin, dactinomycin, mitomycins, esperamicins (see U.S. Pat. No. 4,675,187), melphalan and other related nitrogen mustards. Also included in this definition are hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as tamoxifen and onapristone.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB2-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB2 overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (WB Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

"Doxorubicin" is an athracycline antibiotic. The full chemical name of doxorubicin is (8S-cis)-10-[(3-amino-2,3,6-trideoxy-α-L-lyxo-hexopyranosyl)oxy]-7,8,9,10-tetrahydro-6,8,11-trihydroxy-8-(hydroxyacetyl)-1-methoxy-5,12-naphthacenedione.

The term "cytokine" is a generic term for proteins released by one cell population which act on another cell as intercellular mediators. Examples of such cytokines are lymphokines, monokines, and traditional polypeptide hormones. Included among the cytokines are growth hormone such as human growth hormone, N-methionyl human growth hormone, and bovine growth hormone; parathyroid hormone; thyroxine; insulin; proinsulin; relaxin; prorelaxin; glycoprotein hormones such as follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH); hepatic growth factor; fibroblast growth factor; prolactin; placental lactogen; tumor necrosis factor-α and -β; mullerian-inhibiting substance; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor; integrin; thrombopoietin (TPO); nerve growth factors such as NGF-β; platelet-growth factor; transforming growth factors (TGFs) such as TGF-α and TGF-β; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II; erythropoietin (EPO); osteoinductive factors; interferons such as interferon-α, -β, and -γ; colony stimulating factors (CSFs) such as macrophage-CSF (M-CSF); granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF); and granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF); interleukins (ILs) such as IL-1, IL-1α, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12; a tumor necrosis factor such as TNF-α or TNF-β; and other polypeptide factors including LIF and kit ligand (KL). As used herein, the term cytokine includes proteins from natural sources or from recombinant cell culture and biologically active equivalents of the native sequence cytokines.

The term "prodrug" as used in this application refers to a precursor or derivative form of a pharmaceutically active substance that is less cytotoxic to tumor cells compared to the parent drug and is capable of being enzymatically activated or converted into the more active parent form. See, e.g., Wilman, "Prodrugs in Cancer Chemotherapy" *Biochemical Society Transactions*, 14, pp. 375-382, 615th Meeting Belfast (1986) and Stella et al., "Prodrugs: A Chemical Approach to Targeted Drug Delivery," *Directed Drug Delivery*, Borchardt et al., (ed.), pp. 247-267, Humana Press (1985). The prodrugs of this invention include, but are not limited to, phosphate-containing prodrugs, thiophosphate-containing prodrugs, sulfate-containing prodrugs, peptide-containing prodrugs, D-amino acid-modified prodrugs, glycosylated prodrugs, β-lactam-containing prodrugs, optionally substituted phenoxyacetamide-containing prodrugs or optionally substituted phenylacetamide-containing prodrugs, 5-fluorocytosine and other 5-fluorouridine prodrugs which can be converted into the more active cytotoxic free drug. Examples of cytotoxic drugs that can be derivatized into a prodrug form for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, those chemotherapeutic agents described above.

By "solid phase" is meant a non-aqueous matrix to which the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention can adhere. Examples of solid phases encompassed herein include those formed partially or entirely of glass (e.g., controlled pore glass), polysaccharides (e.g., agarose), polyacrylamides, polystyrene, polyvinyl alcohol and silicones. In certain embodiments, depending on the context, the solid phase can comprise the well of an assay plate; in others it is a purification column (e.g., an affinity chromatography column). This term also includes a discontinuous solid phase of discrete particles, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,275,149.

A "liposome" is a small vesicle composed of various types of lipids, phospholipids and/or surfactant which is useful for delivery of a drug (such as the anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein and, optionally, a chemotherapeutic agent) to a mammal. The components of the liposome are commonly arranged in a bilayer formation, similar to the lipid arrangement of biological membranes.

The term "package insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

II. Production of Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

A description follows as to exemplary techniques for the production of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention. The ErbB2 antigen to be used for production of antibodies may be, e.g., a soluble form of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 or a portion thereof, containing the desired epitope. Alternatively, cells expressing ErbB2 at their cell surface (e.g. NIH-3T3 cells transformed to overexpress ErbB2; or a carcinoma cell line such as SKBR3 cells, see Stancovski et al. *PNAS* (*USA*) 88:8691-8695 [1991]) can be used to generate antibodies. Other forms of ErbB2 useful for generating antibodies will be apparent to those skilled in the art.

(i) Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl_2$, or $R^1N{=}C{=}NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 μg or 5 μg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with ⅕ to 1/10 the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(ii) Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies are obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies.

For example, the monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.,* 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 [Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987]).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

The binding affinity of the monoclonal antibody can, for example, be determined by the Scatchard analysis of Munson et al., *Anal. Biochem.,* 107:220 (1980).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of murine antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Review articles on recombinant expression in bacteria of DNA encoding the antibody include Skerra et al., *Curr. Opinion in Immunol.,* 5:256-262 (1993) and Plückthun, *Immunol. Revs.,* 130: 151-188 (1992).

In a further embodiment, antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature,* 348: 552-554 (1990). Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology,* 10:779-783 [1992]), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.,* 21:2265-2266 [1993]). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., *Proc.*

Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 81:6851 [1984]), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

(iii) Humanized and Human Antibodies

Methods for humanizing non-human antibodies are well known in the art. Preferably, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., *Science,* 239:1534-1536 [1988]), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework region (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 196:901 [1987]). Another method uses a particular framework region derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2623 [1993]).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature,* 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., *Year in Immuno.,* 7:33 (1993). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 227:381 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 [1991]).

(iv) Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al., *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107-117 (1992) and Brennan et al., *Science,* 229:81 [1985]). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form $F(ab')_2$ fragments (Carter et al., Bio/Technology 10:163-167 [1992]). According to another approach, $F(ab')_2$ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv). See WO 93/16185.

(v) Bispecific Antibodies

Bispecific antibodies are antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of the ErbB2 protein. For example, one arm may bind an epitope in Domain 1 of ErbB2 such as the 7C2/7F3 epitope, the other may bind a different ErbB2 epitope, e.g. the 4D5 epitope. Other such antibodies may combine an ErbB2 binding site with binding site(s) for EGFR, ErbB3 and/or ErbB4. Alternatively, an anti-ErbB2 arm may be combined with an arm which binds to a triggering molecule on a leukocyte such as a T-cell receptor molecule (e.g. CD2 or CD3), or Fc receptors for IgG (FcγR), such as FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16) so as to focus cellular defense mechanisms to the ErbB2-expressing cell. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express ErbB2. These antibodies possess an ErbB2-binding arm and an arm which binds the cytotoxic agent (e.g. saporin, anti-interferon-α, vinca alkaloid, ricin A chain, methotrexate or radioactive isotope hapten). Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments (e.g. $F(ab')_2$ bispecific antibodies).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature,* 305:537-539 [1983]). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity

chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.,* 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology,* 121:210 (1986).

According to another approach described in WO96/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science,* 229: 81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate $F(ab')_2$ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli*, which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med,* 175: 217-225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody $F(ab')_2$ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.,* 148(5): 1547-1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:6444-6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.,* 152:5368 (1994).

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al. *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

(vi) Screening for Antibodies with the Desired Properties

Techniques for generating antibodies have been described above. Those antibodies having the characteristics described herein are selected.

To select for antibodies which induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as indicated by, e.g., PI, trypan blue or 7AAD uptake is assessed relative to control. The preferred assay is the "PI uptake assay using BT474 cells". According to this assay, BT474 cells (which can be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection [Rockville, Md.]) are cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (D-MEM): Ham's F-12 (50:50) supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS (Hyclone) and 2 mM L-glutamine. (Thus, the assay is performed in the absence of complement and immune effector cells). The BT474 cells are seeded at a density of 3×10^6 per dish in 100×20 mm dishes and allowed to attach overnight. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the appropriate

MAb. The cells are incubated for a 3 day time period. Following each treatment, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 5 minutes at 4° C., the pellet resuspended in 3 ml ice cold Ca^{2+} binding buffer (10 mM Hepes, pH 7.4, 140 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM $CaCl_2$) and aliquoted into 35 mm strainer-capped 12×75 tubes (1 ml per tube, 3 tubes per treatment group) for removal of cell clumps. Tubes then receive PI (10 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of cell death as determined by PI uptake are selected.

In order to select for antibodies which induce apoptosis, an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" is available. The BT474 cells are cultured and seeded in dishes as discussed in the preceding paragraph. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the MAb. Following a three day incubation period, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged, resuspended in Ca^{2+} binding buffer and aliquoted into tubes as discussed above for the cell death assay. Tubes then receive labeled annexin (e.g. annexin V-FTIC) (1 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of annexin binding relative to control are selected as apoptosis-inducing antibodies.

In addition to the annexin binding assay, a "DNA staining assay using BT474 cells" is available. In order to perform this assay, BT474 cells which have been treated with the antibody of interest as described in the preceding two paragraphs are incubated with 9 μg/ml HOECHST 33342™ for 2 hr at 37° C., then analyzed on an EPICS ELITE™ flow cytometer (Coulter Corporation) using MODFIT LT™ software (Verity Software House). Antibodies which induce a change in the percentage of apoptotic cells which is 2 fold or greater (and preferably 3 fold or greater) than untreated cells (up to 100% apoptotic cells) may be selected as pro-apoptotic antibodies using this assay.

To screen for antibodies which bind to an epitope on ErbB2 bound by an antibody of interest, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed by methods known in the art.

To identify anti-ErbB2 antibodies which inhibit growth of SKBR3 cells in cell culture by 50-100%, the SKBR3 assay described in WO89/06692 can be performed. According to this assay, SKBR3 cells are grown in a 1:1 mixture of F12 and DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, glutamine and penicillinstreptomycin. The SKBR3 cells are plated at 20,000 cells in a 35 mm cell culture dish (2 mls/35 mm dish). 2.5 μg/ml of the anti-ErbB2 antibody is added per dish. After six days, the number of cells, compared to untreated cells are counted using an electronic COULTER™ cell counter. Those antibodies which inhibit growth of the SKBR3 cells by 50-100% are selected for combination with the apoptotic antibodies as desired.

(vii) Effector Function Engineering

It may be desirable to modify the antibody of the invention with respect to effector function, so as to enhance the effectiveness of the antibody in treating cancer, for example. For example cysteine residue(s) may be introduced in the Fc region, thereby allowing interchain disulfide bond formation in this region. The homodimeric antibody thus generated may have improved internalization capability and/or increased complement-mediated cell killing and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). See Caron et al., *J. Exp Med.* 176:1191-1195 (1992) and Shopes, B. *J. Immunol.* 148:2918-2922 (1992). Homodimeric antibodies with enhanced anti-tumor activity may also be prepared using heterobifunctional cross-linkers as described in Wolff et al. *Cancer Research* 53:2560-2565 (1993). Alternatively, an antibody can be engineered which has dual Fc regions and may thereby have enhanced complement lysis and ADCC capabilities. See Stevenson et al. *Anti-Cancer Drug Design* 3:219-230 (1989).

(viii) Immunoconjugates

The invention also pertains to immunoconjugates comprising the antibody described herein conjugated to a cytotoxic agent such as a chemotherapeutic agent, toxin (e.g. an enzymatically active toxin of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof), or a radioactive isotope (i.e., a radioconjugate).

Chemotherapeutic agents useful in the generation of such immunoconjugates have been described above. Enzymatically active toxins and fragments thereof which can be used include diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, *Aleurites fordii* proteins, dianthin proteins, *Phytolaca americana* proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), *momordica charantia* inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin and the tricothecenes. A variety of radionuclides are available for the production of radioconjugated anti-ErbB2 antibodies. Examples include ^{212}Bi, ^{131}I, ^{131}In, ^{90}Y and ^{186}Re.

Conjugates of the antibody and cytotoxic agent are made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithiol) propionate (SPDP), iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCL), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutaraldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as bis(p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine), bis-diazonium derivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as tolyene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). For example, a ricin immunotoxin can be prepared as described in Vitetta et al. *Science* 238: 1098 (1987). Carbon-14-labeled 1-isothiocyanatobenzyl-3-methyldiethylene triaminepentaacetic acid (MX-DTPA) is an exemplary chelating agent for conjugation of radionucleotide to the antibody. See WO94/11026.

In another embodiment, the antibody may be conjugated to a "receptor" (such streptavidin) for utilization in tumor pretargeting wherein the antibody-receptor conjugate is administered to the patient, followed by removal of unbound conjugate from the circulation using a clearing agent and then administration of a "ligand" (e.g. avidin) which is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g. a radionucleotide).

(ix) Immunoliposomes

The anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein may also be formulated as immunoliposomes. Liposomes containing the antibody are prepared by methods known in the art, such as described in Epstein et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 82:3688 (1985); Hwang et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 77:4030 (1980); and U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545. Liposomes with enhanced circulation time are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,556.

Particularly useful liposomes can be generated by the reverse phase evaporation method with a lipid composition comprising phosphatidylcholine, cholesterol and PEG-de-

rivatized phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE). Liposomes are extruded through filters of defined pore size to yield liposomes with the desired diameter. Fab' fragments of the antibody of the present invention can be conjugated to the liposomes as described in Martin et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 257: 286-288 (1982) via a disulfide interchange reaction. A chemotherapeutic agent is optionally contained within the liposome. See Gabizon et al. *J. National Cancer Inst.* 81(19)1484 (1989).

(x) Antibody Dependent Enzyme Mediated Prodrug Therapy (ADEPT)

The antibodies of the present invention may also be used in ADEPT by conjugating the antibody to a prodrug-activating enzyme which converts a prodrug (e.g. a peptidyl chemotherapeutic agent, see WO81/01145) to an active anti-cancer drug. See, for example, WO 88/07378 and U.S. Pat. No. 4,975,278.

The enzyme component of the immunoconjugate useful for ADEPT includes any enzyme capable of acting on a prodrug in such a way so as to covert it into its more active, cytotoxic form.

Enzymes that are useful in the method of this invention include, but are not limited to, alkaline phosphatase useful for converting phosphate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; arylsulfatase useful for converting sulfate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; cytosine deaminase useful for converting non-toxic 5-fluorocytosine into the anti-cancer drug, 5-fluorouracil; proteases, such as serratia protease, thermolysin, subtilisin, carboxypeptidases and cathepsins (such as cathepsins B and L), that are useful for converting peptide-containing prodrugs into free drugs; D-alanylcarboxypeptidases, useful for converting prodrugs that contain D-amino acid substituents; carbohydrate-cleaving enzymes such as β-galactosidase and neuraminidase useful for converting glycosylated prodrugs into free drugs; β-lactamase useful for converting drugs derivatized with β-lactams into free drugs; and penicillin amidases, such as penicillin V amidase or penicillin G amidase, useful for converting drugs derivatized at their amine nitrogens with phenoxyacetyl or phenylacetyl groups, respectively, into free drugs. Alternatively, antibodies with enzymatic activity, also known in the art as "abzymes", can be used to convert the prodrugs of the invention into free active drugs (see, e.g., Massey, *Nature* 328: 457-458 [1987]). Antibody-abzyme conjugates can be prepared as described herein for delivery of the abzyme to a tumor cell population.

The enzymes of this invention can be covalently bound to the anti-ErbB2 antibodies by techniques well known in the art such as the use of the heterobifunctional crosslinking reagents discussed above. Alternatively, fusion proteins comprising at least the antigen binding region of an antibody of the invention linked to at least a functionally active portion of an enzyme of the invention can be constructed using recombinant DNA techniques well known in the art (see, e.g., Neuberger et al., *Nature,* 312: 604-608 [1984]).

(xi) Antibody-Salvage Receptor Binding Epitope Fusions

In certain embodiments of the invention, it may be desirable to use an antibody fragment, rather than an intact antibody, to increase tumor penetration, for example. In this case, it may be desirable to modify the antibody fragment in order to increase its serum half life. This may be achieved, for example, by incorporation of a salvage receptor binding epitope into the antibody fragment (e.g. by mutation of the appropriate region in the antibody fragment or by incorporating the epitope into a peptide tag that is then fused to the antibody fragment at either end or in the middle, e.g., by DNA or peptide synthesis).

A systematic method for preparing such an antibody variant having an increased in vivo half-life comprises several steps. The first involves identifying the sequence and conformation of a salvage receptor binding epitope of an Fc region of an IgG molecule. Once this epitope is identified, the sequence of the antibody of interest is modified to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. After the sequence is mutated, the antibody variant is tested to see if it has a longer in vivo half-life than that of the original antibody. If the antibody variant does not have a longer in vivo half-life upon testing, its sequence is further altered to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. The altered antibody is tested for longer in vivo half-life, and this process is continued until a molecule is obtained that exhibits a longer in vivo half-life.

The salvage receptor binding epitope being thus incorporated into the antibody of interest is any suitable such epitope as defined above, and its nature will depend, e.g., on the type of antibody being modified. The transfer is made such that the antibody of interest still possesses the biological activities described herein.

The epitope preferably constitutes a region wherein any one or more amino acid residues from one or two loops of a Fc domain are transferred to an analogous position of the antibody fragment. Even more preferably, three or more residues from one or two loops of the Fc domain are transferred. Still more preferred, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region (e.g., of an IgG) and transferred to the CH1, CH3, or V_H region, or more than one such region, of the antibody. Alternatively, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region and transferred to the C_L region or V_L region, or both, of the antibody fragment.

In one most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope comprises the sequence (5' to 3'): PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3), and optionally further comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of HQSLGTQ (SEQ ID NO:4), HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7), particularly where the antibody fragment is a Fab or $F(ab')_2$. In another most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope is a polypeptide containing the sequence(s) (5' to 3'): HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7) and the sequence: PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3).

(xii) Purification of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

When using recombinant techniques, the antibody can be produced intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. If the antibody is produced intracellularly, as a first step, the particulate debris, either host cells or lysed fragments, is removed, for example, by centrifugation or ultrafiltration. Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163-167 (1992) describe a procedure for isolating antibodies which are secreted to the periplasmic space of *E. coli*. Briefly, cell paste is thawed in the presence of sodium acetate (pH 3.5), EDTA, and phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) over about 30 min. Cell debris can be removed by centrifugation. Where the antibody is secreted into the medium, supernatants from such expression systems are preferably first concentrated using a commercially available protein concentration filter, for example, an Amicon or Millipore Pellicon ultrafiltration unit. A protease inhibitor such as PMSF may be included in any of the foregoing steps to inhibit proteolysis and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants.

The antibody composition prepared from the cells can be purified using, for example, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, and affinity chromatogra-

phy, with affinity chromatography being the preferred purification technique. The suitability of protein A as an affinity ligand depends on the species and isotype of any immunoglobulin Fc domain that is present in the antibody. Protein A can be used to purify antibodies that are based on human γ1, γ2, or γ4 heavy chains (Lindmark et al., *J. Immunol. Meth.* 62:1-13 [1983]). Protein G is recommended for all mouse isotypes and for human γ3 (Guss et al., *EMBO J.* 5:15671575 [1986]). The matrix to which the affinity ligand is attached is most often agarose, but other matrices are available. Mechanically stable matrices such as controlled pore glass or poly(styrenedivinyl)benzene allow for faster flow rates and shorter processing times than can be achieved with agarose. Where the antibody comprises a C_H3 domain, the Bakerbond ABX™ resin (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, N.J.) is useful for purification. Other techniques for protein purification such as fractionation on an ion-exchange column, ethanol precipitation, Reverse Phase HPLC, chromatography on silica, chromatography on heparin SEPHAROSE™ chromatography on an anion or cation exchange resin (such as a polyaspartic acid column), chromatofocusing, SDS-PAGE, and ammonium sulfate precipitation are also available depending on the antibody to be recovered.

Following any preliminary purification step(s), the mixture comprising the antibody of interest and contaminants may be subjected to low pH hydrophobic interaction chromatography using an elution buffer at a pH between about 2.5-4.5, preferably performed at low salt concentrations (e.g. from about 0-0.25M salt).

III. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. [1980]), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG).

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2 (e.g. an antibody which binds a different epitope on ErbB2), ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial factor (VEGF) in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, cytokine or growth inhibitory agent, provided that the cytotoxic agent is other than an anthracycline derivative, e.g. doxorubicin, or epirubicin. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(−)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S—S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

IV. Treatment with the Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB2 receptor. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies of the invention are administered to a human patient, in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous administration of the antibody is preferred.

The treatment of the present invention involved the combined administration of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, other than an anthracycline derivative. The combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

It may be desirable to also administer antibodies against other tumor associated antigens, such as antibodies which bind to the EGFR, ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial factor (VEGF). Alternatively, or in addition, two or more anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be co-administered to the patient. Sometimes, it may be beneficial to also administer one or more cytokines to the patient. In a preferred embodiment, the ErbB2 antibody is co-administered with a growth inhibitory agent. For example, the growth inhibitory agent may be administered first, followed by the ErbB2 antibody. However, simultaneous administration or administration of the ErbB2 antibody first is also contemplated. Suitable dosages for the growth inhibitory agent are those presently used and may be lowered due to the combined action (synergy) of the growth inhibitory agent and anti-ErbB2 antibody.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

Further information about suitable dosages is provided in the Example below.

V. Articles of Manufacture

In another embodiment of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, a label and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-ErbB2 antibody. The label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes. In addition, the article of manufacture comprises a package inserts with instructions for use, including a warning that the composition is not to be used in combination with anthacycline-type chemotherapeutic agent, e.g. doxorubicin, or epirubicin.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 10801 University Blvd., Manassas, Va. 20110-2209 (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12226	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Example.

Example

Materials and Methods

Anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody The anti-ErbB2 $IgG_1\kappa$ murine monoclonal antibody 4D5, specific for the extracellular domain of ErbB2, was produced as described in Fendly et al., *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990) and WO89/06692. Briefly, NIH 3T3/HER2-3_{400} cells (expressing approximately 1×10^5 ErbB2 molecules/cell) produced as described in Hudziak et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* (*USA*) 84:7159 (1987) were harvested with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 25 mM EDTA and used to immunize BALB/c mice. The mice were given injections i.p. of 10^7 cells in 0.5 ml PBS on weeks, 0, 2, 5 and 7. The mice with antisera that immunoprecipitated ^{32}P-labeled ErbB2 were given i.p. injections of a wheat germ agglutinin-Sepharose (WGA) purified ErbB2 membrane extract on weeks 9 and 13. This was followed by an i.v. injection of 0.1 ml of the ErbB2 preparation and the splenocytes were fused with mouse myeloma line X63-Ag8.653. Hybridoma supernatants were screened for ErbB2-binding by ELISA and radioimmunoprecipitation. MOPC-21 (IgG1), (Cappell, Durham, N.C.), was used as an isotype-matched control.

The treatment was performed with a humanized version of the murine 4D5 antibody (HERCEPTIN®). The humanized antibody was engineered by inserting the complementarity determining regions of the murine 4D5 antibody into the framework of a consensus human immunoglobulin IgG_1 (IgG_1) (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:4285-4289 [1992]). The resulting humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody has high affinity for p185" (Dillohiation constant [K_d]=0.1 nmol/L), markedly inhibits, in vitro and in human xenografts, the growth of breast cancer cells that contain high levels of $p185^{HER2}$, induces antibody-dependent

cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), and has been found clinically active, as a single agent, in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior therapy. HERCEPTIN® is produced by a genetically engineered Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cell line, grown in large scale, that secretes the antibody into the culture medium. The antibody is purified from the CHO culture media using standard chromatographic and filtration methods. Each lot of antibody used in this study was assayed to verify identity, purity, and potency, as well as to meet Food and Drug Administration requirements for sterility and safety.

Eligibility Criteria Patients had to fulfill all of the following criteria to be eligible for study admission:

- Metastatic breast cancer
- Overexpression of the ErbB2 (HER2) oncogene (2+ to 3+ as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). [Tumor expression of ErbB2 can be determined by immunohistochemical analysis, as previously described (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra), of a set of thin sections prepared from the patient's paraffin-archived tumor blocks. The primary detecting antibody used is murine 4D5 MAb, which has the same CDRs as the humanized antibody used for the treatment. Tumors are considered to overexpress ErbB2 if at least 25% of tumor cells exhibit characteristic membrane staining for $p185^{HER2}$].
- Bidimensionally measurable disease (including lytic bone lesions) by radiographic means, physical examination, or photographs.

Measurable disease was defined as any mass reproducibly measurable in two perpendicular diameters by physical examination, X-ray (plain films), computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasound, or photographs.

Osteoblastic metastases, pleural effusions, or ascites were not considered to be measurable. Measurable lesions must be at least 1 cm in greatest dimension. Enumeration of evaluable sites of metastatic disease and number of lesions in an evaluable site (e.g. lung) had to be recorded on the appropriate Case Report Form (CRF). If a large number of pulmonary or hepatic lesions were present, the six largest lesions per site were followed.

- The ability to understand and willingness to sign a written informed consent form
- Women≧18 years
- Suitable candidates for receiving concomitant cytotoxic chemotherapy as evidenced by screening laboratory assessments of hematologic, renal, hepatic, and metabolic functions.

Exclusion Criteria Patients with any of the following were excluded from study entry:

- Prior cytotoxic chemotherapy for metastatic breast cancer
- Patients may have received prior hormonal therapy (e.g. tamoxifen) for metastatic disease or cytotoxic therapy in the adjuvant setting.
- Concomitant malignancy that has not been curatively treated
- A performance status of <60% on the Karnofsky scale
- Pregnant or nursing women; women of childbearing potential, unless using effective contraception as determined by the investigator
- Bilateral breast cancer (either both primary tumors must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression, or the metastatic site must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression)
- Use of investigational or unlicensed agents within 30 days prior to study entry
- Clinically unstable or untreated metastases to the brain (e.g. requiring radiation therapy)

Based upon the foregoing criteria, 469 patients were chosen, and enrolled in the study. Half the patients (stratified by chemotherapy) were randomized to additionally receive the HERCEPTIN® antibody (see below).

Administration and Dosage

Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

On day 0, a 4 mg/kg dose of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, H) was administered intravenously, over a 90-minute period. Beginning on day 7, patients received weekly administration of 2 mg/kg antibody (i.v.) over a 90-minute period.

Chemotherapy

The patients received one of two chemotherapy regiments for a minimum of six cycles, provided their disease was not progressing: a) cyclophosphamide and doxorubicin or epirubicin (AC), if patients have not received anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting, or b) paclitaxel (T, TAXOL®), if patients have received any anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting. The initial dose of the HERCEPTIN® antibody preceded the first cycle of either chemotherapy regimen by 24 hours. Subsequent doses of the antibody were given immediately before chemotherapy administration, if the initial dose of the antibody was well tolerated. If the first dose of the antibody was not well tolerated, subsequent infusions continued to precede chemotherapy administration by 24 hours. Patients were permitted to continue receiving chemotherapy beyond six cycles if, in the opinion of the treating physician, they were continuing to receive treatment benefit.

Cyclophosphamide (600 mg/m^2) was given either by iv push over a minimum period of 3 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours.

Doxorubicin (60 mg/m^2) or epirubicin (75 mg/m^2) were given either by slow iv push over a minimum period of 3-5 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours, according to institutional protocol.

Paciltaxel (TAXOL®) was given at a dose of 175 mg/m^2 over 3 hours by intravenous administration. All patients receiving paclitaxel were premedicated with dexamethasone (or its equivalent) 20 mg×2, administered orally 12 and 6 hours prior to paclitaxel; diphenhydramine (or its equivalent) 50 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel, and dimetidine (or another H_2 blocker) 300 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel.

Response Criteria

Progressive Disease Objective evidence of an increase of 25% or more in any measurable lesion. Progressive disease also includes those instances when new lesions have appeared. For bone lesions, progression is defined as a 25% increase in objective measurement by plain film, CT, MRI; symptomatic new lesions not due to fracture; or requirement for palliative radiotherapy.

Complete Response Disappearance of all radiographically and/or visually apparent tumor for a minimum of 4 weeks. Skin and chest wall complete responses had to be confirmed by biopsy.

Partial Response A reduction of at least 50% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions for a minimum period of 4 weeks. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Minor Response A reduction of 25% to 49% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Stable Disease No change of greater than 25% in the size of measurable lesions. No lesions may have appeared.

Time to disease progression (TTP) was calculated from the beginning of therapy to progression. Confidence limits for response rates were calculated using the exact method for a single proportion. (Fleiss, J L, *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions* (ed. 2), New York, N.Y., Wiley, 1981, pp 13-17).

Results

At a median follow-up of 10.5 months, assessments of time to disease progression (TTP in months) and response rates (RR) showed a significant augmentation of the chemotherapeutic effect by HERCEPTIN®, without increase in overall severe adverse events (AE):

	Enrolled	TTP(months)	RR(%)	AE(%)
CRx	234	5.5	36.2	66
CRx + H	235	8.6*	62.00**	69
AC	145	6.5	42.1	71
AC + H	146	9.0	64.9	68
T	89	4.2	25.0	59
T + H	89	7.1	57.3	70

*p <0.001 by log-rank test
**p <0.01 by X^2 test
CRx: chemotherapy
AC: anthracycline/cyclophosphamide treatment
H: HERCEPTIN ®
T: TAXOL ®

A syndrome of myocardial dysfunction similar to that observed with anthracyclines was reported more commonly with a combined treatment of AC+H (18% Grade 3/4) than with AC alone (3%), T (0%), or T+H (2%).

These data indicate that the combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment with chemotherapy markedly increases the clinical benefit, as assessed by response rates and the evaluation of disease progression. However, due to the increased cardiac side-effects of doxorubicin or epirubicin, the combined use of anthracyclines with anti-ErbB2 antibody therapy is contraindicated. The results, taking into account risk and benefit, favor the combined treatment with HERCEPTIN® and paclitaxel (TAXOL).

The disclosures of all citations in the specification are expressly incorporated herein by reference.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 9

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 166
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

```
Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu
  1               5                  10                  15

Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val
                20                  25                  30

Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser
                35                  40                  45

Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu
                50                  55                  60

Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu Gln Arg Leu Arg
                65                  70                  75

Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr Ala Leu Ala
                80                  85                  90

Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro Val Thr
                95                 100                 105

Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser Leu
               110                 115                 120

Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln
               125                 130                 135

Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys
               140                 145                 150

Asn Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg
               155                 160                 165
```

-continued

Ala
166

<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 32
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln
20 25 30

Gly Cys
32

<210> SEQ ID NO 3
<211> LENGTH: 11
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Pro Lys Asn Ser Ser Met Ile Ser Asn Thr Pro
1 5 10 11

<210> SEQ ID NO 4
<211> LENGTH: 7
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

His Gln Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln
1 5 7

<210> SEQ ID NO 5
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

His Gln Asn Leu Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5 8

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

His Gln Asn Ile Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5 8

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

-continued

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

Val Ile Ser Ser His Leu Gly Gln
1 5 8

<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 59
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

Val Glu Glu Cys Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val
1 5 10 15

Asn Ala Arg His Cys Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln
20 25 30

Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val
35 40 45

Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg
50 55 59

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 65
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr
1 5 10 15

Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr
20 25 30

Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys
35 40 45

Pro Asp Leu Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu
50 55 60

Gly Ala Cys Gln Pro
65

The invention claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of a human patient with a malignant progressing tumor or cancer characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering a combination of an intact antibody which binds to epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence and a taxoid, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient in an amount effective to extend the time to disease progression in said human patient, without increase in overall severe adverse events.

2. The method of claim **1** wherein said patient has a malignant tumor.

3. The method of claim **1** wherein said patient has cancer.

4. The method of claim **3** wherein said cancer is selected from the group consisting of breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

5. The method of claim **4** wherein said cancer is breast cancer.

6. The method of claim **5** wherein said cancer is metastatic breast carcinoma.

7. The method of claim **1** wherein said antibody is a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody.

8. The method of claim **1** wherein said taxoid is paclitaxel.

9. The method of claim **8** wherein the effective amount of said combination is lower than the sum of the effective amounts of said anti-ErbB2 antibody and said taxoid, when administered individually, as single agents.

10. The method of claim **1** wherein efficacy is further measured by determining the response rate.

11. A method for the treatment of a human patient with ErbB2 overexpressing progressing metastatic breast cancer, comprising administering a combination of a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody and a taxoid, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient in an amount effective to extend the time to disease progression in said human patient, without increase in overall severe adverse events.

12. The method of claim **11** wherein said taxoid is paclitaxel.

13. A method for the treatment of a human patient with a progressing malignant tumor or cancer characterized by over-expression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering a combination of a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody which comprises a human Fc region and that binds to epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence and a taxoid, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient in an amount effective to extend the time to disease progression in said human patient, without increase in overall severe adverse events.

14. A method for the treatment of a human patient with ErbB2 expressing progressing metastatic breast cancer, comprising administering a combination of an antibody which binds to epitope 4D5 within the extracellular domain sequence and a taxoid, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient in an amount effective to extend the time to disease progression in said human patient, without increase in overall severe adverse events.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT B

US007892549B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Paton et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,892,549 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: *Feb. 22, 2011**

(54) **TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES**

(75) Inventors: **Virginia E. Paton**, Oakland, CA (US); **Steven Shak**, Burlingame, CA (US); **Susan D. Hellmann**, San Carlos, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 1827 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **10/356,824**

(22) Filed: **Feb. 3, 2003**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2004/0037823 A9 Feb. 26, 2004

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 09/208,649, filed on Dec. 10, 1998.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/069,346, filed on Dec. 12, 1997.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
A61K 39/395 (2006.01)
C07K 16/28 (2006.01)
C07K 16/30 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **424/143.1**; 424/130.1; 424/133.1; 424/134.1; 424/135.1; 424/136.1; 424/138.1; 424/141.1; 424/152.1; 424/155.1; 424/156.1; 424/172.1; 424/174.1

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 424/130.1, 424/133.1, 138.1, 141.1, 143.1, 155.1, 174.1, 424/134.1, 135.1, 136.1, 152.1, 156.1, 172.1
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,017,471	A	4/1977	Davies
4,753,894	A	6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,935,341	A	6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A	7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A	11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A	12/1990	Senter et al.
4,994,558	A	2/1991	Armour et al.
5,169,774	A	12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A	2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A	2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A	10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A	11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A	3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A	11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A	1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,514,554	A	5/1996	Bacus
5,571,894	A	11/1996	Wels et al.
5,578,482	A	11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,587,458	A	12/1996	King et al.
5,604,107	A	2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A	6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,663,144	A	9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,171	A	10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A	1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A	3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A	3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A	3/1998	Bissery
5,747,261	A	5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A	7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A	7/1998	Arakawa et al.
5,783,404	A	7/1998	Koski
5,801,005	A	9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,804,396	A	9/1998	Plowman
5,821,337	A	10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A	10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A	11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A	11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A	12/1998	Cheever et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0599274	A1	6/1994

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Kim, K.-M. et al, Int. J. Cancer, 102: 428-434, 2002.*

(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Alana M. Harris
Assistant Examiner—Anne L Holleran
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Arnold & Porter LLP; Diane Marschang; Ginger R. Dreger

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

17 Claims, 1 Drawing Sheet

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,846,749	A	12/1998	Slamon et al.
5,856,089	A	1/1999	Wang et al.
5,856,110	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A	2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A	3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A	3/1999	Huston et al.
5,908,835	A	6/1999	Bissery
5,910,486	A	6/1999	Curiel et al.
5,922,845	A	7/1999	Deo et al.
5,925,519	A	7/1999	Jensen et al.
5,939,531	A	8/1999	Wels et al.
5,977,322	A	11/1999	Marks et al.
5,985,553	A	11/1999	King et al.
5,994,071	A	11/1999	Ross et al.
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel et al.
6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter et al.
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver et al.
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,214,388	B1	4/2001	Benz et al.
6,214,863	B1	4/2001	Bissery
6,267,958	B1	7/2001	Andya et al.
6,270,765	B1	8/2001	Deo et al.
6,316,462	B1	11/2001	Bishop et al.
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel et al.
6,339,142	B1	1/2002	Basey et al.
6,387,371	B1	5/2002	Hudziak et al.
6,395,272	B1	5/2002	Deo et al.
6,395,712	B1	5/2002	Hung et al.
6,399,063	B1	6/2002	Hudziak et al.
6,407,213	B1	6/2002	Carter et al.
6,458,356	B1	10/2002	Arakawa et al.
6,512,097	B1	1/2003	Marks et al.
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman et al.
6,639,055	B1	10/2003	Carter et al.
6,685,940	B2	2/2004	Andya et al.
6,719,971	B1	4/2004	Carter et al.
6,800,738	B1	10/2004	Carter et al.
6,821,515	B1	11/2004	Cleland et al.
7,041,292	B1	5/2006	Sliwkowski
7,060,268	B2	6/2006	Andya et al.
7,097,840	B2	8/2006	Erickson et al.
2001/0014326	A1	8/2001	Andya et al.
2002/0001587	A1	1/2002	Erickson et al.
2002/0076408	A1	6/2002	Buchsbaum
2002/0155527	A1	10/2002	Stuart et al.
2003/0103973	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.
2003/0108545	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.
2003/0147884	A1	8/2003	Paton et al.
2003/0170234	A1	9/2003	Hellmann
2003/0202972	A1	10/2003	Andya et al.
2004/0013660	A1	1/2004	Bissery
2004/0037823	A9	2/2004	Paton et al.
2004/0037824	A1	2/2004	Baughman et al.
2004/0106161	A1	6/2004	Bossenmaier et al.
2004/0236078	A1	11/2004	Carter et al.
2004/0258685	A1	12/2004	Brunetta et al.
2005/0002928	A1	1/2005	Hellmann
2005/0208043	A1	9/2005	Adams et al.
2005/0238640	A1	10/2005	Sliwkowski
2005/0244417	A1	11/2005	Ashkenazi et al.
2006/0013819	A1	1/2006	Kelsey
2006/0018899	A1	1/2006	Kao et al.
2006/0034840	A1	2/2006	Agus
2006/0034842	A1	2/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0073143	A1	4/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0083739	A1	4/2006	Sliwkowski
2006/0088523	A1	4/2006	Andya et al.
2006/0099201	A1	5/2006	Andya et al.
2006/0121044	A1	6/2006	Amler et al.
2006/0165702	A1	7/2006	Allison et al.
2006/0188509	A1	8/2006	Derynck et al.
2006/0193854	A1	8/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0198843	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0204505	A1	9/2006	Sliwkowski et al.
2006/0210561	A1	9/2006	Baughman et al.
2006/0228745	A1	10/2006	Mass
2006/0275305	A1	12/2006	Bryant
2006/0275306	A1	12/2006	Andya et al.
2007/0020261	A1	1/2007	Sliwkowski et al.
2007/0026001	A1	2/2007	Ashkenazi et al.
2007/0037228	A1	2/2007	Moecks et al.
2007/0166753	A1	7/2007	Mass
2007/0184055	A1	8/2007	Sliwkowski
2007/0202516	A1	8/2007	Mass
2007/0224203	A1	9/2007	Friess et al.
2007/0269429	A1	11/2007	Kelsey et al.
2007/0292419	A1	12/2007	Hellmann

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	616812	A1	9/1994
EP	0711565	B1	8/1998
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	95006982	B2	1/1995
JP	7-59588		3/1995
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105	B2	5/1999
WO	WO 87/07646		12/1987
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 89/10412		11/1989
WO	WO 91/02062		2/1991
WO	WO 91/05264		4/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 93/03741		3/1993
WO	WO 93/12220		6/1993
WO	WO 93/16185		8/1993
WO	WO 93/21232		10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319		10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136		1/1994
WO	WO 94/22478		10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/07321		3/1996
WO	WO 96/16673		6/1996
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/40789		12/1996
WO	WO 97/00271		1/1997
WO	WO 97/20858		6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/38731		10/1997
WO	WO 98/02463		1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797		4/1998
WO	WO 98/18489		5/1998
WO	WO 98/33914		8/1998
WO	WO 98/45479		10/1998
WO	WO 99/24401		5/1999
WO	WO 99/25320		5/1999
WO	WO 99/31140		6/1999
WO	WO 00/61145		10/2000
WO	WO 00/61185		10/2000
WO	WO 00/69460	A1	11/2000
WO	WO 01/87334		11/2001
WO	WO 02/055106		7/2002

WO WO 2007/145862 A2 12/2007

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Nabholtz, J.M., et al, Breast Cancer Research and Treatment, 64(1): p. 82, #327, 2000.*

Nabholtz, J. M., et al., European Journal of Cancer, 37(suppl. 6): S190, #695, 2001.*

Perez et al., Seminars in Oncology, 23(5, suppl 11): 41-45, Oct. 1996.*

van Oosterom et al., "Docetaxel (Taxotere), a review of preclinical and clinical experience. Part II: Clinical experience" *Anti-Cancer Drugs* (Abstract only) 6(3):356-368 (Jun. 1995).

Albanell et al., "Trastuzumab, a humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody, for the treatment of breast cancer" *Drugs of Today* 35(12):931-946 (1999).

"Aminoglutethimide" *Martindale—The Complete Drug Reference—Monographs* (website version of product information) pp. 1-4 (2003).

Argiris and DiGiovanna, "Synergistic interactions between tamoxifen and HERCEPTIN TM" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract #4565) 41:718 (Mar. 2000).

"Arimidex (anastrozole) Tablets" *Physicians' Desk Reference* (website version of product information) pp. 1-14 (2003).

"Aromasin (exemestane tablets)" *Physicians' Desk Reference* (website version of product information) pp. 1-9 (2003).

Benz et al., "Estrogen-dependent, tamoxifen-resistant tumorigenic growth of MCF-7 cells transfected with HER2/neu" *Breast Cancer Research & Treatment* 24(2):85-95 (1992).

Brueggemeier, R., "Aromatase, aromatase inhibitors, and breast cancer" *American Journal of Therapeutics* 8(5):333-344 (Sep.-Oct. 2001).

"A concerted attack on cancer" *Scrip Magazine* 2617(Review Issue 2000):68-70 (Feb. 14, 2001).

Dati et al., "Inhibition of c-erbB-2 oncogene expression by estrogens in human breast cancer cells" *Oncogene* 5(7):1001-1006 (Jul. 1990).

"Femara (letrozole tablets)" *Physicians' Desk Reference* (website version of product information) pp. 1-13 (2003).

Grem et al., "A phase II evaluation of combination chemotherapy plus aminoglutethimide in women with metastatic or recurrent breast carcinoma. An Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Pilot Study" *American Journal of Clinical Oncology* 11(5):528-534 (Oct. 1988).

Hamilton and Piccart, "The contribution of molecular markers to the prediction of response in the treatment of breast cancer: a review of the literature on HER-2, p53 and BCL-2" *Annals of Oncology* 11(6):647-663 (Jun. 2000).

Kaufmann et al., "Exemestane is superior to megestrol acetate after tamoxifen failure in postmenopausal women with advanced breast cancer: Results of a phase III randomized double-blind trial" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 18(7):1399-1411 (Apr. 2000).

Konecny et al., "New drugs in breast cancer therapy: Current position and future perspectives" *Gynaekologisch-Geburtshilfliche Rundschau* (English language abstract only) 37(2):54-61 (Oct. 1997).

Kunisue et al., "Anti-HER2 antibody enhances the growth inhibitory effect of anti-oestrogen on breast cancer cells expressing both oestrogen receptors and HER2" *British Journal of Cancer* 82(1):46-51 (Jan. 2000).

Lohrisch and Piccart, "Breast cancer: new aspects of adjuvant hormonal therapy" *Annals of Oncology* 11(Suppl. 3):13-25 (2000).

Mizukami et al., "Effects of tamoxifen, medroxyprogesterone acetate and estradiol on tumor growth and oncogene expression in MCF-7 breast cancer cell line transplanted into nude mice" *Anticancer Research* 11(3):1333-1338 (May-Jun. 1991).

Pegram et al., "Effect of erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) overexpression on chemotherapeutic drug sensitivity in human breast and ovarian cancer cells" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 152) 34:26 (Mar. 1993).

Piccart and Kaufmann, "Introduction" *European Journal of Cancer* 37(Suppl. 1):S1-S2 (Jan. 2001).

Piccart et al., "HER2: a 'predictive factor' ready to use in the daily management of breast cancer patients?" *European Journal of Cancer* 36(14):1755-1761 (Sep. 2000).

Piccart, M., "Closing remarks and treatment guidelines" *European Journal of Cancer* 37(Suppl. 1):S30-S33 (Jan. 2001).

Pietras et al., "HER-2 tyrosine kinase pathway targets estrogen receptor and promotes hormone-independent growth in human breast cancer cells" *Oncogene* 10(12):2435-2446 (Jun. 15, 1995).

Pietras et al., "Heregulin promotes growth of human breast cancer cells with HER-2 (erb B2) receptors" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 573) 34:96 (Mar. 1993).

Read et al., "Hormonal modulation of HER-2/neu protooncogene messenger ribonucleic acid and p185 protein expression in human breast cancer cell lines" *Cancer Reserach* 50(13):3947-3951 (Jul. 1, 1990).

Warri et al., "Estrogen suppression of erbB2 expression is associated with increased growth rate of ZR-75-1 human breast cancer cells in vitro and in nude mice" *International Journal of Cancer* 49(4):616-623 (Oct. 21, 1991).

Witters et al., "Enhanced anti-proliferative activity of the combination of tamoxifen plus HER-2-neu antibody" *Breast Cancer Research & Treatment* 42(1):1-5 (Jan. 1997).

"Are adjuvant Herceptin trials using the wrong drugs?" *Scrip* 2493:21 (Nov. 26, 1999).

Arteaga et al., "$p185^{c\text{-}erbB\text{-}2}$ Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-induced DNA Repair" *Cancer Research* 54(14):3758-3765 (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/neu Antigen" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(6):350-362 (1990).

Bacus et al., "Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER-2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells" *Cancer Research* 52(9):2580-2589 (May 1, 1992).

Baselga and Mendelsohn, "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies As Anti-Cancer Therapy" *Pharmac. Ther.* 64:127-154 (1994).

Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" *Proceedings of ASCO-13th Annual Meeting* (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63 (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "Antitumor activity of paclitaxel in combination with anti-growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies in breast cancer xenografts" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 2262) 35:380 (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "Antitumor effects of doxorubicin in combination with anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies" *Journal of the National Cancer Institute* 85(16):1327-1333 (Aug. 18, 1993).

Baselga et al., "HER2 Overexpression and Paclitaxel Sensitivity in Breast Cancer: Therapeutic Implications" *Oncology* (Supplement No. 2) 11(3):43-48 (Mar. 1997).

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against Growth Factor Receptors Enhance the Efficacy of Chemotherapeutic Agents." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14(3):737-744 (Mar. 1996).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpessing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts" *Cancer Research* 58:2825-2831 (Jul. 1998).

Bunn et al., "HER2/neu expression and effects of Herceptin alone and in combination with cytotoxic agents in lung cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 4571) 41:719 (Mar. 2000).

Burris et al., "Phase II trial of docetaxel and Herceptin(R) as First- or second-line chemotherapy for women with metastatic breast cancer whose tumours overexpress HER2" *European Journal of Cancer* (Abstract No. 1293) 35(4):S322 (Sep. 1999).

Carmichael et al., "Advanced breast cancer: a phase II trial with gemcitabine" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 13(11):2731-2736 (Nov. 1995).

Carmichael et al., "Advanced breast cancer: investigational role of gemcitabine" *European Journal of Cancer* 33(Suppl. 1):S27-S30 (Jan. 1997).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an Anti-p185^{HER2} Antibody For Human Cancer Therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:4285-4289 (May 1992).

Clemons et al., "Review of recent trials of chemotherapy for advanced Breast cancer: studies excluding taxanes" *European Journal of Cancer* 33(13):2171-2182 (Nov. 1997).

D'Souza and Taylor-Papadimitriou., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-Cadherin Gene." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91(15):7202-7206 (Jul. 19, 1994).

Davidson, N., "Single-agent paclitaxel at first relapse following adjuvant chemotherapy for breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 22(6 Suppl 14):2-6 (Dec. 1995).

De Santes et al., "Radiolabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" *Cancer Research* 52:1916-1923 (1992).

Di Fiore et al., "erbB-2 Is A Potent Oncogene When Overexpressed In NIH/3T3 Cells." *Science* 237(4811):178-182 (Jul. 10, 1987).

Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cell* 41(3):695-706 (Jul. 1985).

Drebin et al., "Inhibition of Tumor Growth By a Monoclonal Antibody Reactive With an Oncogene-Encoded Tumor Antigen" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 83:9129-9133 (1986).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encoded p185 Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-Tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2(4):387-394 (1988).

Fendly, B.M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Fleiss, JL *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions*, 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13-17 (1981).

Fornier et al., "Trastuzumab in combination with chemotherapy for the treatment of metastatic breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 27(6 Suppl 11):38-45 (Dec. 2000).

Gatzemeier et al., "A randomised phase II study of gemcitabine/cisplatin alone and with Herceptin in patients with HER2-positive non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC)" (Poster to be presented at the 2001 ECCO meeting).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).

Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector" *Cancer Research* 54(3):738-741 (Feb. 1, 1994).

Guy et al., "Expression of the neu Protooncogene in the Mammary Epithelium of Transgenic Mice Induces Metastatic Disease." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(22):10578-10582 (Nov. 15, 1992).

Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines" *Cancer Research* 51:4575-4580 (Sep. 1, 1991).

Hansen, H., "Gemcitabine—a review" *Annals of Oncology* (Abstract #058 from the 9th NCI-EORTC Symposium on New Drugs in Cancer Therapy held in Amsterdam on Mar. 12-15, 1996) 7(Suppl. 1):29 (1996).

Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracellular Domain of the erbB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 267(21):15160-15167 (Jul. 25, 1992).

"Herceptin (Trastuzumab)" *Product Information* (2000).

Hudziak et al., "Increased Expression of the Putative Growth Factor Receptor p185^{HER2} Causes Transformation and Tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 Cells." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84(20):7159-7163 (Oct. 1987).

Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165-1172 (Mar. 1989).

Hynes and Stern., "The Biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and Its Role in Cancer." *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1198(2-3):165-184 (Dec. 30, 1994).

Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract #3209) 37:470 (Mar. 1996).

Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 52(10):2771-2776 (May 15, 1992).

Konecny et al., "Therapeutic advantage of chemotherapy drugs in combination with Herceptin against human breast cancer cells with HER-2/NEU overexpression" *Breast Cancer Res Treat* (Abstract No. 467) 57:114 (1999).

Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" *In Vitro* (Abstract #176) 26(3):59A (1990).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 11(2):979-986 (Feb. 1991).

Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibodies." *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993).

Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (Mar. 15, 1996).

Llombart et al., "Biweekly gemcitabine and paclitaxel in advanced breast cancer. Phase II trial and predictive value of HER2 extracellular domain (ECD)" *European Journal of Cancer* (Abstract No. 390) 36(Suppl 5):S121-S122 (Sep. 2000).

Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed against the HER-2/neu Gene Product c-erbB-2" *Cancer Research* 51(19):5361-5369 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 44(3):1002-1007 (Mar. 1984).

Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" *Jpn J. Cancer Res.* 80:10-14 (Jan. 1989).

McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" *Cancer* 65(1):88-92 (Jan. 1, 1990).

McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene Product, p185" *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer therapy. " *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1):22 (1996).

Miller et al., "Gemcitabine, paclitaxel, and trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer" *Oncology* 15(2 Supp 3):38-40 (Feb. 2001).

Miller et al., "Phase II study of gemcitabine, paclitaxel and trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer; a Hoosier Oncology Group trial" (Abstract #437. Presented at the 2002 SABCS meeting.) (2002).

Mosconi et al., "Combination therapy with gemcitabine in non-small cell lung cancer" *European Journal of Cancer* 33(Suppl. 1):S14-S17 (Jan. 1997).

Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185neu" *Methods in Enzymology* 198:277-290 (1991).

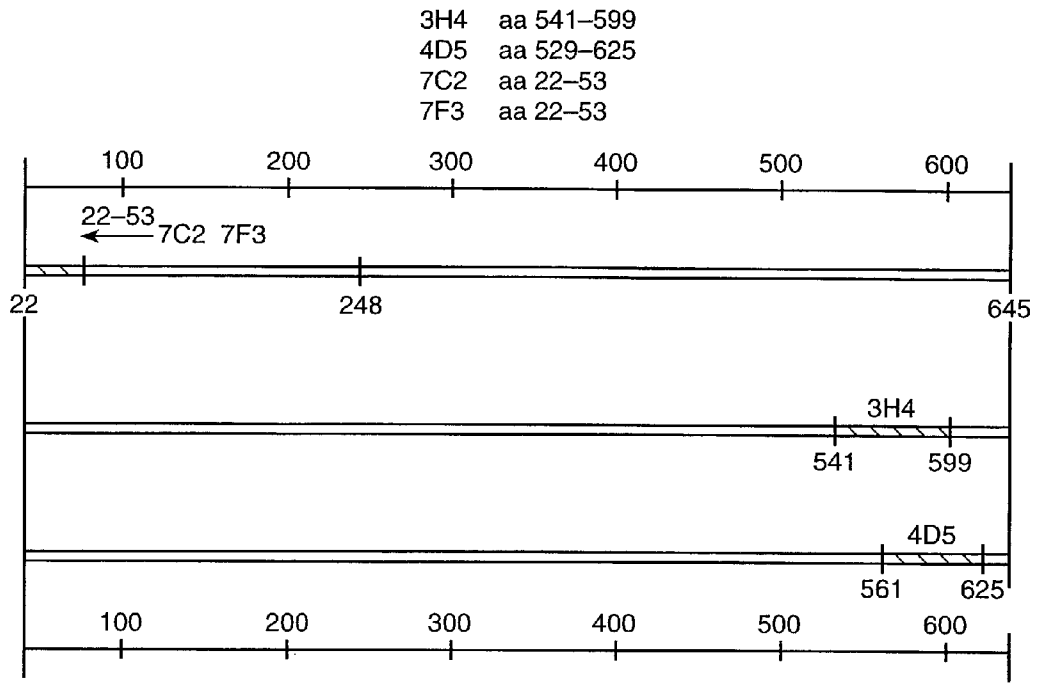
Nagourney et al., "Trastuzumab (Herceptin) enhancement of cytotoxic drug activity in human tumor primary cultures" *Breast Cancer Res Treat* (Abstract No. 475) 57:116 (1999).

Nelson and Fry, "Inhibition of ERBB family receptors by C1-1033 enhances the cytotoxicity of gemcitabine via modulation of AKT and map kinases" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 1533) 41:241 (Mar. 2000).

Norton, L., "Evolving Concepts in the Systemic Drug Therapy of Breast Cancer." *Seminars in Oncology* 24(4 Suppl 10):S10-3-S10-10 (Aug. 1997).
Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" *Oncogene* 18:2241-2251 (1999).
Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994).
Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First- or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress HER2" *Proceedings of ASCO* (*Abstract #523*) 18:137a (1999).
Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular markers—a review" *Gene* 159(1):19-27 (Jun. 14, 1995).
Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" *J. Cellular Biochem.* 35(4):315-320 (1987).
Safran et al., "Herceptin and gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic cancers that overexpress HER-2/neu" *Proc. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol.* (Abstract No. 517) 20:130A (2001).
Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti-P185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991).
Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" *Molecular Foundations of Oncology*, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter 6, pp. 95-134 (1991).
Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 266(22):14300-14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).
Seidman et al., "Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center experience with paclitaxel in the treatment of breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 22(5 Suppl 12):108-116 (Oct. 1995).
Seifert et al., "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity" *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28(9):1063-1072 (Sep. 1994).
Shawver et al., "Ligand-Like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB-2 Antibodies Do Not Correlate with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells" *Cancer Research* 54(5):1367-1373 (Mar. 1, 1994).
Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991).
Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-induced cardiomyopathy" *New England J. of Medicine* 339(13):900-905 (Sep. 24, 1998).
Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardiomyopathy" *Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology* 27(4):1055-1063 (Apr. 1995).
Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" *Science* 235:177-182 (Jan. 9, 1987).
Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science* 244:707-712 (May 12, 1989).
Sliwkowski et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpressing breast cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract only) 37:625-626 (Mar. 1996).
Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 269(20):14661-14665 (May 20, 1994).
Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monoclonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88(19):8691-8695 (Oct. 1, 1991).
Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of p185^{HER2} and Growth Inhibition of Cells With HER2/NEU Gene Amplification" *International Journal of Cancer* 47(6):933-937 (Apr. 1, 1991).
Tsai et al., "Cytotoxic effects of gemcitabine-containing regimens against human non-small cell lung cancer cell lines which express different levels of p185^{neu}" *Cancer Research* 56(4):794-801 (Feb. 15, 1996).
van Moorsel et al., "Combination chemotherapy studies with gemcitabine" *Seminars in Oncology* 24(2 Suppl. 7):S7-17-S7-23 (Apr. 1997).
Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role for Their Use in Cancer Therapy" *Cancer Research* 54(20):5301-5309 (Oct. 15, 1994).
Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product p185" *International Journal of Cancer* 53(3):401-408 (Feb. 1, 1993).
Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti-p185$^{her2/neu}$ monoclonal antibodies" *Experimental and Molecular Pathology* 67:15-25 (1999).
Zinner et al., "Cisplation and gemcitabine combined with Herceptin in patients (Pts) with HER2 overexpressing, untreated, advanced, non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC); a phase II trial" *Proc. Am. Clin. Oncol.* Abstract No. 1307) 20:328A (2001).
Buzdar et al., "Anastrozole, a potent and selective aromatase inhibitor, versus megestrol acetate in postmenopausal women with advanced breast cancer: results of overview analysis of two phase III trials" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 14(7):2000-2011 (Jul. 1996).
Buzdar et al., "Fadrozole HCL (CGS-16949A) versus megestrol acetate treatment of postmenopausal patients with metastatic breast carcinoma: results of two randomized double blind controlled multiinstitutional trials" *Cancer* 77(12):2503-2513 (Jun. 15, 1996).
Dickman, S., "Antibodies stage a comeback in cancer treatment" *Science* 280(5367):1196-1197 (May 22, 1998).
Grant et al., "Comparison of antiangiogenic activities using paclitaxel (taxol) and docetaxel (taxotere)" *International Journal of Cancer* 104(1):121-129 (Mar. 10, 2003).
Kaye et al., "Phase II trials of docetaxel (Taxotere) in advanced ovarian cancer—an updated overview" *European Journal of Cancer* 33(13):2167-2170 (Nov. 1997).
Klijn et al., "Clinical breast cancer, new developments in selection and endocrine treatment of patients" *Journal of Steroid Biochemistry & Molecular Biology* 43(1-3):211-221 (Sep. 1992).
Merlin et al., "In vitro comparative evaluation of trastuzumab (Herceptin) combined with paclitaxel (Taxol) or docetaxel (Taxotere) in HER2-expressing human breast cancer cell lines" *Annals of Oncology* 13(11):1743-1748 (Nov. 2002).
Nallani et al., "Differences in the induction of cytochrome P450 3A4 by taxane anticancer drugs, docetaxel and paclitaxel, assessed employing primary human hepatocytes" *Cancer Chemotherapy & Pharmacology* 54:219-229 (Sep. 2004).
Santen and Harvey, "Use of aromatase inhibitors in breast carcinoma" *Endocrine-Related Cancer* 6(1):75-92 (Mar. 1999).
Untch et al., "Comparison of paclitaxel and docetaxel (Taxotere) in gynecologic and breast cancer cell lines with the ATP-cell viability assay" *Anti-Cancer Drugs* 5(1):24-30 (Feb. 1994).
Agus et al., "Clinical Activity in a Phase I Trial of HER-2-Targeted rhuMAb 2C4 (pertuzumab) in Patients with Advanced Solid Malignancies (AST)" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (Abstract No. 771) 22:192 (2003).
Agus et al., "Clinical Activity in a Phase I Trial of HER2-Targeted rhuMAb 2C4 (pertuzumab) in Patients with Advanced Solid Malignancies" (Slides presented at the 2003 ASCO Annual Meeting) pp. 1-32 (2003).
Gordon et al., "Clinical activity of pertuzumab (rhuMab 2C4) in advanced, refractory or recurrent ovarian cancer (OC), and the role of HER2 activation status" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract #5051 from the 41st Annual Meeting of ASCO) 23(16S):467s (Jun. 1, 2005).
Gordon et al., "Clinical activity of pertuzumab (rhuMab 2C4) in advanced, refractory or recurrent ovarian cancer and the role of HER2 activation status" (Poster #5051 from the 41st Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO)) (May 15, 2005).
Herzig and Herzig, "Medical Oncology" (website link: http://www.qualitysurgical.org/Chapter%2033.htm) pp. 1-11 (2006).
Marty et al., "Randomized Phase II Trial of the Efficacy and Saftey of Trastuzumab Combined with Docetaxel in Patients with Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor 2-Positive Metastatic Breast Cancer

Administered As First-Line Treatment" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 23(19):4265-4274 (Jul. 1, 2005).
Brodowicz et al., "Single-agent gemcitabine as second- and third-line treatment in metastatic breast cancer" *The Breast* 9:338-342 (2000).
Brufsky et al., "Phase II study of gemcitabine (Gem) and trastuzumab (T) combination therapy in first line metastatic breast cancer (MBC) patients (pts) with HER2 overexpression" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract No. 10591) 24(18S) (Jun. 20, 2006).
Bunn et al., "Expression of Her-2/neu in human lung cancer cell lines by immunohistochemistry and fluorescence in situ hybridization and its relationship to in vitro cytotoxicity by trastuzumab and chemotherapeutic agents" *Clinical Cancer Research* 7(10):3239-3250 (Oct. 2001).
Christodoulou et al., "Combination of trastuzumab and gemcitabine as salvage treatment in metastatic breast cancer: The experience of the Hellenic Cooperative Oncology Group (HeCOG)" (Poster presented at the 39th Annual ASCO Meeting held in Chicago, Illinois; May 31-Jun. 3, 2003) (2003).
Christodoulou et al., "Gemcitabine and trastuzumab combination as salvage treatment in patients with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer" *Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol* (Abstract No. 166) 22:42 (2003).
"equivocal" *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language* (Definition found on http://www.credoreference.com/entry/4085073) (2003).
Hirsch et al., "Preclinical studies of gemcitabine and trastuzumab in breast and lung cancer cell lines" *Clinical Breast Cancer* (abstract only) 3(Suppl 1):12-16 (May 2002).
Hirsch et al., "Preclinical studies of gemcitabine and trastuzumab in breast and lung cancer cell lines " *Clinical Breast Cancer* 3(Suppl 1):S12-S16 (May 2002).
Nogueras et al., "Pilot study of gemcitabine (G) plus trastuzumab (H) in metastatic breast cancer patients with erb-2 overexpression previously treated with anthracyclines (A) and taxanes (T)" *European Journal of Cancer* (Abstract No. 416) 4(Suppl):169 (Mar. 2006).
O'Shaughnessy et al., "Phase II study of trastuzumab plus gemcitabine in chemotherapy-pretreated patients with metastatic breast cancer" *Clinical Breast Cancer* 5(2):142-147 (Jun. 2004).
O'Shaughnessy et al., "Phase II trial of gemcitabine plus trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer patients previously treated with chemotherapy: preliminary results" *Clinical Breast Cancer* (abstract only) 3(Suppl 1):17-20 (May 2002).
Peacock et al., "Phase II trial of gemcitabine plus trastuzumab in minimally pretreated HER2 overexpressing metastatic breast cancer" *Jouranl of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract No. 704) 23(16S Part I of II):54s (Jun. 1, 2005).
Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185 HER-2 Monoclonal Antibody (rhuMAb HER-2) Plus Cisplatin in Patients with HER-2/NEU Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Proceedings of the ASCO-31st Annual Meeting* (Abstract #124) 14:106 (1995).
Robert et al., "Phase III comparative study of trastuzumab and paclitaxel with and without carboplatin in patients with HER-2/neu positive advanced breast cancer" (Abstract #35. Presented at the 2002 SABCS meeting.) (2002).
Voskoglou-Nomikos et al., "Clinical predictive value of the in vitro cell line, human xenograft, and mouse allograft preclinical cancer models" *Clinical Cancer Research* 9(11):4227-4239 (Sep. 15, 2003).
Yardley et al., "Final results of the Minnie Pearl Cancer Research Network first-line trial of weekly paclitaxel/carboplatin/trastuzumab in metastatic breast cancer" (Abstract #439. Presented at the 2002 SABCS meeting.) (2002).
Cottin, et al., "Impairment of diastolic function during short-term anthracycline chemotherapy", Br. Heart J., 73:61-64, (1995).
Johnson, et al., "Relationships between drug activity in NCI preclinical in vitro and in vivo models and early clinical trials", British Journal of Cancer, 84(10): 1424-1431, (2001).
Lane, et al., "ErbB2 potentiates breast tumor proliferation through modulation of $p27^{Kipi}$-Cdk2 complex formation: Receptor overexpression does not determine growth dependency", Molecular and Cellular Biology, vol. 20, No. 9, pp. 3210-3223, (2000).
Osborne, et al., "Antagonism of chemotherapy-induced cytotoxicity for human breast cancer cells by antiestrogens", Journal of Clinical Oncology, vol. 7, No. 6, pp. 710-717, (1989).
Woods, C., et al., "Taxol-induced mitotic block triggers rapid onset of a p53-independent apoptotic pathway", Molecular Medicine, vol. 1, No. 5, pp. 506-526, (1995).
Woods, K., et al., "Antagonism between tamoxifen and doxorubicin in the MCF-7 human breast tumor cell line", Biochemical Pharmacology, vol. 47, No. 8, pp. 1449-1452, (1994).

* cited by examiner



3H4 epitope (SEQ ID NO:8)

VEECRVLQGLPREYVNARHCLPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVAR
541 **599**

4D5 epitope (SEQ ID NO:9)

LPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVARCPSGVKPDLSYMPIWKFPDEEGACQP
561 **625**

FIG._1

1 MELAALCRWGLLLALLPPGAA**STQVCTGTDMKLRLPA**
38 **SPETHLDMLRHLYQGC**QVVQGNLELTYLPTNASLSFL
75 QDIQEVQGYVLIAHNQVRQVPLQRLRIVRGTQLFEDN
112 YALAVLDNGDPLNNTTPVTGASPGGLRELQLRSLTEI
149 LKGGVLIQRNPQLCYQDTILWKDIFHKNNQLALTLID
186 TNRSRA

FIG._2

TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES

This is a continuation of non-provisional application Ser. No. 09/208,649, filed Dec. 10, 1998, which claims priority under 35 USC §119 to provisional application No. 60/069,346, filed Dec. 12, 1997, the entire disclosures of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Proto-oncogenes that encode growth factors and growth factor receptors have been identified to play important roles in the pathogenesis of various human malignancies, including breast cancer. It has been found that the human ErbB2 gene (erbB2, also known as her2, or c-erbB-2), which encodes a 185-kd transmembrane glycoprotein receptor ($p185^{HER2}$) related to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), is overexpressed in about 25% to 30% of human breast cancer (Slamon et al., *Science* 235:177-182 [1987]; Slamon et al., *Science* 244:707-712[1989]).

Several lines of evidence support a direct role for ErbB2 in the pathogenesis and clinical aggressiveness of ErbB2-overexpressing tumors. The introduction of ErbB2 into non-neoplastic cells has been shown to cause their malignant transformation (Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* USA 84:7159-7163 [1987]; DiFiore et al., *Science* 237:178-182 [1987]). Transgenic mice that express HER2 were found to develop mammary tumors (Guy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:10578-10582 [1992]).

Antibodies directed against human erbB2 protein products and proteins encoded by the rat equivalent of the erbB2 gene (neu) have been described. Drebin et al., *Cell* 41:695-706 (1985) refer to an IgG2a monoclonal antibody which is directed against the rat neu gene product. This antibody called 7.16.4 causes down-modulation of cell surface p185 expression on B 104-1-1 cells (NIH-3T3 cells transfected with the neu proto-oncogene) and inhibits colony formation of these cells. In Drebin et al *PNAS* (USA) 83:9129-9133 (1986), the 7.16.4 antibody was shown to inhibit the tumorigenic growth of neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells as well as rat neuroblastoma cells (from which the neu oncogene was initially isolated) implanted into nude mice. Drebin et al. in *Oncogene* 2:387-394 (1988) discuss the production of a panel of antibodies against the rat neu gene product. All of the antibodies were found to exert a cytostatic effect on the growth of neu-transformed cells suspended in soft agar. Antibodies of the IgM, IgG2a and IgG2b isotypes were able to mediate significant in vitro lysis of neu-transformed cells in the presence of complement, whereas none of the antibodies were able to mediate high levels of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) of the neu-transformed cells. Drebin et al. *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions on the p185 molecule result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice. Biological effects

of anti-neu antibodies are reviewed in Myers et al., *Meth. Enzym.* 198:277-290 (1991). See also WO94/22478 published Oct. 13, 1994.

Hudziak et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 9(3):1165-1172 (1989) describe the generation of a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5 which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel, including 7C2 and 7F3, reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. Hudziak et al. conclude that the effect of the 4D5 antibody on SKBR3 cells was cytostatic rather than cytotoxic, since SKBR3 cells resumed growth at a nearly normal rate following removal of the antibody from the medium. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize $p185^{erbB2}$-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-α. See also WO89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. The anti-ErbB2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. are further characterized in Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al In Vitro 26(3):59A (1990); Sarup et al. *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11(2): 979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. *Cancer Research* 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:14300-5 (1991); and D'souza et al. *Proc. Nail Acad. Sci.* 91:7202-7206 (1994).

Tagliabue et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933-937 (1991) describe two antibodies which were selected for their reactivity on the lung adenocarcinoma cell line (Calu-3) which overexpresses ErbB2. One of the antibodies, called MGR3, was found to internalize, induce phosphorylation of ErbB2, and inhibit tumor cell growth in vitro.

McKenzie et al. *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies with varying epitope specificities, including the antibody designated TA1. This TA1 antibody was found to induce accelerated endocytosis of ErbB2 (see Maier et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:5361-5369[1991]). Bacus et al. *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350-362 (1990) reported that the TA1 antibody induced maturation of the breast cancer cell lines AU-565 (which overexpresses the erbB2 gene) and MCF-7 (which does not). Inhibition of growth and acquisition of a mature phenotype in these cells was found to be associated with reduced levels of ErbB2 receptor at the cell surface and transient increased levels in the cytoplasm.

Stancovski et al. *PNAS* (USA) 88:8691-8695 (1991) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies, injected them i.p. into nude mice and evaluated their effect on tumor growth of murine fibroblasts transformed by overexpression of the erbB2 gene. Various levels of tumor inhibition were detected for four of the antibodies, but one of the antibodies (N28) consistently stimulated tumor growth. Monoclonal antibody N28 induced significant phosphorylation of the ErbB2 receptor, whereas the other four antibodies generally displayed low or no phosphorylation-inducing activity. The effect of the anti-ErbB2 antibodies on proliferation of SKBR3 cells was also assessed. In this SKBR3 cell proliferation assay, two of the antibodies (N12 and N29) caused a reduction in cell proliferation relative to control. The ability of the various antibodies to induce cell lysis in vitro via complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) and antibody-mediated cell-dependent cytotoxicity (ADCC) was assessed, with the authors of

this paper concluding that the inhibitory function of the antibodies was not attributed significantly to CDC or ADCC.

Bacus et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2580-2589 (1992) further characterized the antibodies described in Bacus et al. (1990) and Stancovski et al. of the preceding paragraphs. Extending the i.p. studies of Stancovski et al., the effect of the antibodies after i.v. injection into nude mice harboring mouse fibroblasts overexpressing human ErbB2 was assessed. As observed in their earlier work, N28 accelerated tumor growth whereas N12 and N29 significantly inhibited growth of the ErbB2-expressing cells. Partial tumor inhibition was also observed with the N24 antibody. Bacus et al. also tested the ability of the antibodies to promote a mature phenotype in the human breast cancer cell lines AU-565 and MDA-MB453 (which overexpress ErbB2) as well as MCF-7 (containing low levels of the receptor). Bacus et al. saw a correlation between tumor inhibition in vivo and cellular differentiation; the tumor-stimulatory antibody N28 had no effect on differentiation, and the tumor inhibitory action of the N12, N29 and N24 antibodies correlated with the extent of differentiation they induced.

Xu et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401-408 (1993) evaluated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies for their epitope binding specificities, as well as their ability to inhibit anchorage-independent and anchorage-dependent growth of SKBR3 cells (by individual antibodies and in combinations), modulate cell-surface ErbB2, and inhibit ligand stimulated anchorage-independent growth. See also WO94/00136 published Jan. 6, 1994 and Kasprzyk et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2771-2776 (1992) concerning anti-ErbB2 antibody combinations. Other anti-ErbB2 antibodies are discussed in Hancock et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:3758-3765 (1994); and Harwerth et al. *J Biol. Chem.* 267:15160-15167 (1992).

A recombinant humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody (a humanized version of the murine anti-ErbB2 antibody 4D5, referred to as rhuMAb HER2 or HERCEPTIN®) has been clinically active in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14:737-744 [1996]).

ErbB2 overexpression is commonly regarded as a predictor of a poor prognosis, especially in patients with primary disease that involves axillary lymph nodes (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra Ravdin and Chamness, *Gene* 159:19-27 [1995]; and Hynes and Stern, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1198: 165-184 [1994]), and has been linked to sensitivity and/or resistance to hormone therapy and chemotherapeutic regimens, including CMF (cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluoruracil) and anthracyclines (Baselga et al., *Oncology* 11(3 Suppl 2):43-48 [1997]). However, despite the association of ErbB2 overexpression with poor prognosis, the odds of HER2-positive patients responding clinically to treatment with taxanes were greater than three times those of HER2-negative patients (Ibid). rhuMab HER2 was shown to enhance the activity of paclitaxel (TAXOL®) and doxorubicin against breast cancer xenografts in nude mice injected with BT-474 human breast adenocarcinoma cells, which express high levels of HER2 (Baselga et al., *Breast Cancer, Proceedings of ASCO*, Vol. 13, Abstract 53 [1994]).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by overexpression of ErbB2, and is based on the recognition that while treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibodies markedly enhances the clinical benefit of the use of chemotherapeutic agents in general, a syndrome of myocardial dysfunction that has been observed as a side-effect of anthracycline derivatives is increased by the administration of anti-ErbB2 antibodies.

Accordingly, the invention concerns a method for the treatment of a human patient susceptible to or diagnosed with a disorder characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline derivative, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient.

The disorder preferably is a benign or malignant tumor characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor, e.g. a cancer, such as, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer. The chemotherapeutic agent preferably is a taxoid, such as TAXOL® (paclitaxel) or a TAXOL® derivative.

Although an antiproliferative effect is sufficient, in a preferred embodiment, the anti-ErbB2 antibody is capable of inducing cell death or is capable of inducing apoptosis. Preferred anti-ErbB2 antibodies bind the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor, and preferably bind to the epitope 4D5 or 3H4 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence. More preferably, the antibody is the antibody 4D5, most preferably in a humanized form.

The method of the present invention is particularly suitable for the treatment of breast or ovarian cancer, characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to avoid the use of anthracycline-type chemotherapeutics in combination with the composition.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** shows epitope-mapping of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 as determined by truncation mutant analysis and site-directed mutagenesis (Nakamura et al. *J. of Virology* 67(10):6179-6191 [October 1993]; Renz et al. *J. Cell Biol.* 125(6):1395-1406 [June 1994]). The anti-proliferative MAbs 4D5 and 3H4 bind adjacent to the transmembrane domain.

The various ErbB2-ECD truncations or point mutations were prepared from cDNA using polymerase chain reaction technology. The ErbB2 mutants were expressed as gD fusion proteins in a mammalian expression plasmid. This expression plasmid uses the cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer with SV40 termination and polyadenylation signals located downstream of the inserted cDNA. Plasmid DNA was transfected into 293S cells. One day following transfection, the cells were metabolically labeled overnight in methionine and cysteine-free, low glucose DMEM containing 1% dialyzed fetal bovine serum and 25 μCi each of ^{35}S methionine and ^{35}S cysteine. Supernatants were harvested either the ErbB2 MAbs or control antibodies were added to the supernatant

and incubated 2-4 hours at 4° C. The complexes were precipitated, applied to a 10-20% Tricine SDS gradient gel and electrophoresed at 100 V. The gel was electroblotted onto a membrane and analyzed by autoradiography. SEQ ID NOs:8 and 9 depict the 3H4 and 4D5 epitopes, respectively.

FIG. **2** depicts with underlining the amino acid sequence of Domain 1 of ErbB2 (SEQ ID NO: 1). Bold amino acids indicate the location of the epitope recognized by MAbs 7C2 and 7F3 as determined by deletion mapping, i.e. the "7C2/7F3 epitope" (SEQ ID NO:2).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

I. Definitions

The terms "HER2", "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" are used interchangeably. Unless indicated otherwise, the terms "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" and "HER2" when used herein refer to the human protein and "her2", "erbB2" and "c-erb-B2" refer to human gene. The human erbB2 gene and ErbB2 protein are, for example, described in Semba et al., *PNAS* (USA) 82:6497-6501 (1985) and Yamamoto et al. *Nature* 319:230-234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363). ErbB2 comprises four domains (Domains 1-4).

The "epitope 4D5" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) binds. This epitope is close to the transmembrane region of ErbB2. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 4D5 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed (see FIG. **1**) to assess whether the antibody binds to the 4D5 epitope of ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more residues in the region from about residue 529, e.g. about residue 561 to about residue 625, inclusive).

The "epitope 3H4" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 3H4 binds. This epitope is shown in FIG. **1**, and includes residues from about 541 to about 599, inclusive, in the amino acid sequence of ErbB2 extracellular domain.

The "epitope 7C2/7F3" is the region at the N terminus of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the 7C2 and/or 7F3 antibodies (each deposited with the ATCC, see below) bind. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 7C2/7F3 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to establish whether the antibody binds to the 7C2/7F3 epitope on ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more of residues in the region from about residue 22 to about residue 53 of ErbB2; SEQ ID NO:2).

The term "induces cell death" or "capable of inducing cell death" refers to the ability of the antibody to make a viable cell become nonviable. The "cell" here is one which expresses the ErbB2 receptor, especially where the cell overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. A cell which "overexpresses" ErbB2 has significantly higher than normal ErbB2 levels compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type. Preferably, the cell is a cancer cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Cell death in vitro may be determined in the absence of complement and immune effector cells to distinguish cell death induced by antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Thus, the assay for cell death may be performed using heat inactivated serum (i.e. in the absence of complement) and in the absence of immune effector cells. To determine whether the antibody is able to induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as evaluated by uptake of propidium iodide (PI), trypan blue (see Moore et al. *Cytotechnology* 17:1-11 [1995]) or 7AAD can be assessed relative to untreated cells. Preferred cell death-inducing antibodies are those which induce P1 uptake in the "P1 uptake assay in BT474 cells".

The phrase "induces apoptosis" or "capable of inducing apoptosis" refers to the ability of the antibody to induce programmed cell death as determined by binding of annexin V, fragmentation of DNA, cell shrinkage, dilation of endoplasmic reticulum, cell fragmentation, and/or formation of membrane vesicles (called apoptotic bodies). The cell is one which overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably the "cell" is a tumor cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3 cell, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Various methods are available for evaluating the cellular events associated with apoptosis. For example, phosphatidyl serine (PS) translocation can be measured by annexin binding; DNA fragmentation can be evaluated through DNA laddering as disclosed in the example herein; and nuclear/chromatin condensation along with DNA fragmentation can be evaluated by any increase in hypodiploid cells. Preferably, the antibody which induces apoptosis is one which results in about 2 to 50 fold, preferably about 5 to 50 fold, and most preferably about 10 to 50 fold, induction of annexin binding relative to untreated cell in an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" (see below).

Sometimes the pro-apoptotic antibody will be one which blocks HRG binding/activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 complex (e.g. 7F3 antibody). In other situations, the antibody is one which does not significantly block activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 receptor complex by HRG (e.g. 7C2). Further, the antibody may be one like 7C2 which, while inducing apoptosis, does not induce a large reduction in the percent of cells in S phase (e.g. one which only induces about 0-10% reduction in the percent of these cells relative to control).

The antibody of interest may be one like 7C2 which binds specifically to human ErbB2 and does not significantly cross-react with other proteins such as those encoded by the erbB1, erbB3 and/or erbB4 genes. Sometimes, the antibody may not significantly cross-react with the rat neu protein, e.g., as described in Schecter et al. *Nature* 312:513 (1984) and Drebin et al., *Nature* 312:545-548 (1984). In such embodiments, the extent of binding of the antibody to these proteins (e.g., cell surface binding to endogenous receptor) will be less than about 10% as determined by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA).

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide which activates the ErbB2-ErbB3 and ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complexes (i.e. induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the complex upon binding thereto). Various heregulin polypeptides encompassed by this term are disclosed in Holmes et al., *Science,* 256:1205-1210 (1992); WO 92/20798; Wen et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.,* 14(3):1909-1919 (1994); and Marchionni et al., *Nature,* 362:312-318 (1993), for example. The term includes biologically active fragments and/or variants of a naturally occurring HRG polypeptide, such as an EGF-like domain fragment thereof (e.g. $HRG\beta1_{177-244}$).

The "ErbB2-ErbB3 protein complex" and "ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complex" are noncovalently associated oligomers of the ErbB2 receptor and the ErbB3 receptor or ErbB4 receptor, respectively. The complexes form when a cell expressing both of these receptors is exposed to HRG and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., *J. Biol. Chem.,* 269(20): 14661-14665 (1994).

"Antibodies" (Abs) and "immunoglobulins" (Igs) are glycoproteins having the same structural characteristics. While antibodies exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen, immunoglobulins include both antibodies and other antibody-like molecules which lack antigen specificity. Polypeptides of the latter kind are, for example, produced at low levels by the lymph system and at increased levels by myelomas.

"Native antibodies" and "native immunoglobulins" are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies among the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light-chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light- and heavy-chain variable domains.

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) or hypervariable regions both in the light-chain and the heavy-chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework region (FR). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FR regions, largely adopting a β-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *NIH Publ. No.* 91-3242, Vol. 1, pages 647-669 [1991]). The constant domains are not involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen-binding fragments, called "Fab" fragments, each with a single antigen-binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. Pepsin treatment yields an $F(ab')_2$ fragment that has two antigen-combining sites and is still capable of cross-linking antigen.

"Fv" is the minimum antibody fragment which contains a complete antigen-recognition and -binding site. This region consists of a dimer of one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain in tight, non-covalent association. It is in this configuration that the three CDRs of each variable domain interact to define an antigen-binding site on the surface of the V_H-V_L dimer. Collectively, the six CDRs confer antigen-binding specificity to the antibody. However, even a single variable domain (or half of an Fv comprising only three CDRs specific for an antigen) has the ability to recognize and bind antigen, although at a lower affinity than the entire binding site.

The Fab fragment also contains the constant domain of the light chain and the first constant domain (CH1) of the heavy chain. Fab' fragments differ from Fab fragments by the addition of a few residues at the carboxy terminus of the heavy chain CH1 domain including one or more cysteines from the antibody hinge region. Fab'-SH is the designation herein for Fab' in which the cysteine residue(s) of the constant domains bear a free thiol group. $F(ab')_2$ antibody fragments originally were produced as pairs of Fab' fragments which have hinge cysteines between them. Other chemical couplings of antibody fragments are also known.

The "light chains" of antibodies (immunoglobulins) from any vertebrate species can be assigned to one of two clearly distinct types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequences of their constant domains.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called α, δ, ε, γ, and μ, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

The term "antibody" is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers intact monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g. bispecific antibodies) formed from at least two intact antibodies, and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of an intact antibody, preferably the antigen binding or variable region of the intact antibody. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, and Fv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies (Zapata et al. *Protein Eng.* 8(10):1057-1062 [1995]); single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to conventional (polyclonal) antibody preparations which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they are synthesized by the hybridoma culture, uncontaminated by other immunoglobulins. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies"

may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991), for example.

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*. USA, 81:6851-6855 [1984]).

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric immunoglobulins, immunoglobulin chains or fragments thereof (such as Fv, Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$ or other antigen-binding subsequences of antibodies) which contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementarity determining region (CDR) of the recipient are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat or rabbit having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, Fv framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues which are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences. These modifications are made to further refine and maximize antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the CDRs correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Reichmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.,* 2:593-596 (1992). The humanized antibody includes a PRIMATIZED™ antibody wherein the antigen-binding region of the antibody is derived from an antibody produced by immunizing macaque monkeys with the antigen of interest.

"Single-chain Fv" or "sFv" antibody fragments comprise the V_H and V_L domains of antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Preferably, the Fv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains which enables the sFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding. For a review of sFv see Plückthun in *The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies*, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 269-315 (1994).

The term "diabodies" refers to small antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites, which fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) in the same polypeptide chain (V_H-V_L). By using a linker that is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain, the domains are forced to pair with the complementary domains of another chain and create two antigen-binding sites. Diabodies are described more fully in, for example, EP 404,097; WO 93/11161; and Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*. USA, 90:6444-6448 (1993).

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the antibody will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

As used herein, the term "salvage receptor binding epitope" refers to an epitope of the Fc region of an IgG molecule (e.g., IgG_1, IgG_2, IgG_3, or IgG_4) that is responsible for increasing the in vivo serum half-life of the IgG molecule.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time to disease progression (TTP), or determining the response rates (RR) (see the Example below).

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90} and Re^{186}), chemo-

therapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include adriamycin, doxorubicin, epirubicin, 5-fluorouracil, cytosine arabinoside ("Ara-C"), cyclophosphamide, thiotepa, busulfan, cytoxin, taxoids, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and docetaxel (TAXOTERE®, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France), methotrexate, cisplatin, melphalan, vinblastine, bleomycin, etoposide, ifosfamide, mitomycin C, mitoxantrone, vincristine, vinorelbine, carboplatin, teniposide, daunomycin, carminomycin, aminopterin, dactinomycin, mitomycins, esperamicins (see U.S. Pat. No. 4,675,187), melphalan and other related nitrogen mustards. Also included in this definition are hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as tamoxifen and onapristone.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB2-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB2 overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce GI arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest GI also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (WB Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

"Doxorubicin" is an athracycline antibiotic. The full chemical name of doxorubicin is (8S-cis)-10-[(3-amino-2,3,6-trideoxy-α-L-lyxo-hexopyranosyl)oxy]-7,8,9,10-tetrahydro-6,8,11-trihydroxy-8-(hydroxyacetyl)-1-methoxy-5,12-naphthacenedione.

The term "cytokine" is a generic term for proteins released by one cell population which act on another cell as intercellular mediators. Examples of such cytokines are lymphokines, monokines, and traditional polypeptide hormones. Included among the cytokines are growth hormone such as human growth hormone, N-methionyl human growth hormone, and bovine growth hormone; parathyroid hormone; thyroxine; insulin; proinsulin; relaxin; prorelaxin; glycoprotein hormones such as follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH); hepatic growth factor; fibroblast growth factor; prolactin; placental lactogen; tumor necrosis factor-α and -β; mullerian-inhibiting substance; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor; integrin; thrombopoietin (TPO); nerve growth factors such as NGF-β; platelet-growth factor; transforming growth factors (TGFs) such as TGF-α and TGF-β; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II; erythropoietin (EPO); osteoinductive factors; interferons such as interferon-α, -β, and -γ; colony stimulating factors (CSFs) such as macrophage-CSF (M-CSF); granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF); and granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF); interleukins (ILs) such as IL-1, IL-1a, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, L-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12; a tumor necrosis factor such as TNF-α or TNF-β; and other polypeptide factors including LIF and kit ligand (KL). As used herein, the term cytokine includes proteins from natural sources or from recombinant cell culture and biologically active equivalents of the native sequence cytokines.

The term "prodrug" as used in this application refers to a precursor or derivative form of a pharmaceutically active substance that is less cytotoxic to tumor cells compared to the parent drug and is capable of being enzymatically activated or converted into the more active parent form. See, e.g., Wilman, "Prodrugs in Cancer Chemotherapy" *Biochemical Society Transactions*, 14, pp. 375-382, 615th Meeting Belfast (1986) and Stella et al., "Prodrugs: A Chemical Approach to Targeted Drug Delivery," *Directed Drug Delivery*, Borchardt et al., (ed.), pp. 247-267, Humana Press (1985). The prodrugs of this invention include, but are not limited to, phosphate-containing prodrugs, thiophosphate-containing prodrugs, sulfate-containing prodrugs, peptide-containing prodrugs, D-amino acid-modified prodrugs, glycosylated prodrugs, β-lactamcontaining prodrugs, optionally substituted phenoxyacetamide-containing prodrugs or optionally substituted phenylacetamide-containing prodrugs, 5-fluorocytosine and other 5-fluorouridine prodrugs which can be converted into the more active cytotoxic free drug. Examples of cytotoxic drugs that can be derivatized into a prodrug form for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, those chemotherapeutic agents described above.

By "solid phase" is meant a non-aqueous matrix to which the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention can adhere. Examples of solid phases encompassed herein include those formed partially or entirely of glass (e.g., controlled pore glass), polysaccharides (e.g., agarose), polyacrylamides, polystyrene, polyvinyl alcohol and silicones. In certain embodiments, depending on the context, the solid phase can comprise the well of an assay plate; in others it is a purification column (e.g., an affinity chromatography column). This term also includes a discontinuous solid phase of discrete particles, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,275,149.

A "liposome" is a small vesicle composed of various types of lipids, phospholipids and/or surfactant which is useful for delivery of a drug (such as the anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein and, optionally, a chemotherapeutic agent) to a mammal. The components of the liposome are commonly arranged in a bilayer formation, similar to the lipid arrangement of biological membranes.

The term "package insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

II. Production of anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

A description follows as to exemplary techniques for the production of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention. The ErbB2 antigen to be used for production of antibodies may be, e.g., a soluble form of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 or a portion thereof, containing the desired epitope. Alternatively, cells expressing ErbB2 at their cell surface (e.g. NIH-3T3 cells transformed to overexpress ErbB2; or a carcinoma cell line such as SKBR3 cells, see Stancovski et al. *PNAS* (USA) 88:8691-8695 [1991]) can be used to generate antibodies. Other forms of ErbB2 useful for generating antibodies will be apparent to those skilled in the art.

(i) Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl_2$, or $R_1N{=}C{=}NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 μg or 5 μg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with ⅕ to 1/10 the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(ii) Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies are obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies.

For example, the monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.,* 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 [Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987]).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

The binding affinity of the monoclonal antibody can, for example, be determined by the Scatchard analysis of Munson et al., *Anal. Biochem.,* 107:220 (1980).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of murine antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Review articles on recombinant expression in bacteria of DNA encoding the antibody include Skerra et al., *Curr. Opinion in Immunol.,* 5:256-262 (1993) and Pluckthun, *Immunol. Revs.,* 130: 151-188 (1992).

In a further embodiment, antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature,* 348: 552-554(1990). Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628(1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology,* 10:779-783 [1992]), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.,* 21:2265-2266 [1993]). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., *Proc.*

Natl Acad. Sci. USA, 81:6851 [1984]), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

(iii) Humanized and Human Antibodies

Methods for humanizing non-human antibodies are well known in the art. Preferably, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525(1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., *Science,* 239:1534-1536 [1988]), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "bestfit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework region (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 196:901 [1987]). Another method uses a particular framework region derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*. USA, 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immnol.,* 151:2623 [1993]).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*. USA, 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature,* 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., *Year in Immuno.,* 7:33 (1993). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 227:381 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 [1991]).

(iv) Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al., *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107-117 (1992) and Brennan et al., *Science,* 229:81 [1985]). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form $F(ab')_2$ fragments (Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163-167 [1992]). According to another approach, $F(ab')_2$ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv). See WO 93/16185.

(v) Bispecific Antibodies

Bispecific antibodies are antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of the ErbB2 protein. For example, one arm may bind an epitope in Domain 1 of ErbB2 such as the 7C2/7F3 epitope, the other may bind a different ErbB2 epitope, e.g. the 4D5 epitope. Other such antibodies may combine an ErbB2 binding site with binding site(s) for EGFR, ErbB3 and/or ErbB4. Alternatively, an anti-ErbB2 arm may be combined with an arm which binds to a triggering molecule on a leukocyte such as a T-cell receptor molecule (e.g. CD2 or CD3), or Fc receptors for IgG (FcγR), such as FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16) so as to focus cellular defense mechanisms to the ErbB2-expressing cell. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express ErbB2. These antibodies possess an ErbB2-binding arm and an arm which binds the cytotoxic agent (e.g. saporin, anti-interferon-α, vinca alkaloid, ricin A chain, methotrexate or radioactive isotope hapten). Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments (e.g. $F(ab')_2$bispecific antibodies).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature,* 305:537-539 [1983]). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity

chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.,* 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology,* 121:210 (1986).

According to another approach described in WO96/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science,* 229:81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate $F(ab')_2$ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli,* which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.,* 175:217-225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody $F(ab')_2$ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.,* 148(5):1547-1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., Proc. *Natl. Acad. Sci.* USA, 90:6444-6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.,* 152:5368 (1994).

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al. *J. Immunol.* 147:60 (1991).

(vi) Screening for Antibodies with the Desired Properties

Techniques for generating antibodies have been described above. Those antibodies having the characteristics described herein are selected.

To select for antibodies which induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as indicated by, e.g., PI, trypan blue or 7AAD uptake is assessed relative to control. The preferred assay is the "PI uptake assay using BT474 cells". According to this assay, BT474 cells (which can be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection [Rockville, Md.]) are cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (D-MEM): Ham's F-12 (50:50) supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS (Hyclone) and 2 mM L-glutamine. (Thus, the assay is performed in the absence of complement and immune effector cells). The BT474 cells are seeded at a density of 3×10^6 per dish in 100×20 mm dishes and allowed to attach overnight. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the appropriate

MAb. The cells are incubated for a 3 day time period. Following each treatment, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 5 minutes at 4° C., the pellet resuspended in 3 ml ice cold Ca^{2+} binding buffer (10 mM Hepes, pH 7.4, 140 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM $CaCl_2$) and aliquoted into 35 mm strainer-capped 12×75 tubes (1 ml per tube, 3 tubes per treatment group) for removal of cell clumps. Tubes then receive PI (10 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of cell death as determined by PI uptake are selected.

In order to select for antibodies which induce apoptosis, an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" is available. The BT474 cells are cultured and seeded in dishes as discussed in the preceding paragraph. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the MAb. Following a three day incubation period, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged, resuspended in Ca^{2+} binding buffer and aliquoted into tubes as discussed above for the cell death assay. Tubes then receive labeled annexin (e.g. annexin V-FTIC) (1 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of annexin binding relative to control are selected as apoptosis-inducing antibodies.

In addition to the annexin binding assay, a "DNA staining assay using BT474 cells" is available. In order to perform this assay, BT474 cells which have been treated with the antibody of interest as described in the preceding two paragraphs are incubated with 9 μg/ml HOECHST 33342™ for 2 hr at 37° C., then analyzed on an EPICS ELITE™ flow cytometer (Coulter Corporation) using MODFIT LT™ software (Verity Software House). Antibodies which induce a change in the percentage of apoptotic cells which is 2 fold or greater (and preferably 3 fold or greater) than untreated cells (up to 100% apoptotic cells) may be selected as pro-apoptotic antibodies using this assay.

To screen for antibodies which bind to an epitope on ErbB2 bound by an antibody of interest, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed by methods known in the art.

To identify anti-ErbB2 antibodies which inhibit growth of SKBR3 cells in cell culture by 50-100%, the SKBR3 assay described in WO89/06692 can be performed. According to this assay, SKBR3 cells are grown in a 1:1 mixture of F12 and DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, glutamine and penicillinstreptomycin. The SKBR3 cells are plated at 20,000 cells in a 35 mm cell culture dish (2 mls/35 mm dish). 2.5 μg/ml of the anti-ErbB2 antibody is added per dish. After six days, the number of cells, compared to untreated cells are counted using an electronic COULTER™ cell counter. Those antibodies which inhibit growth of the SKBR3 cells by 50-100% are selected for combination with the apoptotic antibodies as desired.

(vii) Effector Function Engineering

It may be desirable to modify the antibody of the invention with respect to effector function, so as to enhance the effectiveness of the antibody in treating cancer, for example. For example cysteine residue(s) may be introduced in the Fc region, thereby allowing interchain disulfide bond formation in this region. The homodimeric antibody thus generated may have improved internalization capability and/or increased complement-mediated cell killing and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). See Caron et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 176:1191-1195 (1992) and Shopes, B. *J. Immunol.* 148:2918-2922 (1992). Homodimeric antibodies with enhanced anti-tumor activity may also be prepared using heterobifunctional cross-linkers as described in Wolff et al. *Cancer Research* 53:2560-2565 (1993). Alternatively, an antibody can be engineered which has dual Fc regions and may thereby have enhanced complement lysis and ADCC capabilities. See Stevenson et al. *Anti-Cancer Drug Design* 3:219-230 (1989).

(viii) Immunoconjugates

The invention also pertains to immunoconjugates comprising the antibody described herein conjugated to a cytotoxic agent such as a chemotherapeutic agent, toxin (e.g. an enzymatically active toxin of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof), or a radioactive isotope (i.e., a radioconjugate).

Chemotherapeutic agents useful in the generation of such immunoconjugates have been described above. Enzymatically active toxins and fragments thereof which can be used include diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, *Aleurites fordii* proteins, dianthin proteins, *Phytolaca americana* proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), momordica charantia inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin and the tricothecenes. A variety of radionuclides are available for the production of radioconjugated anti-ErbB2 antibodies. Examples include ^{212}Bi, ^{131}I, ^{131}In, ^{90}Y and ^{186}Re.

Conjugates of the antibody and cytotoxic agent are made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithiol) propionate (SPDP), iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCL), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutaraldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as bis (p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine), bis-diazonium derivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as tolyene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). For example, a ricin immunotoxin can be prepared as described in Vitetta et al. *Science* 238:1098 (1987). Carbon-14-labeled 1-isothiocyanatobenzyl-3-methyldiethylene triaminepentaacetic acid (MXDTPA) is an exemplary chelating agent for conjugation of radionucleotide to the antibody. See WO94/11026.

In another embodiment, the antibody may be conjugated to a "receptor" (such streptavidin) for utilization in tumor pretargeting wherein the antibody-receptor conjugate is administered to the patient, followed by removal of unbound conjugate from the circulation using a clearing agent and then administration of a "ligand" (e.g. avidin) which is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g. a radionucleotide).

(ix) Immunoliposomes

The anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein may also be formulated as immunoliposomes. Liposomes containing the antibody are prepared by methods known in the art, such as described in Epstein et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* USA, 82:3688 (1985); Hwang et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* USA, 77:4030 (1980); and U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545. Liposomes with enhanced circulation time are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,556.

Particularly useful liposomes can be generated by the reverse phase evaporation method with a lipid composition comprising phosphatidylcholine, cholesterol and PEG-de-

rivatized phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE). Liposomes are extruded through filters of defined pore size to yield liposomes with the desired diameter. Fab' fragments of the antibody of the present invention can be conjugated to the liposomes as described in Martin et al. *Biol. Chem.* 257: 286-288 (1982) via a disulfide interchange reaction. A chemotherapeutic agent is optionally contained within the liposome. See Gabizon et al. *J. National Cancer Inst.* 81(19)1484 (1989).

(x) Antibody Dependent Enzyme Mediated Prodrug Therapy (ADEPT)

The antibodies of the present invention may also be used in ADEPT by conjugating the antibody to a prodrug-activating enzyme which converts a prodrug (e.g. a peptidyl chemotherapeutic agent, see WO81/01145) to an active anti-cancer drug. See, for example, WO. 88/07378 and U.S. Pat. No. 4,975,278.

The enzyme component of the immunoconjugate useful for ADEPT includes any enzyme capable of acting on a prodrug in such a way so as to covert it into its more active, cytotoxic form.

Enzymes that are useful in the method of this invention include, but are not limited to, alkaline phosphatase useful for converting phosphate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; arylsulfatase useful for converting sulfate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; cytosine deaminase useful for converting non-toxic 5-fluorocytosine into the anti-cancer drug, 5-fluorouracil; proteases, such as serratia protease, thermolysin, subtilisin, carboxypeptidases and cathepsins (such as cathepsins B and L), that are useful for converting peptide-containing prodrugs into free drugs; D-alanylcarboxypeptidases, useful for converting prodrugs that contain D-amino acid substituents; carbohydrate-cleaving enzymes such as β-galactosidase and neuraminidase useful for converting glycosylated prodrugs into free drugs; β-lactamase useful for converting drugs derivatized with β-lactams into free drugs; and penicillin amidases, such as penicillin V amidase or penicillin G amidase, useful for converting drugs derivatized at their amine nitrogens with phenoxyacetyl or phenylacetyl groups, respectively, into free drugs. Alternatively, antibodies with enzymatic activity, also known in the art as "abzymes", can be used to convert the prodrugs of the invention into free active drugs (see, e.g., Massey, *Nature* 328:457-458 [1987]). Antibody-abzyme conjugates can be prepared as described herein for delivery of the abzyme to a tumor cell population.

The enzymes of this invention can be covalently bound to the anti-ErbB2 antibodies by techniques well known in the art such as the use of the heterobifunctional crosslinking reagents discussed above. Alternatively, fusion proteins comprising at least the antigen binding region of an antibody of the invention linked to at least a functionally active portion of an enzyme of the invention can be constructed using recombinant DNA techniques well known in the art (see, e.g., Neuberger et al., *Nature,* 312:604-608 [1984]).

(xi) Antibody-salvage Receptor Binding Epitope Fusions

In certain embodiments of the invention, it may be desirable to use an antibody fragment, rather than an intact antibody, to increase tumor penetration, for example. In this case, it may be desirable to modify the antibody fragment in order to increase its serum half life. This may be achieved, for example, by incorporation of a salvage receptor binding epitope into the antibody fragment (e.g. by mutation of the appropriate region in the antibody fragment or by incorporating the epitope into a peptide tag that is then fused to the antibody fragment at either end or in the middle, e.g., by DNA or peptide synthesis).

A systematic method for preparing such an antibody variant having an increased in vivo half-life comprises several steps. The first involves identifying the sequence and conformation of a salvage receptor binding epitope of an Fc region of an IgG molecule. Once this epitope is identified, the sequence of the antibody of interest is modified to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. After the sequence is mutated, the antibody variant is tested to see if it has a longer in vivo half-life than that of the original antibody. If the antibody variant does not have a longer in vivo half-life upon testing, its sequence is further altered to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. The altered antibody is tested for longer in vivo half-life, and this process is continued until a molecule is obtained that exhibits a longer in vivo half-life.

The salvage receptor binding epitope being thus incorporated into the antibody of interest is any suitable such epitope as defined above, and its nature will depend, e.g., on the type of antibody being modified. The transfer is made such that the antibody of interest still possesses the biological activities described herein.

The epitope preferably constitutes a region wherein any one or more amino acid residues from one or two loops of a Fc domain are transferred to an analogous position of the antibody fragment. Even more preferably, three or more residues from one or two loops of the Fc domain are transferred. Still more preferred, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region (e.g., of an IgG) and transferred to the CH1, CH3, or V_H region, or more than one such region, of the antibody. Alternatively, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region and transferred to the C_L region or V_L region, or both, of the antibody fragment.

In one most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope comprises the sequence (5' to 3'): PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3), and optionally further comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of HQSLGTQ (SEQ ID NO:4), HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7), particularly where the antibody fragment is a Fab or $F(ab')_2$. In another most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope is a polypeptide containing the sequence(s)(5' to 3'): HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7) and the sequence: PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3).

(xii) Purification of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

When using recombinant techniques, the antibody can be produced intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. If the antibody is produced intracellularly, as a first step, the particulate debris, either host cells or lysed fragments, is removed, for example, by centrifugation or ultrafiltration. Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163-167 (1992) describe a procedure for isolating antibodies which are secreted to the periplasmic space of *E. coli*. Briefly, cell paste is thawed in the presence of sodium acetate (pH 3.5), EDTA, and phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) over about 30 min. Cell debris can be removed by centrifugation. Where the antibody is secreted into the medium, supernatants from such expression systems are preferably first concentrated using a commercially available protein concentration filter, for example, an Amicon or Millipore Pellicon ultrafiltration unit. A protease inhibitor such as PMSF may be included in any of the foregoing steps to inhibit proteolysis and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants.

The antibody composition prepared from the cells can be purified using, for example, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, and affinity chromatogra-

phy, with affinity chromatography being the preferred purification technique. The suitability of protein A as an affinity ligand depends on the species and isotype of any immunoglobulin Fc domain that is present in the antibody. Protein A can be used to purify antibodies that are based on human γ1, γ2, or γ4 heavy chains (Lindmark et al., *J. Immnol. Meth.* 62:1-13 [1983]). Protein G is recommended for all mouse isotypes and for human γ3 (Guss et al., *EMBO J.* 5:15671575 [1986]). The matrix to which the affinity ligand is attached is most often agarose, but other matrices are available. Mechanically stable matrices such as controlled pore glass or poly(styrenedivinyl)benzene allow for faster flow rates and shorter processing times than can be achieved with agarose. Where the antibody comprises a C_H3 domain, the Bakerbond ABX™ resin (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, N.J.) is useful for purification. Other techniques for protein purification such as fractionation on an ion-exchange column, ethanol precipitation, Reverse Phase HPLC, chromatography on silica, chromatography on heparin SEPHAROSE™ chromatography on an anion or cation exchange resin (such as a polyaspartic acid column), chromatofocusing, SDS-PAGE, and ammonium sulfate precipitation are also available depending on the antibody to be recovered.

Following any preliminary purification step(s), the mixture comprising the antibody of interest and contaminants may be subjected to low pH hydrophobic interaction chromatography using an elution buffer at a pH between about 2.5-4.5, preferably performed at low salt concentrations (e.g. from about 0-0.25M salt).

III. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. [1980]), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG).

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2 (e.g. an antibody which binds a different epitope on ErbB2), ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial factor (VEGF) in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, cytokine or growth inhibitory agent, provided that the cytotoxic agent is other than an anthracycline derivative, e.g. doxorubicin, or epirubicin. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nanoparticles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S—S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

IV. Treatment with the Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB2 receptor. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies of the invention are administered to a human patient, in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous administration of the antibody is preferred.

The treatment of the present invention involved the combined administration of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, other than an anthracycline derivative. The combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

It may be desirable to also administer antibodies against other tumor associated antigens, such as antibodies which bind to the EGFR, ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial factor (VEGF). Alternatively, or in addition, two or more anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be co-administered to the patient. Sometimes, it may be beneficial to also administer one or more cytokines to the patient. In a preferred embodiment, the ErbB2 antibody is co-administered with a growth inhibitory agent. For example, the growth inhibitory agent may be administered first, followed by the ErbB2 antibody. However, simultaneous administration or administration of the ErbB2 antibody first is also contemplated. Suitable dosages for the growth inhibitory agent are those presently used and may be lowered due to the combined action (synergy) of the growth inhibitory agent and anti-ErbB2 antibody.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

Further information about suitable dosages is provided in the Example below.

V. Articles of Manufacture

In another embodiment of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, a label and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-ErbB2 antibody. The label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes. In addition, the article of manufacture comprises a package inserts with instructions for use, including a warning that the composition is not to be used in combination with anthacycline-type chemotherapeutic agent, e.g. doxorubicin, or epirubicin.

DEPOSIT OF MATERIALS

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Example.

EXAMPLE

Materials and Methods

Anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody The anti-ErbB2 IgG_1K murine monoclonal antibody 4D5, specific for the extracellular domain of ErbB2, was produced as described in Fendly et al., *Cancer Research* 5o:1550-1558 (1990) and WO89/06692. Briefly, NIH 3T3HER2-3_{400} cells (expressing approximately 1×10^5 ErbB2 molecules/cell) produced as described in Hudziak et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* (USA) 84:7159 (1987) were harvested with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 25 mM EDTA and used to immunize BALB/c mice. The mice were given injections i.p. of 10^7 cells in 0.5 ml PBS on weeks, 0, 2, 5 and 7. The mice with antisera that immunoprecipitated ^{32}P-labeled ErbB2 were given i.p. injections of a wheat germ agglutinin-Sepharose (WGA) purified ErbB2 membrane extract on weeks 9 and 13. This was followed by an i.v. injection of 0.1 ml of the ErbB2 preparation and the splenocytes were fused with mouse mycloma line X63-Ag8.653. Hybridoma supernatants were screened for ErbB2-binding by ELISA and radioimmunoprecipitation. MOPC-21 (IgG1), (Cappell, Durham, N.C.), was used as an isotype-matched control.

The treatment was performed with a humanized version of the murine 4D5 antibody (HERCEPTIN®). The humanized antibody was engineered by inserting the complementarity determining regions of the murine 4D5 antibody into the framework of a consensus human immunoglobulin IgG_1 (IgG_1) (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* USA 89:4285-4289 [1992]). The resulting humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody has high affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ (Dillohiation constant [K_d]=0.1 nmol/L), markedly inhibits, in vitro and in human xenografts, the growth of breast cancer cells that con-

tain high levels of $p185^{HER2}$, induces antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), and has been found clinically active, as a single agent, in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior therapy. HERCEPTIN® is produced by a genetically engineered Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cell line, grown in large scale, that secretes the antibody into the culture medium. The antibody is purified from the CHO culture media using standard chromatographic and filtration methods. Each lot of antibody used in this study was assayed to verify identity, purity, and potency, as well as to meet Food and Drug Administration requirements for sterility and safety.

Eligihility Criteria Patients had to fulfill all of the following criteria to be eligible for study admission:

- Metastatic breast cancer
- Overexpression of the ErbB2 (HER2) oncogene (2+ to 3+ as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). [Tumor expression of ErbB2 can be determined by immunohistochemical analysis, as previously described (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra), of a set of thin sections prepared from the patient's paraffin-archived tumor blocks. The primary detecting antibody used is murine 4D5 MAb, which has the same CDRs as the humanized antibody used for the treatment. Tumors are considered to overexpress ErbB2 if at least 25% of tumor cells exhibit characteristic membrane staining for $p185^{HER2}$].
- Bidimensionally measurable disease (including lytic bone lesions) by radiographic means, physical examination, or photographs

Measurable disease was defined as any mass reproducibly measurable in two perpendicular diameters by physical examination, X-ray (plain films), computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasound, or photographs.

Osteoblastic metastases, pleural effusions, or ascites were not considered to be measurable. Measurable lesions must be at least 1 cm in greatest dimension. Enumeration of evaluable sites of metastatic disease and number of lesions in an evaluable site (e.g. lung) had to be recorded on the appropriate Case Report Form (CRF). If a large number of pulmonary or hepatic lesions were present, the six largest lesions per site were followed.

- The ability to understand and willingness to sign a written informed consent form
- Women≧18 years
- Suitable candidates for receiving concomitant cytotoxic chemotherapy as evidenced by screening laboratory assessments of hematologic, renal, hepatic, and metabolic functions.

Exclusion Criteria Patients with any of the following were excluded from study entry:

- Prior cytotoxic chemotherapy for metastatic breast cancer
- Patients may have received prior hormonal therapy (e.g. tamoxifen) for metastatic disease or cytotoxic therapy in the adjuvant setting.
- Concomitant malignancy that has not been curatively treated
- A performance status of <60% on the Karnofsky scale
- Pregnant or nursing women; women of childbearing potential, unless using effective contraception as determined by the investigator
- Bilateral breast cancer (either both primary tumors must have 2+ to 3+HER2 overexpression, or the metastatic site must have 2+ to 3+HER2 overexpression)
- Use of investigational or unlicensed agents within 30 days prior to study entry
- Clinically unstable or untreated metastases to the brain (e.g. requiring radiation therapy)

Based upon the foregoing criteria, 469 patients were chosen, and enrolled in the study. Half the patients (stratified by chemotherapy) were randomized to additionally receive the HERCEPTIN® antibody (see below).

Administration and Dosage

Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

On day 0, a 4 mg/kg dose of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, H) was administered intravenously, over a 90-minute period. Beginning on day 7, patients received weekly administration of 2 mg/kg antibody (i.v.) over a 90-minute period.

Chemotherapy

The patients received one of two chemotherapy regiments for a minimum of six cycles, provided their disease was not progressing: a) cyclophosphamide and doxorubicin or epirubicin (AC), if patients have not received anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting, or b) paclitaxel (T, TAXOL®), if patients have received any anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting. The initial dose of the HERCEPTIN® antibody preceded the first cycle of either chemotherapy regimen by 24 hours. Subsequent doses of the antibody were given immediately before chemotherapy administration, if the initial dose of the antibody was well tolerated. If the first dose of the antibody was not well tolerated, subsequent infusions continued to precede chemotherapy administration by 24 hours. Patients were permitted to continue receiving chemotherapy beyond six cycles if, in the opinion of the treating physician, they were continuing to receive treatment benefit.

Cyclophosphamide (600 mg/m^2) was given either by iv push over a minimum period of 3 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours.

Doxorubicin (60 mg/m^2) or epirubicin (75 mg/m^2) were given either by slow iv push over a minimum period of 3-5 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours, according to institutional protocol.

Paciltaxel (TAXOL®) was given at a dose of 175 mg/m^2 over 3 hours by intravenous administration. All patients receiving paclitaxel were premedicated with dexamethasone (or its equivalent) 20 mg×2, administered orally 12 and 6 hours prior to paclitaxel; diphenhydramine (or its equivalent) 50 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel, and dimetidine (or another H2 blocker) 300 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel.

Response Criteria

Progressive Disease Objective evidence of an increase of 25% or more in any measurable lesion. Progressive disease also includes those instances when new lesions have appeared. For bone lesions, progression is defined as a 25% increase in objective measurement by plain film, CT, MRI; symptomatic new lesions not due to fracture; or requirement for palliative radiotherapy.

Complete Response Disappearance of all radiographically and/or visually apparent tumor for a minimum of 4 weeks. Skin and chest wall complete responses had to be confirmed by biopsy.

Partial Response A reduction of at least 50% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions for a minimum period of 4 weeks. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Minor Response A reduction of 25% to 49% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Stable Disease No change of greater than 25% in the size of measurable lesions. No lesions may have appeared.

Time to disease progression (TTP) was calculated from the beginning of therapy to progression. Confidence limits for response rates were calculated using the exact method for a single proportion. (Fleiss, J L, *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions* (ed.2), New York, N.Y., Wiley, 1981, pp 13-17).

RESULTS

At a median follow-up of 10.5 months, assessments of time to disease progression (TTP in months) and response rates (RR) showed a significant augmentation of the chemotherapeutic effect by HERCEPTIN®, without increase in overall severe adverse events (AE):

	Enrolled	TTP(months)	RR(%)	AE(%)
CRx	234	5.5	36.2	66
CRx + H	235	8.6*	62.00**	69
AC	145	6.5	42.1	71
AC + H	146	9.0	64.9	68
T	89	4.2	25.0	59
T + H	89	7.1	57.3	70

*p < 0.001 by log-rank test
**p < 0.001 by X^2 test
CRx: chemotherapy
AC: anthracycline/cyclophosphamide treatment
H: HERCEPTIN ®
T: TAXOL ®

A syndrome of myocardial dysfunction similar to that observed with anthracyclines was reported more commonly with a combined treatment of AC+H (18% Grade ¾) than with AC alone (3%), T (0%), or T+H (2%).

These data indicate that the combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment with chemotherapy markedly increases the clinical benefit, as assessed by response rates and the evaluation of disease progression. However, due to the increased cardiac side-effects of doxorubicin or epirubicin, the combined use of anthracyclines with anti-ErbB2 antibody therapy is contraindicated. The results, taking into account risk and benefit, favor the combined treatment with HERCEPTIN® and paclitaxel (TAXOL®).

The disclosures of all citations in the specification are expressly incorporated herein by reference.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 9

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 166
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

```
Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu
  1               5                  10                  15

Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val
                20                  25                  30

Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser
                35                  40                  45

Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu
                50                  55                  60

Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu Gln Arg Leu Arg
                65                  70                  75

Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr Ala Leu Ala
                80                  85                  90

Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro Val Thr
                95                 100                 105

Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser Leu
               110                 115                 120

Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln
               125                 130                 135

Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys
               140                 145                 150

Asn Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg
               155                 160                 165
```

-continued

Ala
166

<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 32
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln
20 25 30

Gly Cys
32

<210> SEQ ID NO 3
<211> LENGTH: 11
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Pro Lys Asn Ser Ser Met Ile Ser Asn Thr Pro
1 5 10 11

<210> SEQ ID NO 4
<211> LENGTH: 7
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

His Gln Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln
1 5 7

<210> SEQ ID NO 5
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

His Gln Asn Leu Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5 8

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

His Gln Asn Ile Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5 8

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

Val Ile Ser Ser His Leu Gly Gln
1 5 8

<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 59

-continued

<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

Val Glu Glu Cys Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val
1 5 10 15

Asn Ala Arg His Cys Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln
20 25 30

Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val
35 40 45

Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg
50 55 59

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 65
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr
1 5 10 15

Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr
20 25 30

Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys
35 40 45

Pro Asp Leu Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu
50 55 60

Gly Ala Cys Gln Pro
65

The invention claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of a human patient with breast cancer that overexpresses ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering a combination of an antibody that binds ErbB2, a taxoid, and a further growth inhibitory agent to the human patient in an amount effective to extend the time to disease progression in the human patient, wherein the antibody binds to epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence.

2. The method of claim **1** wherein the antibody is a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody.

3. The method of claim **1** wherein the antibody cross-blocks binding of 4D5 to the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence.

4. The method of claim **1** wherein the antibody binds to amino acid residues in the region from about residue 529 to about residue 625 of the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence.

5. A method for the treatment of a human patient with breast cancer characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering an effective amount of a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody which binds epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence, a taxoid, and a further therapeutic agent, to the human patient.

6. The method of claim **5** wherein the breast cancer is metastatic breast carcinoma.

7. The method of claim **5** wherein the antibody is a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody.

8. The method of claim **7** wherein the antibody is administered as a 4 mg/kg dose and then weekly administration of 2 mg/kg.

9. The method of claim **5** wherein the taxoid is paclitaxel.

10. The method of claim **5** wherein efficacy is measured by determining the time to disease progression or the response rate.

11. The method of claim **5**, wherein the further therapeutic agent is selected from the group consisting of: another ErbB2 antibody, EGFR antibody, ErbB3 antibody, ErbB4 antibody, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) antibody, cytokine, and growth inhibitory agent.

12. The method of claim **5** wherein the further therapeutic agent is another ErbB2 antibody.

13. The method of claim **5** wherein the further therapeutic agent is a vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) antibody.

14. The method of claim **5** wherein the further therapeutic agent is a growth inhibitory agent.

15. The method of claim **14** wherein the growth inhibitory agent is a DNA alkylating agent.

16. A method for the treatment of a human patient with ErbB2 overexpressing breast cancer, comprising administering a combination of an antibody that binds epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence, a taxoid and a further growth inhibitory agent, in the absence of an anthracycline derivative, to the human patient in an amount effective to extend the time to disease progression in the human patient.

17. The method of claim **16** wherein the breast cancer is metastatic breast carcinoma.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT C

US006627196B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Baughman et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,627,196 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Sep. 30, 2003**

(54) **DOSAGES FOR TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES**

(75) Inventors: **Sharon A. Baughman**, Ventura, CA (US); **Steven Shak**, Burlingame, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/648,067**

(22) Filed: **Aug. 25, 2000**

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/213,822, filed on Jun. 23, 2000, and provisional application No. 60/151,018, filed on Aug. 27, 1999.

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **A61K 39/395**

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **424/138.1**; 424/131.1; 424/133.1; 424/134.1; 424/135.1; 424/136.1; 424/137.1; 424/139.1; 424/141.1; 424/142.1; 424/143.1; 424/144.1; 424/145.1; 424/146.1; 424/147.1; 424/150.1; 424/151.1; 424/152.1; 424/153.1; 424/154.1; 424/155.1; 424/156.1; 424/158.1; 424/172.1; 424/174.1

(58) **Field of Search** 424/130.1, 138.1, 424/141.1, 142.1, 152.1, 155.1, 131.1, 133.1, 134.1, 135.1, 136.1, 137.1, 139.1, 143.1, 144.1, 145.1, 146.1, 147.1, 150.1, 151.1, 153.1, 154.1, 156.1, 158.1, 172.1, 174.1

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,676,980	A		6/1987	Segal et al.
4,753,894	A		6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,816,567	A		3/1989	Cabilly et al.
4,935,341	A		6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A		7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A		11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A		12/1990	Senter et al.
5,169,774	A		12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A		2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A		2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A		10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A		11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A		3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A		11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A		1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,578,482	A		11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,604,107	A		2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A		6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,663,144	A		9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,171	A		10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A		1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A		2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A		2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A		3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A		3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A		3/1998	Bissery
5,747,261	A		5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A		6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A		6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A		7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A		7/1998	Arakawa et al.
5,801,005	A		9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,821,337	A		10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A		10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A		11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A		11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A		11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A		11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A		12/1998	Cheever et al.
5,856,110	A		1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A		1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A		2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A		3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A		3/1999	Huston et al.
5,908,835	A		6/1999	Bissery
5,910,486	A		6/1999	Curiel et al.
5,922,845	A		7/1999	Deo et al.
5,939,531	A		8/1999	Wels et al.
5,968,511	A		10/1999	Akita et al.
5,977,322	A		11/1999	Marks et al.
5,985,553	A		11/1999	King et al.
6,015,567	A		1/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,028,059	A		2/2000	Curiel et al.
6,054,297	A		4/2000	Carter et al.
6,054,561	A		4/2000	Ring
6,096,873	A		8/2000	Schaefer et al.
6,123,939	A		9/2000	Shawver et al.
6,165,464	A		12/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,333,348	B1	*	12/2001	Vogel et al. 514/449

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0003089	A1	7/1979
EP	0599274	A1	6/1994
EP	616812	A1	9/1994
EP	0711565	B1	8/1998
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	95006982	B2	1/1995
JP	7-59588		3/1995
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105	B2	5/1999

(List continued on next page.)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Wantanabe et al., ASCO, Vol. 17, abstract 702, May 15–18, 1998 Annual Meeting.*

(List continued on next page.)

Primary Examiner—Anthony C. Caputa
Assistant Examiner—Anne L. Holleran
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Wendy M. Lee

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 with anti-ErbB2 antibody.

33 Claims, 5 Drawing Sheets

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

WO	WO 89/06692	7/1989
WO	WO 90/14357	11/1990
WO	WO 91/00360	1/1991
WO	WO 92/10573	6/1992
WO	WO 92/20373	11/1992
WO	WO 92/20798	11/1992
WO	WO 93/12220	6/1993
WO	WO 93/21232	10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319	10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136	1/1994
WO	WO 94/04690	3/1994
WO	WO 94/22478	10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127	12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051	6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507	6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485	10/1995
WO	WO 96/18409	6/1996
WO	WO 96/27011	9/1996
WO	WO 97/04801	2/1997
WO	WO 97/20858	6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848	8/1997
WO	WO 97/35885	10/1997
WO	WO 97/38731	10/1997
WO	WO 98/02541	1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797	4/1998
WO	WO 98/45479	10/1998
WO	WO 99/31140	6/1999
WO	WO 99/48527	9/1999
WO	WO 00/61185	10/2000

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Carbonell Castellon et al., "Efficacy and safety of 3–weekly Herceptin (H) monotherapy in women with HER2–positive metastatic breast cancer (MBC): preliminary data from a phase II study" *Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol* (Abstract #73 from the 2002 ASCO Meeting) 21:19a (2002).

Carbonell et al., "Efficacy and safety of 3–weekly Herceptin monotherapy in women with HER2–positive metastatic breast cancer: preliminary data from a phase II study" (Oral presentation at the 38th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 18–21, 2002 in Orland, Florida).

Cobleigh et al., "Multinational study of the efficacy and safety of humanized anti–HER2 monoclonal antibody in women who have HER2–overexpressing metastatic breast cancer that has progressed after chemotherapy for metastatic disease" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 17(9):2639–2648 (Sep. 1999).

Gelmon et al., "Pharmacokinetics and safety of Herceptin when administered every 3 weeks to women with metastatic breast cancer" (Oral presentation at the 37th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 12–15, 2001 in San Francisco, CA).

Harris et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for Herceptin (H) and implications for clinical dosing" (Oral presentation at the 38th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 18–21, 2002 in Orlando, Florida).

Harris et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for trastuzumab (Herceptin) and implications for clinical dosing" *Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol* (Abstract #488) 21:123a (2002).

Leyland–Jones et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Herceptin administered with paclitaxel every three weeks" *Breast Cancer Res Treat* (abstract only) 64:124 (2000).

Pegram et al., "Phase II study of receptor–enhanced chemosensitivity using recombinant humanized anti–p185$^{HER2/neu}$ monoclonal antibody plus cisplatin in patients with HER2/neu–overexpressing metastatic breast cancer refractory to chemotherapy treatment" *Journal of Clin Oncol* 16(8):2659–2671 (Aug. 1998).

Slamon et al., "Use of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses HER2" *New England J. of Medicine* 344(11):783–792 (Mar. 15, 2001).

Verma et al., "Efficacy and safety of three–weekly herceptin with paclitaxel in women with her2–positive metastatic breast cancer: preliminary results of a phase II trial" *European Journal of Cancer* (abstract only) 37:S146 (2001).

Vogel et al., "First–Line Herceptin Monotherapy in Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Oncology* 61(Suppl. 2):37–42 (2001).

Washington et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for trastuzumab (T) following weekly dosing" *Clin Pharmacol Ther* (abstract only) 71:P12 (2002).

Arteaga et al., "p185$^{c-erbB-2}$ Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug–induced DNA Repair" *Cancer Research* 54(14):3758–3765 (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU–565 and MCF–7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER–2/neu Antigen" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(6):350–362 (1990).

Bacus et al., "Tumor–inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER–2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells" *Cancer Research* 52(9):2580–2589 (May 1, 1992).

Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" *Proceedings of ASCO–13th Annual Meeting* (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63 (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "HER2 overexpression and paclitaxel sensitivity in breast cancer: therapeutic implications" *Oncology* 11(3 Suppl 2):43–48 (Mar. 1997).

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal antibodies directed against growth factor receptors enhance the efficacy of chemotherapeutic agents" *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti–p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu–Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14(3):737–744 (Mar. 1996).

Baselga et al., "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies as Anti–Cancer Therapy" *Pharmac. Ther.* 64:127–154 (1994).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti–HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpressing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts" *Cancer Research* 58:2825–2831 (Jul. 1998).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an anti–p185^{HER2} antibody for human cancer therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 89:4285–4289 (1992).

Chothia and Lesk, "Canonical structures for the hypervariable regions of immunoglobulins" *J. Mol. Biol.* 196(4):901–917 (1987).

D'souza et al., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in human mammary epithelial cells signals inhibition of transcription of the E–cadherin gene" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91(15):7202–7206 (Jul. 19, 1994).

De Santes et al., "Radiolabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER–2/neu Oncoprotein" *Cancer Research* 52:1916–1923 (1992).

DiFiore et al., "erbB–2 is a potent oncogene when overexpressed in NIH/3T3 cells" *Science* 237(4811):178–182 (Jul. 10, 1987).

Drebin et al., "Down–Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cell* 41(3):695–706 (Jul. 1985).

Drebin et al., "Inhibition of tumor growth by a monoclonal antibody reactive with an oncogene–encoded tumor antigen" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 83:9129–9133 (1986).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal antibodies reactive with distinct domains of the neu oncogene–encoded p185 molecule exert synergistic anti–tumor effects in vivo" *Oncogene* 2:273–277 (1988).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti–tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2(4):387–394 (1988).

Fendly et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550–1558 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Fleiss, JL *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions,* 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13–17 (1981).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).

Goldenberg, M., "Trastuzumab, a Recombinant DNA–Derived Humanized Monoclonal Antibody, a Novel Agent for the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Clinical Therapeutics* 21(2):309–318 (1999).

Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR–151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector" *Cancer Research* 54(3):738–741 (Feb. 1, 1994).

Guy et al., "Expression of the neu protooncogene in the mammary epithelium of transgenic mice induces metastatic disease" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(22):10578–10582 (Nov. 15, 1992).

Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody against the c–erbB–2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis–Diamminedichloroplatinum against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines" *Cancer Research* 51:4575–4580 (Sep. 1, 1981).

Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies against the Extracellular Domain of the erbB–2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 267(21):15160–15167 (Jul. 25, 1992).

Hudziak et al., "Increased expression of the putative growth factor receptor p185^{HER2} causes transformation and tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 cells" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 84(20):7159–7163 (Oct. 1987).

Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165–1172 (Mar. 1989).

Hynes and Stern, "The biology of erbB–2/neu/HER–2 and its role in cancer" *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1198(2–3):165–184 (Dec. 30, 1994).

Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti–HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract #3209) 37:470 (Mar. 1996).

Jones et al., "Replacing the Complementarity–determining Regions in a Human Antibody with Those From a Mouse" *Nature* 321:522–525 (May 29, 1986).

Kaspryzk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti–erbB–2 Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 52(10):2771–2776 (May 15, 1992).

Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protoocogene" In Vitro (Abstract 1π176) 26(3):59A (1990).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c–erbB–2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 11(2):979–986 (Feb. 1991).

Lewis et al., "Differential responses of human tumor cell lines to anti–p185^{HER2} monoclonal antibodies" *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255–263 (1993).

Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research* 56:1457–1465 (Mar. 15, 1996).

Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed againt the HER–2/neu Gene Product c–erbB–2" *Cancer Research* 51(19):5361–5369 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti–Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 44(3):1002–1007 (Mar. 1984).

Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c–erbB–2 Protooncogene Product" *Jpn J. Cancer Res.* 80:10–14 (Jan. 1989).

McCann et al., "c–erbB–2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" *Cancer* 65(1):88–92 (Jan. 1, 1990).

McKenzie et al., "Generation and characterization of monoclonal antibodies specific for the human neu oncogene product, p185" *Oncogene* 4:543–548 (1989).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor blockade and chemotherapy: a new approach to combination cancer therapy" *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1):22 (1996).

Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185^{neu}" *Methods in Enzymology* 198:277–290 (1991).

Nakamura et al., "Strain specificity and binding affinity requirements of neutralizing monoclonal antibodies to the C4 domain of gp120 from human immunodeficiency virus type 1" *Journal of Virology* 67(10):6179–6191 (Oct. 1993).

Norton, L., "Evolving concepts in the system drug therapy of breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 24(4 Suppl 10):S10–3–S10–10 (Aug. 1997).

Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER–2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" *Oncogene* 18:2241–2251 (1999).

Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Receptor–Enhanced Chemosensitivity Using Recombinant Humanized Anti–p185$^{HER2/neu}$ Monoclonal Antibody Plus Cisplatin in Patients With HER2/neu–Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer Refractory to Chemotherapy Treatment" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 16(8):2659–2671 (1998).

Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER–2/neu receptor blocks DNA repair after cisplatin in human breast and ovarian cancer cells" *Oncogene* 9:1829–1838 (1994).

Presta et al., "Humanization of an Antibody Directed Against IgE" *J. Immunol.* 151(5):2623–2632 (Sep. 1, 1993).

Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First–or Second–Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress HER2" *Proceedings of ASCO (Abstract #523)* 18:137a (1999).

Ravdin and Chamness, "The c–erbB–2 proto–oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular markers—a review" *Gene* 159(1):19–27 (Jun. 14, 1995).

Renz et al., "Structural requirements for adhesion of soluble recombinant murine vascular cell adhesion molecule–1 to α4β1" *Journal of Cell Biology* 125(6):1395–1406 (Jun. 1994).

Riechmann et al., "Reshaping Human Antibodies for Therapy" *Nature* 332:323–327 (Mar. 24, 1988).

Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" *J. Cellular Biochem.* 35(4):315–320 (1987).

Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti–P185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" *Growth Regulation* 1:72–82 (1991).

Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" *Molecular Foundations of Oncology,* Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter 6, pps. 95–134 (1991).

Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 266(22):14300–14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).

Seifert et al. "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin–induced cardiotoxicity" *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28(9):1063–1072 (Sep. 1994).

Semba et al., "A v–erbB–related protooncogene, c–erbB–2, is distinct from the c–erb–1/epidermal growth factor–receptor gene and is amplified in a human salivary gland adenocarcinoma" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:6497–6501 (1985).

Shawver et al., "Ligand–like Effects Induced by Anti-c–erbB–2 Antibodies Do Not Correlate with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells" *Cancer Research* 54(5):1367–1373 (Mar. 1, 1994).

Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117–127 (1991).

Sims et al., "A Humanized CD18 Antibody Can Block Function Without Cell Destruction" *The Journal of Immunology* 151(4):2296–2308 (Aug. 1993).

Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin–induced cardiomyopathy" *New England J. of Medicine* 339(13):900–905 (Sep. 24, 1998).

Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin–induced cardiomyopathy" *Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology* 27(4):1055–1063 (Apr. 1995).

Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER–2/neu Oncogene" *Science* 235:177–182 (Jan. 9, 1987).

Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER–2/neu Proto–oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science* 244:707–712 (May 12, 1989).

Sliwkowski et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpression breast cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract only) 37:625–626 (Mar. 1996).

Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 269(20):14661–14665 (May 20, 1994).

Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic aspects of the opposing effects of monoclonal antibodies to the ERBB2 receptor on tumor growth," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88(19):8691–8695 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Stevenson et al., "A chimeric antibody with dual Fc regions (bisFabFc) prepared by manipulations at the IgG hinge" *Anti–Cancer Drug Design* 3(4):219–230 (1989).

Suresh et al., "Bispecific Monoclonal Antibodies from Hybrid Hybridomas" *Methods in Enzymology* 121:210–228 (1986).

Tagliabue et al., "Selection of monoclonal antibodies which induce internalization and phosphorylation of p185^{HER2} and growth inhibition of cells with HER2/NEU gene amplification" *International Journal of Cancer* 47(6):933–937 (Apr. 1, 1991).

Verhoeyen et al., "Reshaping Human Antibodies: Grafting an Antilysozyme Activity" *Science* 239:1534–1536 (Mar. 25, 1988).

Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role For Their Use in Cancer Therapy" *Cancer Research* 54(20):5301–5309 (Oct. 15, 1994).

Wolff et al., "Monoclonal antibody homodimers: enhanced antitumor activity in nude mice" *Cancer Research* 53(11):2560–2565 (1993).

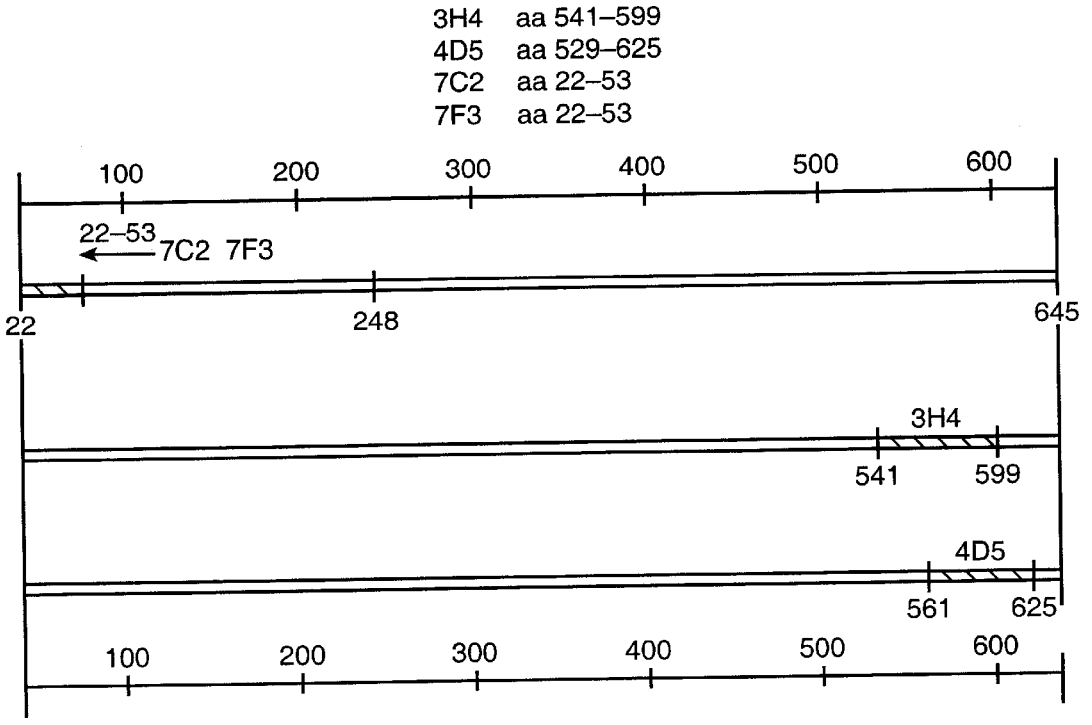
Xu et al., "Antibody–induced growth inhibition is mediated through immunochemically and functionally distinct epitopes on the extracellular domain of the c–erbB–2 (HER–2/neu) gene product p185" *International Journal of Cancer* 53(3):401–408 (Feb. 1, 1993).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c–erb–B–2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" (GenBank accession number X03363) (Mar. 30, 1995).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c–erb–B–2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" *Nature* 319:230–234 (1986).

Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti–p185$^{her2/neu}$ monoclonal antibodies" *Experimental and Molecular Pathology* 67:15–25 (1999).

* cited by examiner



3H4 epitope (SEQ ID NO:8) 58 residues

VEECRVLQGLPREYVNARHCLPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVAR

541 **599**

4D5 epitope (SEQ ID NO:9) 64 residues

LPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVARCPSGVKPDLSYMPIWKFPDEEGACQP

561 **625**

FIG._1

1 MELAALCRWGLLLALLPPGAA**STQVCTGTDMKLRLPA**

38 **SPETHLDMLRHLYQGC**QVVQGNLELTYLPTNASLSFL

75 QDIQEVQGYVLIAHNQVRQVPLQRLRIVRGTQLFEDN

112 YALAVLDNGDPLNNTTPVTGASPGGLRELQLRSLTEI

149 LKGGVLIQRNPQLCYQDTILWKDIFHKNNQLALTLID

186 TNRSRA

FIG._2

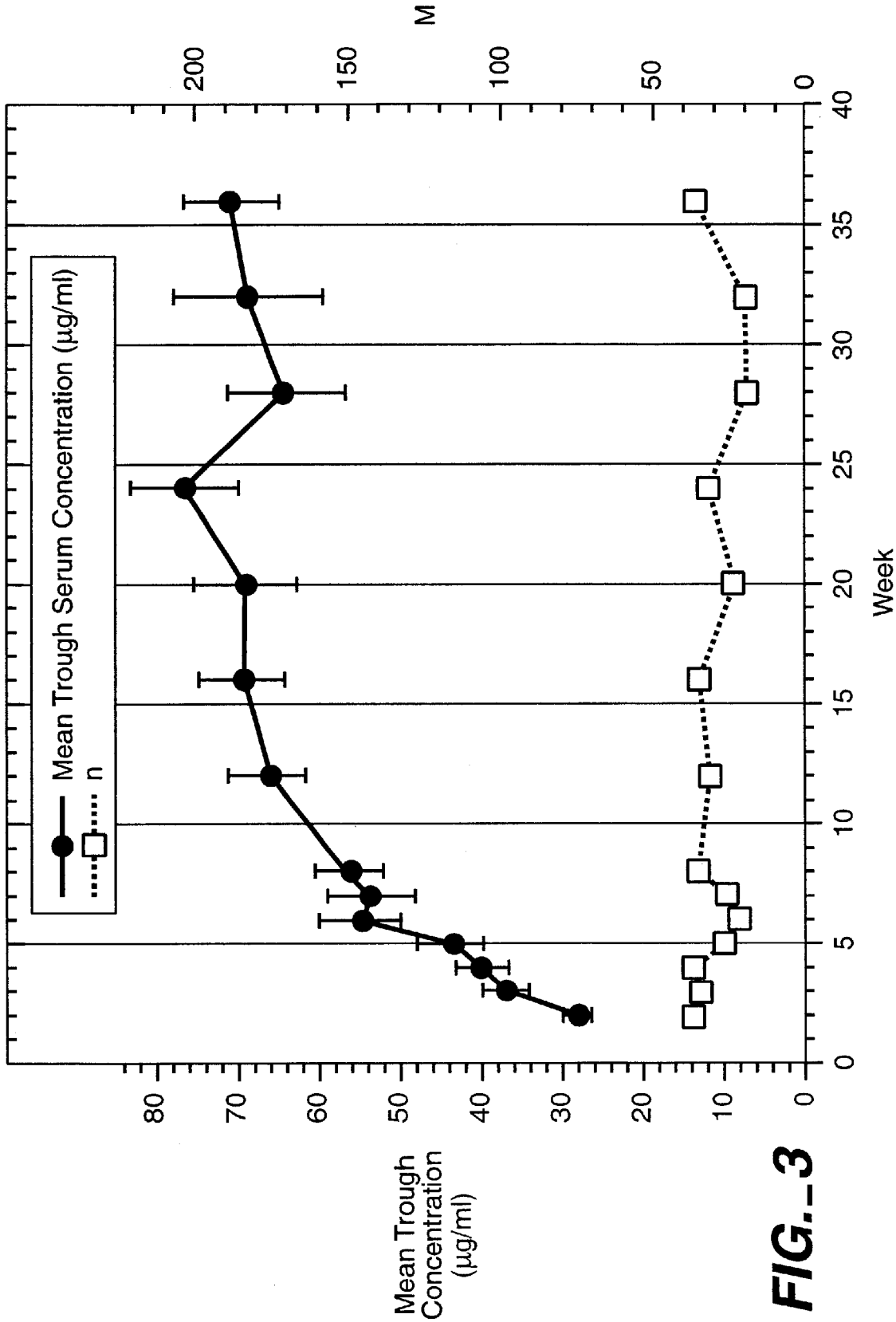

Mean Trough Serum Concentration (µg/ml)
n
Mean Trough Concentration (µg/ml)
M
Week
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
0
50
100
150
200
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40

FIG._3

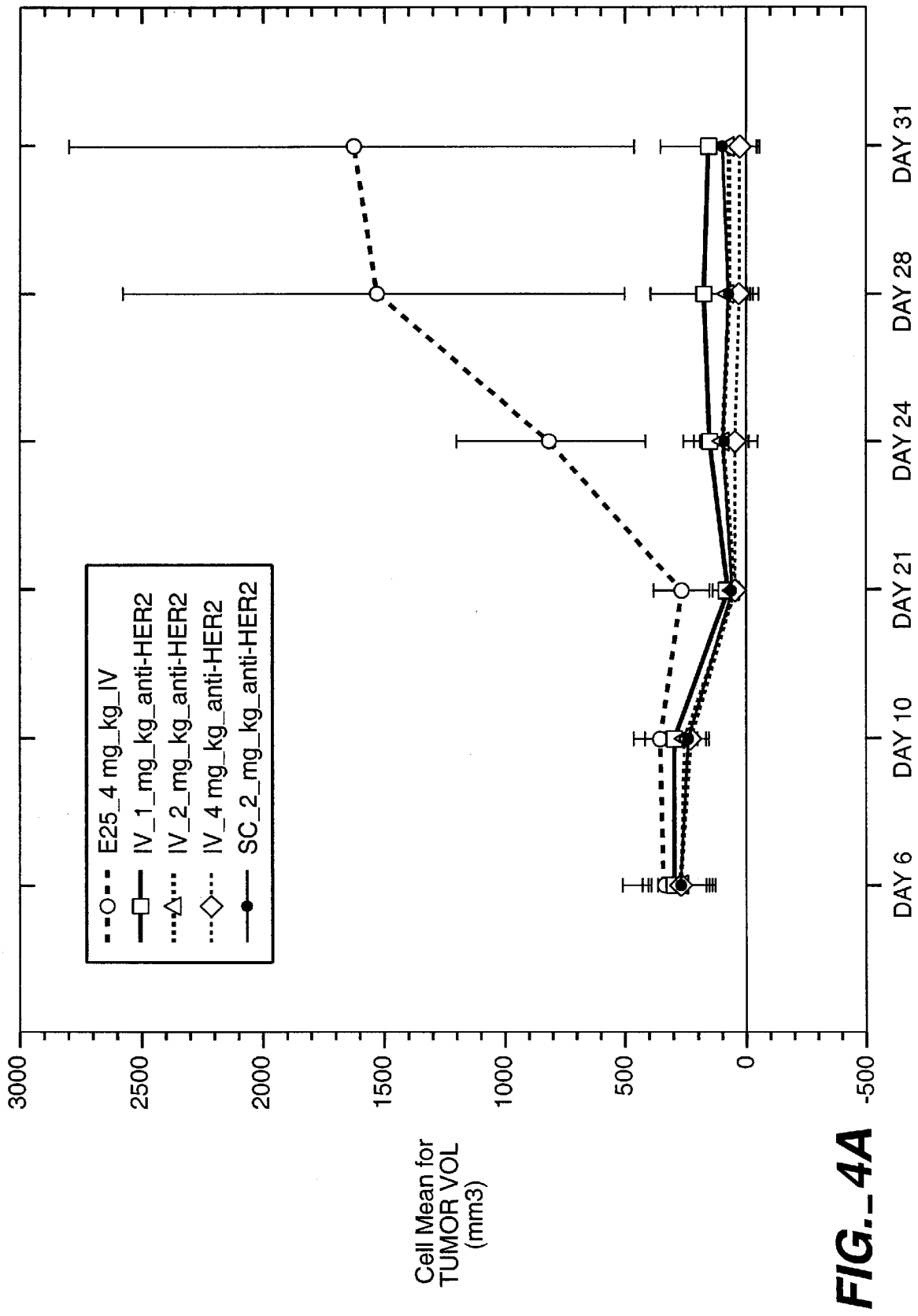

E25_4 mg_kg_IV
IV_1_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_4 mg_kg_anti-HER2
SC_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
Cell Mean for TUMOR VOL (mm3)
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
DAY 6
DAY 10
DAY 21
DAY 24
DAY 28
DAY 31

FIG._4A

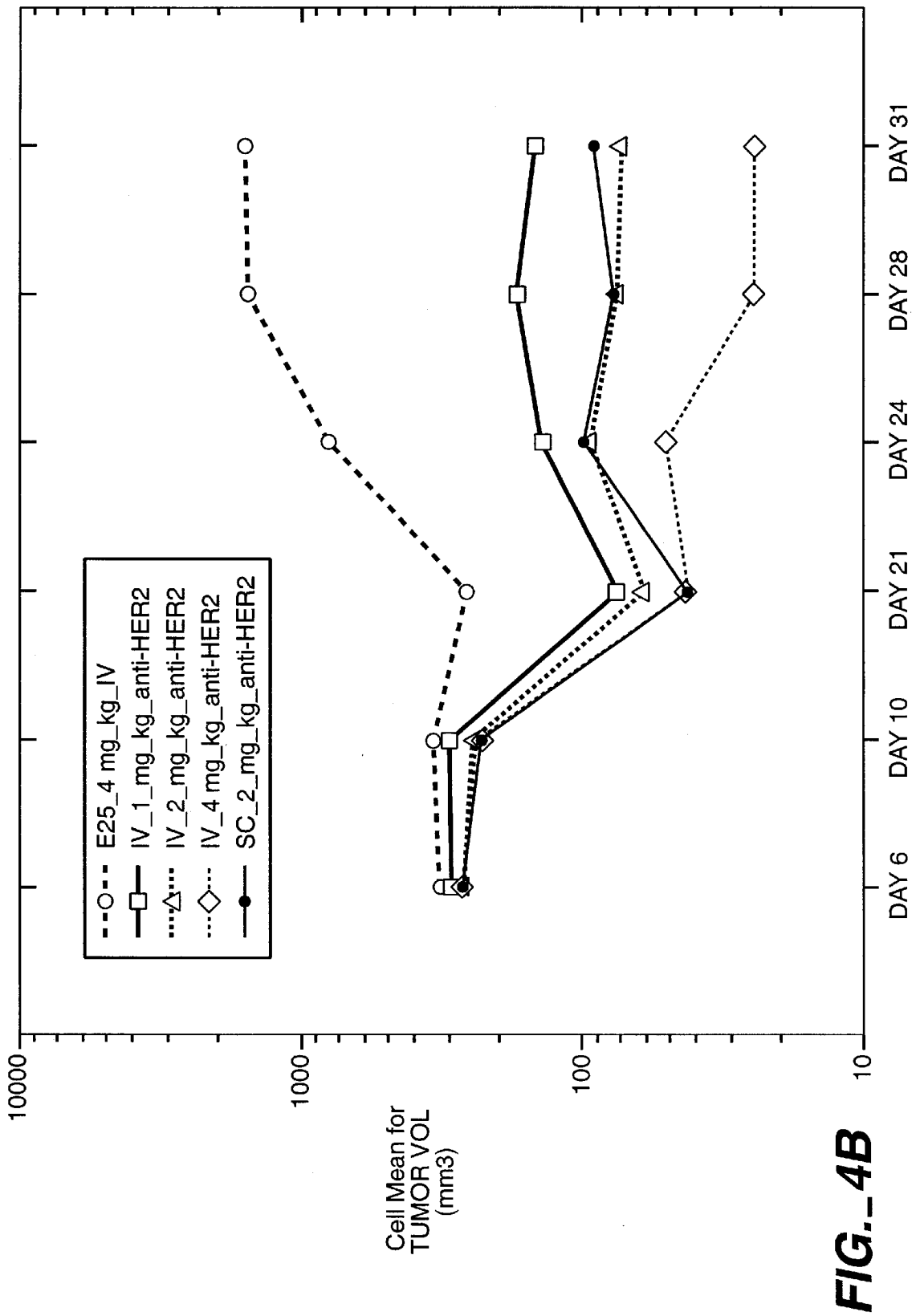

E25_4 mg_kg_IV
IV_1_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_4 mg_kg_anti-HER2
SC_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
Cell Mean for TUMOR VOL (mm3)
10000
1000
100
10
DAY 6
DAY 10
DAY 21
DAY 24
DAY 28
DAY 31

FIG._4B

VARIABLE LIGHT

```
          1       10        20          30              40
2C4       DTVMTQSHKIMSTSVGDRVSITC [KASQDVSIGVA----] WYQQRP
           **    **** *      *                        *
574       DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC [KASQDVSIGVA----] WYQQKP
                                   *   *  ****
hum kI    DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC [RASQSVSTSSYSYMH] WYQQKP

                   50          60        70        80
2C4       GQSPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTFTISSVQA
           **                  *  *          *    * *
574       GKAPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP
                     *  ****
hum kI    GKAPKLLIY [AASSLES] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP

                  90          100
2C4       EDLAVYYC [QQYYIYPYT] FGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO:10)
            * *                 *   *
574       EDFATYYC [QQYYIYPYT] FGQGTKVEIK (SEQ ID NO:12)
                       ***
hum kI    EDFATYYC [QQYNSLPYT] FGQGTKVEIK (SEQ ID NO:14)
```

FIG._5A

VARIABLE HEAVY

```
          1       10        20          30          40
2C4       EVQLQQSGPELVKPGTSVKISCKAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVKQS
              **  **  *  * ***  **                  *
574       EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVRQA
                                      ** * *
humIII    EVQLVESGGGSVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFSSYAMS] WVRQA

                    50        60          70        80
2C4       HGKSLEWIG [DVNPNSGGSIYNQRFKG] KASLTVDRSSRIVYM
          *  *   **                     *** *    **** *
574       PGKGLEWVA [DVNPNSGGSIYNQRFKG] RFTLSVDRSKNTLYL
                  *  ******  ** ****       * * *
humIII    PGKGLEWVS [VISGDGGSTYYADSVKG] RFTISRDDSKNTLYL

                     90         100          110
2C4       ELRSLTFEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTTLVTSS (SEQ ID NO:11)
          ***  **                              *
574       QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:13)
                            ** ***
humIII    QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [GRGGGS--DY] WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:15)
```

FIG._5B

DOSAGES FOR TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES

RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a non-provisional application filed under 37 CFR 1.53(b)(1), claiming priority under 35 USC 119(e) to provisional application No. 60/151,018, filed Aug. 27, 1999 and No. 60/213,822, filed Jun. 23, 2000, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2 or disorders expressing epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), comprising administering to a human or animal presenting the disorders a therapeutically effective amount of an antibody that binds ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 or expressing EGFR, where the treatment is with an anti-ErbB2 antibody administered by front loading the dose of antibody during treatment by intravenous and/or subcutaneous administration. The invention optionally includes treatment of cancer in a human patient with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, such as, but not limited to, a taxoid. The taxoid may be, but is not limited to paclitaxel or docetaxel. The invention further includes treatment of cancer in a human patient with a combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, such as, but not limited to, an anthracycline derivative. Optionally, treatment with a combination of anti-ErbB2 and an anthracycline derivative includes treatment with an effective amount of a cardioprotectant. The present invention further concerns infrequent dosing of anti-ErbB2 antibodies.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Proto-oncogenes that encode growth factors and growth factor receptors have been identified to play important roles in the pathogenesis of various human malignancies, including breast cancer. It has been found that the human ErbB2 gene (erbB2, also known as her2, or c-erbB-2), which encodes a 185-kd transmembrane glycoprotein receptor ($p185^{HER2}$) related to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), is overexpressed in about 25% to 30% of human breast cancer (Slamon et al., *Science* 235:177–182 [1987]; Slamon et al., *Science* 244:707–712 [1989]).

Several lines of evidence support a direct role for ErbB2 in the pathogenesis and clinical aggressiveness of ErbB2-overexpressing tumors. The introduction of ErbB2 into non-neoplastic cells has been shown to cause their malignant transformation (Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7159–7163 [1987]; DiFiore et al., *Science* 237:78–182 [1987]). Transgenic mice that express HER2 were found to develop mammary tumors (Guy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:10578–10582 [1992]).

Antibodies directed against human erbB2 protein products and proteins encoded by the rat equivalent of the erbB2 gene (neu) have been described. Drebin et al., *Cell* 41:695–706 (1985) refer to an IgG2a monoclonal antibody which is directed against the rat neu gene product. This antibody called 7.16.4 causes down-modulation of cell surface p185 expression on B104-1-1 cells (NIH-3T3 cells transfected with the neu proto-oncogene) a inhibits colony formation of these cells. In Drebin et al. *PNAS (USA)* 83:9129–9133 (1986), the 7.16.4 antibody was shown to

inhibit the tumorigenic growth of neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells as well as rat neuroblastoma cells (from which the neu oncogene was initially isolated) implanted into nude mice. Drebin et al. in *Oncogene* 2:387–394 (1988) discuss the production of a panel of antibodies against the rat neu gene product. All of the antibodies were found to exert a cytostatic effect on the growth of neu-transformed cells suspended in soft agar. Antibodies of the IgM, IgG2a and IgG2b isotypes were able to mediate significant in vitro lysis of neu-transformed cells in the presence of complement, whereas none of the antibodies were able to mediate high levels of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) of the neu-transformed cells. Drebin et al. *Oncogene* 2:273–277 (1988) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions on the p185 molecule result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice. Biological effects of anti-neu antibodies are reviewed in Myers et al., *Meth. Enzym.* 198:277–290 (1991). See also WO94/22478 published Oct. 13, 1994.

Hudziak et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 9(3):1165–1172 (1989) describe the generation of a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5 which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel,including 7C2 and 7F3, reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. Hudziak et al. conclude that the effect of the 4D5 antibody on SKBR3 cells was cytostatic rather than cytotoxic, since SKBR3 cells resumed growth at a nearly normal rate following removal of the antibody from the medium. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize p 185 -overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-α. See also WO89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. The anti-ErbB2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. are further characterized in Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550–1558 (1990); Kotts et al. *In Vitro* 26(3):59A (1990); Sarup et al. *Growth Regulation* 1:72–82 (1991); Shepard et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117–127 (1991); Kumar et al. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11(2):979–986 (1991); Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255–263 (1993); Pietras et al. *Oncogene* 9:1829–1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. *Cancer Research* 54:5301–5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269(20): 14661–14665 (1994); Scott et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:14300–5 (1991); and D'souza et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*91:7202–7206 (1994).

Tagliabue et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933–937 (1991) describe two antibodies which were selected for their reactivity on the lung adenocarcinoma cell line (Calu-3) which overexpresses ErbB2. One of the antibodies, called MGR3, was found to internalize, induce phosphorylation of ErbB2, and inhibit tumor cell growth in vitro.

McKenzie et al. *Oncogene* 4:543–548 (1989) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies with varying epitope specificities, including the antibody designated TA1. This TA1 antibody was found to induce accelerated endocytosis of ErbB2 (see Maier et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:5361–5369 [1991]). Bacus et al. *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350–362 (1990) reported that the TA1 antibody induced maturation of the breast cancer cell lines AU-565 (which overexpresses the erbB2 gene) and MCF-7 (which does not). Inhibition of growth and acquisition of a mature phenotype in these cells was found to be associated with reduced levels of ErbB2 receptor at the cell surface and transient increased levels in the cytoplasm.

Stancovski et al. *PNAS* (*USA*) 88:8691–8695 (1991) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies, injected them i.p. into nude mice and evaluated their effect on tumor growth of murine fibroblasts transformed by overexpression of the erbB2 gene. Various levels of tumor inhibition were detected for four of the antibodies, but one of the antibodies (N28) consistently stimulated tumor growth. Monoclonal antibody N28 induced significant phosphorylation of the ErbB2 receptor, whereas the other four antibodies generally displayed low or no phosphorylation-inducing activity. The effect of the anti-ErbB2 antibodies on proliferation of SKBR3 cells was also assessed. In this SKBR3 cell proliferation assay, two of the antibodies (N12 and N29) caused a reduction in cell proliferation relative to control. The ability of the various antibodies to induce cell lysis in vitro via complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) and antibody-mediated cell-dependent cytotoxicity (ADCC) was assessed, with the authors of this paper concluding that the inhibitory function of the antibodies was not attributed significantly to CDC or ADCC.

Bacus et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2580–2589 (1992) further characterized the antibodies described in Bacus et al. (1990) and Stancovski et al. of the preceding paragraphs. Extending the i.p. studies of Stancovski et al., the effect of the antibodies after i.v. injection into nude mice harboring mouse fibroblasts overexpressing human ErbB2 was assessed. As observed in their earlier work, N28 accelerated tumor growth, whereas N12 and N29 significantly inhibited growth of the ErbB2-expressing cells. Partial tumor inhibition was also observed with the N24 antibody. Bacus et al. also tested the ability of the antibodies to promote a mature phenotype in the human breast cancer cell lines AU-565 and MDA-MB453 (which overexpress-ErbB2) as well as MCF-7 (containing low levels of the receptor). Bacus et al. saw a correlation between tumor inhibition in vivo and cellular differentiation; the tumor-stimulatory antibody N28 had no effect on differentiation, and the tumor inhibitory action of the N12, N29 and N24 antibodies correlated with the extent of differentiation they induced.

Xu et a. *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401–408 (1993) evaluated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies for their epitope binding specificities, as well as their ability to inhibit anchorage-independent and anchorage-dependent growth of SKBR3 cells (by individual antibodies and in combinations), modulate cell-surface ErbB2, and inhibit ligand stimulated anchorage-independent growth. See also WO94/00136 published Jan 6, 1994 and Kasprzyk et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2771–2776 (1992) concerning anti-ErbB2 antibody combinations. Other anti-ErbB2 antibodies are discussed in Hancock et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:4575–4580 (1991); Shawver et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:1367–1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:3758–3765 (1994); and Harwerth et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:15160–15167 (1992).

A recombinant humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody (a humanized version of the murine anti-ErbB2 antibody 4D5, referred to as rhuMAb HER2, HERCEPTIN®, or HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) has been clinically active in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin Oncol.* 14:737–744 [1996]). The recommended initial loading dose for HERCEPTIN®O is 4 mg/kg administered as a 90-minute infusion. The recommended weekly maintenance dose is 2 mg/kg and can be administered as a 30-minute infusion if the initial loading dose is well tolerated.

ErbB2 overexpression is commonly regarded as a predictor of a poor prognosis, especially in patients with primary disease that involves axillary lymph nodes (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], *supra*; Ravdin and Chamness, *Gene* 159:19–27 [1995]; and Hynes and Stern, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1198:165–184 [1994]), and has been linked to sensitivity and/or resistance to hormone therapy and chemotherapeutic regimens, including CMF (cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluoruracil) and anthracyclines (Baselga et al., *Oncology* 11 (3 Suppl 1):43–48 [1997]). However, despite the association of ErbB2 overexpression with poor prognosis, the odds of HER2-positive patients responding clinically to treatment with taxanes were greater than three times those of HER2-negative patients (Ibid). rhuMab HER2 was shown to enhance the activity of paclitaxel (TAXOL®) and doxorubicin against breast cancer xenografts in nude mice injected with BT-474 human breast adenocarcinoma cells, which express high levels of HER2 (Baselga et al., *Breast Cancer, Proceedings of ASCO*, Vol. 13, Abstract 53 [1994]).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the discovery that an early attainment of an efficacious target trough serum concentration by providing an initial dose or doses of anti-ErbB2 antibodies followed by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amounts of antibody (greater front loading) is more efficacious than conventional treatments. The efficacious target trough serum concentration is reached in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. The target serum concentration is thereafter maintained by the administration of maintenance doses of equal or smaller amounts for the remainder of the treatment regimen or until suppression of disease symptoms is achieved.

The invention further concerns a method for the treatment of a human patient susceptible to or diagnosed with a disorder characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody subcutaneously. Preferably, the initial dose (or doses) as well as the subsequent maintenance dose or doses are administered subcutaneously. Optionally, where the patient's tolerance to the anti-ErbB2 antibody is unknown, the initial dose is administered by intravenous infusion, followed by subcutaneous administration of the maintenance doses if the patient's tolerance for the antibody is acceptable.

According to the invention, the method of treatment involves administration of an initial dose of anti-ErbB2 antibody of more than approximately 4 mg/kg, preferably more than approximately 5 mg/kg. The maximum initial dose or a subsequent dose does not exceed 50 mg/kg, preferably does not exceed 40 mg/kg, and more preferably does not exceed 30 mg/kg. Administration is by intravenous or subcutaneous administration, preferably intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or more preferably subcutaneous bolus injection. The initial dose may be one or more administrations of drug sufficient to reach the target trough serum concentration in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including one day or less.

According to the invention, the initial dose or doses is/are followed by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amounts of antibody at intervals sufficiently close to maintain the trough serum concentration of antibody at or above an efficacious target level. Preferably, an initial dose or subsequent dose does not exceed 50 mg/kg, and each subsequent dose is at least 0.01 mg/kg. Preferably the amount of drug

administered is sufficient to maintain the target trough serum concentration such that the interval between administration cycles is at least one week. Preferably the trough serum concentration does not exceed 2500 μg/ml and does not fall below 0.01 μg/ml during treatment. The front loading drug treatment method of the invention has the advantage of increased efficacy by reaching a target serum drug concentration early in treatment. The subcutaneous delivery of maintenance doses according to the invention has the advantage of being convenient for the patient and health care professionals, reducing time and costs for drug treatment. Preferably, the initial dose (or the last dose within an initial dose series) is separated in time from the first subsequent dose by 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 3 weeks or less, most preferably 1 week or less.

In an embodiment of the invention, the initial dose of anti-ErbB2 is 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous administration, such as intravenous infusion or subcutaneous bolus injection. The subsequent maintenance doses are 2 mg/kg delivered once per week by intravenous infusion, intravenous bolus injection, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection. The choice of delivery method for the initial and maintenance doses is made according to the ability of the animal or human patient to tolerate introduction of the antibody into the body. Where the antibody is well-tolerated, the time of infusion may be reduced. The choice of delivery method as disclosed for this embodiment applies to all drug delivery regimens contemplated according to the invention.

In another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 12 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In yet another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of8 mg/kg once per week or 8 mg/kg once every 2 to 3 weeks.

In another embodiment, the invention includes initial doses of at least 1 mg/kg, preferably 4 mg/kg, anti-ErbB2 antibody on each of days 1, 2 and 3, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg twice per week, wherein the maintenance doses are separated by 3 days.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is 2–3 times per week for 3 weeks. In one embodiment of the invention, each dose is approximately 25 mg/kg or less for a human patient, preferably approximately 10 mg/kg or less. This 3 week cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

In another embodiment, the invention includes a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is daily for 5 days. According to the invention, the cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

The disorder preferably is a benign or malignant tumor characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor, e.g. a cancer, such as, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer. The method of the invention may further comprise administration of a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin. The chemotherapeutic agent preferably is a taxoid, such as TAXOL® (paclitaxel) or a TAXOL® derivative.

Preferred anti-ErbB2 antibodies bind the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor, and preferably bind o the epitope 4D5 or 3H4 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence. More preferably, the antibody is the antibody 4D5, most preferably in a humanized form. Other preferred ErbB2-binding antibodies include, but are not limited to, antibodies 7C2, 7F3, and 2C4, preferably in a humanized form.

The method of the present invention is particularly suitable for the treatment of breast or ovarian cancer, characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor.

The present application also provides a method of therapy involving infrequent dosing of an anti-ErbB2 antibody. In particular, the invention provides a method for the treatment of cancer (e.g. cancer characterized by overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor) in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB2 antibody followed by at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein the first dose and subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks (e.g. from about two weeks to about two months), and optionally at least about three weeks (e.g. from about three weeks to about six weeks). For instance, the antibody may be administered about every three weeks, about two to about 20 times, e.g. about six times. The first dose and subsequent dose may each be from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg; e.g. from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg; and optionally from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg. Generally, two or more subsequent doses (e.g. from about two to about ten subsequent doses) of the antibody are administered to the patient, and those subsequent doses are preferably separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks (e.g. from about two weeks to about two months), and optionally at least about three weeks (e.g. from about three weeks to about six weeks). The two or more subsequent doses may each be from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg; or from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg; or from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg. The invention additionally provides an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antibody according to such methods.

The presently described dosing protocols may be applied to other anti-ErbB antibodies such as anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), anti-ErbB3 and anti-ErbB4 antibodies. Thus, the invention provides a method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB antibody to the human patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an initial dose of at least approximately 5 mg/kg of the anti-ErbB antibody; and administering to the patient a plurality of subsequent doses of the antibody in an amount that is approximately the same or less than the initial dose. Alternatively, or additionally, the invention pertains to a method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB antibody followed by at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein the first dose and subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about two

weeks. The invention additionally provides an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB antibody, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antibody according to such methods.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to avoid the use of anthracycline-type chemotherapeutics in combination with the composition. According to the invention, the package insert further includes instructions to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody at an initial dose of 5 mg/kg followed by the same or smaller subsequent dose or doses. In another embodiment of the invention, the package insert further includes instructions to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody subcutaneously for at least one of the doses, preferably for all of the subsequent doses following the initial dose, most preferably for all doses.

In a further aspect, the invention provides a method of treating ErbB2 expressing cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient effective amounts of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent. In one embodiment of the invention, the chemotherapeutic agent is a taxoid including, but not limited to, paclitaxel and docetaxel. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracyline derivative including, but not limited to, doxorubicin or epirubicin. In still another embodiment of the invention, treatment with an anti-ErbB2 antibody and an anthracycline derivative further includes administration of a cardioprotectant to the patient. In still another embodiment, an anthracycline derivative is not administered to the patient with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. One or more additional chemotherapeutic agents may also be administered to the patient. The cancer is preferably characterized by overexpression of ErbB2.

The invention further provides an article of manufacture comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a package insert instructing the user of the composition to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody composition and a chemotherapeutic agent to a patient. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is other than an anthracycline, and is preferably a taxoid, such as TAXOL®. In still another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline, including but not limited to, doxorubicin or epirubicin. In yet another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline and the package insert further instructs the user to administer a cardioprotectant.

The methods and compositions of the invention comprise an anti-ErbB2 antibody and include a humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody. Thus, the invention further pertains to a composition comprising an antibody that binds ErbB2 and the use of the antibody for treating ErbB2 expressing cancer, e.g., ErbB2 overexpressing cancer, in a human. The invention also pertains to the use of the antibody for treating EGFR expressing cancer. Preferably the antibody is a monoclonal antibody 4D5, e.g., humanized 4D5 (and preferably huMAb4D5–8 (HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody); or monoclonal antibody 2C4, e.g., humanized 2C4. The antibody may be an intact antibody (e.g., an intact IgG, antibody) or an antibody fragment (e.g., a Fab, $F(ab')_2$, diabody, and the like). The variable light chain and variable heavy chain regions of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody 2C4 are shown in FIGS. **5**A and **5**B.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** shows epitope-mapping of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 as determined by truncation mutant analysis and site-directed mutagenesis (Nakamura et al. *J. of Virology* 67 (10):6179–6191 [October 1993]; Renz et *J. Cell Biol.* 125(6):1395–1406 [June 1994]). The anti-proliferative MAbs 4D5 and 3H4 b bind adjacent to the transmembrane domain. The various ErbB2-ECD truncations or point mutations were prepared from cDNA using polymerase chain reaction technology. The ErbB2 mutants were expressed as gD fusion proteins in a mammalian expression plasmid. This expression plasmid uses the cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer with SV40 termination and polyadenylation signals located downstream of the inserted cDNA. Plasmid DNA was transfected into 293S cells. One day following transfection, the cells were metabolically labeled overnight in methionine and cysteine-free, low glucose DMEM containing 1% dialyzed fetal bovine serum and 25 μCi each of ^{35}S methionine and ^{35}S cysteine. Supernatants were harvested either the ErbB2 MAbs or control antibodies were added to the supernatant and incubated 2–4 hours at 4° C. The complexes were precipitated, applied to a 10–20% Tricine SDS gradient gel and electrophoresed at 100 V. The gel was electroblotted onto a membrane and analyzed by autoradiography. SEQ ID NOs:8 and 9 depict the 3H4 and 4D5 epitopes, respectively.

FIG. **2** depicts with underlining the amino acid sequence of Domain 1 of ErbB2 (SEQ ID NO: 1). Bold amino acids indicate the location of the epitope recognized by MAbs 7C2 and 7F3 as determined by deletion mapping, i.e. the "7C2/7F3 epitope" (SEQ ID NO:2).

FIG. **3** is a graph of anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®) trough serum concentration (μg/ml, mean ±SE, dark circles) by week from week 2 through week 36 for ErbB2 overexpressing patients treated with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody at 4 mg/kg initial dose, followed by 2 mg/kg weekly. The number of patients at each time point is represented by "n" (white squares).

FIG. **4**A is a linear plot of tumor volume changes over time in mice treated with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. FIG. **4**B is a semi-logarithmic plot of the same data as in FIG. **4**A such that the variation in tumor volume for the treated animals is observed more readily.

FIGS. **5**A and **5**B depict alignments of the amino acid sequences of the variable light (V_L)(FIG. **5**A) and variable heavy (V_H) (FIG. **5**B) domains of murine monoclonal antibody 2C4 (SEQ ID Nos. 10 and 11, respectively); V_L and V_H domains of humanized Fab version 574 (SEQ ID Nos. 12 and 13, respectively), and human V_L and V_H consensus frameworks (hum κl, light kappa subgroup I; humIII, heavy subgroup III) (SEQ ID Nos. 14 and 15, respectively). Asterisks identify differences between humanized Fab version 574 and murine monoclonal antibody 2C4 or between humanized Fab version 574 and the human framework. Complementarity Determining Regions (CDRs) are in brackets. Humanized Fab version 574, with the changes ArgH71Val, AspH73Arg and IleH69Leu, appears to have binding restored to that of the original chimeric 2C4 Fab fragment. Additional FR and/or CDR residues, such as L2, L54, L55, L56, H35 and/or H48, may be modified (e.g. substituted as follows-IleL2Thr; ArgL54Leu; TyrL55Glu; ThrL56Ser; AspH35Ser; and ValH48Ile) in order to further refine or enhance binding of the humanized antibody. Alternatively, or additionally, the humanized antibody may be affinity matured in order to further improve or refine its affinity and/or other biological activities.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

I. Definitions

An "ErbB receptor" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes EGFR, HER2, ErbB3 and ErbB4 receptors as well as TEGFR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,708,156) and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a native sequence ErbB receptor or an amino acid sequence variant thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 56:881–914 (1987), including variants thereof (e.g. a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al. *PNAS (USA)* 87:4207–4211 (1990)). erbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product. Examples of antibodies which bind to EGFR include MAb 579 (ATCC CRL RB 8506), MAb 455 (ATCC CRL HB8507), MAb 225 (ATCC CRL 8508), MAb 528 (ATCC CRL 8509) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,533, Mendelsohn et al.) and variants thereof, such as chimerized 225 (C225) and reshaped human 225 (H225) (see, WO 96/40210, Imclone Systems Inc.).

"ErbB3" and"HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968 as well as Kraus et al. *PNAS (USA)* 86:9193–9197 (1989), including variants thereof. Examples of antibodies which bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511 (Akita and Sliwkowski), e.g. the 8B8 antibody (ATCC HB 12070) or a humanized variant thereof.

The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in EP Pat Appln No 599,274; Plowman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:1746–1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., *Nature*, 366:473–475 (1993), including variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in WO 99/19488.

The terms "HER2", "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" are used interchangeably. Unless indicated otherwise, the terms "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" and "HER2" when used herein refer to the human protein, and "erbB2," "c-erb-B2," and "her2" refer to human gene. The human erbB2 gene and ErbB2 protein are, for example, described in Semba et al., *PNAS (USA)* 82:6497–650 (1985)and Yamamoto et al. *Nature* 319:230–234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363). ErbB2 comprises four domains (Domains 1–4).

The "epitope 4D5" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) binds. This epitope is close to the transmembrane region of ErbB2. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 4D5 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed (see FIG. **1**) to assess whether the antibody binds to the 4D5 epitope of ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more residues in the region from about residue 529, e.g. about residue 561 to about residue 625, inclusive).

The "epitope 3H4" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 3H4 binds. This epitope is shown in FIG. **1**, and includes residues from about 541 to about 599, inclusive, in the amino acid sequence of ErbB2 extracellular domain.

The "epitope 7C2/7F3" is the region at the N-terminus of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the 7C2 and/or 7F3 antibodies (each deposited with the ATCC, see below) bind. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 7C2/7F3 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to establish whether the antibody binds to the 7C2/7F3 epitope on ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more of residues in the region from about residue 22 to about residue 53 of ErbB2; SEQ ID NO:2).

The term "induces cell death" or "capable of inducing cell death" refers to the ability of the antibody to make a viable cell become nonviable. The "cell" here is one which expresses the ErbB2 receptor, especially where the cell overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. A cell which "overexpresses" ErbB2 has significantly higher than normal ErbB2 levels compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type. Preferably, the cell is a cancer cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Cell death in vitro may be determined in the absence of complement and immune effector cells to distinguish cell death induced by antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Thus, the assay for cell death may be performed using heat inactivated serum (i.e. in the absence of complement) and in the absence of immune effector cells. To determine whether the antibody is able to induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as evaluated by uptake of propidium iodide (PI), trypan blue (see Moore et al. *Cytotechnology* 17:1–11 [1995]) or 7AAD can be assessed relative to untreated cells. Preferred cell death-inducing antibodies are those which induce PI uptake in the "PI uptake assay in BT474 cells".

The phrase "induces apoptosis" or "capable of inducing apoptosis" refers to the ability of the antibody to induce programmed cell death as determined by binding of annexin V, fragmentation of DNA, cell shrinkage, dilation of endoplasmic reticulum, cell fragmentation, and/or formation of membrane vesicles (called apoptotic bodies). The cell is one which overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably the "cell" is a tumor cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3 cell, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Various methods are available for evaluating the cellular events associated with apoptosis. For example, phosphatidyl serine (PS) translocation can be measured by annexin binding; DNA fragmentation can be evaluated through DNA laddering as disclosed-in the example herein; and nuclear/chromatin condensation-along with DNA fragmentation can be evaluated by any increase in hypodiploid cells. Preferably, the antibody which induces apoptosis is one which results in about 2 to 50 fold, preferably about 5 to 50 fold, and most preferably about 10 to 50 fold, induction of annexin binding relative to untreated cell in an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" (see below).

Sometimes the pro-apoptotic antibody will be one which blocks HRG binding/activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 complex (e.g. 7F3 antibody). In other situations, the antibody is one which does not significantly block activation of the

ErbB2/ErbB3 receptor complex by HRG (e.g. 7C2). Further, the antibody may be one like 7C2 which, while inducing apoptosis, does not induce a large reduction in the percent of cells in S phase (e.g. one which only induces about 0–10% reduction in the percent of these cells relative to control).

The antibody of interest may be one like 7C2 which binds specifically to human ErbB2 and does not significantly cross-react with other proteins such as those encoded by the erbB1, erbB3 and/or erbB4 genes. Sometimes, the antibody may not significantly cross-react with the rat neu protein, e.g., as described in Schecter et al. *Nature* 312:513 (1984) and Drebin et al., *Nature* 312:545–548 (1984). In such embodiments, the extent of binding of the antibody to these proteins (e.g., cell surface binding to endogenous receptor) will be less than about 10% as determined by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA).

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide which activates the ErbB2-ErbB3 and ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complexes (i.e. induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the complex upon binding thereto). Various heregulin polypeptides encompassed by this term are disclosed in Holmes et al., *Science*, 256:1205–1210 (1992); WO 92/20798; Wen et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 14(3): 1909–1919 (1994); *Nature*, 362:312–318 (1993), for example. The term includes biologically active fragments and/or variants of a naturally occurring HRG polypeptide, such as an EGF-like domain fragment thereof (e.g. $HRG\beta1_{177\text{-}244}$)

The "ErbB2-ErbB3 protein complex" and "ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complex" are noncovalently associated oligomers of the ErbB2 receptor and the ErbB3 receptor or ErbB4 receptor, respectively. The complexes form when a cell expressing both of these receptors is exposed to HRG and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269(20):14661–14665 (1994).

"Antibodies" (Abs) and "immunoglobulins" (Igs) are glycoproteins having the same structural characteristics. While antibodies exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen, immunoglobulins include both antibodies and other antibody-like molecules which lack antigen specificity. Polypeptides of the latter kind are, for example, produced at low levels by the lymph system and at increased levels by myelomas.

"Native antibodies" and "native immunoglobulins" are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies among the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light-chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light- and heavy-chain variable domains.

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity determining regions (CDRs) or hypervariable regions both in the light-chain and the heavy-chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework region (FR). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FR regions, largely adopting a β-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *NIH Publ. No.* 91–3242, Vol. I, pages 647–669 [1991]). The constant domains involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen-binding fragments, called "Fab" fragments, each with a single antigen-binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. Pepsin treatment yields an $F(ab')_2$ fragment that has two antigen-combining sites and is still capable of cross-linking antigen.

"Fv" is the minimum antibody fragment which contains a complete antigen-recognition and -binding site. This region consists of a dimer of one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain in tight, non-covalent association. It is in this configuration that the three CDRs of each variable domain interact to define an antigen-binding site on the surface of the V_H–V_L dimer. Collectively, the six CDRs confer antigen-binding specificity to the antibody. However, even a single variable domain (or half of an Fv comprising only three CDRs specific for an antigen) has the ability to recognize and bind antigen, although at a lower affinity than the entire binding site.

The Fab fragment also contains the constant domain of the light chain and the first constant domain (CH1) of the heavy chain. Fab' fragments differ from Fab fragments by the addition of a few residues at the carboxy terminus of the heavy chain CH1 domain including one or more cysteines from the antibody hinge region. Fab'-SH is the designation herein for Fab' in which the cysteine residue(s) of the constant domains bear a free thiol group. $F(ab')_2$ antibody fragments originally were produced as pairs of Fab' fragments which have hinge cysteines between them. Other chemical couplings of antibody fragments are also known.

The "light chains" of antibodies (immunoglobulins) from any vertebrate species can be assigned to one of two clearly distinct types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequences of their constant domains.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called α, δ, ε, γ, and μ, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

The term "antibody" is use d in the broadest sense and specifically covers intact monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal

antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g. bispecific antibodies) formed from at least two intact antibodies, and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of an intact antibody, preferably the antigen binding or variable region of the intact antibody. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, and Fv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies (Zapata et al., *Protein Eng.* 8(10): 1057–1062 [1995]); single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to conventional (polyclonal) antibody preparations which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they are synthesized by the hybridoma culture, uncontaminated by other immunoglobulins. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature*, 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies" may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson et al., *Nature*, 352:624–628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581–597 (1991), for example

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851–6855 [1984]).

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric immunoglobulins, immunoglobulin chains or fragments thereof (such as Fv, Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$ or other antigen-binding subsequences of antibodies) which contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementarity determining region (CDR) of the recipient are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat or rabbit having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues which are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences. These modifications are made to further refine and maximize antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the CDRs correspond to those of a non-human inmmunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature*, 321:522–525 (1986); Reichmann et al., *Nature*, 332:323–329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.*, 2:593–596 (1992). The humanized antibody includes a PRIMATIZED™ antibody wherein the antigen-binding region of the antibody is derived from an antibody produced by immunizing macaque monkeys with the antigen of interest.

"Single-chain Fv" or "sFv" antibody fragments comprise the V_H and V_L domains of antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Preferably, the Fv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains which enables the sFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding. For a review of sFv see Plückthun in *The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies*, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 269–315 (1994).

The term "diabodies" refers to small antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites, which fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) in the same polypeptide chain (V_H–V_L). By using a linker that is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain, the domains are forced to pair with the complementary domains of another chain and create two antigen-binding sites. Diabodies are described more fully in, for example, EP 404,097; WO 93/11161; and Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:6444–6448 (1993).

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the antibody will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

As used herein, the term "salvage receptor binding epitope" refers to an epitope of the Fc region of an IgG molecule (e.g., IgG_1, IgG_2, IgG_3, or IgG_4) that is responsible for increasing the in vivo serum half-life of the IgG molecule.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time to disease progression (TTP), or determining the response rates (RR) (see Example 1, below). Therapeutically effective amount also refers to a target serum concentration, such as a trough serum concentration, that has been shown to be effective in suppressing disease symptoms when maintained for a period of time.

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90} and Re^{186}), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclosphosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphaoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibiotics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabicin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK®; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxanes, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and docetaxel (TAXOTERE®, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY 117018, onapristone, and toremifene (Fareston); and anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, and goserelin; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB2-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB2 overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (W B Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

"Doxorubicin" is an athracycline antibiotic. The full chemical name of doxorubicin is (8S-cis)-10-[(3-amino-2,

3,6-trideoxy-α-L-lyxo-hexopyranosyl)oxy]-7,8,9,10-tetrahydro-6,8,11-trihydroxy-8-(hydroxyacetyl)-1-methoxy-5,12-naphthacenedione.

The term "cytokine" is a generic term for proteins released by one cell population which act on another cell as intercellular mediators. Examples of such cytokines are lymphokines, monokines, and traditional polypeptide hormones. Included among the cytokines are growth hormone such as human growth hormone, N-methionyl human growth hormone, and bovine growth hormone; parathyroid hormone; thyroxine; insulin; proinsulin; relaxin; prorelaxin; glycoprotein hormones such as follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH); hepatic growth factor; fibroblast growth factor; prolactin; placental lactogen; tumor necrosis factor-α and β; mullerian-inhibiting substance; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor; integrin; thrombopoietin (TPO); nerve growth factors such as NGF-β; platelet-growth factor; transforming growth factors (TGFs) such as TGF-α and TGF-β; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II; erythropoietin (EPO); osteoinductive factors; interferons such as interferon-α, -β, and -γ; colony stimulating factors (CSFs) such as macrophage-CSF (M-CSF); granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF); and granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF); interleukins (ILs) such as IL-1, IL-1α, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12; a tumor necrosis factor such as TNF-α or TNF-β; and other polypeptide factors including LIF and kit ligand (KL). As used herein, the term cytokine includes proteins from natural sources or from recombinant cell culture and biologically active equivalents of the native sequence cytokines.

The term "prodrug" as used in this application refers to a precursor or derivative form of a pharmaceutically active substance that is less cytotoxic to tumor cells compared to the parent drug and is capable of being enzymatically activated or converted into the more active parent form. See, e.g., Wilman, "Prodrugs in Cancer Chemotherapy" *Biochemical Society Transactions*, 14, pp. 375–382, 615th Meeting Belfast (1986) and Stella et al., "Prodrugs: A Chemical Approach to Targeted Drug Delivery," *Directed Drug Delivery*, Borchardt et al., (ed.), pp. 247–267, Humana Press (1985). The prodrugs of this invention include, but are not limited to, phosphate-containing prodrugs, thiophosphate-containing prodrugs, sulfate-containing prodrugs, peptide-containing prodrugs, D-amino acid-modified prodrugs, glycosylated prodrugs, β-lactam-containing prodrugs, optionally substituted phenoxyacetamide-containing prodrugs or optionally substituted phenylacetamide-containing prodrugs, 5-fluorocytosine and other 5-fluorouridine prodrugs which can be converted into the more active cytotoxic free drug. Examples of cytotoxic drugs that can be derivatized into a prodrug form for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, those chemotherapeutic agents described above.

By "solid phase" is meant a non-aqueous matrix to which the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention can adhere. Examples of solid phases encompassed herein include those formed partially or entirely of glass (e.g., controlled pore glass), polysaccharides (e.g., agarose), polyacrylamides, polystyrene, polyvinyl alcohol and silicones. In certain embodiments, depending on the context, the solid phase can comprise the well of an assay plate; in others it is a purification column (e.g.,an affinity chromatography column). This term also includes a discontinuous solid phase of discrete particles, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,275,149.

A "liposome" is a small vesicle composed of various types of lipids, phospholipids and/or surfactant which is useful for delivery of a drug (such as the anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein and, optionally, a chemotherapeutic agent) to a mammal. The components of the liposome are commonly arranged in a bilayer formation, similar to the lipid arrangement of biological membranes.

The term "package insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

The term "serum concentration," "serum drug concentration," or "serum HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody concentration" refers to the concentration of a drug, such as HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, in the blood serum of an animal or human patient being treated with the drug. Serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, for example, is preferably determined by immunoassay. Preferably, the immunoassay is an ELISA according to the procedure disclosed herein.

The term "peak serum concentration" refers to the maximal serum drug concentration shortly after delivery of the drug into the animal or human patient, after the drug has been distributed throughout the blood system, but before significant tissue distribution, metabolism or excretion of drug by the body has occurred.

The term "trough serum concentration" refers to the serum drug concentration at a time after delivery of a previous dose and immediately prior to delivery of the next subsequent dose of drug in a series of doses. Generally, the trough serum concentration is a minimum sustained efficacious drug concentration in the series of drug administrations. Also, the trough serum concentration is frequently targeted as a minimum serum concentration for efficacy because it represents the serum concentration at which another dose of drug is to be administered as part of the treatment regimen. If the delivery of drug is by intravenous administration, the trough serum concentration is most preferably attained within 1 day of a front loading initial drug delivery. If the delivery of drug is by subcutaneous administration, the peak serum concentration is preferably attained in 3 days or less. According to the invention, the trough serum concentration is preferably attained in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, most preferably in 1 week or less, including 1 day or less using any of the drug delivery methods disclosed herein.

The term "intravenous infusion" refers to introduction of a drug into the vein of an animal or human patient over a period of time greater than approximately 5 minutes, preferably between approximately 30 to 90 minutes, although, according to the invention, intravenous infusion is alternatively administered for 10 hours or less.

The term "intravenous bolus" or "intravenous push" refers to drug administration into a vein of an animal or human such that the body receives the drug in approximately 15 minutes or less, preferably 5 minutes or less.

The term "subcutaneous administration" refers to introduction of a drug under the skin of an animal or human patient, preferable within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, by relatively slow, sustained delivery from a drug receptacle. The pocket may be created by pinching or drawing the skin up and away from underlying tissue.

The term "subcutaneous infusion" refers to introduction of a drug under the skin of an animal or human patient,

preferably within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, by relatively slow, sustained delivery from a drug receptacle for a period of time including, but not limited to, 30 minutes or less, or 90 minutes or less. Optionally, the infusion may be made by subcutaneous implantation of a drug delivery pump implanted under the skin of the animal or human patient, wherein the pump delivers a predetermined amount of drug for a predetermined period of time, such as 30 minutes, 90 minutes, or a time period spanning the length of the treatment regimen.

The term "subcutaneous bolus" refers to drug administration beneath the skin of an animal or human patient, where bolus drug delivery is preferably less than approximately 15 minutes, more preferably less than 5 minutes, and most preferably less than 60 seconds. Administration is preferably within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, where the pocket is created, for example,- by pinching or drawing the skin up and away from underlying tissue.

The term "front loading" when referring to drug administration is meant to describe an initially higher dose followed by the same or lower doses at intervals. The initial higher dose or doses are meant to more rapidly increase the animal or human patient's serum drug concentration to an efficacious target serum concentration. According to the present invention, front loading is achieved by an initial dose or doses delivered over three weeks or less that causes the animal's or patient's serum concentration to reach a target serum trough concentration. Preferably, the initial front loading dose or series of doses is administered in two weeks or less, more preferably in 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. Most preferably, where the initial dose is a single dose and is not followed by a subsequent maintenance dose for at least 1 week, the initial dose is administered in 1 day or less. Where the initial dose is a series of doses, each dose is separated by at least 3 hours, but not more than 3 weeks or less, preferably 2 weeks or less, more preferably 1 week or less, most preferably 1 day or less. To avoid adverse immune reaction to an antibody drug such as an anti-ErbB2 antibody (e.g., HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) in an animal or patient who has not previously been treated with the antibody, it may be preferable to deliver initial doses of the antibody by intravenous infusion. The present invention includes front loading drug delivery of initial and maintenance doses by infusion or bolus administration, intravenously or subcutaneously.

Published information related to anti-ErbB2 antibodies includes the following issued patents and published applications: PCT/US89/00051,published Jan. 5,1989; PCT/US90/02697, published May 18,1990; EU 0474727 issued Jul. 23, 1997; DE 69031120.6, issued Jul. 23, 1997; PCT/US97/18385, published Oct. 9 1997; SA 97/9185, issued Oct. 14, 1997; U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171, issued Oct. 14, 1997; U.S. Pat. No. 5,720,937, issued Feb. 24, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,720,954, issued Feb. 24, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,725,856, issued Mar. 10, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,770,195, issued Jun. 23, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997, issued Jun. 30, 1998; PCT/US98/2626, published Dec. 10, 1998; and PCT/US99/06673, published Mar. 26, 1999, each of which patents and publications is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety.

II. Production of anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

A description follows as to exemplary techniques for the production of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention. The ErbB2 antigen to be used for production of antibodies may be, e.g., a soluble form of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 or a portion thereof, containing the desired epitope. Alternatively, cells expressing ErbB2 at their cell surface (e.g. NIH-3T3 cells transformed to overexpress ErbB2; or a carcinoma cell line such as SKBR3 cells, see Stancovski et al., *PNAS (USA)* 88:8691–8695 [1991]) can be used to generate antibodies. Other forms of ErbB2 useful for generating antibodies will be apparent to those skilled in the art.

(i) Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl_2$, or $R^1N{=}C{=}NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 μg or 5 μg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with ⅕ to 1/10 the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(ii) Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies are obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies.

For example, the monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature*, 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp.59–103 [Academic Press, 1986]).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC- 11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.*, 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51–63 [Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987]).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells-is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

The binding affinity of the monoclonal antibody can, for example, be determined by the Scatchard analysis of Munson et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 107:220 (1980).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp.59–103 [Academic Press, 1986]). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-M EM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional imnmunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of murine antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Review articles on recombinant expression in bacteria of DNA encoding the antibody include Skerra et al., *Curr. Opinion in Immunol.*, 5:256–262 (1993) and Plückthun, *Immunol. Revs.*, 130:151–188 (1992).

In a further embodiment, antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature*, 348:552–554 (1990). Clackson et al., *Nature*, 352:624–628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581–597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology*, 10:779–783 [1992]), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.*, 21:2265–2266 [1993]). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851 [1984]), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

(iii) Humanized and Human Antibodies

Methods for humanizing non-human antibodies are well known in the art. Preferably, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import"variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature*, 321:522–525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature*, 332:323–327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., *Science* 239:1534–1536 [1988]), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework region (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.*, 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 196:901 [1987]). Another method uses a particular framework region derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immnol.*, 151:2623 [1993]).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the

functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature*, 362:255–258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., *Year in Immuno.*, 7:33 (1993). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 227:381 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581–597 [1991]).

(iv) Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al. , *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107–117(1992) and Brennan et al., *Science*, 229:81 [1985]). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form $F(ab')_2$ fragments (Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10: 163–167 [1992]). According to another approach, $F(ab')_2$ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv). See WO 93/16185.

(v) Bispecific Antibodies

Bispecific antibodies are antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of the ErbB2 protein. For example, one arm may bind an epitope in Domain 1 of ErbB2 such as the 7C2/7F3 epitope, the other may bind a different ErbB2 epitope, e.g. the 4D5 epitope. Other such antibodies may combine an ErbB2 binding site with binding site(s) for EGFR, ErbB3 and/or ErbB4. Alternatively, an anti-ErbB2 arm may be combined with an arm which binds to a triggering molecule on a leukocyte such as a T-cell receptor molecule (e.g. CD2 or CD3), or Fc receptors for IgG (FcγR), such as FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16) so as to focus cellular defense mechanisms to the ErbB2-expressing cell. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express ErbB2. These antibodies possess an ErbB2-binding arm and an arm which binds the cytotoxic agent (e.g. saporin, anti-interferon-α, vinca alkaloid, ricin A chain, methotrexate or radioactive isotope hapten). Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments (e.g. $F(ab')_2$ bispecific antibodies).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature*, 305:537–539 [1983]). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.*, 10:3655–3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 121:210 (1986).

According to another approach described in WO96/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target

immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science*, 229: 81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate $F(ab')_2$ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli*, which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.*, 175: 217–225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody $F(ab')_2$ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.*, 148(5):1547–1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:6444–6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.*, 152:5368 (1994).

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al., *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

(vi) Screening for Antibodies With the Desired Properties

Techniques for generating antibodies have been described above. Those antibodies having the characteristics described herein are selected.

To select for antibodies which induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as indicated by, e.g., PI, trypan blue or 7AAD uptake is assessed relative to control. The preferred assay is the "PI uptake assay using BT474 cells". According to this assay, BT474 cells (which can be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection [Rockville, Md.]) are cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (D-MEM) :Ham's F-12 (50:50) supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS (Hyclone) and 2 mM L-glutamine. (Thus, the assay is performed in the absence of complement and immune effector cells). The BT474 cells are seeded at a density of 3×10^6 per dish in 100×20 mm dishes and allowed to attach overnight. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the appropriate MAb. The cells are incubated for a 3 day time period. Following each treatment, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 5 minutes at 4° C., the pellet resuspended in 3 ml ice cold Ca^{2+} binding buffer (10 mM Hepes, pH 7.4, 140 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM $CaCl_2$) and aliquoted into 35 mm strainer-capped 12×75 tubes (1 ml per tube, 3 tubes per treatment group) for removal of cell clumps. Tubes then receive PI (10 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of cell death as determined by PI uptake are selected.

In order to select for antibodies which induce apoptosis, an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" is available. The BT474 cells are cultured and seeded in dishes as discussed in the preceding paragraph. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10μg/ml of the MAb. Following a three day incubation period, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged, resuspended in Ca^{2+} binding buffer and aliquoted into tubes as discussed above for the cell death assay. Tubes then receive labeled annexin (e.g. annexin V-FTIC) (1 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of annexin binding relative to control are selected as apoptosis-inducing antibodies.

In addition to the annexin binding assay, a "DNA staining assay using BT474 cells" is available. In order to perform this assay, BT474 cells which have been treated with the antibody of interest as described in the preceding two paragraphs are incubated with 9μg/ml HOECHST 33342™ for 2 hr at 37° C., then analyzed on an EPICS ELITE™ flow cytometer (Coulter Corporation) using MODFIT LT™ software (Verity Software House). Antibodies which induce a change in the percentage of apoptotic cells which is 2 fold or greater (and preferably 3 fold or greater) than untreated cells (up to 100% apoptotic cells) may be selected as pro-apoptotic antibodies using this assay.

To screen for antibodies which bind to an epitope on ErbB2 bound by an antibody of interest, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed by methods known in the art.

To identify anti-ErbB2 antibodies which inhibit growth of SKBR3 cells in cell culture by 50–100%, the SKBR3 assay described in WO 89/06692 can be performed. According to this assay, SKBR3 cells are grown in a 1:1 mixture of F12 and DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, glutamine and penicillinstreptomycin. The SKBR3 cells are plated at 20,000 cells in a 35 mm cell culture dish

(2 mls/35 mm dish) 2.5μg/ml of the anti-ErbB2 antibody is added per dish. After six days, the number of cells, compared to untreated cells are counted using an electronic COULTER™ cell counter. Those antibodies which inhibit growth of the SKBR3 cells by 50–100% are selected for combination with the apoptotic antibodies as desired.

(vii) Effector Function Engineering

It may be desirable to modify the antibody of the invention with respect to effector function, so as to enhance the effectiveness of the antibody in treating cancer, for example. For example, cysteine residue(s) may be introduced in the Fc region, thereby allowing interchain disulfide bond formation in this region. The homodimeric antibody thus generated may have improved internalization capability and/or increased complement-mediated cell killing and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). See Caron et al., *J. Exp Med.* 176:1191–1195 (1992) and Shopes, B. *J. Immunol.* 148:2918–2922 (1992). Homodimeric antibodies with enhanced anti-tumor activity may also be prepared using heterobifunctional cross-linkers as described in Wolff et al. *Cancer Research* 53:2560–2565 (1993). Alternatively, an antibody can be engineered which has dual Fe regions and may thereby have enhanced complement lysis and ADCC capabilities. See Stevenson et al. *Anti-Cancer Drug Design* 3:219–230 (1989).

(viii) Immunoconjugates

The invention also pertains to immunoconjugates comprising the antibody described herein conjugated to a cytotoxic agent such as a chemotherapeutic agent, toxin (e.g. an enzymatically active toxin of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof), or a radioactive isotope (i.e., a radioconjugate).

Chemotherapeutic agents useful in the generation of such immunoconjugates have been described above. Enzymatically active toxins and fragments thereof which can be used include diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, *Aleurites fordii* proteins, dianthin proteins, *Phytolaca americana* proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), momordica charantia inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin and the tricothecenes. A variety of radionuclides are available for the production of radioconjugated anti-ErbB2 antibodies. Examples include ^{212}Bi, ^{131}I, ^{131}In, ^{90}Y and ^{186}Re.

Conjugates of the antibody and cytotoxic agent are made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithiol) propionate (SPDP), iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCL), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutareldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as bis (p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine), bis-diazonium derivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as tolyene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). For example, a ricin immunotoxin can be prepared as described in Vitetta et al. *Science* 238: 1098 (1987). Carbon-14-labeled 1-isothiocyanatobenzyl-3-methyldiethylene triaminepentaacetic acid (MX-DTPA) is an exemplary chelating agent for conjugation of radionucleotide to the antibody. See WO 94/11026.

In another embodiment, the antibody may be conjugated to a "receptor" (such streptavidin) for utilization in tumor pretargeting wherein the antibody-receptor conjugate is administered to the patient, followed by removal of unbound conjugate from the circulation using a clearing agent and then administration of a "ligand" (e.g. avidin) which is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g. a radionucleotide).

(ix) Immunoliposomes

The anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein may also be formulated as inununoliposomes. Liposomes containing the antibody are prepared by methods known in the art, such as described in Epstein et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 82:3688 (1985); Hwang et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 77:4030 (1980); and U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545. Liposomes with enhanced circulation time are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,556.

Particularly useful liposomes can be generated by the reverse phase evaporation method with a lipid composition comprising phosphatidylcholine, cholesterol and PEG-derivatized phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE). S Liposomes are extruded through filters of defined pore size to yield liposomes with the desired diameter. Fab' fragments of the antibody of the present invention can be conjugated to the liposomes as described in Martin et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 257: 286–288 (1982) via a disulfide interchange reaction. A chemotherapeutic agent is optionally contained within the liposome. See Gabizon et al., *J. National Cancer Inst.* 81(19)1484 (1989).

(x) Antibody Dependent Enzyme Mediated Prodrug Therapy (ADEPT)

The antibodies of the present invention may also be used in ADEPT by conjugating the antibody to a prodrug-activating enzyme which converts a prodrug (e.g. a peptidyl chemotherapeutic agent, see WO 81/01145) to an active anti-cancer drug. See, for example, WO 88/07378 and U.S. Pat. No. 4,975,278.

The enzyme component of the immunoconjugate useful for ADEPT includes any enzyme capable of acting on a prodrug in such a way so as to covert it into its more active, cytotoxic form.

Enzymes that are useful in the method of this invention include, but are not limited to, alkaline phosphatase useful for converting phosphate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; arylsulfatase useful for converting sulfate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; cytosine deaminase useful for converting non-toxic 5-fluorocytosine into the anti-cancer drug, 5-fluorouracil; proteases, such as serratia protease, thermolysin, subtilisin, carboxypeptidases and cathepsins (such as cathepsins B and L), that are useful for converting peptide-containing prodrugs into free drugs; D-alanylcarboxypeptidases, useful for converting prodrugs that contain D-amino acid substituents; carbohydrate-cleaving enzymes such as β-galactosidase and neuraminidase useful for converting glycosylated prodrugs into free drugs; β-lactamase useful for converting drugs derivatized with β-lactams into free drugs; and penicillin amidases, such as penicillin V amidase or penicillin G amidase, useful for converting drugs derivatized at their amine nitrogens with phenoxyacetyl or phenylacetyl groups, respectively, into free drugs. Alternatively, antibodies with enzymatic activity, also known in the art as "abzymes", can be used to convert the prodrugs of the invention into free active drugs (see, e.g., Massey, *Nature* 328: 457458 [1987]). Antibody-abzyme conjugates can be prepared as described herein for delivery of the abzyme to a tumor cell population.

The enzymes of this invention can be covalently bound to the anti-ErbB2 antibodies by techniques well known in the art such as the use of the heterobifunctional crosslinking reagents discussed above. Alternatively, fusion proteins comprising at least the antigen binding region of an antibody of the invention linked to at least a functionally active

portion of an enzyme of the invention can be constructed using recombinant DNA techniques well known in the art (see, e.g., Neuberger et al., *Nature*, 312: 604–608 [1984]).

(xi) Antibody-salvage Receptor Binding Epitope Fusions

In certain embodiments of the invention, it may be desirable to use an antibody fragment, rather than an intact antibody, to increase tumor penetration, for example. In this case, it may be desirable to modify the antibody fragment in order to increase its serum half life. This may be achieved, for example, by incorporation of a salvage receptor binding epitope into the antibody fragment (e.g. by mutation of the appropriate region in the antibody fragment or by incorporating the epitope into a peptide tag that is then fused to the antibody fragment at either end or in the middle, e.g., by DNA or peptide synthesis).

A systematic method for preparing such an antibody variant having an increased in vivo half-life comprises several steps. The first involves identifying the sequence and conformation of a salvage receptor binding epitope of an Fc region of an IgG molecule. Once this epitope is identified, the sequence of the antibody of interest is modified to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. After the sequence is mutated, the antibody variant is tested to see if it has a longer in vivo half-life than that of the original antibody. If the antibody variant does not have a longer in vivo half-life upon testing, its sequence is further altered to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. The altered antibody is tested for longer in vivo half-life, and this process is continued until a molecule is obtained that exhibits a longer in vivo half-life.

The salvage receptor binding epitope being thus incorporated into the antibody of interest is any suitable such epitope as defined above, and its nature will depend, e.g., on the type of antibody being modified. The transfer is made such that the antibody of interest still possesses the biological activities described herein.

The epitope preferably constitutes a region wherein any one or more amino acid residues from one or two loops of a Fc domain are transferred to an analogous position of the antibody fragment. Even more preferably, three or more residues from one or two loops of the Fc domain are transferred. Still more preferred, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region (e.g., of an IgG) and transferred to the CH1, CH3, or V_H, region, or more than one such region, of the antibody. Alternatively, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region and transferred to the C_L region or V_L region, or both, of the antibody fragment.

In one most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope comprises the sequence (5' to 3'): PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3), and optionally further comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of HQSLGTQ (SEQ ID NO:4), HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7), particularly where the antibody fragment is a Fab or $F(ab')_2$. In another most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope is a polypeptide containing the sequence(s) (5' to 3'): HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7) and the sequence: PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3).

(xii) Purification of anti-ErbB2 Antibody

When using recombinant techniques, the antibody can be produced intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. If the antibody is produced intracellularly, as a first step, the particulate debris, either host cells or lysed fragments, is removed, for example, by centrifugation or ultrafiltration. Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163–167 (1992) describe a procedure for isolating antibodies which are secreted to the periplasmic space of *E. coli*. Briefly, cell paste is thawed in the presence of sodium acetate (pH 3.5), EDTA, and phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) over about 30 min. Cell debris can be removed by centrifugation. Where the antibody is secreted into the medium, supernatants from such expression systems are preferably first concentrated using a commercially available protein concentration filter, for example, an Amicon or Millipore Pellicon ultrafiltration unit. A protease inhibitor such as PMSF may be included in any of the foregoing steps to inhibit proteolysis and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants.

The antibody composition prepared from the cells can be purified using, for example, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, and affinity chromatography, with affinity chromatography being the preferred purification technique. The suitability of protein A as an affinity ligand depends on the species and isotype of any immunoglobulin Fc domain that is present in the antibody. Protein A can be used to purify antibodies that are based on human γ1, γ2, or γ4 heavy chains (Lindmark et al., *J. Immunol. Meth.* 62:1–13 [1983]). Protein G is recommended for all mouse isotypes and for human γ3 (Guss et al., *EMBO J.* 5:15671575 [1986]). The matrix to which the affinity ligand is attached is most often agarose, but other matrices are available. Mechanically stable matrices such as controlled pore glass or poly(styrenedivinyl)benzene allow for faster flow rates and shorter processing times than can be achieved with agarose. Where the antibody comprises a C_H3 domain, the Bakerbond ABX™ resin (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, N.J.) is useful for purification. Other techniques for protein purification such as fractionation on an ion-exchange column, ethanol precipitation, Reverse Phase HPLC, chromatography on silica, chromatography on heparin SEPHAROSE™ chromatography on an anion or cation exchange resin (such as a polyaspartic acid column), chromatofocusing, SDS-PAGE, and ammonium sulfate precipitation are also available depending on the antibody to be recovered.

Following any preliminary purification step(s), the mixture comprising the antibody of interest and contaminants may be subjected to low pH hydrophobic interaction chromatography using an elution buffer at a pH between about 2.5–4.5, preferably performed at low salt concentrations (e.g. from about 0–0.25M salt).

III. Determination of anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration in Serum

The following non-limiting assay is useful for determining the presence of and to quantitate the amount of specific rhuMAb HER2 (humanized anti-$p185^{HER2}$ monoclonal antibody, including HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) in a body fluid of a mammal including, but not limited to, serum, amniotic fluid, milk, umbilical cord serum, ocular aqueous and vitreous liquids, and ocular vitreous gel.

Plate Binding Activity Assay for rhuMAb HER2 (Humanized Anti-$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody

The method of assaying rhuMAb HER2 described herein is meant as an example of such a method and is not meant to be limiting. A standardized preparation of rhuMAb HER2 (Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, Calif.), controls, and serum samples were diluted with Assay Diluent (PBS/0.5% BSA/0.05% Polysorbate 20/0.01% Thimerosal). The dilutions of standardized rhuMAb HER2 were prepared to span a range of concentrations useful for a standard curve. The samples were diluted to fall within the standard curve.

An aliquot of Coat Antigen in Coating buffer (recombinant $p185^{HER2}$ (Genentech, Inc.) in 0.05 M sodium carbonate buffer) was added to each well of a microtiter plate and incubated at 2–8° C. for 12–72 hours. The coatin solution was removed and each well was washed six times with water, then blotted to remove excess water.

An aliquot of Assay Diluent was added to each well and incubated for 1–2 hours at ambient temperature with agitation. The wells were washed as in the previous step.

Aliquots of diluted standard, control and sample solutions were added to the wells and incubated at ambient temperature for 1 hour with agitation to allow binding of the antibody to the coating antigen. The wells are washed again with water as in previous steps.

Horse radish peroxidase-conjugate (HRP-conjugate, Goat anti-human IgG Fc conjugated to horseradish peroxidase; Organon Teknika catalog #55253 or equivalent) was diluted with Assay Diluent to yield an appropriate optical density range between the highest and lowest standards. An aliquot of the HRP-conjugate solution was added to each well and incubated at ambient temperature for 1 hour with agitation. The wells were washed with water as in previous steps.

An aliquot of Substrate Solution (o-phenylenediamine (OPD) 5 mg tablet (Sigma P6912 or equivalent) in 12.5 ml 4 mM H_2O_2 in PBS) was added to each well and incubated for a sufficient period of time (approximately 8–10 minutes) in the dark at ambient temperature to allow color development. The reaction was stopped with an aliquot of 4.5 N sulfuric acid. Optical density was read at 490–492 nm for detection absorbance and 405 nm for reference absorbance. The standard curve data are plotted and the results for the controls and samples are determined from the standard curve.

IV. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. [1980]), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; met al complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2 antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein be reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2 (e.g. an antibody which binds a different epitope on ErbB2), ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, cytokine or growth inhibitory agent. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(−)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S-S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

V. Treatment With the Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB2 receptor. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies of the invention are administered to a human patient, in accord with known methods, such as

intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

The treatment of the present invention involves the administration of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to an animal or human patient, followed at intervals by subsequent doses of equal or smaller doses such that a target serum concentration is achieved and maintained during treatment. Preferably, maintenance doses are delivered by bolus delivery, preferably by subcutaneous bolus administration, making treatment convenient and cost-effective for the patient and health care professionals.

Where combined administration of a chemotherapeutic agent (other than an antracycline) is desired, the combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

It may be desirable to also administer antibodies against other tumor associated antigens, such as antibodies which bind to the EGFR, ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). Alternatively, or additionally, two or more anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be co-administered to the patient. Sometimes, it may be beneficial to also administer one or more cytokines to the patient. The ErbB2 antibody may be co-administered with a growth inhibitory agent. For example, the growth inhibitory agent may be administered first, followed by the ErbB2 antibody. However, simultaneous administration, or administration of the ErbB2 antibody first is also contemplated. Suitable dosages for the growth inhibitory agent are those presently used and may be lowered due to the combined action (synergy) of the growth inhibitory agent and anti-ErbB2 antibody.

In addition to the above therapeutic regimens, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells and/or-radiation therapy.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of anti-ErbB2 antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments. Where the treatment involves a series of treatments, the initial dose or initial doses are followed at daily or weekly intervals by maintenance doses. Each maintenance dose provides the same or a smaller amount of antibody compared to the amount of antibody administered in the initial dose or doses.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1–20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

According to the invention, dosage regimens may include an initial dose of anti-ErbB2 of 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous infusion, followed by subsequent weekly maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg by intravenous infusion, intravenous bolus injection, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection. Where the antibody is well-tolerated by the patient, the time of infusion may be reduced.

Alternatively, the invention includes an initial dose of 12 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

Another dosage regimen involves an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

Still another dosage regimen involves an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 8 mg/kg once per week or 8 mg/kg once every 2 to 3 weeks.

As an alternative regimen, initial doses of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody may be administered on each of days 1, 2 and 3, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

An additional regimen involves an initial dose of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg twice per week, wherein the maintenance doses are separated by 3 days.

Alternatively, the invention may include a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is 2–3 times per week for 3 weeks. The 3 week cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

The invention further includes a cyclic dosage regimen in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is daily for 5 days. According to the invention, the cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. Further information about suitable dosages is provided in the Examples below.

VI. Articles of Manufacture

In another embodiment of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, a label and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example, the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-ErbB2 antibody. The label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes. In addition, the article of manufacture may comprise a package inserts with instruc-

tions for use, including, e.g., a warning that the composition is not to be used in combination with anthacycline-type chemotherapeutic agent, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990
2C4	ATCC HB-12697	Apr. 8, 1999

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

EXAMPLES

Example 1

Preparation and Efficacy of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

Materials and Methods

Anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody The anti-ErbB2 $IgG_1\kappa$ murine monoclonal antibody 4D5, specific for the extracellular domain of ErbB2, was produced as described in Fendly et al., *Cancer Research* 50: 1550–1558 (1990) and WO89/06692. Briefly, NIH 3T3/HER2–3_{400} cells (expressing approximately 1×10^5 ErbB2 molecules/cell) produced as described in Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* (*USA*) 84:7159 (1987) were harvested with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 25 mM EDTA and used to immunize BALB/c mice. The mice were given injections i.p. of 10^7 cells in 0.5 ml PBS on weeks, 0, 2, 5 and 7. The mice with antisera that immunoprecipitated ^{32}P-labeled ErbB2 were given i.p. injections of a wheat germ agglutinin-Sepharose (WGA) purified ErbB2 membrane extract on weeks 9 and 13. This was followed by an i.v. injection of 0.1 ml of the ErbB2 preparation and the splenocytes were fused with mouse myeloma line X63-Ag8.653. Hybridoma supernatants were screened for ErbB2-binding by ELISA and radioimmunoprecipitation. MOPC-21 (IgG1), (Cappell, Durham, N.C.), was used as an isotype-matched control.

The treatment was performed with a humanized version of the murine 4D5 antibody (HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody). The humanized antibody was engineered by inserting the complementarity determining regions of the murine 4D5 antibody into the framework of a consensus human immunoglobulin IgG_1 (IgG_1) (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:4285–4289 [1992]). The resulting humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody has high affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ (Dillohiation constant [K_d]=0.1 nmol/L), markedly inhibits, in vitro and in human xenografts, the growth of breast cancer cells that contain high levels of p_{185}^{HER2}, induces antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), and has been found clinically active, as a single agent, in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior therapy. HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is produced by a genetically engineered Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cell line, grown in large scale, that secretes the antibody into the culture medium. The antibody is purified from the CHO culture media using standard chromatographic and filtration methods. Each lot of antibody used in this study was assayed to verify identity, purity, and potency, as well as to meet Food and Drug Administration requirements for sterility and safety.

Eligibility Criteria

Patients had to fulfill all of the following criteria to be eligible for study admission:

Metastatic breast cancer

Overexpression of the ErbB2 (HER2) oncogene (2+ to 3+ as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). [Tumor expression of ErbB2 can be determined by immunohistochemical analysis, as previously described (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra), of a set of thin sections prepared from the patient's paraffim-archived tumor blocks. The primary detecting antibody used is murine 4D5 MAb, which has the same CDRs as the humanized antibody used for the treatment. Tumors are considered to overexpress ErbB2 if at least 25% of tumor cells exhibit characteristic membrane staining for p_{185}^{HER2}].

Bidimensionally measurable disease (including lytic bone lesions) by radiographic means, physical examination, or photographs

Measurable disease was defined as any mass reproducibly measurable in two perpendicular diameters by physical examination, X-ray (plain films), computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasound, or photographs.

Osteoblastic metastases, pleural effusions, or ascites were not considered to be measurable. Measurable lesions must be at least 1 cm in greatest dimension. Enumeration of evaluable sites of metastatic disease and number of lesions in an evaluable site (e.g. lung) had to be recorded on the appropriate Case Report Form (CRF). If a large number of pulmonary or hepatic lesions were present, the six largest lesions per site were followed.

The ability to understand and willingness to sign a written informed consent form

Women ≧18 years

Suitable candidates for receiving concomitant cytotoxic chemotherapy as evidenced by screening laboratory assessments of hematologic, renal, hepatic, and metabolic functions.

Exclusion Criteria

Patients with any of the following were excluded from study entry:

Prior cytotoxic chemotherapy for metastatic breast cancer

Patients may have received prior hormonal therapy (e.g. tamoxifen) for metastatic disease or cytotoxic therapy in the adjuvant setting.

Concomitant malignancy that has not been curatively treated

A performance status of <60% on the Karnofsky scale

Pregnant or nursing women; women of childbearing potential, unless using effective contraception as determined by the investigator

Bilateral breast cancer (either both primary tumors must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression, or the metastatic site must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression)

Use of investigational or unlicensed agents within 30 days prior to study entry

Clinically unstable or untreated metastases to the brain (e.g. requiring radiation therapy)

Based upon the foregoing criteria, 469 patients were chosen, and enrolled in the study. Half the patients (stratified by chemotherapy) were randomized to additionally receive the HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody (see below).

Administration and Dosage

Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

On day 0, a 4 mg/kg dose of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, H) was administered

intravenously, over a 90-minute period. Beginning on day 7, patients received weekly administration of 2 mg/kg antibody (i.v.) over a 90-minute period.

Chemotherapy

The patients received one of two chemotherapy regimens for a minimum of six cycles, provided their disease was not progressing: a) cyclophosphamide and doxorubicin or epirubicin (AC), if patients have not received anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting, or b) paclitaxel (T, TAXOL®), if patients have received any anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting. The initial dose of the HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody preceded the first cycle of either chemotherapy regimen by 24 hours. Subsequent doses of the antibody were given immediately before chemotherapy administration, if the initial dose of the antibody was well tolerated. If the first dose of the antibody was not well tolerated, subsequent infusions continued to precede chemotherapy administration by 24 hours. Patients were permitted to continue receiving chemotherapy beyond six cycles if, in the opinion of the treating physician, they were continuing to receive treatment benefit.

Cyclophosphamide (600 mg/m^2) was given either by iv push over a minimum period of 3 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours.

Doxorubicin (60 mg/m^2) or epirubicin (75 mg/m^2) were given either by slow iv push over a minimum period of 3–5 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours, according to institutional protocol.

Paciltaxel (TAXOL®) was given at a dose of 175 mg/m^2 over 3 hours by intravenous administration. All patients receiving paclitaxel were premedicated with dexamethasone (or its equivalent) 20 mg×2, administered orally 12 and 6 hours prior to paclitaxel; diphenhydramine (or its equivalent) 50 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel, and dimetidine (or another H_2 blocker) 300 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel.

Response Criteria

Progressive Disease

Objective evidence of an increase of 25% or more in any measurable lesion. Progressive disease also includes those instances when new lesions have appeared. For bone lesions, progression is defined as a 25% increase in objective measurement by plain film, CT, MRI; symptomatic new lesions not due to fracture; or requirement for palliative radiotherapy.

Complete Response

Disappearance of all radiographically and/or visually apparent tumor for a minimum of 4 weeks. Skin and chest wall complete responses had to be confirmed by biopsy.

Partial Response

A reduction of at least 50% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions for a minimum period of 4 weeks. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Minor Response

A reduction of 25% to 49% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Stable Disease

No change of greater than 25% in the size of measurable lesions. No lesions may have appeared.

Time to disease progression (TTP) was calculated from the beginning of therapy to progression. Confidence limits for response rates were calculated using the exact method for a single proportion. (Fleiss, J L, *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions* (ed.2), New York, N.Y., Wiley, 1981, pp 13–17).

Results

At a median follow-up of 10.5 months, assessments of time to disease progression (TTP in months) and response rates (RR) showed a significant augmentation of the chemotherapeutic effect by HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, without increase in overall severe adverse events (AE):

TABLE 1

HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Efficacy

	Enrolled	TTP (months)	RR (%)	AE (%)
CRx	234	5.5	36.2	66
CRx + 14	235	8.6*	62.00**	69
AC	145	6.5	42.1	71
AC + H	146	9.0	64.9	68
T	89	4.2	25.0	59
T + H	89	7.1	57.3	70

*$p < 0.001$ by log-rank test; ** $p < 0.01$ by X^2 test; CRx: chemotherapy; AC: anthracycline/cyclophosphamide treatment; H: HERCEPTIN ® anti-ErbB2 antibody; T: TAXOL ®

A syndrome of myocardial dysfunction similar to that observed with anthracyclines was reported more commonly with a combined treatment of AC+H (18% Grade ¾) than with AC alone (3%), T (0%), or T+H (2%).

These data indicate that the combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment with chemotherapy markedly increases the clinical benefit, as assessed by response rates and the evaluation of disease progression. However, due to the increased cardiac side-effects of doxorubicin or epirubicin, the combined use of anthracyclines with anti-ErbB2 antibody therapy is contraindicated. The results, taking into account risk and benefit, favor treatment with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody and paclitaxel (TAXOL®) where a combined treatment regimen is desired.

Example 2

Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamic Properties of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody (HERCEPTIN®)

HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was administered by intravenous, infusion to human patients selected according to the criteria provided in Example 1. An initial dose of 4 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was delivered by intravenous infusion, followed by subsequent i.v. infusions of 2 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody weekly for several weeks. Two hundred thirteen patients began this treatment regimen and serum drug concentration was obtained beyond 8 weeks for fewer than 90 patients as selective discontinuation of patients with rapidly progressing disease occurred. Of the 213 patients who began treatment, serum trough concentration data were available for 80 patients at Week 12, for 77 patients at Week 16, for 44 patients at Week 20, for 51 patients at Week 24, for 25 patients at Week 28, for 23 patients at Week 32, and for 37 patients at Week 36.

HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough Serum Concentrations for Weeks 0–36

The HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody trough serum concentrations (μg/ml, mean±SE) from Week 2 through Week 36 are plotted in FIG. **3** (dark circles). The number of patients was fairly constant because data from patients discontinued from the program due to rapidly progressing disease were excluded from this analysis. Trough serum concentrations tended to increase through Week 12 and tended to plateau after that time.

HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough and Peak Serum Concentrations for Weeks 1–8

Some HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentration data were available for 212 of the original 213 patients. Trough and peak serum concentration data reflecting the first HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody infusion

were available for 195 of the 212 patients. For the seventh infusion, trough serum concentration data were available for 137/212 patients and peak serum concentration data were available for 114/212 patients. Table 2 presents a summary of statistics from trough and peak serum concentrations for the first 8 weeks of treatment. Peak samples were drawn shortly after the end of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody administration; trough samples were drawn prior to the subsequent dose (i.e., 1 week later). Serum concentrations of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody were determined as disclosed herein.

TABLE 2

HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough and Peak Serum Concentrations for the First 8 Weeks of Treatment (μg/ml)

	Dose Number	n	Mean	SD	Minimum	Maximum
Peak	1	195	100.3	35.2	30.7	274.6
Trough		195	25.0	12.7	0.16	60.7
Peak	2	190	74.3	31.3	20.8	307.9
Trough		167	30.4	16.0	0.2	74.4
Peak	3	167	75.3	26.8	16.1	194.8
Trough		179	33.7	17.9	0.2	98.2
Peak	4	175	80.2	26.9	22.2	167
Trough		132	38.6	20.1	0.2	89.4
Peak	5	128	85.9	29.2	27.8	185.8
Trough		141	42.1	24.8	0.2	148.7
Peak	6	137	87.2	32.2	28.9	218.1
Trough		115	43.2	24.0	0.2	109.9
Peak	7	114	89.7	32.5	16.3	187.8
Trough		137	48.8	24.9	0.2	105.2
Peak	8	133	95.6	35.9	11.4	295.6

The data in Table 2 suggest that there was an increase in trough serum concentration over time. Of the many patients studied, there were 18 patients for whom the trough concentrations did not exceed 20 μg/ml from Week 2 through Week 8. A HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody trough serum concentration of 20 μg/ml was nominally targeted for these studies based on prior pharmacologic studies in animals and exploratory analyses in clinical trials.

Patient response status was evaluated relative to serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. For this purpose, mean serum concentration (an average of troughs and peaks) was calculated for various times and patient response status (where the patient response status was determined by an independent Response Evaluation Committee). The increase in serum concentration between Weeks 2 and 8 appeared to be greater in responders than in nonresponders, suggesting that there is a relationship between response status and HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentration. A statistical analysis (analysis of variance) of trough serum concentration values at Week 2 and an average of Weeks 7 and 8 in relation to response status indicated a highly significant relationship between response status and average trough of Weeks 7 and 8 ($p<0.001$). The results indicated that there was a significant difference between the trough serum concentration (average troughs of Weeks 7 and 8) in the responders and nonresponders: trough concentrations were 60±20 μg/ml in the responders versus 44±25 μg/ml in the nonresponders (mean±SD). HER2 overexpression level and type of metastatic sites were associated with significant differences in trough serum concentrations. At Week 2, patients with 2+ HER2 overexpression had significantly higher trough serum concentrations (n=40, mean=28.8 μg/ml, SD=10.4) compared with patients with 3+ HER2 overexpression (n=155, mean=24.1 μg/ml, SD=13.1). This difference in the average trough serum concentrations for Weeks 7 and 8 was no longer statistically significant. Further, at Week 2, patients with superficial disease had significantly higher trough serum concentrations (n=12, mean 34.1 μg/ml, SD=12.0) compared with patients with visceral disease (n=183, mean=24.4 μg/ml, SD=12.6). This difference in the average trough serum concentrations for Weeks 7 and 8 was significant. These data indicate that the rise in trough serum concentrations between Weeks 2 and 7/8 occurs for human patients with various disease profiles.

In a subsequent, similarly designed study, human breast cancer patients were treated with a loading dose of 8 mg/kg followed by maintenance doses of 4 mg/kg weekly. The results of this preliminary human study indicated that an 8mg/kg load:4 mg/kg weekly maintenance regimen was efficacious in reducing tumor volume in the patients.

The data disclosed in this Example indicate that front loading of antibody, such that a target serum concentration is reached more quickly, may be associated with improved outcomes.

Example 3

I.V. Bolus Delivery and Subcutaneous Infusion of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Effectively Decrease Tumor Volume in the Mouse

The efficacy of infusion or bolus delivery of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, see Example 1 for preparation), either by intravenous injection or subcutaneous injection, was examined. The purpose of the study was to ask whether subcutaneous delivery was feasible and whether the convenient subcutaneous bolus delivery was useful in treating metastatic breast cancer in animals inoculated with a cell line that overexpresses the HER2 gene. The results, detailed below, show that i.v. and s.c. infusion and bolus delivery are feasible treatment methodologies.

A study in a nude mouse xenograft model, which incorporates a human breast cancer cell line that naturally overexpresses the HER2 gene (BT-474MI, derived from BT-474 cells, ATCC Accession number HTB-20), comparing tumor volume as a function of i.v. bolus versus s.c. infusion was performed as follows. In the first study athymic nude nu nu 7–9 week old female mice were obtained from Taconic Inc (Germantown, N.Y.). To initiate tumor development, each mouse was inoculated subcutaneously with 3×10^6 BT474M 1 cells suspended in Matrigel™. When tumor nodules reached a volume of approximately 100 mm^3, animals were randomized to 4 treatment groups. The groups were treated according to Table 3.

TABLE 3

Animal Groups and Doses for Comparison of I.V. Bolus and S.C. Infusion

Group, Dose, Antibody	Target Serum Conc. μg/ml	Route of Administration	Loading Dose (mg/kg)	Maintenance Dose
1-Control, rhuMAb E25	20	IV LD and SC infusion	2.20	0.250 mg/ml (infusate)
2-Low Dose SC rhuMAb HER2	1	IV LD and SC infusion	0.313	0.050 mg/ml (infusate)
3-High Dose SC rhuMAb HER2	20	IV LD and SC infusion	6.25	1.00 mg/ml (infusate)
4-IV Multi-Dose rhuMAb HER2	20 (trough)	IV LD and MD	4.00	2 mg/kg/week (IV bolus)

Serum Conc. = concentration in serum.
LD = loading dose.
MD = maintenance dose.
Infusate concentration was calculated to achieve targeted serum concentration using Alzet ® osmotic minipumps (Alza Corp., Palo Alto, CA).

Animals were exposed to estrogen by subcutaneous sustained release estrogen pellet 9 days before the start of

dosing to promote growth of grafted tumor cells. The animals were inoculated with the BT474M 1 cells 8 days before the beginning of treatment and tumors were allowed to grow. The animals were then treated with nonrelevant antibody E25 (non-specific for HER2 receptor, but a member of the monoclonal IgG class) or test antibody HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 anitbody as indicated in Table 3. The dosage levels were selected to achieve target serum concentrations of HERCEPTIN®, either 1 μg/ml or 20 μg/ml, by subcutaneous pump infusion or by i.v. bolus delivery. The study groups were treated until day 35. The serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was measured weekly (Oust prior to dosing for Group 4) using 3 mice/group/time point. The anti-ErbB2 antibody concentration was determined according to the method disclosed herein involving standard techniques. Tumor volumes were measured two days before dosing began and twice per week from day 6 to day 35 in the study for which data is tabulated below. Tumors were measured in three dimensions and volumes were expressed in mm^3. Efficacy was determined by a statistical comparison (ANOVA) of tumor volumes of test animals relative to untreated control animals.

As shown in Table 4, below, treatment of the BT474M 1 tumor-bearing mice with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by the indicated dosage methods significantly inhibited the growth of the tumors. All HERCEPTIN® -treated groups showed similar inhibition of tumor growth relative to the control group. No dose-response was observed.

TABLE 4

Comparison of S.C. Infusion and I.V. Bolus Delivery

Treatment Group	Tumor Volume (mm^3), Day 35, (n = 14)	Tumor Volume (area under curve) Day 6–Day 35 (n = 13)	HERCEPT ® Serum Conc. (μg/ml), Day 27, (n = 3)
control s.c. infusion	764 ± 700	5650 ± 4700	4.16 ± 1.94
s.c. infusion (low dose)	80.6 ± 158	1610 ± 1250	2.11 ± 1.74
s.c. infusion (high dose)	31 ± 75.6	1440 ± 1140	22.1 ± 5.43
i.v. bolus dose*	49.7 ± 95.7	2150 ± 1480	21.7 ± 17.1**

s.c. = subcutaneous delivery; i.v. = intravenous delivery.
*4.0 mg/kg Loading Dose and 2.0 mg/kg/week Maintenance Dose.
**at predose (trough serum concentration immediately prior to a maintenance dose)

The results tabulated above indicate that maintenance of a serum concentration of approximately 2 μg/ml was as effective as a concentration of 20 μg/ml in this study. The results indicated that dosing by subcutaneous infusion was as effective as intravenous bolus dosing and achieved similar trough serum concentrations. The results also indicate that the dose levels studied are at the top of the dose-response curve in this model and that subcutaneous dosing is effective in treating breast cancer tumors. Thus, subcutaneous administration of maintenance doses is feasible as part of a HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment regimen.

Example 4

I.V. Bolus and Subcutaneous Bolus Deliveries of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Effectively Decrease Tumor Volume in the Mouse

Subcutaneous bolus delivery is convenient and cost-effective for the patient and health care professionals. The results of the study disclosed in this example indicate that subcutaneous bolus delivery was as effective as intravenous bolus delivery in reducing breast cell tumor size in a mouse.

This study was set up as disclosed herein in Example 3 for the comparison of intravenous bolus and subcutaneous infusion delivery. A sustained release estrogen implant was inserted subcutaneously one day before tumor cell innoculation as described in Example 3. Six days after tumor cell innoculation, the initial tumor measurement was performed. Seven days after tumor cell innoculation, the first dose of control antibody or HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was delivered. The animal groups, type of delivery, loading dose and maintenance doses are provided in Table 4. Animals were dosed once weekly for 4 weeks.

TABLE 5

Animal Groups and Doses for Comparison of I.V. Bolus and S.C Bolus Delivery

Group	Route of Administration	Loading Dose (mg/kg)	Maintenance Dose (mg/kg/week)	n
1-Control rbuMAb E25	IV	8	4	10
2-rhuMAb HER2	IV	2	1	10
3-rhuMAb HER2	IV	4	2	10
4-rhuMAb HER2	IV	8	4	10
5-rhuMAb HER2	SC	4	2	10

IV = intraveneous; SC = subcutaneous; n = number of animals per group.

The mice were treated according to the information in Table 4 and using the techniques disclosed in Example 3. The serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was measured weekly before each weekly i.v. maintenance dose according to the procedure described herein and using standard techniques. The control E25 antibody serum concentration was determined according to standard immunoassay techniques. Table 6 shows the increase in HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentrations with time.

TABLE 6

IV versus SC Bolus Delivery:
Serum HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration
Serum Concentration, μg/ml

Treatment Group (delivery, MD)	Day 0 Mean (SD)	Day 7 Mean (SD)	Day 14 Mean (SD)	Day 21 Mean (SD)
1-Control rhu MAb E25	0	25.9	34.6	38.5
(IV, 4mg/kg)	(0)	(8.29)	(11.2)	(14.4)
2-rhu MAb HER2	0	4.96	8.55	8.05
(IV, 1 mg/kg)	(0)	(3.79)	(5.83)	(4.67)
3-rhu MAb HER2	0	13.4	18.9	22.6
(IV, 2 mg/kg)	(0)	(9.24)	(12.0)	(9.21)
4-rhu MAb HER2	0	29.6	37.7	46.2
(IV, 4 mg/kg)	(0)	(13.5)	(14.4)	(13.8)
5-rhu MAb HER2	0	12.5	16.9	17.6
(SC, 2 mg/kg)	(0)	(7.33)	(10.2)	(10.7)

n = 10 for time points Days 0, 7 and 14.
N = 9 for Day 21.

Table 7 shows the relative efficacy of intravenous bolus delivery and subcutaneous bolus delivery for Groups 1–5 having achieved the serum antibody concentrations presented in Table 6. For this study, efficacy was measured as a decrease in tumor volume. Tumor volume was measured twice weekly.

TABLE 7

Efficacy of HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Measured as a Change in Tumor Volume Comparing Intravenous Bolus and Subcutaneous Bolus Delivery, Mean (SD)

Treatment Group (Delivery, MD)	Tumor Vol. Day 6, mm^3	Tumor Vol. Day 28 mm^3	Tumor Vol. Day 31, mm^3	Day 6–Day 31* Area Under Curve Tumor Vol., mm^3	Tumor Growth Rate on Log (TM + 1)
1-IV Control	321	1530	1630	13600	0.0660
	(190)	(1040)	(1170)	(7230)	(0.0200)
2-IV Herceptin	297	175	151	4690	−0.0505
1 mg/kg	(130)	(215)	(188)	(1400)	(0.142)
3-IV Herceptin	269	75.7	73.6	3510	−0.0608
2 mg/kg	(129)	(92.4)	(84.5)	(1220)	(0.110)
4-IV Herceptin	272	25.3	25.8	2880	−0.0810
4 mg/kg	(117)	(75.9)	(72.9)	(1230)	(0.0859)
5-SC Herceptin	268	76.2	90.4	3230	−0.0304
2 mg/kg	(117)	(98.8)	(105)	(1440)	(0.104)

N = 10 for each data point.
TM = tumor measurement.
IV = intravenous.
SC = subcutaneous.
MD = maintenance dose.
Tumor Vol. = tumor volume, mm^3.
*Day 17 excluded due to measurement error.
Tumor growth rate calculated on Day 21–Day 31 Log(TM + 1). Area under the curve is the area beneath a plot of tumor volume versus time.

FIGS. **4**A and **4**B are graphical plots of changes in tumor volume over time, some of which data is found in Table 7. FIG. **4**A is a linear plot of tumor volume versus time. FIG. **4**B is a semilogarithmic plot of the same data, allowing the test points be viewed more clearly. The data in Table 7 and FIGS. **4**A and **4**B indicate that, although a dose-related response was not observed between HERCEPTIN-treated groups, dosing by subcutaneous bolus was as effective as intravenous bolus dosing and achieved similar trough serum concentrations.

Example 5

Regimens for Intravenous and Subcutaneous Delivery of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

According to the invention, methods of anti-ErbB2 antibody (e.g., HERCEPTIN®) delivery comprise greater front loading of the drug to achieve a target serum concentration in approximately 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including one day or less. According to the invention, this initial dosing is followed by dosing that maintains the target serum concentration by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amount. An advantage of the methods of the invention is that the maintenance dosing may be less frequent and/or delivered by subcutaneous injection, making the treatment regimens of the invention convenient and cost-effective for the patient and medical professionals administering the antibody. In addition, a subcutaneous maintenance dose regimen may be interrupted by intravenous dosing (such as infusion) when the patient's chemotherapy requires delivery of other drugs by intravenous injection.

To test the following dosage regimens, human subjects are selected according to the criteria disclosed in Example 1, above. The number of initial doses is one or more doses sufficient to achieve an efficacious target serum concentration in approximately 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. The number of maintenance doses may be one or more doses sufficient to achieve suppression of disease symptoms, such as a decrease in tumor volume. The maintenance doses are equal to or smaller than the initial dose or doses, consistent with an object of the invention of administering HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by regimens providing greater front loading. The specific drug delivery regimens disclosed herein are representative of the invention and are not meant to be limiting.

In one trial, an initial dose of 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered to human patients by intravenous or subcutaneous injection. Initial doses (loading doses) are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection or preferably subcutaneous bolus injection. Preferably a target trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody of approximately 10–20 μg/ml is achieved.(averaged for all patients in the treatment group) and maintained by subsequent doses of anti-ErbB2 antibody that are equal to or smaller than the initial dose. In one method, a target trough serum concentration is achieved and maintained by once-per-week deliveries of 2 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by intravenous or subcutaneous injection for at least eight weeks. Alternatively, for this or any dosage regimen disclosed herein, subcutaneous continuous infusion by subcutaneous pump is used to delivery subsequent maintenance doses.

In another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous injection (infusion or bolus injection) or by subcutaneous bolus injection. This is followed by intravenous bolus injections, intravenous infusion, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection of 6 mg/kg at 3-week intervals to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10–20 μg/ml, averaged for an entire treatment group.

In another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 12 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous injection (infusion or bolus injection) or by subcutaneous bolus injection. This is followed by intravenous bolus injections, intravenous infusion, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection of 6 mg/kg at 3-week intervals to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10–20 μg/ml.

In yet another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or preferably by subcutaneous bolus injection or infusion.

This is followed by administration of 8 mg/kg per week or 8 mg/kg per 2–3 weeks to maintain a trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody of approximately 10–20 μg/ml. Maintenance doses are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or preferably by subcutaneous infusion or bolus injection.

In another method, the front loading initial dose is a series of intravenous or subcutaneous injections, for example, one on each of days 1, 2, and 3 of at least 1 mg/kg for each injection (where the amount of anti-ErbB2 antibody delivered by the sum of initial injections is more than 4 mg/kg), followed by maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once each 3 week interval to maintain a target trough serum concentration (for example, approximately 10–20 μg/ml) of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. The maintenance doses are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection or by subcutaneous infusion or subcutaneous bolus injection.

In yet another method, the front loading is by intravenous infusion of at least 1 mg/kg, preferably 4 mg/kg on each of five consecutive days, followed by repeats of this cycle a sufficient number of times to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. Following the initial dose or doses, subsequent doses may be delivered by subcutaneous infusion or bolus injection if tolerated by the patient. Such subcutaneous delivery is convenient and cost-effective for the patient and administering health care professionals.

In still another method, HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered initially as at least 2 intravenous infusions per week for three weeks, followed by repeats of this cycle to maintain an efficacious trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® 0 anti-ErbB2 antibody. The dose is at least 4 mg/kg of anti-ErbB2 antibody, preferably at least 5 mg/kg. The maintenance drug deliveries may be intravenous or subcutaneous.

Where the animal or patient tolerates the antibody during and after an initial dose, delivery of subsequent doses may be subcutaneous, thereby providing greater convenience and cost-effectiveness for the patient and health care professionals.

In animal studies, an initial dose of more than 4 mg/kg, preferably more than 5 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous injection, is followed by subcutaneous bolus injections of 2 mg/kg twice per week (separated by 3 days) to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10–20 μg/ml. In addition, where the animal or patient is known to tolerate the antibody, an initial dose of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is optionally and preferably deliverable by subcutaneous bolus injection followed by subcutaneous maintenance injections.

While target serum concentrations are disclosed herein for the purpose of comparing animal studies and human trials, target serum concentrations in clinical uses may differ. The disclosure provided herein guides the user in selecting a front loading drug delivery regimen that provides an efficacious target trough serum concentration.

The methods of the invention disclosed herein optionally include the delivery of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent (other than an anthrocycline derivative) to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. The chemotherapeutic agent may be delivered with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody or separately and according to a different dosing schedule. For example, subcutaneous delivery of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody with TAXOL® is included in the invention. In addition, intravenous or subcutaneous injection of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by intravenous or subcutaneous injection of 6 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody every 3 weeks is administered in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent, such as a taxoid (e.g. paclitaxel 175mg/m^2 every 3 weeks) or an anthracycline derivative (e.g. doxorubicin 60 mg/m^2 or epirubicin 75 mg/m^2 every 3 weeks). Optionally, where an anthracycline derivative is administered, a cardioprotectant (e.g. 600 mg/m^2 cyclophosphamide every 3 weeks) is also administered. In another combination therapy, anti-ErbB2 antibody is administered in a loading dose of more than 4 mg/kg, preferably more than 5 mg/kg, and more preferably at least 8 mg/kg. The loading dose is followed by maintenance doses of at least 2 mg/kg weekly, preferably 6 mg/kg every 3 weeks. The combination therapy includes administration of a taxoid during treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibody. According to one embodiment of the invention, the taxoid is paclitaxel and is administered at a dose of 70–100 mg/m^2/week. According to another embodiment of the invention, the taxoid is docetaxel and is administered at a dose of 30–70 mg/m^2/week.

Example 6

HERCEPTIN® Administered Intravenously Every Three Weeks in Combination with Paclitaxel

Currently, the recommended dose of HERCEPTIN® is 2 mg/kg once weekly. Patients will be administered HERCEPTIN® every three weeks instead of weekly, along with paclitaxel (175 mg/m^2 every three weeks). Simulation of the proposed treatment regimen suggests that the trough serum concentrations will be 17 mcg/ml, in the range (10–20mcg/ml) of the targeted trough serum concentrations from previous HERCEPTIN® IV clinical trials. After the first 12 patients the PK parameters will be assessed, if exposure is felt inadequate, then the dose will be increased to 8 mg/kg every three weeks for the remaining 12 patients.

Inclusion Criteria

1) Females≧18 years of age
2) Histologically confirmed ErbB2 over-expressing metastatic breast cancer
3) Patients who have been newly diagnosed with metastatic disease
4) Have a Karnofsky performance status of≧70%
5) Give written informed consent prior to any study specific screening procedures with the understanding that the patient has the right to withdraw from the study at any time, without prejudice.

Exclusion Criteria

1) Pregnant or lactating women
2) Women of childbearing potential unless (1) surgically sterile or (2) using adequate measures of contraception such as oral contraceptive, intra-uterine device or barrier method of contraception in conjunction with spermicidal jelly.
3) Clinical or radiologic evidence of CNS metastases.
4) History of any significant cardiac disease
5) LVEF≦50%
6) No prior taxane therapy in any treatment setting.
7) Any of the following abnormal baseline hematologic values:
   Hb less than 9 g/dl
   WBC less than 3.0×10^9/l
   Granulocytes less than 1.5×109/l
   Platelets less than 100×109/l
8) Any of the following abnormal baseline liver function tests:
   Serum bilirubin greater than 1.5× ULN (upper normal limit)
   ALT and/or AST greater than 2.5× ULN (greater than 4.0× ULN if liver or bone metastasis)
   Alkaline phosphatase greater than 2.5× ULN (greater than 4.0× ULN if liver or bone metastasis)
9) The following abnormal baseline renal function tests: serum creatinine greater than 1.5× ULN
10) History of other serious medical conditions that would preclude patient participation in an investigational study.

HERCEPTIN® Loading dose and schedule: 8 mg/kg for first dose. Maintenance dose and schedule: 6 mg/kg every 3 weeks.

Paclitaxel—175 mg/m^2 IV every 3 weeks×6 cycles as a 3-hour infusion. NOTE: On the first cycle of treatment,

paclitaxel will be dosed 8 hours prior to HERCEPTIN® to determine the PK of paclitaxel alone. HERCEPTIN® will be administered 8 hours post-paclitaxel for the 1st cycle only. In subsequent treatment cycles, HERCEPTIN® will be administered prior to paclitaxel.

The total duration of this study is 18 weeks. Study subjects will receive up to 6 total HERCEPTIN® doses. After the last subject has received the last cycle of paclitaxel, data collection for safety and pharmacokinetic analysis will stop, and the study will close to protocol specified treatment. Study subjects may continue to receive the HERCEPTIN® +/− paclitaxel at the discretion of the investigator.

It is believed that the above treatment regimen will be effective in treating metastatic breast cancer, despite the infrequency with which HERCEPTIN® is administered to the patient.

While the particular aspects and embodiments of the invention as herein shown and disclosed in detail is fully capable of obtaining the objects and providing the advantages herein before stated, it is to be understood that it is merely illustrative of some of the presently preferred embodiments of the invention and that no limitations are intended to the details of methods and articles of manufacture shown other than as described in the appended claims. The disclosures of all citations in the specification are expressly incorporated herein by reference.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 15

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 166
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

```
Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu
  1               5                  10                  15

Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val
                20                  25                  30

Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser
                35                  40                  45

Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu
                50                  55                  60

Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu Gln Arg Leu Arg
                65                  70                  75

Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr Ala Leu Ala
                80                  85                  90

Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro Val Thr
                95                 100                 105

Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser Leu
               110                 115                 120

Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln
               125                 130                 135

Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys
               140                 145                 150

Asn Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg
               155                 160                 165

Ala
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 32
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

```
Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro
  1               5                  10                  15

Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln
                20                  25                  30
```

-continued

Gly Cys

<210> SEQ ID NO 3
<211> LENGTH: 11
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Pro Lys Asn Ser Ser Met Ile Ser Asn Thr Pro
1 5 10

<210> SEQ ID NO 4
<211> LENGTH: 7
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

His Gln Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 5
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

His Gln Asn Leu Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

His Gln Asn Ile Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

Val Ile Ser Ser His Leu Gly Gln
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 59
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

Val Glu Glu Cys Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val
1 5 10 15

-continued

```
Asn Ala Arg His Cys Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln
                 20                  25                  30

Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val
                 35                  40                  45

Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg
                 50                  55
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 65
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

```
Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr
  1               5                  10                  15

Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr
                 20                  25                  30

Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys
                 35                  40                  45

Pro Asp Leu Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu
                 50                  55                  60

Gly Ala Cys Gln Pro
                 65
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 10
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Mus Musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 10

```
Asp Thr Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Ile Met Ser Thr Ser Val
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
                 20                  25                  30

Ile Gly Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Arg Pro Gly Gln Ser Pro Lys
                 35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp
                 50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Thr Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile
                 65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                 80                  85                  90

Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
                 95                 100                 105

Ile Lys
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 11
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 11

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
  1               5                  10                  15

Thr Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr
                 20                  25                  30

Asp Tyr Thr Met Asp Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu
                 35                  40                  45
```

-continued

```
Glu Trp Ile Gly Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr
                 50                  55                  60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Lys Gly Lys Ala Ser Leu Thr Val Asp Arg Ser
                 65                  70                  75

Ser Arg Ile Val Tyr Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Phe Glu Asp
                 80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr
                 95                 100                 105

Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Thr Leu Thr Val Ser Ser
                110                 115
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 12
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: humanized VL sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 12

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
                 20                  25                  30

Ile Gly Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
                 35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Ser
                 50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
                 65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                 80                  85                  90

Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
                 95                 100                 105

Ile Lys
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 13
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: humanized VH sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 13

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr
                 20                  25                  30

Asp Tyr Thr Met Asp Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
                 35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr
                 50                  55                  60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Leu Ser Val Asp Arg Ser
                 65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                 80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr
                 95                 100                 105
```

-continued

```
Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
                110                 115


<210> SEQ ID NO 14
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: VL consensus sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 14

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser
                20                  25                  30

Asn Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
                35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
                50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
                65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                80                  85                  90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
                95                 100                 105

Ile Lys


<210> SEQ ID NO 15
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: VH consensus sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 15

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
                20                  25                  30

Ser Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
                35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr
                50                  55                  60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser
                65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu
                95                 100                 105

Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
                110                 115
```

What is claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of a human patient diagnosed with cancer characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to the human patient, the method comprising:

administering to the patient an initial dose of at least approximately 5 mg/kg of the anti-ErbB2 antibody; and

administering to the patient a plurality of subsequent doses of the antibody in an amount that is approximately the same or less than the initial dose, wherein

the subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least two weeks.

2. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is at least approximately 6 mg/kg.

3. The method of claim **2**, wherein the initial dose is at least approximately 8 mg/kg.

4. The method of claim **3**, wherein the initial dose is at least approximately 12 mg/kg.

5. The method of claim **1**, wherein the subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least three weeks.

6. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is administered by intravenous injection, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is administered by subcutaneous injection.

7. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is administered by intravenous injection, wherein at least two subsequent doses are administered, and wherein each subsequent dose is administered by a method selected from the group consisting of intravenous injection and subcutaneous injection.

8. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose and at least one subsequent dose are administered by subcutaneous injection.

9. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is selected from the group consisting of approximately 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg, wherein the plurality of subsequent doses are at least approximately 2 mg/kg.

10. The method of claim **9**, wherein the plurality of subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least three weeks.

11. The method of claim **10**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 8 mg/kg, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is approximately 6 mg/kg.

12. The method of claim **10**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 12 mg/kg, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is approximately 6 mg/kg.

13. The method of claim **9**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 8 mg/kg, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is approximately 8 mg/kg.

14. The method of claim **9**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 8 mg/kg, wherein at least one subsequent dose is 8 mg/kg, and wherein administration of the initial dose and subsequent doses are separated in time by at least 2 weeks.

15. The method of claim **14**, wherein the initial dose and subsequent doses are separated in time by at least 3 weeks.

16. A method for the treatment of a human patient diagnosed with cancer characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to the human patient, the method comprising:

administering to the patient an initial dose of the antibody, wherein the initial dose is a plurality of doses, wherein each of the plurality of initial doses is at least approximately 1 mg/kg and is administered on at least 3 consecutive days, and administering to the patient at least 1 subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein at least one subsequent dose is at least approximately 6 mg/kg, and wherein administration of the last initial dose and the first subsequent and additional subsequent doses are separated in time by at least 3 weeks.

17. The method of claim **1**, wherein said cancer is selected from the group consisting of breast cancer, leukemia, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

18. The method of claim **17**, wherein said cancer is breast cancer.

19. The method of claim **18**, wherein said cancer is metastatic breast carcinoma.

20. The method of claim **1**, wherein said antibody binds to the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor.

21. The method of claim **20**, wherein said antibody binds to epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence.

22. The method of claim **21**, wherein said antibody is a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody.

23. The method of claim **1**, wherein efficacy is measured by determining the time to disease progression or the response rate.

24. A method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB2 antibody followed by two or more subsequent doses of the antibody, wherein the subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least two weeks.

25. The method of claim **24**, wherein the first dose and a first subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about three weeks.

26. The method of claim **24**, wherein the first dose and subsequent doses are each from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg.

27. The method of claim **26**, wherein the first dose and subsequent doses are each from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

28. The method of claim **27**, wherein the first dose and subsequent doses are each from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

29. The method of claim **24**, wherein from about two to about ten subsequent doses of the antibody are administered to the patient.

30. The method of claim **24**, wherein the subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least about three weeks.

31. The method of claim **24**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are each from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg.

32. The method of claim **24**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are each from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

33. The method of claim **24**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are each from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT D

US007371379B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Baughman et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,371,379 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: May 13, 2008**

(54) **DOSAGES FOR TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES**

(75) Inventors: **Sharon A. Baughman**, Ventura, CA (US); **Steven Shak**, Burlingame, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 540 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **10/600,152**

(22) Filed: **Jun. 20, 2003**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2004/0037824 A1 Feb. 26, 2004

Related U.S. Application Data

(62) Division of application No. 09/648,067, filed on Aug. 25, 2000, now Pat. No. 6,627,196.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/213,822, filed on Jun. 23, 2000, provisional application No. 60/151,018, filed on Aug. 27, 1999.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
A61K 39/395 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **424/138.1**; 424/130.1; 424/133.1; 424/141.1; 424/142.1; 424/143.1; 424/155.1; 424/156.1; 424/174.1

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 424/130.1, 424/133.1, 138.1, 141.1, 142.1, 143.1, 155.1, 424/156.1, 174.1
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,676,980	A	6/1987	Segal et al.
4,753,894	A	6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,816,567	A	3/1989	Cabilly et al.
4,935,341	A	6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A	7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A	11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A	12/1990	Senter et al.
5,169,774	A	12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A	2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A	2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A	10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A	11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A	3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A	11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A	1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,578,482	A	11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,604,107	A	2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A	6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,663,144	A	9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,171	A	10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A	1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A	3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A	3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A	3/1998	Bissery
5,747,261	A	5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A	7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A	7/1998	Arakawa et al.
5,801,005	A	9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,821,337	A	10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A	10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A	11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A	11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A	12/1998	Cheever et al.
5,856,110	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A	2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A	3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A	3/1999	Huston et al.
5,908,835	A	6/1999	Bissery
5,910,486	A	6/1999	Curiel et al.
5,922,845	A	7/1999	Deo et al.
5,939,531	A	8/1999	Wels et al.
5,968,511	A	10/1999	Akita et al.
5,977,322	A	11/1999	Marks et al.
5,985,553	A	11/1999	King et al.
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0003089	A1	7/1979
EP	0599274	A1	6/1994
EP	616812	A1	9/1994
EP	711565		8/1998
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	95006982	B2	1/1995

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Seidman, A.D. et al., Seminars in Oncology, 22(5): 108-116, 1995.*
Baselga, J. et al., Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research, 35: 380, Abstract #2262, 1994.*
Baselga, J. et al, Breast Cancer Research and Treatment, 32(suppl): p. 30, Abstract #5, 1994.*

(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Alana M. Harris
Assistant Examiner—Anne L. Holleran
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Wendy M. Lee

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 with anti-ErbB2 antibody.

40 Claims, 5 Drawing Sheets

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter et al.	
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring	
6,096,873	A	8/2000	Schaefer et al.	
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver et al.	
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel et al.	
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman et al.	
6,949,245	B1 *	9/2005	Sliwkowski	424/143.1
2003/0086924	A1	5/2003	Sliwkowski	
2004/0013667	A1	1/2004	Kelsey et al.	
2004/0037824	A1	2/2004	Baughman et al.	
2005/0208043	A1	9/2005	Adams et al.	
2005/0238640	A1	10/2005	Sliwkowski	
2006/0034842	A1	2/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0073143	A1	4/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0193854	A1	8/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0198843	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0210561	A1	9/2006	Baughman et al.	
2006/0216285	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

JP	7-59588		3/1995
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105	B2	5/1999
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 90/14357		11/1990
WO	WO 91/00360		1/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 92/20373		11/1992
WO	WO 92/20798		11/1992
WO	WO 93/12220		6/1993
WO	WO 93/21232		10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319		10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136		1/1994
WO	WO 94/04690		3/1994
WO	WO 94/22478		10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/27011		9/1996
WO	WO 97/04801		2/1997
WO	WO 97/20858		6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/35885		10/1997
WO	WO 97/38731		10/1997
WO	WO 98/02541		1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797		4/1998
WO	WO 98/45479		10/1998
WO	WO 99/31140		6/1999
WO	WO 99/48527		9/1999
WO	WO 00/61185		10/2000
WO	WO 01/00245		1/2001

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Rohan, T.E., et al., Journal of the National Cancer Institute, 90(17): 1262-1269, 1998.*

Arteaga et al., "pl85$^{c\text{-}erb8\text{-}2}$ Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity iin Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Ocogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-induced DNA Repair" Cancer Research 54 (14):3758-3765 (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/neu Antigen" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3 (6):350-362 (1990).

Bacus et al., "tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER-2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of HUman Breast Cancer Cells" *Cancer Research* 52(9) :2580-2589 (May 1, 1991).

Baselga and Mendelsohn, "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies As Anti-Cancer Therapy"*Pharmac. Ther.* 64:127-154 (1994).

Baselga et a., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" *Proceedings of ASCO-13th Annual Meeting* (Abstract #), Dalllas, TX 13:63 (Mar 1994).

Baselga et al., "HER2 Overexpression and Paclitaxel Sensitivity in Breast Cancer: Therapeutic Implication"*Onoclogy* (Supplement No. 2) 11(3):43-48 (Mar. 1997).

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against Growth Factor Receptors Enhance the Efficacy of Chemotherapeutic Agents." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14(3):737-744 (Mar. 1996).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpressing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts" *Cancer* Research 58:2825-2831 (Jul. 1998).

Carbonell Castellon et al., "Efficacy and safety of 3-weekly Herceptin (H) monotherapy in women with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer (MBC): preliminary data from a phase II study" *Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol* (Abstract #73 from the 2002 ASCO Meeting) 21:19a (2002).

Carbonell et al., "Efficacy and safety of 3-weekly Herceptin monotherapy in women with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer: preliminary data from a phase II study" (Oral presentation at the 38th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 18-21, 2002 in Orlando, Florida).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an Anti-p185^{HER2} Anitbody For Human Cancer Therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:4285-4289 (May 1992).

Chothia and Lesk, "Canonical Structures for the Hypervariable Regions of Immunoglobulins" *J. Mol. Biol* 196:901-917 (1987).

Cobleigh et al., "Multinational study of the efficacy and safety of humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in women who have HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer that has progressed after chemotherapy for metastatic disease" Journal of Clinical Oncology 17(9):2639-2648 (Sep. 1999).

D'Souza and Taylor-Papadimitriou., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-Cadherin Gene." *Proc. Natl. Adad. Sci. USA* 91 (15):7202-7206 (Jul 19, 1994).

De Santes et al., "Radioloabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" *Cancer Research* 52:1916-1923 (1992).

Di Fiore et al., "erbB-2 IS A Potent Oncogene When overexpressed In NIH/3T3 Cells." *Science* 237(4811):178-182 (Jul. 10, 1987).

Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cell* 41(3):695-706 (Jul. 1985).

Drebin et al., "Inhibition of Tumor Growth By a Monoclonal Antibody Reactive With an Oncogene-Encoded Tumor Antigen" *Proc. Natl. Acad.Sci.* 83:9129-9122 (1986).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encoded p185 Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-Tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2(40:387-394 (1988).

Fendly, B.M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Fleiss, JL *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions*, 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13-17 (1981).

Gelmon et al., "Pharmacoklinetics and safety of Herceptin when administered every 3 weeks to women with metastatic breast cancer" (Oral presentation at the 37th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 12-15, 2001 in San Francisco, CA).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product information—FDR" (2000).
Goldenberg, M., "Trastuzumab, a Recombinant DNA-Dervied Humanized Antibody, a Novel Agent for the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Clinical Therapeutics* 21(2):309-318 (1999).
Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector" *Cancer Research* 54(3):738-741 (Feb. 1, 1994).
Guy et al., "Expression of the neu Protooncogene in the Mammary Epithelium of transgenic Mice Induces Metastatic Disease." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89 (22):10578-10582 (Nov. 15, 1992).
Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichlopoplatium Against Human Breast and Overian Tumor Cell Lines" *Cancer Research* 51:4575-4580 (Sep. 1, 1991).
Harris et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (pk) model for Herception (H) and implications for clinical dosing" (Oral presentation at the 38th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 18-21, 2002 in Orlando, Florida).
Harris et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for trastuzumab (Herception) and implications for clinical dosing" *Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol* (Abstact #488) 21:1231 (2002).
Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracellular Domain of the rebB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 267921):15160-15167 (Jul. 25, 1992).
Hudziak et al., "Increased Expresssion of the Putative Growth Factor Receptor $p185^{HER2}$ Causes Transformation and Tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 Cells." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84(20):7159-7163 (Oct.
Hudziak et al., "$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Virto and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165-1172 (Mar. 1989).
Hynes and Stern., "The Biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and Its Role in Cancer." *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1198 (2-2):165-184 (Dec. 30, 1994).
Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract #3209) 37:470 (Mar 1996).
Jones et al., "Replacing the Complementarity-Determining Regions in a Human Antibody with Those From a Mouse." *Nature*. 321-522-525 (May 29, 1986).
Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 52(10):2771-2776 (May 15, 1992).
Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 protooncogene" *In Vitro* (Abstract #176) 26(3):59A (1990).
Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 11(2):979-986 (Feb. 1991).
Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibodies." *Cancer Immunol. Immunother*. 37:255-263 (1993).
Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (Mar. 15, 1996).
Leyland-Jones et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Herceptin adminstered with paclitaxel every three weeks" *Breast Cancer Res Treat* (abstract only) 64:124 (2000).
Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed against the HER-2/neu Gene Product c-erb-2" *Cancer Research* 51(19):5361-5369 (Oct. 1, 1991).
Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 44(3):1002-1007 (Mar. 1984).
Maskuo et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellualr Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" *Jpn J. Cancer Res*. 80:10-14 (Jan. 1989).
McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors"*Cancer* 65(1):88-92 (Jan. 1, 1990).
McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene Product, p185" *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989).
Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer Therapy." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1):22 (1996).
Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185neu" *Methods in Enzymology* 198:277-290 (1991).
Nakamura, G.R. et al., "Strain specificity and binding affinity requirements of neutralizing monoclonal antibodies to the C4 domain of gp120 from human immunodeficiency virus type 1" *Jounral of Virology* 67(10):6179-6191 (Oct. 1993).
Norton, L., "Evolving Concepts in the Systemic Drug Therapy of Breast Cancer." *Seminars in Oncology* 23(4 Suppl 10):A10-3-S10-10 (Aug. 1997).
Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinaitons of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" *Oncogene* 18:2241-2251 (1999).
Pegram et al., "Phase II study of receptor-enhanced chemosensitvity using recombinant humanized anti-$p185^{HER2}$/neu monoclonal antibody plus cisplatin in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer refractrory to chemotherapy treatment" *Journal of Clin Oncol* 16(8):2659-2671 (Aug. 1998).
Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" *Oncogene* 9:182901839 (1994).
Presta et al., "Humanizaiton of an Antibody Directed Against IgE" *J. Immunol.* 151(5):2623-2632 (Sep. 1, 1993).
Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First- or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress HER2" *Proceedings of ASCO* (Abstract π523) 18:137a (1999).
Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the developement of other macromolecular marker—a review" *Gene* 159(1):19-27 (Jun. 14, 1995).
Renz, M.E. et al., "Structural requirements for adhesion of soluble recombinant murine vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 to $\alpha 4\beta 1$" *Journal of Cell Biology* 125(6):1395-1406 (Jun. 1994).
Riechmann et al., "Reshaping Human Antibodies for Therapy" *Nature* 332:323-327 (Mar. 24, 1988).
Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" *J. Cellular Biochem.* 35(4):315-320 (1987).
Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti-$P185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991).
Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" *Molecular Foundations of Oncology*, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter
Scott et al., "$p185^{HER2}$ Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 266(22):14300-14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).
Seifert et al., "Dextrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity" *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28(9):1063-1072 (Sep. 1994).
Semba et al., "A v-erbB-relatd protooncogene, c-erbB-2, is distinct from the c-erbB-1/epidermal growth factor-receptor gene and is amplified in a human salivary gland adenocarcinoma" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:6497-6501 (1985).
Shawver et al., "Ligand-Like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB-2 Antibodies Do Not Correlate with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells" *Cancer Research* 54(5):1367-1373 (Mar. 1, 1994).
Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogens to the Clinic" *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991).
Sims et al., "A Humanized CD18 Antibody Can Block Function Without Cell Destruction" *The Journal of Immunology* 151(4):2296-2308 (Aug. 1993).

Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-Induced cardiomyopathy" *New England J. of Medicine* 339(13):900-905 (Sep. 24, 1998).

Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardiomyopathy" *Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology* 27(4):1055-1063 (Apr. 1995).

Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" *Science* 235:177-182 (Jan. 9, 1987).

Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/ney Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science* 244:707-712 (May 12, 2989).

Slamon et al., "Use of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses HER2" *New England J. of Medicine* 344(11):783-792 (Mar. 15, 2001).

Sliwkowaki et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpression breast cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract only) 37:625-626 (Mar. 1996).

Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 269(20):14661-14665 (May 20, 1994).

Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monocolonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88(19):8691-8695 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Stevenson et al., "A Chimeric Antibody With Dual Fc Regions (bisFabFc) Prepared by Manipulations at the IGG HInge." *Anti-Cancer Drug Design.* 3(4):219-230 (1989).

Suresh et al., "Bispecific Monoclonal Antibodies from Hybrid Hybridomas" *Methods in Enzymology* 121:210-228 (1986).

Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of $p185^{hER2}$ and Growth Inhibition of Cells With HER2/NEU Gene Amplification" *International Journal of Cancer* 47(6):933-937 (Apr. 1, 1991).

Verhoeyen et al., "Reshaping Human Antibodies: Grafting an Antilysozyme Activity" *Science* 239:1534-1536 (Mar. 25, 1988).

Verma et al., "Efficacy and safety of three-weekly herceptin with paclitaxel in women with her2-positive metastatic breast cancer: preliminary results of a phase II trial II trial" *European Journal of Cancer* (abstract only) 37:S146 (2001).

Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role for Their Use in Cancer Therapy" *Cancer Research* 54(20):5301-5309 (Oct. 15, 1994).

Vogel et al., "First-Line Herceptin Monotherapy in Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Oncology* 61(Suppl. 2):37-42 (2001).

Washington et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for trastuzumab (T) following weekly dosing" *Clin Pharmacol Ther* (abstract only) 71:P12 (2002).

Watanabe et al., "Pharmacokinetically guided dose escalation study of anit-HER2 monoclonal antibody in patients with HER2/NEU-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer" *Proceedings of the American Society of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract 702 presented at the Annual ASCO meeting held May 15-18, 1998) 17:182a (1998).

Wolff et al., "Monoclonal antibody homodimers: enhanced antitumor activity in nude mice" *Cancer Research* 53(11):2560-2565 (1993).

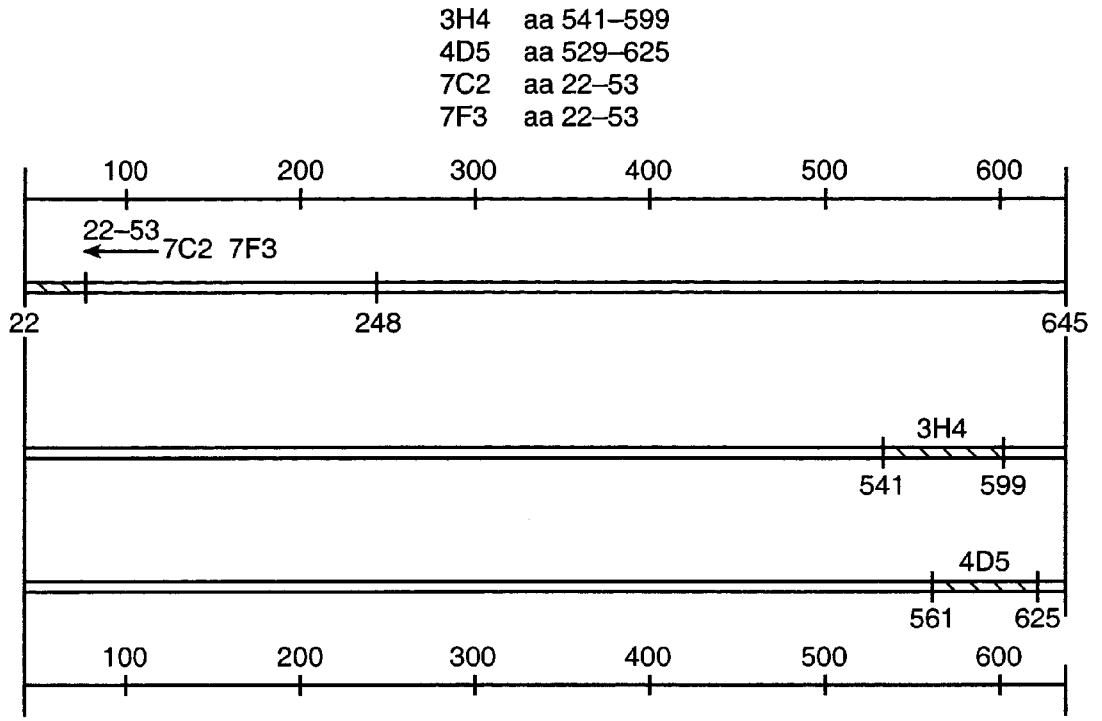
Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erb-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product p185" *International Journal of Cancer* 53(3):401-408 (Feb. 1, 1993).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-erb-B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" (GenBank accession No. X03363) (Mar. 30, 1995).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-erb-B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" *Nature* 319:230-234 (1986).

Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anit-$p185^{her2/neu\ monoclonal\ antibodies}$" *Experimental and Molecular Pathology* 67:15-25 (1999).

* cited by examiner



3H4 epitope (SEQ ID NO:8) 58 residues

VEECRVLQGLPREYVNARHCLPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVAR

541 **599**

4D5 epitope (SEQ ID NO:9) 64 residues

LPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVARCPSGVKPDLSYMPIWKFPDEEGACQP

561 **625**

FIG._1

1 MELAALCRWGLLLALLPPGAA**STQVCTGTDMKLRLPA**

38 **SPETHLDMLRHLYQGC**QVVQGNLELTYLPTNASLSFL

75 QDIQEVQGYVLIAHNQVRQVPLQRLRIVRGTQLFEDN

112 YALAVLDNGDPLNNTTPVTGASPGGLRELQLRSLTEI

149 LKGGVLIQRNPQLCYQDTILWKDIFHKNNQLALTLID

186 TNRSRA

FIG._2

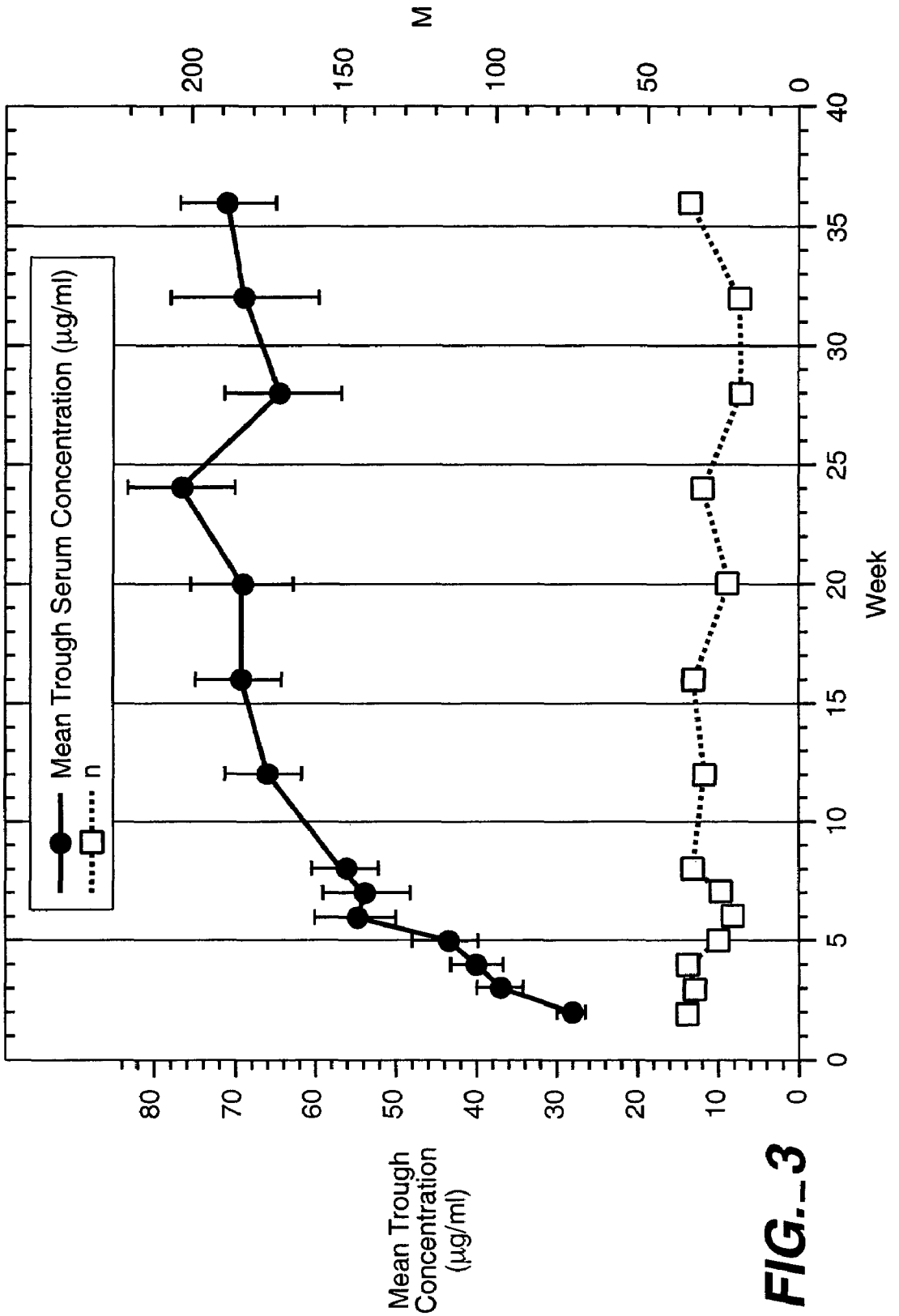

Mean Trough Serum Concentration (µg/ml)
n
Mean Trough Concentration (µg/ml)
n
Week
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
0
50
100
150
200

FIG._3

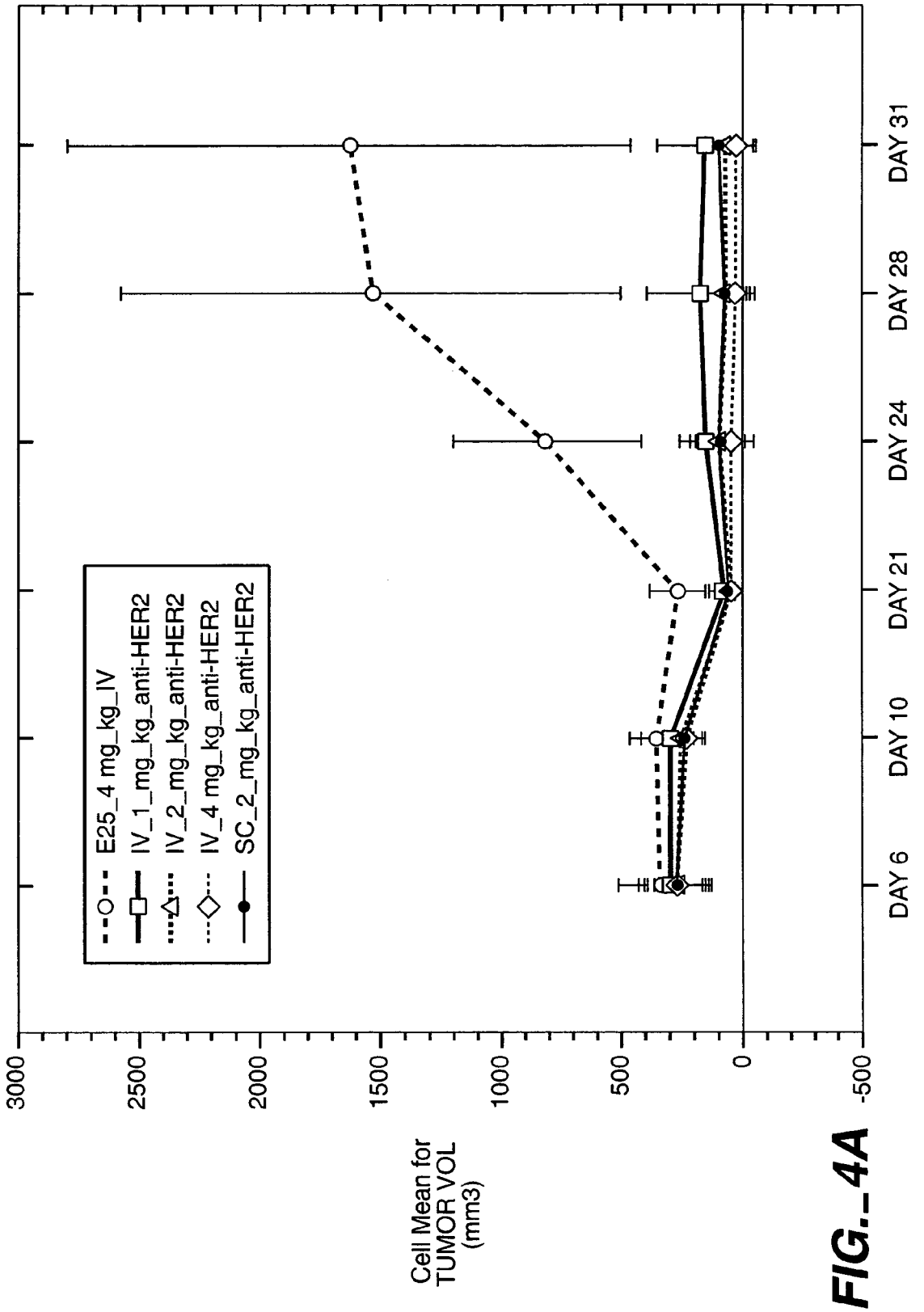

E25_4 mg_kg_IV
IV_1_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_4 mg_kg_anti-HER2
SC_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
Cell Mean for TUMOR VOL (mm3)
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
DAY 6
DAY 10
DAY 21
DAY 24
DAY 28
DAY 31

FIG._4A

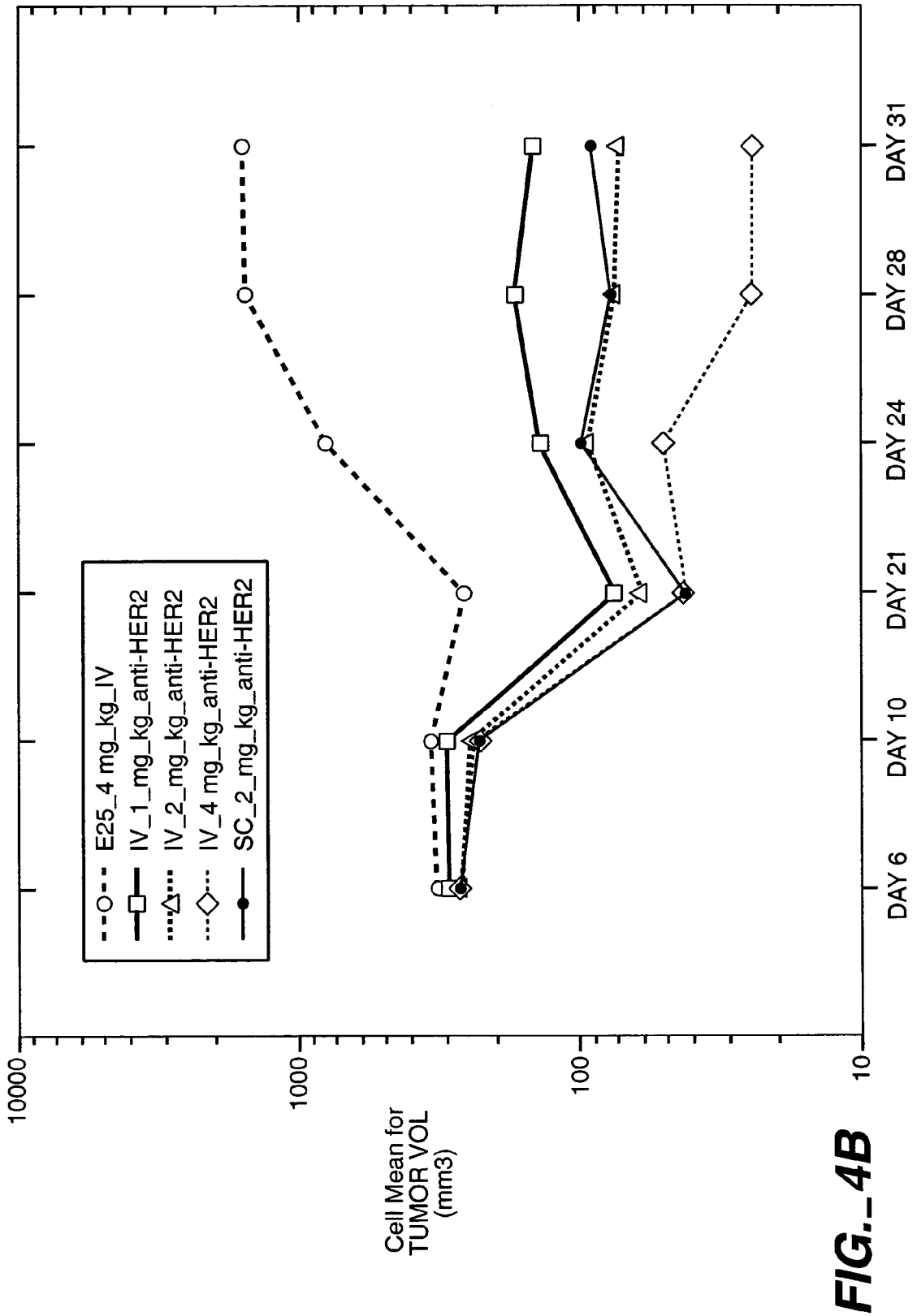

E25_4 mg_kg_IV
IV_1_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_4 mg_kg_anti-HER2
SC_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
Cell Mean for TUMOR VOL (mm3)
10000
1000
100
10
DAY 6
DAY 10
DAY 21
DAY 24
DAY 28
DAY 31

FIG._4B

VARIABLE LIGHT

```
          1       10        20          30              40
2C4       DTVMTQSHKIMSTSVGDRVSITC [KASQDVSIGVA----] WYQQRP
           **    **** *      *                        *
574       DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC [KASQDVSIGVA----] WYQQKP
                                   *   *  ****
hum kI    DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC [RASQSVSTSSYSYMH] WYQQKP

                    50          60        70        80
2C4       GQSPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTFTISSVQA
           **                   *  *         *    * *
574       GKAPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP
                     *  ****
hum kI    GKAPKLLIY [AASSLES] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP

                   90          100
2C4       EDLAVYYC [QQYYIYPYT] FGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO:10)
            * *                 *   *
574       EDFATYYC [QQYYIYPYT] FGQGTKVEIK (SEQ ID NO:12)
                      ***
hum kI    EDFATYYC [QQYNSLPYT] FGQGTKVEIK (SEQ ID NO:14)
```

FIG._5A

VARIABLE HEAVY

```
          1       10        20          30          40
2C4       EVQLQQSGPELVKPGTSVKISCKAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVKQS
              **  **  *  * ***  **                  *
574       EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVRQA
                                      ** * *
humIII    EVQLVESGGGSVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFSSYAMS] WVRQA

                    50        60          70        80
2C4       HGKSLEWIG [DVNPNSGGSIYNQRFKG] KASLTVDRSSRIVYM
          *  *   **                     *** *    **** *
574       PGKGLEWVA [DVNPNSGGSIYNQRFKG] RFTLSVDRSKNTLYL
                  *  ******  ** ****       *. * *
humIII    PGKGLEWVS [VISGDGGSTYYADSVKG] RFTISRDDSKNTLYL

                     90         100           110
2C4       ELRSLTFEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTTLVTSS (SEQ ID NO:11)
          ***  **                              *
574       QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:13)
                            ** ***
humIII    QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [GRGGGS--DY] WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:15)
```

FIG._5B

DOSAGES FOR TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES

RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is divisional of U.S. Ser. No. 09/648,067 filed Aug. 25, 2000 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196), which claims priority under 35 USC 119(e) to provisional application Nos. 60/151,018, filed Aug. 27, 1999 and 60/213,822, filed Jun. 23, 2000, the contents of which are incorporated heroin by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2 or disorders expressing epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), comprising administering to a human or animal presenting the disorders a therapeutically effective amount of an antibody that binds ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 or expressing EGFR, where the treatment is with an anti-ErbB2 antibody administered by front loading the dose of antibody during treatment by intravenous and/or subcutaneous administration. The invention optionally includes treatment of cancer in a human patient with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, such as, but not limited to, a taxoid. The taxoid may be, but is not limited to paclitaxel or docetaxel. The invention further includes treatment of cancer in a human patient with a combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, such as, but not limited to, an anthracycline derivative. Optionally, treatment with a combination of anti-ErbB2 and an anthracycline derivative includes treatment with an effective amount of a cardioprotectant. The present invention further concerns infrequent dosing of anti-ErbB2 antibodies.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Proto-oncogenes that encode growth factors and growth factor receptors have been identified to play important roles in the pathogenesis of various human malignancies, including breast cancer. It has been found that the human ErbB2 gene (erbB2, also known as her2, or c-erbB-2), which encodes a 185-kd transmembrane glycoprotein receptor ($p185^{HER2}$) related to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), is overexpressed in about 25% to 30% of human breast cancer (Slamon et al., *Science* 235:177-182 [1987]; Slamon et al., *Science* 244:707-712 [1989]).

Several lines of evidence support a direct role for ErbB2 in the pathogenesis and clinical aggressiveness of ErbB2-overexpressing tumors. The introduction of ErbB2 into non-neoplastic cells has been shown to cause their malignant transformation (Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7159-7163 [1987]; DiFiore et al., *Science* 237:78-182 [1987]). Transgenic mice that express HER2 were found to develop mammary tumors (Guy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:10578-10582 [1992]).

Antibodies directed against human erbB2 protein products and proteins encoded by the rat equivalent of the erbB2 gene (neu) have been described. Drebin et al., *Cell* 41:695-706 (1985) refer to an IgG2a monoclonal antibody which is directed against the rat neu gene product. This antibody called 7.16.4 causes down-modulation of cell surface p185 expression on B104-1-1 cells (NIH-3T3 cells transfected with the neu proto-oncogene) a inhibits colony formation of these cells. In Drebin et al. *PNAS* (*USA*) 83:9129-9133 (1986), the 7.16.4 antibody was shown to inhibit the tumorigenic growth of neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells as well as rat neuroblastoma cells (from which the neu oncogene was initially isolated) implanted into nude mice. Drebin et al. in *Oncogene* 2:387-394 (1988) discuss the production of a panel of antibodies against the rat neu gene product. Al of the antibodies were found to exert a cytostatic effect on the growth of neu-transformed cells suspended in soft agar. Antibodies of the IgM, IgG2a and IgG2b isotypes were able to mediate significant in vitro lysis of neu-transformed cells in the presence of complement, whereas none of the antibodies were able to mediate high levels of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) of the neu-transformed cells. Drebin et al. *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions on the p185 molecule result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice. Biological effects of anti-neu antibodies are reviewed in Myers et al., *Meth. Enzym.* 198:277-290 (1991). See also WO94/22478 published Oct. 13, 1994. Hudziak et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 9(3): 1165-1172 (1989) describe the generation of a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5 which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel, including 7C2 and 7F3, reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. Hudziak et al. conclude that the effect of the 4D5 antibody on SKBR3 cells was cytostatic rather than cytotoxic, since SKBR3 cells resumed growth at a nearly normal rate following removal of the antibody from the medium. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize $p185^{erbB2}$-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-α. See also WO89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. The anti-ErbB2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. are further characterized in Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. *In Vitro* 26(3):59A (1990); Sarup et al. *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11(2): 979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. *Cancer Research* 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:14300-5 (1991); and D'souza et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 91:7202-7206 (1994).

Tagliabue et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933-937 (1991) describe two antibodies which were selected for their reactivity on the lung adenocarcinoma cell line (Calu-3) which overexpresses ErbB2. One of the antibodies, called MGR3, was found to internalize, induce phosphorylation of ErbB2, and inhibit tumor cell growth in vitro.

McKenzie et al. *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies with varying epitope specificities, including the antibody designated TA1. This TA1 antibody was found to induce accelerated endocytosis of ErbB2 (see Maier et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:5361-5369 [1991]). Bacus et al. *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350-362 (1990) reported that the TA1 antibody induced maturation of the breast cancer cell lines AU-565 (which overexpresses the erbB2 gene) and MCF-7 (which does not). Inhibition of growth and acquisition of a mature phenotype in these cells

was found to be associated with reduced levels of ErbB2 receptor at the cell surface and transient increased levels in the cytoplasm.

Stancovski et al. *PNAS* (*USA*) 88:8691-8695 (1991) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies, injected them i.p. into nude mice and evaluated their effect on tumor growth of murine fibroblasts transformed by overexpression of the erbB2 gene. Various levels of tumor inhibition were detected for four of the antibodies, but one of the antibodies (N28) consistently stimulated tumor growth. Monoclonal antibody N28 induced significant phosphorylation of the ErbB2 receptor, whereas the other four antibodies generally displayed low or no phosphorylation-inducing activity. The effect of the anti-ErbB2 antibodies on proliferation of SKBR3 cells was also assessed. In this SKBR3 cell proliferation assay, two of the antibodies (N12 and N29) caused a reduction in cell proliferation relative to control. The ability of the various antibodies to induce cell lysis in vitro via complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) and antibody-mediated cell-dependent cytotoxicity (ADCC) was assessed, with the authors of this paper concluding that the inhibitory function of the antibodies was not attributed significantly to CDC or ADCC.

Bacus et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2580-2589 (1992) further characterized the antibodies described in Bacus et al. (1990) and Stancovski et al. of the preceding paragraphs. Extending the i.p. studies of Stancovski et al., the effect of the antibodies after i.v. injection into nude mice harboring mouse fibroblasts overexpressing human ErbB2 was assessed. As observed in their earlier work, N28 accelerated tumor growth, whereas N12 and N29 significantly inhibited growth of the ErbB2-expressing cells. Partial tumor inhibition was also observed with the N24 antibody. Bacus et al. also tested the ability of the antibodies to promote a mature phenotype in the human breast cancer cell lines AU-565 and MDA-MB453 (which overexpress ErbB2) as well as MCF-7 (containing low levels of the receptor). Bacus et al. saw a correlation between tumor inhibition in vivo and cellular differentiation; the tumor-stimulatory antibody N28 had no effect on differentiation, and the tumor inhibitory action of the N12, N29 and N24 antibodies correlated with the extent of differentiation they induced.

Xu et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401-408 (1993) evaluated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies for their epitope binding specificities, as well as their ability to inhibit anchorage-independent and anchorage-dependent growth of SKBR3 cells (by individual antibodies and in combinations), modulate cell-surface ErbB2, and inhibit ligand stimulated anchorage-independent growth. See also WO94/00136 published Jan. 6, 1994 and Kasprzyk et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2771-2776 (1992) concerning anti-ErbB2 antibody combinations. Other anti-ErbB2 antibodies are discussed in Hancock et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:3758-3765 (1994); and Harwerth et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:15160-15167 (1992).

A recombinant humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody (a humanized version of the murine anti-ErbB2 antibody 4D5, referred to as rhuMAb HER2, HERCEPTIN®, or HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) has been clinically active in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14:737-744 [1996]). The recommended initial loading dose for HERCEPTIN® is 4 mg/kg administered as a 90-minute infusion. The recommended weekly maintenance dose is 2 mg/kg and can be administered as a 30-minute infusion if the initial loading dose is well tolerated.

ErbB2 overexpression is commonly regarded as a predictor of a poor prognosis, especially in patients with primary disease that involves axillary lymph nodes (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra; Ravdin and Chamness, *Gene* 159:19-27 [1995]; and Hynes and Stern, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1198:165-184 [1994]), and has been linked to sensitivity and/or resistance to hormone therapy and chemotherapeutic regimens, including CMF (cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluoruracil) and anthracyclines (Baselga et al., *Oncology* 11(3 Supp11):43-48 [1997]). However, despite the association of ErbB2 overexpression with poor prognosis, the odds of HER2-positive patients responding clinically to treatment with taxanes were greater than three times those of HER2-negative patients (Ibid). rhuMab HER2 was shown to enhance the activity of paclitaxel (TAXOL®) and doxorubicin against breast cancer xenografts in nude mice injected with BT-474 human breast adenocarcinoma cells, which express high levels of HER2 (Baselga et al., *Breast Cancer, Proceedings of ASCO*, Vol. 13, Abstract 53 [1994]).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the discovery that an early attainment of an efficacious target trough serum concentration by providing an initial dose or doses of anti-ErbB2 antibodies followed by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amounts of antibody (greater front loading) is more efficacious than conventional treatments. The efficacious target trough serum concentration is reached in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. The target serum concentration is thereafter maintained by the administration of maintenance doses of equal or smaller amounts for the remainder of the treatment regimen or until suppression of disease symptoms is achieved.

The invention further concerns a method for the treatment of a human patient susceptible to or diagnosed with a disorder characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody subcutaneously. Preferably, the initial dose (or doses) as well as the subsequent maintenance dose or doses are administered subcutaneously. Optionally, where the patient's tolerance to the anti-ErbB2 antibody is unknown, the initial dose is administered by intravenous infusion, followed by subcutaneous administration of the maintenance doses if the patient's tolerance for the antibody is acceptable.

According to the invention, the method of treatment involves administration of an initial dose of anti-ErbB2 antibody of more than approximately 4 mg/kg, preferably more than approximately 5 mg/kg. The maximum initial dose or a subsequent dose does not exceed 50 mg/kg, preferably does not exceed 40 mg/kg, and more preferably does not exceed 30 mg/kg. Administration is by intravenous or subcutaneous administration, preferably intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or more preferably subcutaneous bolus injection. The initial dose may be one or more administrations of drug sufficient to reach the target trough serum concentration in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including one day or less.

According to the invention, the initial dose or doses is/are followed by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amounts of antibody at intervals sufficiently close to maintain the

trough serum concentration of antibody at or above an efficacious target level. Preferably, an initial dose or subsequent dose does not exceed 50 mg/kg, and each subsequent dose is at least 0.01 mg/kg. Preferably the amount of drug administered is sufficient to maintain the target trough serum concentration such that the interval between administration cycles is at least one week. Preferably the trough serum concentration does not exceed 2500 μg/ml and does not fall below 0.01 μg/ml during treatment. The front loading drug treatment method of the invention has the advantage of increased efficacy by reaching a target serum drug concentration early in treatment. The subcutaneous delivery of maintenance doses according to the invention has the advantage of being convenient for the patient and health care professionals, reducing time and costs for drug treatment. Preferably, the initial dose (or the last dose within an initial dose series) is separated in time from the first subsequent dose by 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 3 weeks or less, most preferably 1 week or less.

In an embodiment of the invention, the initial dose of anti-ErbB2 is 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous administration, such as intravenous infusion or subcutaneous bolus injection. The subsequent maintenance doses are 2 mg/kg delivered once per week by intravenous infusion, intravenous bolus injection, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection. The choice of delivery method for the initial and maintenance doses is made according to the ability of the animal or human patient to tolerate introduction of the antibody into the body. Where the antibody is well-tolerated, the time of infusion may be reduced. The choice of delivery method as disclosed for this embodiment applies to all drug delivery regimens contemplated according to the invention.

In another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 12 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In yet another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 8 mg/kg once per week or 8 mg/kg once every 2 to 3 weeks.

In another embodiment, the invention includes initial doses of at least 1 mg/kg, preferably 4 mg/kg, anti-ErbB2 antibody on each of days 1, 2 and 3, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg twice per week, wherein the maintenance doses are separated by 3 days.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is 2-3 times per week for 3 weeks. In one embodiment of the invention, each dose is approximately 25 mg/kg or less for a human patient, preferably approximately 10 mg/kg or less. This 3 week cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

In another embodiment, the invention includes a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is daily for 5 days. According to the invention, the cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

The disorder preferably is a benign or malignant tumor characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor, e.g. a cancer, such as, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer. The method of the invention may further comprise administration of a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin. The chemotherapeutic agent preferably is a taxoid, such as TAXOL® (paclitaxel) or a TAXOL® derivative.

Preferred anti-ErbB2 antibodies bind the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor, and preferably bind to the epitope 4D5 or 3H4 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence. More preferably, the antibody is the antibody 4D5, most preferably in a humanized form. Other preferred ErbB2-binding antibodies include, but are not limited to, antibodies 7C2, 7F3, and 2C4, preferably in a humanized form.

The method of the present invention is particularly suitable for the treatment of breast or ovarian cancer, characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor.

The present application also provides a method of therapy involving infrequent dosing of an anti-ErbB2 antibody. In particular, the invention provides a method for the treatment of cancer (e.g. cancer characterized by overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor) in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB2 antibody followed by at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein the first dose and subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks (e.g. from about two weeks to about two months), and optionally at least about three weeks (e.g. from about three weeks to about six weeks). For instance, the antibody may be administered about every three weeks, about two to about 20 times, e.g. about six times. The first dose and subsequent dose may each be from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg; e.g. from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg; and optionally from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg. Generally, two or more subsequent doses (e.g. from about two to about ten subsequent doses) of the antibody are administered to the patient, and those subsequent doses are preferably separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks (e.g. from about two weeks to about two months), and optionally at least about three weeks (e.g. from about three weeks to about six weeks). The two or more subsequent doses may each be from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg; or from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg; or from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg. The invention additionally provides an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antibody according to such methods.

The presently described dosing protocols may be applied to other anti-ErbB antibodies such as anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), anti-ErbB3 and anti-ErbB4 antibodies. Thus, the invention provides a method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB antibody to the human patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an initial dose of at least approximately 5 mg/kg of the anti-ErbB antibody; and administering to the patient a plurality of subsequent doses of the antibody in an amount that is approximately the same or less than the initial dose. Alternatively, or additionally, the invention pertains to a method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an

anti-ErbB antibody followed by at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein the first dose and subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks. The invention additionally provides an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB antibody, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antibody according to such methods.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to avoid the use of anthracycline-type chemotherapeutics in combination with the composition. According to the invention, the package insert further includes instructions to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody at an initial dose of 5 mg/kg followed by the same or smaller subsequent dose or doses. In another embodiment of the invention, the package insert further includes instructions to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody subcutaneously for at least one of the doses, preferably for all of the subsequent doses following the initial dose, most preferably for all doses.

In a further aspect, the invention provides a method of treating ErbB2 expressing cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient effective amounts of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent. In one embodiment of the invention, the chemotherapeutic agent is a taxoid including, but not limited to, paclitaxel and docetaxel. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracyline derivative including, but not limited to, doxorubicin or epirubicin. In still another embodiment of the invention, treatment with an anti-ErbB2 antibody and an anthracycline derivative further includes administration of a cardioprotectant to the patient. In still another embodiment, an anthracycline derivative is not administered to the patient with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. One or more additional chemotherapeutic agents may also be administered to the patient. The cancer is preferably characterized by overexpression of ErbB2.

The invention further provides an article of manufacture comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a package insert instructing the user of the composition to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody composition and a chemotherapeutic agent to a patient. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is other than an anthracycline, and is preferably a taxoid, such as TAXOL®. In still another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline, including but not limited to, doxorubicin or epirubicin. In yet another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline and the package insert further instructs the user to administer a cardioprotectant.

The methods and compositions of the invention comprise an anti-ErbB2 antibody and include a humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody. Thus, the invention further pertains to a composition comprising an antibody that binds ErbB2 and the use of the antibody for treating ErbB2 expressing cancer, e.g., ErbB2 overexpressing cancer, in a human. The invention also pertains to the use of the antibody for treating EGFR expressing cancer. Preferably the antibody is a monoclonal antibody 4D5, e.g., humanized 4D5 (and preferably huMAb4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody); or monoclonal antibody 2C4, e.g., humanized 2C4. The antibody may be an intact antibody (e.g., an intact IgG_1 antibody) or an antibody fragment (e.g., a Fab, $F(ab')_2$, diabody, and the like). The variable light chain and variable heavy chain regions of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody 2C4 are shown in FIGS. **5**A and **5**B.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** shows epitope-mapping of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 as determined by truncation mutant analysis and site-directed mutagenesis (Nakamura et al. *J. of Virology* 67(10):6179-6191 [October 1993]; Renz et al. *J. Cell Biol.* 125(6):1395-1406 [June 1994]). The anti-proliferative Mabs 4D5 and 3H4 bind adjacent to the transmembrane domain. The various ErbB2-ECD truncations or point mutations were prepared from cDNA using polymerase chain reaction technology. The ErbB2 mutants were expressed as gD fusion proteins in a mammalian expression plasmid. This expression plasmid uses the cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer with SV40 termination and polyadenylation signals located downstream of the inserted cDNA. Plasmid DNA was transfected into 293S cells. One day following transfection, the cells were metabolically labeled overnight in methionine and cysteine-free, low glucose DMEM containing 1% dialyzed fetal bovine serum and 25 μCi each of ^{35}S methionine and ^{35}S cysteine. Supernatants were harvested either the ErbB2 MAbs or control antibodies were added to the supernatant and incubated 24 hours at 4° C. The complexes were precipitated, applied to a 10-20% Tricine SDS gradient gel and electrophoresed at 100 V. The gel was electroblotted onto a membrane and analyzed by autoradiography. SEQ ID NOs:8 and 9 depict the 3H4 and 4D5 epitopes, respectively.

FIG. **2** depicts with underlining the amino acid sequence of Domain 1 of ErbB2 (SEQ ID NO:1). Bold amino acids indicate the location of the epitope recognized by MAbs 7C2 and 7F3 as determined by deletion mapping, i.e. the "7C2/7F3 epitope" (SEQ ID NO:2).

FIG. **3** is a graph of anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®) trough serum concentration (μg/ml, mean±SE, dark circles) by week from week 2 through week 36 for ErbB2 overexpressing patients treated with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody at 4 mg/kg initial dose, followed by 2 mg/kg weekly. The number of patients at each time point is represented by "n" (white squares).

FIG. **4**A is a linear plot of tumor volume changes over time in mice treated with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. FIG. **4**B is a semi-logarithmic plot of the same data as in FIG. **4**A such that the variation in tumor volume for the treated animals is observed more readily.

FIGS. **5**A and **5**B depict alignments of the amino acid sequences of the variable light (V_L) (FIG. **5**A) and variable heavy (V_H) (FIG. **5**B) domains of murine monoclonal antibody 2C4 (SEQ ID Nos. 10 and 11, respectively); V_L and V_H domains of humanized Fab version 574 (SEQ ID Nos. 12 and 13, respectively), and human V_L and V_H consensus frameworks (hum κ1, light kappa subgroup I; humIII, heavy subgroup III) (SEQ ID Nos. 14 and 15, respectively). Asterisks identify differences between humanized Fab version 574 and murine monoclonal antibody 2C4 or between humanized Fab version 574 and the human framework. Complementarity Determining Regions (CDRs) are in brackets. Humanized Fab version 574, with the changes ArgH71Val, AspH73Arg and IleH69Leu, appears to have binding restored to that of the original chimeric 2C4 Fab fragment. Additional FR and/or CDR residues, such as L2, L54, L55, L56, H35 and/or H48, may be modified (e.g. substituted as follows—IleL2Thr; ArgL54Leu; TyrL55Glu;

ThrL56Ser; AspH35Ser; and ValH48Ile) in order to further refine or enhance binding of the humanized antibody. Alternatively, or additionally, the humanized antibody may be affinity matured in order to further improve or refine its affinity and/or other biological activities.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

I. Definitions

An "ErbB receptor" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes EGFR, HER2, ErbB3 and ErbB4 receptors as well as TEGFR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,708,156) and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a native sequence ErbB receptor or an amino acid sequence variant thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 56:881-914 (1987), including variants thereof (e.g. a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al. *PNAS (USA)* 87:4207-4211 (1990)). erbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product. Examples of antibodies which bind to EGFR include MAb 579 (ATCC CRL HB 8506), MAb 455 (ATCC CRL HB8507), MAb 225 (ATCC CRL 8508), MAb 528 (ATCC CRL 8509) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,533, Mendelsohn et al.) and variants thereof, such as chimerized 225 (C225) and reshaped human 225 (H225) (see, WO 96/40210, Imclone Systems Inc.).

"ErbB3" and "HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968 as well as Kraus et al. *PNAS (USA)* 86:9193-9197 (1989), including variants thereof Examples of antibodies which bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511 (Akita and Sliwkowski), e.g. the 8B8 antibody (ATCC HB 12070) or a humanized variant thereof

The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in EP Pat Appln No 599,274; Plowman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., *Nature,* 366:473-475 (1993), including variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in WO 99/19488.

The terms "HER2", "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" are used interchangeably. Unless indicated otherwise, the terms "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" and "HER2" when used herein refer to the human protein, and "erbB2," "c-erb-B2," and "her2" refer to human gene. The human erbB2 gene and ErbB2 protein are, for example, described in Semba et al., *PNAS (USA)* 82:6497-6501 (1985) and Yamamoto et al. *Nature* 319:230-234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363). ErbB2 comprises four domains (Domains 1-4).

The "epitope 4D5" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) binds. This epitope is close to the transmembrane region of ErbB2. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 4D5 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed (see FIG. **1**) to assess whether the antibody binds to the 4D5 epitope of ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more residues in the region from about residue 529, e.g. about residue 561 to about residue 625, inclusive).

The "epitope 3H4" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 3H4 binds. This epitope is shown in FIG. **1**, and includes residues from about 541 to about 599, inclusive, in the amino acid sequence of ErbB2 extracellular domain.

The "epitope 7C2/7F3" is the region at the N-terminus of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the 7C2 and/or 7F3 antibodies (each deposited with the ATCC, see below) bind. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 7C2/7F3 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, E d Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to establish whether the antibody binds to the 7C2/7F3 epitope on ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more of residues in the region from about residue 22 to about residue 53 of ErbB2; SEQ ID NO: 2).

The term "induces cell death" or "capable of inducing cell death" refers to the ability of the antibody to make a viable cell become nonviable. The "cell" here is one which expresses the ErbB2 receptor, especially where the cell overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. A cell which "overexpresses" ErbB2 has significantly higher than normal ErbB2 levels compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type. Preferably, the cell is a cancer cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Cell death in vitro may be determined in the absence of complement and immune effector cells to distinguish cell death induced by antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Thus, the assay for cell death may be performed using heat inactivated serum (i.e. in the absence of complement) and in the absence of immune effector cells. To determine whether the antibody is able to induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as evaluated by uptake of propidium iodide (PI), trypan blue (see Moore et al. *Cytotechnology* 17:1-11 [1995]) or 7AAD can be assessed relative to untreated cells. Preferred cell death-inducing antibodies are those which induce PI uptake in the "PI uptake assay in BT474 cells".

The phrase "induces apoptosis" or "capable of inducing apoptosis" refers to the ability of the antibody to induce programmed cell death as determined by binding of annexin V, fragmentation of DNA, cell shrinkage, dilation of endoplasmic reticulum, cell fragmentation, and/or formation of membrane vesicles (called apoptotic bodies). The cell is one which overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably the "cell" is a tumor cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3 cell, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Various methods are available for evaluating the cellular events associated with apoptosis. For example, phosphatidyl serine (PS) translocation can be measured by annexin binding; DNA fragmentation can be evaluated through DNA laddering as disclosed in the example herein; and nuclear/chromatin condensation along with DNA fragmentation can be evaluated by any increase in hypodiploid cells. Preferably, the antibody which induces apoptosis is one which results in about 2 to 50 fold, preferably about 5

to 50 fold, and most preferably about 10 to 50 fold, induction of annexin binding relative to untreated cell in an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" (see below).

Sometimes the pro-apoptotic antibody will be one which blocks HRG binding/activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 complex (e.g. 7F3 antibody). In other situations, the antibody is one which does not significantly block activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 receptor complex by HRG (e.g. 7C2). Further, the antibody may be one like 7C2 which, while inducing apoptosis, does not induce a large reduction in the percent of cells in S phase (e.g. one which only induces about 0-10% reduction in the percent of these cells relative to control).

The antibody of interest may be one like 7C2 which binds specifically to human ErbB2 and does not significantly cross-react with other proteins such as those encoded by the erbB1, erbB3 and/or erbB4 genes. Sometimes, the antibody may not significantly cross-react with the rat neu protein, e.g., as described in Schecter et al. *Nature* 312:513 (1984) and Drebin et al., *Nature* 312:545-548 (1984). In such embodiments, the extent of binding of the antibody to these proteins (e.g., cell surface binding to endogenous receptor) will be less than about 10% as determined by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA).

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide which activates the ErbB2-ErbB3 and ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complexes (i.e. induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the complex upon binding thereto). Various heregulin polypeptides encompassed by this term are disclosed in Holmes et al., *Science,* 256:1205-1210 (1992); WO 92/20798; Wen et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.,* 14(3):1909-1919 (1994); and Marchionni et al., *Nature,* 362:312-318 (1993), for example. The term includes biologically active fragments and/or variants of a naturally occurring HRG polypeptide, such as an EGF-like domain fragment thereof (e.g. $HRG\beta1_{177-244}$).

The "ErbB2-ErbB3 protein complex" and "ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complex" are noncovalently associated oligomers of the ErbB2 receptor and the ErbB3 receptor or ErbB4 receptor, respectively. The complexes form when a cell expressing both of these receptors is exposed to HRG and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., *J. Biol. Chem.,* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994).

"Antibodies" (Abs) and "immunoglobulins" (Igs) are glycoproteins having the same structural characteristics. While antibodies exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen, immunoglobulins include both antibodies and other antibody-like molecules which lack antigen specificity. Polypeptides of the latter kind are, for example, produced at low levels by the lymph system and at increased levels by myelomas.

"Native antibodies" and "native immunoglobulins" are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies among the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light-chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light- and heavy-chain variable domains.

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity determining regions (CDRs) or hypervariable regions both in the light-chain and the heavy-chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework region (FR). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FR regions, largely adopting a β-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *NIH Publ. No.* 91-3242, Vol. 1, pages 647-669 [1991]). The constant domains are not involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen-binding fragments, called "Fab" fragments, each with a single antigen-binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. Pepsin treatment yields an $F(ab')_2$ fragment that has two antigen-combining sites and is still capable of cross-linking antigen.

"Fv" is the minimum antibody fragment which contains a complete antigen-recognition and -binding site. This region consists of a dimer of one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain in tight, non-covalent association. It is in this configuration that the three CDRs of each variable domain interact to define an antigen-binding site on the surface of the V_H-V_L dimer. Collectively, the six CDRs confer antigen-binding specificity to the antibody. However, even a single variable domain (or half of an Fv comprising only three CDRs specific for an antigen) has the ability to recognize and bind antigen, although at a lower affinity than the entire binding site.

The Fab fragment also contains the constant domain of the light chain and the first constant domain (CH1) of the heavy chain. Fab' fragments differ from Fab fragments by the addition of a few residues at the carboxy terminus of the heavy chain CH1 domain including one or more cysteines from the antibody hinge region. Fab'-SH is the designation herein for Fab' in which the cysteine residue(s) of the constant domains bear a free thiol group. $F(ab')_2$ antibody fragments originally were produced as pairs of Fab' fragments which have hinge cysteines between them. Other chemical couplings of antibody fragments are also known.

The "light chains" of antibodies (immunoglobulins) from any vertebrate species can be assigned to one of two clearly distinct types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequences of their constant domains.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these maybe further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called α, δ, ε, γ, and μ,

respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

The term "antibody" is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers intact monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g. bispecific antibodies) formed from at least two intact antibodies, and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of an intact antibody, preferably the antigen binding or variable region of the intact antibody. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, and Fv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies (Zapata et al., *Protein Eng.* 8(10):1057-1062 [1995]); single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to conventional (polyclonal) antibody preparations which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they are synthesized by the hybridoma culture, uncontaminated by other immunoglobulins. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies" may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991), for example.

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 81:6851-6855 [1984]).

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric immunoglobulins, immunoglobulin chains or fragments thereof (such as Fv, Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$ or other antigen-binding subsequences of antibodies) which contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementarity determining region (CDR) of the recipient are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat or rabbit having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues which are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences. These modifications are made to further refine and maximize antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the CDRs correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Reichmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.,* 2:593-596 (1992). The humanized antibody includes a PRIMATIZED™ antibody wherein the antigen-binding region of the antibody is derived from an antibody produced by immunizing macaque monkeys with the antigen of interest.

"Single-chain Fv" or "sFv" antibody fragments comprise the V_H and V_L domains of antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Preferably, the Fv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains which enables the sFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding. For a review of sFv see Plückthun in *The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies*, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 269-315 (1994).

The term "diabodies" refers to small antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites, which fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) in the same polypeptide chain (V_H-V_L). By using a linker that is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain, the domains are forced to pair with the complementary domains of another chain and create two antigen-binding sites. Diabodies are described more fully in, for example, EP 404,097; WO 93/11161; and Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:6444-6448 (1993).

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the antibody will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

As used herein, the term "salvage receptor binding epitope" refers to an epitope of the Fc region of an IgG molecule (e.g., IgG_1, IgG_2, IgG_3, or IgG_4) that is responsible for increasing the in vivo serum half-life of the IgG molecule.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of

treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time to disease progression (TTP), or determining the response rates (RR) (see Example 1, below). Therapeutically effective amount also refers to a target serum concentration, such as a trough serum concentration, that has been shown to be effective in suppressing disease symptoms when maintained for a period of time.

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90} and Re^{186}), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclosphosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphaoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibiotics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabicin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidaniine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK®; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxanes, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and docetaxel (TAXOTERE®, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylomithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, and toremifene (Fareston); and anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, and goserelin; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB2-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB2 overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in The *Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (W B Saunders:

Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

"Doxorubicin" is an athracycline antibiotic. The full chemical name of doxorubicin is (8S-cis)-10-[(3amino-2,3,6-trideoxy-α-L-lyxo-hexopyranosyl)oxy]-7,8,9,10-tetrahydro-6,8,11-trihydroxy-8-(hydroxyacetyl)-1-methoxy-5,12-naphthacenedione.

The term "cytokine" is a generic term for proteins released by one cell population which act on another cell as intercellular mediators. Examples of such cytokines are lymphokines, monokines, and traditional polypeptide hormones. Included among the cytokines are growth hormone such as human growth hormone, N-methionyl human growth hormone, and bovine growth hormone; parathyroid hormone; thyroxine; insulin; proinsulin; relaxin; prorelaxin; glycoprotein hormones such as follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH); hepatic growth factor; fibroblast growth factor; prolactin; placental lactogen; tumor necrosis factor-α and -β; mullerian-inhibiting substance; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor; integrin; thrombopoietin (TPO); nerve growth factors such as NGF-β; platelet-growth factor; transforming growth factors (TGFs) such as TGF-α and TGF-β; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II; erythropoietin (EPO); osteoinductive factors; interferons such as interferon-α, -β, and -γ; colony stimulating factors (CSFs) such as macrophage-CSF (M-CSF); granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF); and granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF); interleukins (ILs) such as IL-1, IL-1α, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12; a tumor necrosis factor such as TNF-α or TNF-β; and other polypeptide factors including LIF and kit ligand (KL). As used herein, the term cytokine includes proteins from natural sources or from recombinant cell culture and biologically active equivalents of the native sequence cytokines.

The term "prodrug" as used in this application refers to a precursor or derivative form of a pharmaceutically active substance that is less cytotoxic to tumor cells compared to the parent drug and is capable of being enzymatically activated or converted into the more active parent form. See, e.g., Wilman, "Prodrugs in Cancer Chemotherapy" *Biochemical Society Transactions,* 14, pp. 375-382, 615th Meeting Belfast (1986) and Stella et al., "Prodrugs: A Chemical Approach to Targeted Drug Delivery," *Directed Drug Delivery*, Borchardt et al., (ed.), pp. 247-267, Humana Press (1985). The prodrugs of this invention include, but are not limited to, phosphate-containing prodrugs, thiophosphate-containing prodrugs, sulfate-containing prodrugs, peptide-containing prodrugs, D-amino acid-modified prodrugs, glycosylated prodrugs, β-lactam-containing prodrugs, optionally substituted phenoxyacetamide-containing prodrugs or optionally substituted phenylacetamide-containing prodrugs, 5-fluorocytosine and other 5-fluorouridine prodrugs which can be converted into the more active cytotoxic free drug. Examples of cytotoxic drugs that can be derivatized into a prodrug form for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, those chemotherapeutic agents described above.

By "solid phase" is meant a non-aqueous matrix to which the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention can adhere. Examples of solid phases encompassed herein include those formed partially or entirely of glass (e.g., controlled pore glass), polysaccharides (e.g., agarose), polyacrylamides, polystyrene, polyvinyl alcohol and silicones. In certain embodiments, depending on the context, the solid phase can comprise the well of an assay plate; in others it is a purification column (e.g.,an affinity chromatography column). This term also includes a discontinuous solid phase of discrete particles, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,275,149.

A "liposome" is a small vesicle composed of various types of lipids, phospholipids and/or surfactant which is useful for delivery of a drug (such as the anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein and, optionally, a chemotherapeutic agent) to a mammal. The components of the liposome are commonly arranged in a bilayer formation, similar to the lipid arrangement of biological membranes.

The term "package insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

The term "serum concentration," "serum drug concentration," or "serum HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody concentration" refers to the concentration of a drug, such as HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, in the blood serum of an animal or human patient being treated with the drug. Serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, for example, is preferably determined by immunoassay. Preferably, the immunoassay is an ELISA according to the procedure disclosed herein.

The term "peak serum concentration" refers to the maximal serum drug concentration shortly after delivery of the drug into the animal or human patient, after the drug has been distributed throughout the blood system, but before significant tissue distribution, metabolism or excretion of drug by the body has occurred.

The term "trough serum concentration" refers to the serum drug concentration at a time after delivery of a previous dose and immediately prior to delivery of the next subsequent dose of drug in a series of doses. Generally, the trough serum concentration is a minimum sustained efficacious drug concentration in the series of drug administrations. Also, the trough serum concentration is frequently targeted as a minimum serum concentration for efficacy because it represents the serum concentration at which another dose of drug is to be administered as part of the treatment regimen. If the delivery of drug is by intravenous administration, the trough serum concentration is most preferably attained within 1 day of a front loading initial drug delivery. If the delivery of drug is by subcutaneous administration, the peak serum concentration is preferably attained in 3 days or less. According to the invention, the trough serum concentration is preferably attained in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, most preferably in 1 week or less, including 1 day or less using any of the drug delivery methods disclosed herein.

The term "intravenous infusion" refers to introduction of a drug into the vein of an animal or human patient over a period of time greater than approximately 5 minutes, preferably between approximately 30 to 90 minutes, although, according to the invention, intravenous infusion is alternatively administered for 10 hours or less.

The term "intravenous bolus" or "intravenous push" refers to drug administration into a vein of an animal or human such that the body receives the drug in approximately 15 minutes or less, preferably 5 minutes or less.

The term "subcutaneous administration" refers to introduction of a drug under the skin of an animal or human patient, preferable within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, by relatively slow, sustained delivery

from a drug receptacle. The pocket may be created by pinching or drawing the skin up and away from underlying tissue.

The term "subcutaneous infusion" refers to introduction of a drug under the skin of an animal or human patient, preferably within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, by relatively slow, sustained delivery from a drug receptacle for a period of time including, but not limited to, 30 minutes or less, or 90 minutes or less. Optionally, the infusion may be made by subcutaneous implantation of a drug delivery pump implanted under the skin of the animal or human patient, wherein the pump delivers a predetermined amount of drug for a predetermined period of time, such as 30 minutes, 90 minutes, or a time period spanning the length of the treatment regimen.

The term "subcutaneous bolus" refers to drug administration beneath the skin of an animal or human patient, where bolus drug delivery is preferably less than approximately 15 minutes, more preferably less than 5 minutes, and most preferably less than 60 seconds. Administration is preferably within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, where the pocket is created, for example, by pinching or drawing the skin up and away from underlying tissue.

The term "front loading" when referring to drug administration is meant to describe an initially higher dose followed by the same or lower doses at intervals. The initial higher dose or doses are meant to more rapidly increase the animal or human patient's serum drug concentration to an efficacious target serum concentration. According to the present invention, front loading is achieved by an initial dose or doses delivered over three weeks or less that causes the animal's or patient's serum concentration to reach a target serum trough concentration. Preferably, the initial front loading dose or series of doses is administered in two weeks or less, more preferably in 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. Most preferably, where the initial dose is a single dose and is not followed by a subsequent maintenance dose for at least 1 week, the initial dose is administered in 1 day or less. Where the initial dose is a series of doses, each dose is separated by at least 3 hours, but not more than 3 weeks or less, preferably 2 weeks or less, more preferably 1 week or less, most preferably 1 day or less. To avoid adverse immune reaction to an antibody drug such as an anti-ErbB2 antibody (e.g., HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) in an animal or patient who has not previously been treated with the antibody, it may be preferable to deliver initial doses of the antibody by intravenous infusion. The present invention includes front loading drug delivery of initial and maintenance doses by infusion or bolus administration, intravenously or subcutaneously.

Published information related to anti-ErbB2 antibodies includes the following issued patents and published applications: PCT/US89/0005 1, published Jan. 5, 1989; PCT/US90/02697, published May 18, 1990; EU 0474727 issued Jul. 23, 1997; DE 69031120.6, issued Jul. 23, 1997; PCT/US97/18385, published Oct. 9, 1997; SA 97/9185, issued Oct. 14, 1997; U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171, issued Oct. 14, 1997; U.S. Pat. No. 5,720,937, issued Feb. 24, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,720,954, issued Feb. 24, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,725,856, issued Mar. 10, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,770,195, issued Jun. 23, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997, issued Jun. 30, 1998; PCT/US98/2626, published Dec. 10, 1998; and PCT/US99/06673, published Mar. 26, 1999, each of which patents and publications is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety.

II. Production of anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

A description follows as to exemplary techniques for the production of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention. The ErbB2 antigen to be used for production of antibodies may be, e.g., a soluble form of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 or a portion thereof, containing the desired epitope. Alternatively, cells expressing ErbB2 at their cell surface (e.g. NIH-3T3 cells transformed to overexpress ErbB2; or a carcinoma cell line such as SKBR3 cells, see Stancovski et al., *PNAS* (*USA*) 88:8691-8695 [1991]) can be used to generate antibodies. Other forms of ErbB2 useful for generating antibodies will be apparent to those skilled in the art.

(i) Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl^2$, or $R^1N{=}C{=}NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 μg or 5 μg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with ⅕ to 1/10 the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(ii) Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies are obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies.

For example, the monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypox-

anthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.,* 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 [Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987]).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

The binding affinity of the monoclonal antibody can, for example, be determined by the Scatchard analysis of Munson et al., *Anal. Biochem.,* 107:220 (1980).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of murine antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Review articles on recombinant expression in bacteria of DNA encoding the antibody include Skerra et al., *Curr. Opinion in Immunol.,* 5:256-262 (1993) and Plückthun, *Immunol. Revs.,* 130:151-188 (1992).

In a further embodiment, antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature,* 348:552-554 (1990). Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352: 624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol,* 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology,* 10:779-783 [1992]), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.,* 21:2265-2266 [1993]). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA,* 81:6851 [1984]), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

(iii) Humanized and Human Antibodies

Methods for humanizing non-human antibodies are well known in the art. Preferably, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al. *Science,* 239:1534-1536 [1988]), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework region (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 196:901 [1987]). Another method uses a particular framework region derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immnol.,* 151:2623 [1993]).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable

three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature,* 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al. *Year in Immuno.,* 7:33 (1993). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 227:381 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 [1991]).

(iv) Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al., *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107-117 (1992) and Brennan et al., *Science,* 229:81 [1985]). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form $F(ab')_2$ fragments (Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10: 163-167 [1992]). According to another approach, $F(ab')_2$ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv). See WO 93/16185.

(v) Bispecific Antibodies

Bispecific antibodies are antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of the ErbB2 protein. For example, one arm may bind an epitope in Domain 1 of ErbB2 such as the 7C2/7F3 epitope, the other may bind a different ErbB2 epitope, e.g. the 4D5 epitope. Other such antibodies may combine an ErbB2 binding site with binding site(s) for EGFR, ErbB3 and/or ErbB4. Alternatively, an anti-ErbB2 arm may be combined with an arm which binds to a triggering molecule on a leukocyte such as a T-cell receptor molecule (e.g. CD2 or CD3), or Fc receptors for IgG (FcγR), such as FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16) so as to focus cellular defense mechanisms to the ErbB2-expressing cell. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express ErbB2. These antibodies possess an ErbB2-binding arm and an arm which binds the cytotoxic agent (e.g. saporin, anti-interferon-α, vinca alkaloid, ricin A chain, methotrexate or radioactive isotope hapten). Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments (e.g. $F(ab')_2$ bispecific antibodies).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature,* 305:537-539 [1983]). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.,* 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology,* 121:210 (1986).

According to another approach described in WO96/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science,* 229: 81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate $F(ab')_2$ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli*, which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.,* 175: 217-225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody $F(ab')_2$ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.,* 148(5):1547-1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:6444-6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.,* 152:5368 (1994).

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al., *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

(vi) Screening for Antibodies with the Desired Properties

Techniques for generating antibodies have been described above. Those antibodies having the characteristics described herein are selected.

To select for antibodies which induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as indicated by, e.g., PI, trypan blue or 7AAD uptake is assessed relative to control. The preferred assay is the "PI uptake assay using BT474 cells". According to this assay, BT474 cells (which can be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection [Rockville, Md.]) are cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (D-MEM): Ham's F-12 (50:50) supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS (Hyclone) and 2 mM L-glutamine. (Thus, the assay is performed in the absence of complement and immune effector cells). The BT474 cells are seeded at a density of 3×10^6 per dish in 100×20 mm dishes and allowed to attach overnight. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the appropriate MAb. The cells are incubated for a 3 day time period. Following each treatment, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 5 minutes at 4° C., the pellet resuspended in 3 ml ice cold Ca^{2+} binding buffer (10 mM Hepes, pH 7.4, 140 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM $CaCl_2$) and aliquoted into 35 mm strainer-capped 12×75 tubes (1 ml per tube, 3 tubes per treatment group) for removal of cell clumps. Tubes then receive PI (10 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of cell death as determined by PI uptake are selected.

In order to select for antibodies which induce apoptosis, an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" is available. The BT474 cells are cultured and seeded in dishes as discussed in the preceding paragraph. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the MAb. Following a three day incubation period, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged, resuspended in Ca^{2+} binding buffer and aliquoted into tubes as discussed above for the cell death assay. Tubes then receive labeled annexin (e.g. annexin V-FTIC) (1 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of annexin binding relative to control are selected as apoptosis-inducing antibodies.

In addition to the annexin binding assay, a "DNA staining assay using BT474 cells" is available. In order to perform this assay, BT474 cells which have been treated with the antibody of interest as described in the preceding two paragraphs are incubated with 9 μg/ml HOECHST 33342™ for 2 hr at 37° C., then analyzed on an EPICS ELITE™ flow cytometer (Coulter Corporation) using MODFIT LT™ software (Verity Software House). Antibodies which induce a change in the percentage of apoptotic cells which is 2 fold or greater (and preferably 3 fold or greater) than untreated cells (up to 100% apoptotic cells) may be selected as pro-apoptotic antibodies using this assay.

To screen for antibodies which bind to an epitope on ErbB2 bound by an antibody of interest, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed by methods known in the art.

To identify anti-ErbB2 antibodies which inhibit growth of SKBR3 cells in cell culture by 50-100%, the SKBR3 assay described in WO 89/06692 can be performed. According to this assay, SKBR3 cells are grown in a 1:1 mixture of F12 and DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, glutamine and penicillinstreptomycin. The SKBR3 cells are plated at 20,000 cells in a 35 mm cell culture dish (2 mls/35 mm dish). 2.5 μg/ml of the anti-ErbB2 antibody is added per dish. After six days, the number of cells, compared to untreated cells are counted using an electronic COULTER™ cell counter. Those antibodies which inhibit growth of the SKBR3 cells by 50-100% are selected for combination with the apoptotic antibodies as desired.

(vii) Effector Function Engineering

It may be desirable to modify the antibody of the invention with respect to effector function, so as to enhance the effectiveness of the antibody in treating cancer, for example. For example, cysteine residue(s) may be introduced in the Fc region, thereby allowing interchain disulfide bond formation in this region. The homodimeric antibody thus generated may have improved internalization capability and/or increased complement-mediated cell killing and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). See Caron et al., *J. Exp Med.* 176:1191-1195 (1992) and Shopes, B. *J. Immunol.* 148:2918-2922 (1992). Homodimeric antibodies with enhanced anti-tumor activity may also be prepared using heterobifunctional cross-linkers as described in Wolff et al. *Cancer Research* 53:2560-2565 (1993). Alternatively, an antibody can be engineered which has dual Fc regions and may thereby have enhanced complement lysis and ADCC capabilities. See Stevenson et al. *Anti-Cancer Drug Design* 3:219-230 (1989).

(viii) Immunoconjugates

The invention also pertains to immunoconjugates comprising the antibody described herein conjugated to a cytotoxic agent such as a chemotherapeutic agent, toxin (e.g. an enzymatically active toxin of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof), or a radioactive isotope (i.e., a radioconjugate).

Chemotherapeutic agents useful in the generation of such immunoconjugates have been described above. Enzymatically active toxins and fragments thereof which can be used include diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, *Aleurites fordii* proteins, dianthin proteins, Phytolaca americana proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), momordica charantia inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin and the tricothecenes. A variety of radionuclides are available for the production of radioconjugated anti-ErbB2 antibodies. Examples include ^{212}Bi, ^{131}I, ^{131}In, ^{90}Y and ^{186}Re.

Conjugates of the antibody and cytotoxic agent are made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithiol) propionate (SPDP), iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCL), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutaraldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as his (p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine), bis-diazonium derivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as tolyene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). For example, a ricin immunotoxin can be prepared as described in Vitetta et al. *Science* 238: 1098 (1987). Carbon-14-labeled 1-isothiocyanatobenzyl-3-methyldiethylene triaminepentaacetic acid (MX-DTPA) is an exemplary chelating agent for conjugation of radionucleotide to the antibody. See WO 94/11026.

In another embodiment, the antibody may be conjugated to a "receptor" (such streptavidin) for utilization in tumor pretargeting wherein the antibody-receptor conjugate is administered to the patient, followed by removal of unbound conjugate from the circulation using a clearing agent and then administration of a "ligand" (e.g. avidin) which is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g. a radionucleotide).

(ix) Immunoliposomes

The anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein may also be formulated as immunoliposomes. Liposomes containing the antibody are prepared by methods known in the art, such as described in Epstein et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 82:3688 (1985); Hwang et al., *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA,* 77:4030 (1980); and U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545. Liposomes with enhanced circulation time are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,556.

Particularly useful liposomes can be generated by the reverse phase evaporation method with a lipid composition comprising phosphatidylcholine, cholesterol and PEG-derivatized phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE). Liposomes are extruded through filters of defined pore size to yield liposomes with the desired diameter. Fab' fragments of the antibody of the present invention can be conjugated to the liposomes as described in Martin et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 257: 286-288 (1982) via a disulfide interchange reaction. A chemotherapeutic agent is optionally contained within the liposome. See Gabizon et al., *J. National Cancer Inst.* 81(19)1484 (1989).

(x) Antibody Dependent Enzyme Mediated Prodrug Therapy (ADEPT)

The antibodies of the present invention may also be used in ADEPT by conjugating the antibody to a prodrug-activating enzyme which converts a prodrug (e.g. a peptidyl chemotherapeutic agent, see WO 81/01145) to an active anti-cancer drug. See, for example, WO 88/07378 and U.S. Pat. No. 4,975,278.

The enzyme component of the immunoconjugate useful for ADEPT includes any enzyme capable of acting on a prodrug in such a way so as to covert it into its more active, cytotoxic form.

Enzymes that are useful in the method of this invention include, but are not limited to, alkaline phosphatase useful for converting phosphate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; arylsulfatase useful for converting sulfate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; cytosine deaminase useful for converting non-toxic 5-fluorocytosine into the anti-cancer drug, 5-fluorouracil; proteases, such as serratia protease, thermolysin, subtilisin, carboxypeptidases and cathepsins (such as cathepsins B and L), that are useful for converting peptide-containing prodrugs into free drugs; D-alanylcarboxypeptidases, useful for converting prodrugs that contain D-amino acid substituents; carbohydrate-cleaving enzymes such as β-galactosidase and neuraminidase useful for converting glycosylated prodrugs into free drugs; β-lactamase useful for converting drugs derivatized with β-lactams into free drugs; and penicillin amidases, such as penicillin V amidase or penicillin G amidase, useful for converting drugs derivatized at their amine nitrogens with phenoxyacetyl or phenylacetyl groups, respectively, into free drugs. Alternatively, antibodies with enzymatic activity, also known in the art as "abzymes", can be used to convert the prodrugs of the invention into free active drugs (see, e.g., Massey, *Nature*

328: 457-458 [1987]). Antibody-abzyme conjugates can be prepared as described herein for delivery of the abzyme to a tumor cell population.

The enzymes of this invention can be covalently bound to the anti-ErbB2 antibodies by techniques well known in the art such as the use of the heterobifunctional crosslinking reagents discussed above. Alternatively, fusion proteins comprising at least the antigen binding region of an antibody of the invention linked to at least a functionally active portion of an enzyme of the invention can be constructed using recombinant DNA techniques well known in the art (see, e.g., Neuberger et al., *Nature,* 312: 604-608 [1984]).

(xi) Antibody-Salvage Receptor Binding Epitope Fusions

In certain embodiments of the invention, it may be desirable to use an antibody fragment, rather than an intact antibody, to increase tumor penetration, for example. In this case, it may be desirable to modify the antibody fragment in order to increase its serum half life. This may be achieved, for example, by incorporation of a salvage receptor binding epitope into the antibody fragment (e.g. by mutation of the appropriate region in the antibody fragment or by incorporating the epitope into a peptide tag that is then fused to the antibody fragment at either end or in the middle, e.g. by DNA or peptide synthesis).

A systematic method for preparing such an antibody variant having an increased in vivo half-life comprises several steps. The first involves identifying the sequence and conformation of a salvage receptor binding epitope of an Fc region of an IgG molecule. Once this epitope is identified, the sequence of the antibody of interest is modified to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. After the sequence is mutated, the antibody variant is tested to see if it has a longer in vivo half-life than that of the original antibody. If the antibody variant does not have a longer in vivo half-life upon testing, its sequence is further altered to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. The altered antibody is tested for longer in vivo half-life, and this process is continued until a molecule is obtained that exhibits a longer in vivo half-life.

The salvage receptor binding epitope being thus incorporated into the antibody of interest is any suitable such epitope as defined above, and its nature will depend, e.g., on the type of antibody being modified. The transfer is made such that the antibody of interest still possesses the biological activities described herein.

The epitope preferably constitutes a region wherein any one or more amino acid residues from one or two loops of a Fc domain are transferred to an analogous position of the antibody fragment. Even more preferably, three or more residues from one or two loops of the Fc domain are transferred. Still more preferred, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region (e.g., of an IgG) and transferred to the CH1, CH3, or V_H region, or more than one such region, of the antibody. Alternatively, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region and transferred to the C_L region or V_L region, or both, of the antibody fragment.

In one most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope comprises the sequence (5' to 3'): PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3), and optionally further comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of HQSLGTQ (SEQ ID NO:4), HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7), particularly where the antibody fragment is a Fab or $F(ab')_2$. In another most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope is a polypeptide containing the sequence(s) (5' to 3'): HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7) and the sequence: PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3).

(xii) Purification of anti-ErbB2 Antibody

When using recombinant techniques, the antibody can be produced intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. If the antibody is produced intracellularly, as a first step, the particulate debris, either host cells or lysed fragments, is removed, for example, by centrifugation or ultrafiltration. Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163-167 (1992) describe a procedure for isolating antibodies which are secreted to the periplasmic space of *E. coli*. Briefly, cell paste is thawed in the presence of sodium acetate (pH 3.5), EDTA, and phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) over about 30 min. Cell debris can be removed by centrifugation. Where the antibody is secreted into the medium, supernatants from such expression systems are preferably first concentrated using a commercially available protein concentration filter, for example, an Amicon or Millipore Pellicon ultrafiltration unit. A protease inhibitor such as PMSF may be included in any of the foregoing steps to inhibit proteolysis and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants.

The antibody composition prepared from the cells can be purified using, for example, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, and affinity chromatography, with affinity chromatography being the preferred purification technique. The suitability of protein A as an affinity ligand depends on the species and isotype of any immunoglobulin Fc domain that is present in the antibody. Protein A can be used to purify antibodies that are based on human γ1, γ2, or γ4 heavy chains (Lindmark et al., *J. Immunol. Meth.* 62:1-13 [1983]). G is recommended for all mouse isotypes and for human γ3 (Guss et al., *EMBO J.* 5:15671575 [1986]). The matrix to which the affinity ligand is attached is most often agarose, but other matrices are available. Mechanically stable matrices such as controlled pore glass or poly(styrenedivinyl)benzene allow for faster flow rates and shorter processing times than can be achieved with agarose. Where the antibody comprises a C_H3 domain, the Bakerbond ABX™ resin (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, N.J.) is useful for purification. Other techniques for protein purification such as fractionation on an ion-exchange column, ethanol precipitation, Reverse Phase HPLC, chromatography on silica, chromatography on heparin SEPHAROSE™ chromatography on an anion or cation exchange resin (such as a polyaspartic acid column), chromatofocusing, SDS-PAGE, and ammonium sulfate precipitation are also available depending on the antibody to be recovered.

Following any preliminary purification step(s), the mixture comprising the antibody of interest and contaminants may be subjected to low pH hydrophobic interaction chromatography using an elution buffer at a pH between about 2.5-4.5, preferably performed at low salt concentrations (e.g. from about 0-0.25M salt).

III. Determination of anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration in Serum

The following non-limiting assay is useful for determining the presence of and to quantitate the amount of specific rhuMAb HER2 (humanized anti-$p185^{HER2}$ monoclonal antibody, including HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) in a body fluid of a mammal including, but not limited to, serum, amniotic fluid, milk, umbilical cord serum, ocular aqueous and vitreous liquids, and ocular vitreous gel.

Plate Binding Activity Assay for rhuMAb HER2 (Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody

The method of assaying rhuMAb HER2 described herein is meant as an example of such a method and is not meant to be limiting. A standardized preparation of rhuMAb HER2 (Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, Calif.), controls, and serum samples were diluted with Assay Diluent (PBS/0.5% BSA/0.05% Polysorbate 20/0.01% Thimerosal). The dilutions of standardized rhuMAb HER2 were prepared to span a range of concentrations useful for a standard curve. The samples were diluted to fall within the standard curve.

An aliquot of Coat Antigen in Coating buffer (recombinant p185^{HER2} (Genentech, Inc.) in 0.05 M sodium carbonate buffer) was added to each well of a microtiter plate and incubated at 2-8° C. for 12-72 hours. The coating solution was removed and each well was washed six times with water, then blotted to remove excess water.

An aliquot of Assay Diluent was added to each well and incubated for 1-2 hours at ambient temperature with agitation. The wells were washed as in the previous step.

Aliquots of diluted standard, control and sample solutions were added to the wells and incubated at ambient temperature for 1 hour with agitation to allow binding of the antibody to the coating antigen. The wells are washed again with water as in previous steps.

Horse radish peroxidase-conjugate (HRP-conjugate, Goat anti-human IgG Fc conjugated to horseradish peroxidase; Organon Teknika catalog #55253 or equivalent) was diluted with Assay Diluent to yield an appropriate optical density range between the highest and lowest standards. An aliquot of the HRP-conjugate solution was added to each well and incubated at ambient temperature for I hour with agitation. The wells were washed with water as in previous steps.

An aliquot of Substrate Solution (o-phenylenediamine (OPD) 5 mg tablet (Sigma P6912 or equivalent) in 12.5 ml 4 mM H_2O_2 in PBS) was added to each well and incubated for a sufficient period of time (approximately 8-10 minutes) in the dark at ambient temperature to allow color development. The reaction was stopped with an aliquot of 4.5 N sulfuric acid. Optical density was read at 490-492 nm for detection absorbance and 405 nm for reference absorbance. The standard curve data are plotted and the results for the controls and samples are determined from the standard curve.

IV. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16 th edition, Osol, A. Ed. [1980]), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2 antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein be reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2 (e.g. an antibody which binds a different epitope on ErbB2), ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, cytokine or growth inhibitory agent. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16 th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(−)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S—S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

V. Treatment with the Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB2 receptor. Exemplary conditions or disor-

ders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies of the invention are administered to a human patient, in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

The treatment of the present invention involves the administration of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to an animal or human patient, followed at intervals by subsequent doses of equal or smaller doses such that a target serum concentration is achieved and maintained during treatment. Preferably, maintenance doses are delivered by bolus delivery, preferably by subcutaneous bolus administration, making treatment convenient and cost-effective for the patient and health care professionals.

Where combined administration of a chemotherapeutic agent (other than an antracycline) is desired, the combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

It maybe desirable to also administer antibodies against other tumor associated antigens, such as antibodies which bind to the EGFR, ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). Alternatively, or additionally, two or more anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be co-administered to the patient. Sometimes, it may be beneficial to also administer one or more cytokines to the patient. The ErbB2 antibody may be co-administered with a growth inhibitory agent. For example, the growth inhibitory agent may be administered first, followed by the ErbB2 antibody. However, simultaneous administration, or administration of the ErbB2 antibody first is also contemplated. Suitable dosages for the growth inhibitory agent are those presently used and may be lowered due to the combined action (synergy) of the growth inhibitory agent and anti-ErbB2 antibody.

In addition to the above therapeutic regimens, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells and/or radiation therapy.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of anti-ErbB2 antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments. Where the treatment involves a series of treatments, the initial dose or initial doses are followed at daily or weekly intervals by maintenance doses. Each maintenance dose provides the same or a smaller amount of antibody compared to the amount of antibody administered in the initial dose or doses.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

According to the invention, dosage regimens may include an initial dose of anti-ErbB2 of 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous infusion, followed by subsequent weekly maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg by intravenous infusion, intravenous bolus injection, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection. Where the antibody is well-tolerated by the patient, the time of infusion may be reduced.

Alternatively, the invention includes an initial dose of 12 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

Another dosage regimen involves an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

Still another dosage regimen involves an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 8 mg/kg once per week or 8 mg/kg once every 2 to 3 weeks.

As an alternative regimen, initial doses of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody may be administered on each of days 1, 2 and 3, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

An additional regimen involves an initial dose of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg twice per week, wherein the maintenance doses are separated by 3 days.

Alternatively, the invention may include a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is 2-3 times per week for 3 weeks. The 3 week cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

The invention further includes a cyclic dosage regimen in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is daily for 5 days. According to the invention, the cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. Further information about suitable dosages is provided in the Examples below.

VI. Articles of Manufacture

In another embodiment of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, a label and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container

holds a composition which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example, the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-ErbB2 antibody. The label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes. In addition, the article of manufacture may comprise a package inserts with instructions for use, including, e.g., a warning that the composition is not to be used in combination with anthacycline-type chemotherapeutic agent, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRT 10463	May 24, 1990
2C4	ATCC HB-12697	Apr. 8, 1999

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

EXAMPLES

Example 1

Preparation and Efficacy of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Materials and Methods

Anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody The anti-ErbB2 $IgG_1\kappa$ murine monoclonal antibody 4D5, specific for the extracellular domain of ErbB2, was produced as described in Fendly et al., *Cancer Research* 5o:1550-1558 (1990) and WO89/06692. Briefly, NIH 3T3/HER2-3_{400} cells (expressing approximately 1×10^5 ErbB2 molecules/cell) produced as described in Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* (*USA*) 84:7159 (1987) were harvested with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 25 mM EDTA and used to immunize BALB/c mice. The mice were given injections i.p. of 10^7 cells in 0.5 ml PBS on weeks, 0, 2, 5 and 7. The mice with antisera that immunoprecipitated ^{32}P-labeled ErbB2 were given i.p. injections of a wheat germ agglutinin-Sepharose (WGA) purified ErbB2 membrane extract on weeks 9 and 13. This was followed by an i.v. injection of 0.1 ml of the ErbB2 preparation and the splenocytes were fused with mouse myeloma line X63-Ag8.653. Hybridoma supernatants were screened for ErbB2-binding by ELISA and radioimmunoprecipitation. MOPC-21 (IgG1), (Cappell, Durham, N.C.), was used as an isotype-matched control.

The treatment was performed with a humanized version of the murine 4D5 antibody (HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody). The humanized antibody was engineered by inserting the complementarity determining regions of the murine 4D5 antibody into the framework of a consensus human immunoglobulin IgG_1 (IgG_1) (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:4285-4289 [1992]). The resulting humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody has high affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ (Dillohiation constant $[K_d]$=0.1 nmol/L), markedly inhibits, in vitro and in human xenografts, the growth of breast cancer cells that contain high levels of $p185^{HER2}$, induces antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), and has been found clinically active, as a single agent, in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior therapy. HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is produced by a genetically engineered Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cell line, grown in large scale, that secretes the antibody into the culture medium. The antibody is purified from the CHO culture media using standard chromatographic and filtration methods. Each lot of antibody used in this study was assayed to verify identity, purity, and potency, as well as to meet Food and Drug Administration requirements for sterility and safety.

Eligibility Criteria Patients had to fulfill all of the following criteria to be eligible for study admission:

- Metastatic breast cancer
- Overexpression of the ErbB2 (HER2) oncogene (2+ to 3+ as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). [Tumor expression of ErbB2 can be determined by immunohistochemical analysis, as previously described (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra), of a set of thin sections prepared from the patient's paraffin-archived tumor blocks. The primary detecting antibody used is murine 4D5 MAb, which has the same CDRs as the humanized antibody used for the treatment. Tumors are considered to overexpress ErbB2 if at least 25% of tumor cells exhibit characteristic membrane staining for $p185^{HER2}$].
- Bidimensionally measurable disease (including lytic bone lesions) by radiographic means, physical examination, or photographs

Measurable disease was defined as any mass reproducibly measurable in two perpendicular diameters by physical examination, X-ray (plain films), computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasound, or photographs.

Osteoblastic metastases, pleural effusions, or ascites were not considered to be measurable. Measurable lesions must be at least 1 cm in greatest dimension. Enumeration of evaluable sites of metastatic disease and number of lesions in an evaluable site (e.g. lung) had to be recorded on the appropriate Case Report Form (CRF). If a large number of pulmonary or hepatic lesions were present, the six largest lesions per site were followed.

- The ability to understand and willingness to sign a written informed consent form
- Women>18 years
- Suitable candidates for receiving concomitant cytotoxic chemotherapy as evidenced by screening laboratory assessments of hematologic, renal, hepatic, and metabolic functions.

Exclusion Criteria Patients with any of the following were excluded from study entry:

- Prior cytotoxic chemotherapy for metastatic breast cancer
- Patients may have received prior hormonal therapy (e.g. tamoxifen) for metastatic disease or cytotoxic therapy in the adjuvant setting.
- Concomitant malignancy that has not been curatively treated
- A performance status of <60% on the Kamofsky scale

Pregnant or nursing women; women of childbearing potential, unless using effective contraception as determined by the investigator

Bilateral breast cancer (either both primary tumors must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression, or the metastatic site must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression)

Use of investigational or unlicensed agents within 30 days prior to study entry

Clinically unstable or untreated metastases to the brain (e.g. requiring radiation therapy)

Based upon the foregoing criteria, 469 patients were chosen, and enrolled in the study. Half the patients (stratified by chemotherapy) were randomized to additionally receive the HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody (see below).

Administration and Dosage

Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

On day 0, a 4 mg/kg dose of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, H) was administered intravenously, over a 90-minute period. Beginning on day 7, patients received weekly administration of 2 mg/kg antibody (i.v.) over a 90-minute period.

Chemotherapy

The patients received one of two chemotherapy regimens for a minimum of six cycles, provided their disease was not progressing: a) cyclophosphamide and doxorubicin or epirubicin (AC), if patients have not received anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting, or b) paclitaxel (T, TAXOL®), if patients have received any anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting. The initial dose of the HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody preceded the first cycle of either chemotherapy regimen by 24 hours. Subsequent doses of the antibody were given immediately before chemotherapy administration, if the initial dose of the antibody was well tolerated. If the first dose of the antibody was not well tolerated, subsequent infusions continued to precede chemotherapy administration by 24 hours. Patients were permitted to continue receiving chemotherapy beyond six cycles if, in the opinion of the treating physician, they were continuing to receive treatment benefit.

Cyclophosphamide (600 mg/m^2) was given either by iv push over a minimum period of 3 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours.

Doxorubicin (60 mg/m^2) or epirubicin (75 mg/m^2) were given either by slow iv push over a minimum period of 3-5 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours, according to institutional protocol.

Paciltaxel (TAXOL®) was given at a dose of 175 mg/m^2 over 3 hours by intravenous administration. All patients receiving paclitaxel were premedicated with dexamethasone (or its equivalent) 20 mg×2, administered orally 12 and 6 hours prior to paclitaxel; diphenhydramine (or its equivalent) 50 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel, and dimetidine (or another H_2 blocker) 300 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel.

Response Criteria

Progressive Disease Objective evidence of an increase of 25% or more in any measurable lesion. Progressive disease also includes those instances when new lesions have appeared. For bone lesions, progression is defined as a 25% increase in objective measurement by plain film, CT, MRI; symptomatic new lesions not due to fracture; or requirement for palliative radiotherapy.

Complete Response Disappearance of all radiographically and/or visually apparent tumor for a minimum of 4 weeks. Skin and chest wall complete responses had to be confirmed by biopsy.

Partial Response A reduction of at least 50% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions for a minimum period of 4 weeks. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Minor Response A reduction of 25% to 49% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Stable Disease No change of greater than 25% in the size of measurable lesions. No lesions may have appeared.

Time to disease progression (TTP) was calculated from the beginning of therapy to progression. Confidence limits for response rates were calculated using the exact method for a single proportion. (Fleiss, J L, *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions* (ed. 2), New York, N.Y., Wiley, 1981, pp 13-17).

Results

At a median follow-up of 10.5 months, assessments of time to disease progression (TTP in months) and response rates (RR) showed a significant augmentation of the chemotherapeutic effect by HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, without increase in overall severe adverse events (AE):

TABLE 1

HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Efficacy

	Enrolled	TTP(months)	RR(%)	AE(%)
CRx	234	5.5	36.2	66
CRx + H	235	8.6*	62.00**	69
AC	145	6.5	42.1	71
AC + H	146	9.0	64.9	68
T	89	4.2	25.0	59
T + H	89	7.1	57.3	70

*$p < 0.001$ by log-rank test;
**$p < 0.01$ by X^2 test;
CRx: chemotherapy;
AC: anthracycline/cyclophosphamide treatment;
H: HERCEPTIN ® anti-ErbB2 antibody;
T: TAXOL ®

A syndrome of myocardial dysfunction similar to that observed with anthracyclines was reported more commonly with a combined treatment of AC+H (18% Grade ¾) than with AC alone (3%), T (0%), or T+H (2%).

These data indicate that the combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment with chemotherapy markedly increases the clinical benefit, as assessed by response rates and the evaluation of disease progression. However, due to the increased cardiac side-effects of doxorubicin or epirubicin, the combined use of anthracyclines with anti-ErbB2 antibody therapy is contraindicated. The results, taking into account risk and benefit, favor treatment with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody and paclitaxel (TAXOL®) where a combined treatment regimen is desired.

Example 2

Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamic Properties of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody (HERCEPTIN®)

HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was administered by intravenous infusion to human patients selected according to the criteria provided in Example 1. An initial dose of 4 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was delivered by intravenous infusion, followed by subsequent i.v. infu-

sions of 2 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody weekly for several weeks. Two hundred thirteen patients began this treatment regimen and serum drug concentration was obtained beyond 8 weeks for fewer than 90 patients as selective discontinuation of patients with rapidly progressing disease occurred. Of the 213 patients who began treatment, serum trough concentration data were available for 80 patients at Week 12, for 77 patients at Week 16, for 44 patients at Week 20, for 51 patients at Week 24, for 25 patients at Week 28, for 23 patients at Week 32, and for 37 patients at Week 36.

HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough Serum Concentrations for Weeks 0-36

The HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody trough serum concentrations (μg/ml, mean±SE) from Week 2 through Week 36 are plotted in FIG. **3** (dark circles). The number of patients was fairly constant because data from patients discontinued from the program due to rapidly progressing disease were excluded from this analysis. Trough serum concentrations tended to increase through Week 12 and tended to plateau after that time.

HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough and Peak Serum Concentrations for Weeks 1-8

Some HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentration data were available for 212 of the original 213 patients. Trough and peak serum concentration data reflecting the first HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody infusion were available for 195 of the 212 patients. For the seventh infusion, trough serum concentration data were available for 137/212 patients and peak serum concentration data were available for 114/212 patients. Table 2 presents a summary of statistics from trough and peak serum concentrations for the first 8 weeks of treatment. Peak samples were drawn shortly after the end of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody administration; trough samples were drawn prior to the subsequent dose (i.e., 1 week later). Serum concentrations of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody were determined as disclosed herein.

TABLE 2

HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough and Peak Serum Concentrations for the First 8 Weeks of Treatment (μg/ml)

	Dose Number	n	Mean	SD	Minimun	Maximum
Peak	1	195	100.3	35.2	30.7	274.6
Trough		195	25.0	12.7	0.16	60.7
Peak	2	190	74.3	31.3	20.8	307.9
Trough		167	30.4	16.0	0.2	74.4
Peak	3	167	75.3	26.8	16.1	194.8
Trough		179	33.7	17.9	0.2	98.2
Peak	4	175	80.2	26.9	22.2	167
Trough		132	38.6	20.1	0.2	89.4
Peak	5	128	85.9	29.2	27.8	185.8
Trough		141	42.1	24.8	0.2	148.7
Peak	6	137	87.2	32.2	28.9	218.1
Trough		115	43.2	24.0	0.2	109.9
Peak	7	114	89.7	32.5	16.3	187.8
Trough		137	48.8	24.9	0.2	105.2
Peak	8	133	95.6	35.9	11.4	295.6

The data in Table 2 suggest that there was an increase in trough serum concentration over time. Of the many patients studied, there were 18 patients for whom the trough concentrations did not exceed 20 μg/ml from Week 2 through Week 8. A HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody trough serum concentration of 20 μg/ml was nominally targeted for these studies based on prior pharmacologic studies in animals and exploratory analyses in clinical trials.

Patient response status was evaluated relative to serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. For this purpose, mean serum concentration (an average of troughs and peaks) was calculated for various times and patient response status (where the patient response status was determined by an independent Response Evaluation Committee). The increase in serum concentration between Weeks 2 and 8 appeared to be greater in responders than in nonresponders, suggesting that there is a relationship between response status and HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentration. A statistical analysis (analysis of variance) of trough serum concentration values at Week 2 and an average of Weeks 7 and 8 in relation to response status indicated a highly significant relationship between response status and average trough of Weeks 7 and 8 ($p<0.001$). The results indicated that there was a significant difference between the trough serum concentration (average troughs of Weeks 7 and 8) in the responders and nonresponders: trough concentrations were 60±20 μg/ml in the responders versus 44±25 μg/ml in the nonresponders (mean±SD). HER2 overexpression level and type of metastatic sites were associated with significant differences in trough serum concentrations. At Week 2, patients with 2+ HER2 overexpression had significantly higher trough serum concentrations (n=40, mean=28.8 μg/ml, SD=10.4) compared with patients with 3+ HER2 overexpression (n=155, mean=24.1 μg/ml, SD=13.1). This difference in the average trough serum concentrations for Weeks 7 and 8 was no longer statistically significant. Further, at Week 2, patients with superficial disease had significantly higher trough serum concentrations (n=12, mean 34.1 μg/ml, SD=12.0) compared with patients with visceral disease (n=183, mean=24.4 μg/ml, SD=12.6). This difference in the average trough serum concentrations for Weeks 7 and 8 was significant. These data indicate that the rise in trough serum concentrations between Weeks 2 and 7/8 occurs for human patients with various disease profiles.

In a subsequent, similarly designed study, human breast cancer patients were treated with a loading dose of 8 mg/kg followed by maintenance doses of4 mg/kg weekly. The results of this preliminary human study indicated that an 8 mg/kg load:4 mg/kg weekly maintenance regimen was efficacious in reducing tumor volume in the patients.

The data disclosed in this Example indicate that front loading of antibody, such that a target serum concentration is reached more quickly, may be associated with improved outcomes.

Example 3

I.V. Bolus Delivery and Subcutaneous Infusion of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Effectively Decrease Tumor Volume in the Mouse

The efficacy of infusion or bolus delivery of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, see Example 1 for preparation), either by intravenous injection or subcutaneous injection, was examined. The purpose of the study was to ask whether subcutaneous delivery was feasible and whether the convenient subcutaneous bolus delivery was useful in treating metastatic breast cancer in animals inoculated with a cell line that overexpresses the HER2 gene. The results, detailed below, show that i.v. and s.c. infusion and bolus delivery are feasible treatment methodologies.

A study in a nude mouse xenograft model, which incorporates a human breast cancer cell line that naturally overexpresses the HER2 gene (BT-474M1, derived from BT-474 cells, ATCC Accession number HTB-20), comparing tumor volume as a function of i.v. bolus versus s.c. infusion was performed as follows. In the first study athymic nude nu nu

7-9 week old female mice were obtained from Taconic Inc (Germantown, N.Y.). To initiate tumor development, each mouse was inoculated subcutaneously with 3×10^6 BT474M1 cells suspended in Matrigel™. When tumor nodules reached a volume of approximately 100 mm^3, animals were randomized to 4 treatment groups. The groups were treated according to Table 3.

TABLE 3

Animal Groups and Doses for Comparison of I.V. Bolus and S.C. Infusion

Group, Dose, Antibody	Target Serum Conc. µg/ml	Route of Administration	Loading Dose (mg/kg)	Maintenance Dose
1 - Control, rhuMAb E25	20	IV LD and SC infusion	2.20	0.250 mg/ml (infusate)
2 - Low Dose SC rhuMAb HER2	1	IV LD and SC infusion	0.313	0.050 mg/ml (infusate)
3 - High Dose SC rhuMAb HER2	20	IV LD and SC infusion	6.25	1.00 mg/ml (infusate)
4 - IV Multi-Dose rhuMAb HER2	20 (trough)	IV LD and MD	4.00	2 mg/kg/ week (IV bolus)

Serum Conc. = concentration in serum. LD = loading dose. MD = maintenance dose.
Infusate concentration was calculated to achieve targeted serum concentration using Alzet ® osmotic minipumps (Alza Corp., Palo Alto, CA).

Animals were exposed to estrogen by subcutaneous sustained release estrogen pellet 9 days before the start of dosing to promote growth of grafted tumor cells. The animals were inoculated with the BT474M 1 cells 8 days before the beginning of treatment and tumors were allowed to grow. The animals were then treated with nonrelevant antibody E25 (non-specific for HER2 receptor, but a member of the monoclonal IgG class) or test antibody HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 anitbody as indicated in Table 3. The dosage levels were selected to achieve target serum concentrations of HERCEPTIN®, either 1 µg/ml or 20 µg/ml, by subcutaneous pump infusion or by i.v. bolus delivery. The study groups were treated until day 35. The serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was measured weekly (just prior to dosing for Group 4) using 3 mice/group/time point. The anti-ErbB2 antibody concentration was determined according to the method disclosed herein involving standard techniques. Tumor volumes were measured two days before dosing began and twice per week from day 6 to day 35 in the study for which data is tabulated below. Tumors were measured in three dimensions and volumes were expressed in mm^3. Efficacy was determined by a statistical comparison (ANOVA) of tumor volumes of test animals relative to untreated control animals.

As shown in Table 4, below, treatment of the BT474M 1 tumor-bearing mice with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by the indicated dosage methods significantly inhibited the growth of the tumors. All HERCEPTIN®-treated groups showed similar inhibition of tumor growth relative to the control group. No dose-response was observed.

TABLE 4

Comparison of S.C. Infusion and I.V. Bolus Delivery

Treatment Group	Tumor Volume (mm^3), Day 35, (n = 14)	Tumor Volume (area under curve) Day 6-Day 35 (n = 13)	HERCEPTIN ® Serum Conc. (µg/ml), Day 27, (n = 3)
control s.c. infusion	764 ± 700	5650 ± 4700	4.16 ± 1.94

TABLE 4-continued

Comparison of S.C. Infusion and I.V. Bolus Delivery

Treatment Group	Tumor Volume (mm^3), Day 35, (n = 14)	Tumor Volume (area under curve) Day 6-Day 35 (n = 13)	HERCEPTIN ® Serum Conc. (µg/ml), Day 27, (n = 3)
s.c. infusion (low dose)	80.6 ± 158	1610 ± 1250	2.11 ± 1.74
s.c. infusion (high dose)	31 ± 75.6	1440 ± 1140	22.1 ± 5.43
i.v. bolus dose*	49.7 ± 95.7	2150 ± 1480	21.7 ± 17.1**

s.c. = subcutaneous delivery; i.v. = intravenous delivery.
*4.0 mg/kg Loading Dose and 2.0 mg/kg/week Maintenance Dose.
**at predose (trough serum concentration immediately prior to a maintenance dose)

The results tabulated above indicate that maintenance of a serum concentration of approximately 2 µg/ml was as effective as a concentration of 20 µg/ml in this study. The results indicated that dosing by subcutaneous infusion was as effective as intravenous bolus dosing and achieved similar trough serum concentrations. The results also indicate that the dose levels studied are at the top of the dose-response curve in this model and that subcutaneous dosing is effective in treating breast cancer tumors. Thus, subcutaneous administration of maintenance doses is feasible as part of a HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment regimen.

Example 4

I.V. Bolus and Subcutaneous Bolus Deliveries of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Effectively Decrease Tumor Volume in the Mouse

Subcutaneous bolus delivery is convenient and cost-effective for the patient and health care professionals. The results of the study disclosed in this example indicate that subcutaneous bolus delivery was as effective as intravenous bolus delivery in reducing breast cell tumor size in a mouse.

This study was set up as disclosed herein in Example 3 for the comparison of intravenous bolus and subcutaneous infusion delivery. A sustained release estrogen implant was inserted subcutaneously one day before tumor cell innoculation as described in Example 3. Six days after tumor cell innoculation, the initial tumor measurement was performed. Seven days after tumor cell innoculation, the first dose of control antibody or HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was delivered. The animal groups, type of delivery, loading dose and maintenance doses are provided in Table 4. Animals were dosed once weekly for 4 weeks.

TABLE 5

Animal Groups and Doses for Comparison of I.V. Bolus and S.C. Bolus Delivery

Group	Route of Administration	Loading Dose (mg/kg)	Maintenance Dose (mg/kg/week)	n
1 - Control rhuMAb E25	IV	8	4	10
2 - rhuMAb HER2	IV	2	1	10
3 - rhuMAb HER2	IV	4	2	10
4 - rhuMAb HER2	IV	8	4	10
5 - rhuMAb HER2	SC	4	2	10

IV = intraveneous; SC = subcutaneous; n = number of animals per group.

The mice were treated according to the information in Table 4 and using the techniques disclosed in Example 3. The serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was measured weekly before each weekly i.v. maintenance dose according to the procedure described herein and using standard techniques. The control E25 antibody serum concentration was determined according to standard immunoassay techniques. Table 6 shows the increase in HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentrations with time.

TABLE 6

IV versus SC Bolus Delivery: Serum HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration

	Serum Concentration, μg/ml			
Treatment Group (delivery, MD)	Day 0 Mean (SD)	Day 7 Mean (SD)	Day 14 Mean (SD)	Day 21 Mean (SD)
1 - Control rhu MAb E25	0	25.9	34.6	38.5
(IV, 4 mg/kg)	(0)	(8.29)	(11.2)	(14.4)
2 - rhu MAb HER2	0	4.96	8.55	8.05
(IV, 1 mg/kg)	(0)	(3.79)	(5.83)	(4.67)
3 - rhu MAb HER2	0	13.4	18.9	22.6
(IV, 2 mg/kg)	(0)	(9.24)	(12.0)	(9.21)
4 - rhu MAb HER2	0	29.6	37.7	46.2
(IV, 4 mg/kg)	(0)	(13.5)	(14.4)	(13.8)
5 - rhu MAb HER2	0	12.5	16.9	17.6
(SC, 2 mg/kg)	(0)	(7.33)	(10.2)	(10.7)

n = 10 for time points Days 0, 7 and 14. N = 9 for Day 21.

Table 7 shows the relative efficacy of intravenous bolus delivery and subcutaneous bolus delivery for Groups 1-5 having achieved the serum antibody concentrations presented in Table 6. For this study, efficacy was measured as a decrease in tumor volume. Tumor volume was measured twice weekly.

TABLE 7

Efficacy of HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Measured as a Change in Tumor Volume Comparing Intravenous Bolus and Subcutaneous Bolus Delivery, Mean (SD)

Treatment Group (Delivery, MD)	Tumor Vol. Day 6, mm^3	Tumor Vol. Day 28, mm^3	Tumor Vol. Day 31, mm^3	Day 6-Day 31* Area Under Curve Tumor Vol., mm^3	Tumor Growth Rate on Log (TM + 1)
1-IV Control	321	1530	1630	13600	0.0660
	(190)	(1040)	(1170)	(7230)	(0.0200)
2-IV Herceptin	297	175	151	4690	−0.0505
1 mg/kg	(130)	(215)	(188)	(1400)	(0.142)
3-IV Herceptin	269	75.7	73.6	3510	−0.0608
2 mg/kg	(129)	(92.4)	(84.5)	(1220)	(0.110)
4-IV Herceptin	272	25.3	25.8	2880	−0.0810
4 mg/kg	(117)	(75.9)	(72.9)	(1230)	(0.0859)
5-SC Herceptin	268	76.2	90.4	3230	−0.0304
2 mg/kg	(117)	(98.8)	(105)	(1440)	(0.104)

N = 10 for each data point. TM = tumor measurement. IV = intravenous. SC = subcutaneous. MD = maintenance dose. Tumor Vol. = tumor volume, mm^3.
*Day 17 excluded due to measurement error.
Tumor growth rate calculated on Day 21-Day 31 Log (TM + 1). Area under the curve is the area beneath a plot of tumor volume versus time.

FIGS. **4**A and **4**B are graphical plots of changes in tumor volume over time, some of which data is found in Table 7. FIG. **4**A is a linear plot of tumor volume versus time. FIG. **4**B is a semilogarithmic plot of the same data, allowing the test points be viewed more clearly. The data in Table 7 and FIGS. **4**A and **4**B indicate that, although a dose-related response was not observed between HERCEPTIN-treated groups, dosing by subcutaneous bolus was as effective as intravenous bolus dosing and achieved similar trough serum concentrations.

Example 5

Regimens for Intravenous and Subcutaneous Delivery of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

According to the invention, methods of anti-ErbB2 antibody (e.g., HERCEPTIN®) delivery comprise greater front loading of the drug to achieve a target serum concentration in approximately 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including one day or less. According to the invention, this initial dosing is followed by dosing that maintains the target serum concentration by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amount. An advantage of the methods of the invention is that the maintenance dosing may be less frequent and/or delivered by subcutaneous injection, making the treatment regimens of the invention convenient and cost-effective for the patient and medical professionals administering the antibody. In addition, a subcutaneous maintenance dose regimen may be interrupted by intravenous dosing (such as infusion) when the patient's chemotherapy requires delivery of other drugs by intravenous injection.

To test the following dosage regimens, human subjects are selected according to the criteria disclosed in Example 1, above. The number of initial doses is one or more doses sufficient to achieve an efficacious target serum concentration in approximately 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. The number of maintenance doses may be one or more doses sufficient to achieve suppression of disease symptoms, such as a decrease in tumor volume. The maintenance doses are equal to or smaller than the initial dose or doses, consistent with an object of the invention of administering HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by regimens providing greater front loading. The specific drug delivery regimens disclosed herein are representative of the invention and are not meant to be limiting.

In one trial, an initial dose of 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered to human patients by intravenous or subcutaneous injection. Initial doses (loading doses) are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection or preferably subcutaneous bolus injection. Preferably a target trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody of approximately 10-20 μg/ml is achieved (averaged for all patients in the treatment group) and maintained by subsequent doses of anti-ErbB2 antibody that are equal to or smaller than the initial dose. In one method, a target trough serum concentration is achieved and maintained by once-per-week deliveries of 2 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by intravenous or subcutaneous injection for at least eight weeks. Alternatively, for this or any dosage regimen disclosed herein, subcutaneous continuous infusion by subcutaneous pump is used to delivery subsequent maintenance doses.

In another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous injection (infusion or bolus injection) or by subcutaneous bolus injection. This is followed by intravenous bolus injections, intravenous infusion, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection of 6 mg/kg at 3-week intervals to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10-20 μg/ml, averaged for an entire treatment group.

In another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 12 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous injection (infusion or bolus injection) or by subcutaneous bolus injection. This is followed by intravenous bolus injections, intravenous infusion, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection of 6 mg/kg at 3-week intervals to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10-20 μg/ml.

In yet another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or preferably by subcutaneous bolus injection or infusion. This is followed by administration of 8 mg/kg per week or 8 mg/kg per 2-3 weeks to maintain a trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody of approximately 10-20 μg/ml. Maintenance doses are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or preferably by subcutaneous infusion or bolus injection.

In another method, the front loading initial dose is a series of intravenous or subcutaneous injections, for example, one on each of days 1, 2, and 3 of at least 1 mg/kg for each injection (where the amount of anti-ErbB2 antibody delivered by the sum of initial injections is more than 4 mg/kg), followed by maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once each 3 week interval to maintain a target trough serum concentration (for example, approximately 10-20 μg/ml) of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. The maintenance doses are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection or by subcutaneous infusion or subcutaneous bolus injection.

In yet another method, the front loading is by intravenous infusion of at least 1 mg/kg, preferably 4 mg/kg on each of five consecutive days, followed by repeats of this cycle a sufficient number of times to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. Following the initial dose or doses, subsequent doses may be delivered by subcutaneous infusion or bolus injection if tolerated by the patient. Such subcutaneous delivery is convenient and cost-effective for the patient and administering health care professionals.

In still another method, HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered initially as at least 2 intravenous infusions per week for three weeks, followed by repeats of this cycle to maintain an efficacious trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. The dose is at least 4 mg/kg of anti-ErbB2 antibody, preferably at least 5 mg/kg. The maintenance drug deliveries may be intravenous or subcutaneous.

Where the animal or patient tolerates the antibody during and after an initial dose, delivery of subsequent doses may be subcutaneous, thereby providing greater convenience and cost-effectiveness for the patient and health care professionals.

In animal studies, an initial dose of more than 4 mg/kg, preferably more than 5 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous injection, is followed by subcutaneous bolus injections of 2 mg/kg twice per week (separated by 3 days) to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10-20 μg/ml. In addition, where the animal or patient is known to tolerate the antibody, an initial dose of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is optionally and preferably deliverable by subcutaneous bolus injection followed by subcutaneous maintenance injections.

While target serum concentrations are disclosed herein for the purpose of comparing animal studies and human trials, target serum concentrations in clinical uses may differ. The disclosure provided herein guides the user in selecting a front loading drug delivery regimen that provides an efficacious target trough serum concentration.

The methods of the invention disclosed herein optionally include the delivery of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent (other than an anthrocycline derivative) to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. The chemotherapeutic agent may be delivered with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody or separately and according to a different dosing schedule. For example, subcutaneous delivery of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody with TAXOL® is included in the invention. In addition, intravenous or subcutaneous injection of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by intravenous or subcutaneous injection of 6 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody every 3 weeks is administered in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent, such as a taxoid (e.g. paclitaxel 175 mg/m2 every 3 weeks) or an anthracycline derivative (e.g. doxorubicin 60 mg/m2 or epirubicin 75 mg/m2 every 3 weeks). Optionally, where an anthracycline derivative is administered, a cardioprotectant (e.g. 600 mg/m2 cyclophosphamide every 3 weeks) is also administered. In another combination therapy, anti-ErbB2 antibody is administered in a loading dose of more than 4 mg/kg, preferably more than 5 mg/kg, and more preferably at least 8 mg/kg. The loading dose is followed by maintenance doses of at least 2 mg/kg weekly, preferably 6 mg/kg every 3 weeks. The combination therapy includes administration of a taxoid during treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibody. According to one embodiment of the invention, the taxoid is paclitaxel and is administered at a dose of 70-100 mg/m^2/week. According to another embodiment of the invention, the taxoid is docetaxel and is administered at a dose of 30-70 mg/m^2/week.

Example 6

HERCEPTIN® Administered Intravenously Every Three Weeks in Combination with Paclitaxel

Currently, the recommended dose of HERCEPTIN® is 2 mg/kg once weekly. Patients will be administered HERCEPTIN® every three weeks instead of weekly, along with

paclitaxel (175 mg/m^2 every three weeks). Simulation of the proposed treatment regimen suggests that the trough serum concentrations will be 17 mcg/ml, in the range (10-20 mcg/ml) of the targeted trough serum concentrations from previous HERCEPTIN® IV clinical trials. After the first 12 patients the PK parameters will be assessed, if exposure is felt inadequate, then the dose will be increased to 8 mg/kg every three weeks for the remaining 12 patients.

Inclusion Criteria

1) Females24 18 years of age
2) Histologically confirmed ErbB2 over-expressing metastatic breast cancer
3) Patients who have been newly diagnosed with metastatic disease
4) Have a Karnofsky performance status of 24 70%
5) Give written informed consent prior to any study specific screening procedures with the understanding that the patient has the right to withdraw from the study at any time, without prejudice.

Exclusion Criteria

1) Pregnant or lactating women
2) Women of childbearing potential unless (1) surgically sterile or (2) using adequate measures of contraception such as oral contraceptive, intra-uterine device or barrier method of contraception in conjunction with spermicidal jelly.
3) Clinical or radiologic evidence of CNS metastases.
4) History of any significant cardiac disease
5) LVEF≦50%
6) No prior taxane therapy in any treatment setting.
7) Any of the following abnormal baseline hematologic values:
   Hb less than 9 g/dl
   WBC less than 3.0×10^9/l
   Granulocytes less than 1.5×10^9/l
   Platelets less than 100×10^9/l
8) Any of the following abnormal baseline liver function tests:
   Serum bilirubin greater than 1.5×ULN (upper normal limit)
   ALT and/or AST greater than 2.5×ULN (greater than 4.0×ULN if liver or bone metastasis)
   Alkaline phosphatase greater than 2.5×ULN (greater than 4.0×ULN if liver or bone metastasis)
9) The following abnormal baseline renal function tests:
   serum creatinine greater than 1.5×ULN
10) History of other serious medical conditions that would preclude patient participation in an investigational study.

HERCEPTIN® Loading dose and schedule: 8 mg/kg for first dose. Maintenance dose and schedule: 6 mg/kg every 3 weeks.

Paclitaxel—175 mg/m^2 IV every 3 weeks×6 cycles as a 3-hour infusion.

NOTE: On the first cycle of treatment, paclitaxel will be dosed 8 hours prior to HERCEPTIN® to determine the PK of paclitaxel alone. HERCEPTIN® will be administered 8 hours post-paclitaxel for the 1st cycle only. In subsequent treatment cycles, HERCEPTIN® will be administered prior to paclitaxel.

The total duration of this study is 18 weeks. Study subjects will receive up to 6 total HERCEPTIN® doses. After the last subject has received the last cycle of paclitaxel, data collection for safety and pharmacokinetic analysis will stop, and the study will close to protocol specified treatment. Study subjects may continue to receive the HERCEPTIN® +/− paclitaxel at the discretion of the investigator.

It is believed that the above treatment regimen will be effective in treating metastatic breast cancer, despite the infrequency with which HERCEPTIN® is administered to the patient.

While the particular aspects and embodiments of the invention as herein shown and disclosed in detail is fully capable of obtaining the objects and providing the advantages herein before stated, it is to be understood that it is merely illustrative of some of the presently preferred embodiments of the invention and that no limitations are intended to the details of methods and articles of manufacture shown other than as described in the appended claims. The disclosures of all citations in the specification are expressly incorporated herein by reference.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 15

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 166
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

```
Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu
  1               5                  10                  15

Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val
                20                  25                  30

Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser
                35                  40                  45

Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu
                50                  55                  60
```

-continued

```
Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu Gln Arg Leu Arg
                 65                  70                  75

Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr Ala Leu Ala
                 80                  85                  90

Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro Val Thr
                 95                 100                 105

Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser Leu
                110                 115                 120

Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln
                125                 130                 135

Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys
                140                 145                 150

Asn Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg
                155                 160                 165

Ala


<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 32
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro
  1               5                  10                  15

Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln
                 20                  25                  30

Gly Cys


<210> SEQ ID NO 3
<211> LENGTH: 11
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Pro Lys Asn Ser Ser Met Ile Ser Asn Thr Pro
  1               5                  10


<210> SEQ ID NO 4
<211> LENGTH: 7
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

His Gln Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln
  1               5


<210> SEQ ID NO 5
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

His Gln Asn Leu Ser Asp Gly Lys
  1               5
```

-continued

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

His Gln Asn Ile Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

Val Ile Ser Ser His Leu Gly Gln
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 59
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

Val Glu Glu Cys Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val
1 5 10 15

Asn Ala Arg His Cys Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln
20 25 30

Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val
35 40 45

Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg
50 55

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 65
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr
1 5 10 15

Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr
20 25 30

Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys
35 40 45

Pro Asp Leu Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu
50 55 60

Gly Ala Cys Gln Pro
65

<210> SEQ ID NO 10
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Mus Musculus

-continued

<400> SEQUENCE: 10

Asp Thr Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Ile Met Ser Thr Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
20 25 30

Ile Gly Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Arg Pro Gly Gln Ser Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp
50 55 60

Arg Phe Thr Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys

<210> SEQ ID NO 11
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 11

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Thr Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr
20 25 30

Asp Tyr Thr Met Asp Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr
50 55 60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Lys Gly Lys Ala Ser Leu Thr Val Asp Arg Ser
65 70 75

Ser Arg Ile Val Tyr Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Phe Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Thr Leu Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115

<210> SEQ ID NO 12
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: humanized VL sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 12

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
20 25 30

Ile Gly Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

-continued

```
Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
                65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                80                  85                  90

Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
                95                 100                 105

Ile Lys
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 13
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: humanized VH sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 13

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr
                20                  25                  30

Asp Tyr Thr Met Asp Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
                35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr
                50                  55                  60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Leu Ser Val Asp Arg Ser
                65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr
                95                 100                 105

Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
               110                 115
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 14
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: VL consensus sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 14

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser
                20                  25                  30

Asn Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
                35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
                50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
                65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                80                  85                  90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
                95                 100                 105

Ile Lys
```

-continued

<210> SEQ ID NO 15
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: VH consensus sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 15

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
  1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
                 20                  25                  30

Ser Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
                 35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr
                 50                  55                  60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser
                 65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                 80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu
                 95                 100                 105

Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
                110                 115
```

The invention claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of a human patient diagnosed with cancer characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to the human patient, the method comprising:

administering to the patient an initial dose of at least approximately 5 mg/kg of the anti-ErbB2 antibody; and

administering to the patient a plurality of subsequent doses of the antibody in an amount that is approximately the same or less than the initial dose, wherein the subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least two weeks; and

further comprising administering an effective amount of a chemotherapeutic agent to the patient.

2. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is at least approximately 6 mg/kg.

3. The method of claim **2**, wherein the initial dose is at least approximately 8 mg/kg.

4. The method of claim **3**, wherein the initial dose is at least approximately 12 mg/kg.

5. The method of claim **1**, wherein the subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least three weeks.

6. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is administered by intravenous injection, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is administered by subcutaneous injection.

7. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is administered by intravenous injection, wherein at least two subsequent doses are administered, and wherein each subsequent dose is administered by a method selected from the group consisting of intravenous injection and subcutaneous injection.

8. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose and at least one subsequent dose are administered by subcutaneous injection.

9. The method of claim **1**, wherein the initial dose is selected from the group consisting of approximately 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg, wherein the plurality of subsequent doses are at least approximately 2 mg/kg.

10. The method of claim **9**, wherein the plurality of subsequent doses are separated in time from each other by at least three weeks.

11. The method of claim **10**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 8 mg/kg, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is approximately 6 mg/kg.

12. The method of claim **10**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 12 mg/kg, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is approximately 6 mg/kg.

13. The method of claim **9**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 8 mg/kg, and wherein at least one subsequent dose is approximately 8 mg/kg.

14. The method of claim **9**, wherein the initial dose is approximately 8 mg/kg, wherein at least one subsequent dose is 8 mg/kg, and wherein administration of the initial dose and subsequent doses are separated in time by at least 2 weeks.

15. The method of claim **14**, wherein the initial dose and subsequent doses are separated in time by at least 3 weeks.

16. The method of claim **1**, wherein said cancer is selected from the group consisting of breast cancer, leukemia, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

17. The method of claim **16**, wherein said cancer is breast cancer.

18. The method of claim **17**, wherein said cancer is metastatic breast carcinoma.

19. The method of claim **1**, wherein said antibody binds to the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor.

20. The method of claim **19**, wherein said antibody binds to epitope 4D5 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence.

21. The method of claim **20**, wherein said antibody is a humanized 4D5 anti-ErbB2 antibody.

22. The method of claim **1**, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent is a taxoid.

23. The method of claim **22**, wherein said taxoid is paclitaxel or docetaxel.

24. The method of claim **1**, wherein the effective amount of the anti-ErbB2 antibody and the effective amount of the chemotherapeutic agent as a combination is lower than the sum of the effective amounts of said anti-ErbB2 antibody and said chemotherapeutic agent, when administered individually, as single agents.

25. The method of claim **1**, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline.

26. The method of claim **25**, wherein the anthracycline is doxorubicin or epirubicin.

27. The method of claim **25**, wherein the method further comprises administration of a cardioprotectant.

28. The method of claim **1**, wherein efficacy is measured by determining the time to disease progression or the response rate.

29. A method for the treatment of a human patient diagnosed with cancer characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to the human patient, the method comprising: administering to the patient an initial dose of the antibody, wherein the initial dose is a plurality of doses, wherein each of the plurality of initial doses is at least approximately 1 mg/kg and is administered on at least 3 consecutive days, and administering to the patient at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein at least one subsequent dose is at least approximately 6 mg/kg, and wherein administration of the last initial dose and the first subsequent and additional subsequent doses are separated in time by at least 3 weeks, and further comprising administering an effective amount of a chemotherapeutic agent to the patient.

30. A method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB2 antibody followed by two or more subsequent doses of the antibody, wherein the subsequent doses are separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks, and further comprising administering an effective amount of a chemotherapeutic agent to the patient.

31. The method of claim **30**, wherein the first dose and a first subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about three weeks.

32. The method of claim **30**, wherein the first dose and subsequent doses are each from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg.

33. The method of claim **32**, wherein the first dose and subsequent doses are each from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

34. The method of claim **33**, wherein the first dose and subsequent doses are each from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

35. The method of claim **30**, wherein from about two to about ten subsequent doses of the antibody are administered to the patient.

36. The method of claim **30**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are separated from each other in time by at least about three weeks.

37. The method of claim **30**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are each from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg.

38. The method of claim **30**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are each from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

39. The method of claim **30**, wherein the two or more subsequent doses are each from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg.

40. The method of claim **30**, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent is a taxoid.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT E

US010160811B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Baughman et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 10,160,811 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: *Dec. 25, 2018**

(54) **TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES**

(71) Applicant: **GENENTECH, INC.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(72) Inventors: **Sharon A. Baughman**, Ventura, CA (US); **Steven Shak**, Burlingame, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 843 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **14/073,659**

(22) Filed: **Nov. 6, 2013**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2014/0079692 A1 Mar. 20, 2014

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Continuation of application No. 13/415,271, filed on Mar. 8, 2012, now abandoned, which is a continuation of application No. 13/167,599, filed on Jun. 23, 2011, now abandoned, which is a continuation of application No. 11/443,943, filed on May 31, 2006, now abandoned, which is a division of application No. 10/600,152, filed on Jun. 20, 2003, now Pat. No. 7,371,379, which is a division of application No. 09/648,067, filed on Aug. 25, 2000, now Pat. No. 6,627,196.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/213,822, filed on Jun. 23, 2000, provisional application No. 60/151,018, filed on Aug. 27, 1999.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

C07K 16/30	(2006.01)
A61K 39/395	(2006.01)
C07K 16/32	(2006.01)
A61K 45/06	(2006.01)
A61K 31/337	(2006.01)
A61K 39/00	(2006.01)
A61K 38/00	(2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**

CPC ***C07K 16/30*** (2013.01); ***A61K 31/337*** (2013.01); ***A61K 39/395*** (2013.01); ***A61K 39/39558*** (2013.01); ***A61K 45/06*** (2013.01); ***C07K 16/32*** (2013.01); *A61K 38/00* (2013.01); *A61K 2039/505* (2013.01); *A61K 2039/54* (2013.01); *A61K 2039/545* (2013.01)

(58) **Field of Classification Search**

CPC A61K 47/48384

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,676,980	A	6/1987	Segal et al.
4,753,894	A	6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,816,567	A	3/1989	Cabilly et al.
4,935,341	A	6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A	7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A	11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A	12/1990	Senter et al.
5,169,774	A	12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A	2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A	2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A	10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A	11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A	3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A	11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A	1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,578,482	A	11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,604,107	A	2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A	6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,663,144	A	9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,171	A	10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A	1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A	3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A	3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A	3/1998	Bissery
5,747,261	A	5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A	7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A	7/1998	Arakawa et al.
5,801,005	A	9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,821,337	A	10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A	10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A	11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A	11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A	12/1998	Cheever et al.
5,856,110	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A	2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A	3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A	3/1999	Huston et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0003089 A1	7/1979
EP	0 599 274 A1	6/1994

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Krop, I.E., et al. J. Clin. Oncol., 28: 2698-2704, 2010.*

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Ilia I Ouspenski

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Diane L. Marschang; Ginger R. Dreger

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention concerns dosages for treatment of human cancer patients with an anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR) antibody.

12 Claims, 5 Drawing Sheets

Specification includes a Sequence Listing.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,908,835	A	6/1999	Bissery	
5,910,486	A	6/1999	Curiel et al.	
5,922,845	A	7/1999	Deo et al.	
5,939,531	A	8/1999	Wels et al.	
5,949,245	A	9/1999	Liu	
5,968,511	A	10/1999	Akita et al.	
5,977,322	A	11/1999	Marks et al.	
5,985,553	A	11/1999	King et al.	
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel et al.	
6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter et al.	
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring et al.	
6,096,873	A	8/2000	Schaefer et al.	
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver et al.	
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,267,958	B1	7/2001	Andya et al.	
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel et al.	
6,365,345	B1	4/2002	Biysch et al.	
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman et al.	
6,949,245	B1	9/2005	Sliwkowski	
7,371,379	B2	5/2008	Baughman et al.	
2002/0132239	A1*	9/2002	Lovell-Badge	C12N 5/0623 435/5
2003/0086924	A1	5/2003	Sliwkowski	
2003/0170243	A1*	9/2003	Stern	C07K 16/40 424/146.1
2004/0013667	A1	1/2004	Kelsey et al.	
2004/0037824	A1	2/2004	Baughman et al.	
2005/0208043	A1	9/2005	Adams et al.	
2005/0238640	A1	10/2005	Sliwkowski	
2006/0034842	A1	2/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0073143	A1	4/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0193854	A1	8/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0198843	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.	
2006/0210561	A1	9/2006	Baughman et al.	
2006/0216285	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.	
2010/0183645	A1*	7/2010	Barbeito	C07K 14/475 424/185.1

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 612 812	B1	9/1994
EP	0 711 565		8/1998
EP	1 210 115	B1	8/2009
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	95006982	B2	1/1995
JP	7-59588		3/1995
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105		5/1999
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 90/14357		11/1990
WO	WO 91/00360		1/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 92/20373		11/1992
WO	WO 92/20798		11/1992
WO	WO 93/12220		6/1993
WO	WO 93/21232		10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319		10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136		1/1994
WO	WO 94/04690		3/1994
WO	WO 94/22478		10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 1995/017507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/27011		9/1996
WO	WO 97/04801		2/1997
WO	WO 97/20858		6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/35885		10/1997
WO	WO 97/38731		10/1997
WO	WO 98/02541		1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797		4/1998
WO	WO 98/45479		10/1998
WO	WO 99/31140		6/1999
WO	WO 99/48527		9/1999
WO	WO 00/61185	A1	10/2000
WO	WO 01/00245	A2	1/2001

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Herceptin® (Trastuzumab), Sep. 1998, © 1998 Genentech, Inc.*

Smith, D.A., et al, Pharmacokinetics and Metabolism in Drug Design, Third Edition. Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA, 2012; Chapter 2, Pharmacokinetics, pp. 19-40.*

Chapman et al. Nature Biotechnology (1999) 17: 780-783.*

Hudson et al. Current Opinion in Immunology (1999) 11: 548-557.*

Hyden et al. Current Opinion in Immunology (1997) 9: 201-212.*

Velders et al. British Journal of Cancer (1998) 78(4): 478-483.*

Mourad et al. Transplantation (1998) 65(5): 632-641.*

Wright et al. Trends Biotechnol. (1997) 15(1): 26-32.*

FDA Approved Label for Herceptin® (1998), 2 pages.*

Pegram, et al. Phase II study of receptor-enhanced chemosensitivity using recombinant humanized anti-p185HER2/neu monoclonal antibody plus cisplatin in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer refractory to chemotherapy treatment. J. Clin. Oncol. (1998) 16: 2659-2671.*

Baselga et al. Phase II study of weekly intravenous recombinant humanized anti-p185HER2 monoclonal antibody in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer. J. Clin. Oncol. (1996) 14: 737-744.*

Watanabe et al. Pharmacokinetically Guided Dose Escalation Study of Anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody in Patients with HER2/NEU-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer. J. Clin. Oncol. (1998) 17: 182a, Abstract No. 702. 5 pages.*

Merriam-Webster Dictionary (accessed online at "https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/amount" on Jun. 30, 2018. 1 page.*

Slamon et al. Addition of Herceptin® (Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody) to First Line Chemotherapy for HER2 Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer (HER2+/MBC) Markedly Increases Anticancer Activity: A Randomized Multinational Controlled Phase III Trial. J. Clin. Oncol. (1998) 17: 98a, Abstract No. 377. 5 pages.*

Cobleigh et al. Efficacy and Safety of Herceptin® (Humanized anti-H ER2 Antibody) as a Single Agent in 222 Women with HER2 Overexpression Who Relapsed Following Chemotherapy for Metastatic Breast Cancer. Proceedings of ASCO (1998) vol. 17, p. 97a, Abstract No. 276. 1 page.*

Goldenberg M. Trastuzumab, a recombinant DNA-derived humanized monoclonal antibody, a novel agent for the treatment of metastatic breast cancer. Clin Ther. (1999) 21(2): 309-318.*

Cobleigh et al. Multinational Study or the Efficacy and Safety of Humanized Anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody in Women Who Have HER2-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer That Has Progressed After Chemotherapy for Metastatic Disease. J. Clin. Oncol. (1999) 17: 2639-2648.*

Shak S. Overview of the Trastuzumab (Herceptin) Anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody Clinical Program in HER2-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer. Semin. Oncol. (1999) 26(suppl. 12): 71-77.*

Vogel et al. Efficacy and Safety of HerceptinTM (Trastuzumab, Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody) as a Single Agent in First-Line Treatment of HER2 Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer (HER2+/MBC). Breast Cancer Research and Treatment (1998) vol. 50(3), p. 232, Abstract No. 23 (4 pages).*

Watanabe et al. Phase I clinical trial results of anti-H ER2 monoclonal antibody (MKC-454) to HER2/neu overexpressing metastatic breast cancer. 6th Annual Meeting of the Japanese Breast Cancer Society—Program and Proceedings (1998) English translation, 3 pages.*

Perry and Wiseman "Trastuzumab", BioDrugs 12(2):129-135, Aug. 1, 1999.

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Cobliegh and Frame, "Is Trastuzumab Every Three Weeks Ready for Prime Time?" J. Clinical Oncology, vol. 21, No. 21, 2003, pp. 3900-3901.

Anderson, V. et al., Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research, 39: p. 523, Abstract No. 3561, 1998.

Arteaga at al., "p195c-ernb-2 Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-induced DNA Repair" Cancer Research 54(14): 3758-3765, (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/neu Antigen" Molecular Carcinogenesis 3(6):350-362, (1990).

Bacus et al., "Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER-2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells" Cancer Research 52(9): 2580-2589, (May 1, 1992).

Balsega, et al., "Phase II study of weekly intravenous recombinant humanized anti-p185^{HER2} monoclonal antibody in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastic breast cancer", Journal of Clinical Oncology, vol. 14, No. 3, pp. 737-744, (1996).

Baselga and Mendelsohn, "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies as Anti-Cancer Therapy" Pharmac. Ther. 64: 127-154, (1994).

Baselga at al., "Ongoing phase II study of intravenous recombinant human anti-p185 H monoclonal antibody 4D5 (MAb 405) in patients with stage IV breast cancer overexpressing HER2" Breast Cancer Research and Treatment (Abstract 8) 32(Suppl):30 (1994).

Balsega, et al., "Antitumor activity of paclitaxel in combination with anti-growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies in breast cancer xenografts", Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the American Association for Cancer Research 35 A2262, 380, (1994).

Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" Proceedings of ASCO—13th Annual Meeting (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63 (Mar 1994).

Baselga et al., "Antitumor activity of paclitaxel in combination with anti-growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies in breast cancer xenografts" Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research (Abstract No. 2262), (1994).

Baselga et al., "HER2 Overexpression and Paclitaxel Sensitivity in Breast Cancer: Therapeutic Implications" Oncology (Supplement No. 2) 11(3): 43-48, (1997).

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against Growth Factor Receptors Enhance the Efficacy of Chemotherapeutic Agents." Annals of Oncology (abstract #010) 5 (Suppl. 5), (1994).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185HER^2 Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" J. Clin. Oncol. 14(3): 737-744, (Mar. 1996).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpessing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts", Cancer Research 58: 2825-2831, (Jul. 1998).

Baselga, et al., Breast Cancer Research and Treatment, 32(suppl): p. 30, Abstract #5, (1994).

Baselga, J. et al. Journal of Clinical Oncology, 18(4): 904-914, 2000.

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Efficacy, Safety and Pharmacokinetics of Trastuzumab Monotherapy Administered on a 3-Weekly Schedule", *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, vol. 23, No. 7, (2005) pp. 2162-2171.

Bos, M. et al. Phase I studies of anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) chimeric monoclonal antibody C225 in patients with EGFR overexpressing tumors. ASCO, 1996 ASCO Annual Meeting, Abstract No. 1381.

Carbonell Castellon et al., "Efficacy and safety of 3-weekly Herceptin (H) monotherapy in women with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer (MBC): preliminary data from a phase II study" Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol (Abstract #73 from the 2002 ASCO Meeting) 21:19a (2002).

Carbonell et al., "Efficacy and safety of 3-weekly Herceptin monotherapy in women with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer: preliminary data from a phase II study", (Oral presentation at the 38th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 18-21, 2002 in Orlando, Florida).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an Anti-p185HER^2 Antibody for Human Cancer Therapy" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89(10): 4285-4289, (May 1992).

Chothia and Lesk, "Canonical Structures for the Hypervariable Regions of Immunoglobulins" J. Mol. Biol. 196: 901-917, (1987).

Cobleigh et al., "Multinational study of the efficacy and safety of humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in women who have HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer that has progressed after chemotherapy for metastatic disease" Journal of Clinical Oncology 17(9):2639-2648 (Sep. 1999).

De Santes et al., "Radiolabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" Cancer Research 52: 1916-1923, (1992).

Di Fiore et al., "erbB-2 Is a Potent Oncogene When Overexpressed in NIH/3T3 Cells." Science, 237(4811):178-182, (Jul. 10, 1987).

Drebin at al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" Cell 41(3): 695-706, (1985).

Drebin et al., "Inhibition of Tumor Growth by a Monoclonal Antibody Reactive With an Oncogene-Encoded Tumor Antigen" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 83: 9129-9133, (1986).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encoded Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-Tumor Effects In Vivo" Oncogene p. 185 2: 273-277, (1988).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" Oncogene 2(4): 387-394, (1988).

D'Souza and Taylor-Papadimitriou., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-Cadherin Gene" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 91(15): 7202-7206, (1994).

Eisenhauer, et al., "The Taxoids", Drugs, vol. 55, pp. 5-30, (1998).

Fendly, B.M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" Cancer Research 50: 1550-1558, (1990).

Fleiss, JL Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions, 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13-17, (1981).

Gelmon et al., "Pharmacokinetics and safety of Herceptin when administered every 3 weeks to women with metastatic breast cancer" (Oral presentation at the 37th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 12-15, 2001 in San Francisco, CA).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).

Gibaldi et al., "Pharmacokinetics vol. 15" in *Pharmacokinetics* vol. 15, (1982), pp. 1-5; 15-43, 113-143 and 385-393.

Goldenberg, et al., "Trastuzumab, a recombinant DNA-derived humanized monoclonal anitbody, a novel agent for the treatment of metastatic breast cancer", Clinical Therapeutics, vol. 21, No. 2, pp. 309-318, (1999).

Goldenberg, M., "Trastuzumab, a Recombinant DNA-Derived Humanized Monoclonal Antibody, a Novel Agent for the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" Clinical Therapeutics 21(2):309-318, (1999).

Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector" Cancer Research 54(3):738-741, (1994).

Guy et al., "Expression of the neu Protooncogene in the Mammary Epithelium of Transgenic Mice Induces Metastatic Disease." Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89(22): 10578-10582, (1992).

Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines" Cancer Research 51: 4575-4580, (Sep. 1, 1991).

Harris et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for Herceptin (H) and implications for clinical dosing" (Oral presentation at the 38th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, May 18-21, 2002 in Orlando, Florida).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Harris et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for trastuzumab (Herceptin) and implications for clinical dosing" Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol (Abstract #488) 21: 123a (2002).

Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracellular Domain of the crbB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists" Journal of Biological Chemistry 267(21): 15160-15167, (Jul. 25, 1992).

Hortobagyi, et al., "Recent progress in the clinical development of docetaxel (Taxotere)", Seminars in Oncology, vol. 26, No. 3, supply. 9, pp. 32-36, (1999).

Hudziak et al., "Increased Expression of the Putative Growth Factor Receptor p185HER^2 Causes Transformation and Tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 Cells", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84(20): 7159-7163, (1987).

Hudziak et al., "p185HER4 Monoclonal Antibody Has. Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor. Necrosis Factor" Molecular & Cellular Biology 9(3): 1165-1172, (1989).

Hynes and Stern, "The Biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and Its Role in Cancer" Biochimica et Biophysica Acta 1198(2-3): 165-184, (Dec. 30, 1994).

Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research (abstract #3209) 37: 470 (Mar. 1996).

Jones et al., "Replacing the Complementarily-Determining Regions in a Human Antibody with Those From a Mouse" Nature 321: 522-525, (May 29, 1986).

Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonal Antibodies", Cancer Research 52(10): 2771-2776, (1992).

Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal In Vitro Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" (Abstract #176) 6(3): 59A (1990).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells" Molecular & Cellular Biology 11(2): 979-986, (1991).

Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-p185HER^2 Monoclonal Antibodies" Cancer Immunol Immunother. 37:255-263, (1993).

Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" Cancer Research 56: 1457-1465, (Mar. 15, 1996).

Leyland-Jones et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Herceptin administered with paclitaxel every three weeks" Breast Cancer Res Treat (abstract only) 64:124 (2000).

Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed against the HER-2/neu Gene Product c-erbB-2" Cancer Research 51(19): 5361-5369, (Oct. 1, 1991).

Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" Cancer Research 44(3): 1002-1007, (1984).

Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" Jpn J. Cancer Res. 80: 10-14, (1989).

McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" Cancer 65(1):88-92, (1990).

McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene Product, p185" Oncogene 4: 543-548, (1989).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer Therapy." Annals of Oncology (abstract #040), 7(Suppl. 1): 22, (1996).

Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185neu" Methods in Enzymology 198: 277-290, (1991).

Nakamura, G.R. et al., "Strain specificity and binding affinity requirements of neutralizing monoclonal antibodies to the C4 domain of gp120 from human immunodeficiency virus type 1" Journal of Virology 67(10): 6179-6191, (Oct. 1993)

Norton, L., "Evolving Concepts in the Systemic Drug Therapy of Breast Cancer." Seminars in Oncology 24(4 Suppl 10):S10-3-S10-10, (Aug. 1997).

Osterborg, A. et al., Br. J. Haematology, 93: 151-153, 1996.

Pedley, B., et al., Pharmacokinetics of monoclonal antibodies, Clin. immunother., 6(1): 54-67, (1996).

Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" Oncogene 18: 2241-2251, (1999).

Pegram et al., "Phase II study of receptor-enhanced chemosensitivity using recombinant humanized anti-p185HBR^2/nea monoclonal antibody plus cisplatin in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer refractory to chemotherapy treatment" Journal of Clin Oncol 16(8):2659-2671 (Aug. 1998).

Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Receptor-Enhanced Chemosensitivity Using Recombinant Humanized Anti-p165HER2/nen Monoclonal Antibody Plus Cisplatin in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer Refractory to Chemotherapy Treatment" Journal of Clinical Oncology 16(8): 2659-2671, (1998).

Perez-Soler, R. et al, Journal of Clinical Oncology, 12(4): 730-739, 1994.

Pictras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" Oncogene 9: 1829-1838, (1994).

Presta et al., "Humanization of an Antibody Directed Against IgE", J. Immunol 151(5): 2623-2630, (1993).

Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First- or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress BER2" Proceedings of ASCO (Abstract #523) 18:137a, (1999).

Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast marker cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular—a review" Gene 159(1): 19-27, (1995).

Reilly, R., et al., "Problems of delivery of monoclonal antibodies", Clin. Pharmacokinet., 28(2): 126-142, (1995).

Renz, M.E. et al., "Structural requirements for adhesion of soluble recombinant murine vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 to a4131" Journal of Cell Biology 125(6): 1395-1406, (1994).

Riechmann et al., "Reshaping Human Antibodies for Therapy" Nature 332: 323-327, (1988).

Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" J. Cellular Biochem. 35(4): 315-320, (1987).

Rohan et al., "Immunohistochemical detection of c-erb3-2 and p53 in benign -breast disease and breast cancer risk" Journal of the National Cancer Institute 90(17): 1262-1269, (1998).

Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti-P185HER^2 Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" Growth Regulation 1: 72-82, (1991).

Schlereth, Bernd, et al., "Feasibility of repeated subcutaneous delivery supports a new route of administration for treating cancer patients with EpCAM-specific BiTE antibody MT110," 99th AACR Annual Meeting (Apr. 2008).

Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" Molecular Foundations of Oncology, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter 6, pp. 95-134, (1991).

Scott et al., "p185HER^2 Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" Journal of Biological Chemistry 266(22): 14300-14305, (Aug. 5, 1991).

Seidman et al., "Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center experience with paclitaxel in the treatment of breast cancer" seminars in Oncology 22(5 Suppl 12): 108-116, (1995).

Seifert et al., "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity" Annals of Pharmacotherapy 28(9):1063-1072, (Sep. 1994).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Semba et al., "A v-erbB-related protooncogene, c-erbB-2, is distinct from the c-erbB-1/epidermal growth factor-receptor gene:and is amplified in a human salivary gland adenocarcinoma" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82: 6497-6501, (1985).

Sharili, J., et al., "Improving monoclonal antibody pharmacokinetics via chemical modification", The quarterly journal of nuclear medicine, 42: 242-249, (1998).

Shawver et al., "Ligand-Like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB-2 ntibodies Do Not Correlate with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells" Cancer Research 54(5):1367-1373, (Mar. 1, 1994).

Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" J. Clin. Immunol 11(3): 117-127, (1991).

Sims et al., "A Humanized CD18 Antibody Can Block Function Without Cell Destruction" The Journal of Immunology 151(4): 2296-2308, (Aug. 15, 1993).

Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-induced cardiomyopathy" New England J. of Medicine 339(13): 900-905, (1998).

Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardiomyopathy" Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology 27(4): 1055-1063, (Apr. 1995).

Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" Science 235: 177-182, (Jan. 9, 1987).

Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" Science 244: 707-712, (May 12, 1989).

Slamon et al., "Use of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses HER2" New England J. of Medicine 344(11): 783-792, (2001).

Sliwkowski et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpressing breast cancer" Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research (abstract only) 37: 625-626, (Mar. 1996).

Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" Journal of Biological Chemistry 269(20): 14661-14665, (1994).

Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monoclonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88(19): 8691-8695, (1991).

Stegmaier, K., et al., Blood, 106(8): 2841-2848, (2005).

Stevenson et al., "A Chimeric Antibody With Dual Fc Regions (bisFabFc) Prepared by Manipulations at the IgG Hinge" Anti-Cancer Drug Design 3(4): 219-230,(1989).

Suresh et al., "Bispecific Monoclonal Antibodies from Hybrid Hybridomas" Methods in Enzymology 121: 210-228, (1986).

Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of ^{P185HER2} and Growth Inhibition of Cells With HER2/NEU Gene Amplification" International Journal of Cancer 47(6): 933-937, (Apr. 1, 1991).

Tokuda, et al., "In vitro and in vivo anti-tumor effects of a humanized monoclonal antibody against c-erb132 product", British journal of Cancer, 73, 1362-1365, (1996).

Verhoeyen et al., "Reshaping Human Antibodies: Grafting an Antilysozyme Activity" Science 239: 1534-1536, (1988).

Verma et al., "Efficacy and safety of three-weekly herceptin with paclitaxel in women with her2-positive metastatic breast cancer: preliminary results of a phase II trial" European Journal of Cancer (abstract only), 37:S146, (2001).

Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role for Their Use in Cancer Therapy" Cancer Research 54(20): 5301-5309, (Oct. 15, 1994).

Vogel et al., "First-Line Herceptin Monotherapy in Metastatic Breast Cancer" Oncology 61(Suppl. 2): 37-42, (2001).

Washington et al., "A population pharmacokinetic (PK) model for trastuzumab (T) following weekly dosing" Clin Pharmacol Ther. (abstract only) 71:P12 (2002).

Watanabe et al., "Pharmacokinetically guided dose escalation study of anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in patients with HER2/NEU-overexpressing metastatid:,breast cancer" Proceedings of the American Society of Clinical Oncology (Abstract 702 presented at the Annual ASCO meeting held May 15-18, 1998) 17:182a (1998).

Wolff et al., "Monoclonal antibody homodimers: enhanced antitumor activity in nude mice" Cancer Research 53(11): 2560-2565, (Jun. 1993).

Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product p185", International Journal of Cancer 53(3): 401-408, (Feb. 1, 1993).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-erb-B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" (GenBank accession No. X03363), (Mar. 30, 1995).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-erb-B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" Nature 319: 230-234, (1986).

Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti-p185ner^{2}fneu monoclonal antibodies" Experimental and Molecular Pathology 67: 15-25, (1999).

"ABPI Comendium of Data Sheets and Summaries of Product Characteristics 1999-2000" *Datapharm Publications Limited*, Aug. 1998, pp. iii, 255-256, 394, 1172-1173, 1296-1298.

"EMEA Public Statement on Trastuzumab (Herceptin)—New Pharmacokinetic Data", Jun. 2001, pp. 1-30.

"Letter of approval, label, and administrative document related to the geric compound (Taxotere) of docetaxel approved Jan. 6, 1998".

An, "Therapeutic Monoclonal Antibodies: From Bench to Clinic" *Monoclonal Antibody Pharmacokinetics and Pharmodynamics*, John Wiley and Sons Inc., publishers, 2009, 440-441.

Ardvanis, et. al. "Safety and Efficacy of Trastuzumab Every 3 Weeks Combined with Cytotoxic Chemotherapy in Patients with HER2-Positive Recurrent Breast Cancer: Filings from a Case Series" Onkologie 2005, pp. 558-564.

Berinstein, et. al. "Association of serum Rituximab (IDEC-C2B8) concentration and anti-tumor response in the treatment of recurrent low-grade or follicular non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma" *Annals of Oncology*, Kluwers Academic Publishers, publishers, vol. 9, 1998, pp. 995-1001.

Bruno, "Assessment of the Predictive Performance of a New Population Pharmacokinetic Model for Trastuzumab (Herceptin) and Simulation of Trastuzumab Steady-State Exposure During Long-Term Weekly Dosing" *Abstracts of the Annual Meeting of the Population Approach Group in Europe*, 2002, Abstract 310, p. 11.

Buzzoni, et. al. "Adjuvant Chemotherapy with Doxorubicin Plus Cyclophosphamide, Methotrexate, and Fluorouracil in the Treatment of Resectable Breast Cancer with More Than Three Positive Axillary Nodes" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* vol. 9, No. 12, Dec. 1991 pp. 2134-2140.

Clarke, et. al. "Clinical Pharmacokinetics of Docetaxel" *Clin Pharmacokinet*, Feb. 1999, pp. 99-114.

Cohen, "Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen, M.D." Jan. 2012.

Eniu, et. al. "Weekly Administration of Docetaxel and Paclitaxel in Metastatic or Advanced Breast Cancer" *The Oncologist*, 2005, pp. 665-685.

Fleming, et. al. "Phase I Trial of Recombinant Human Anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody (H) Plus with Low-Dose Interleukin-2 (IL-2) in Patients Solid Tumors" *Proceedings of the American Society of Clinical Oncology* (Abstract 710 presented at the Annual ASCO meeting held May 15-18, 1999), Perry and Anderson, eds., 1999, 18:184a.

Glennie, "Expert Report of Dr. Martin J. Glennie", Dec. 2011.

Glennie, "Second Expert Report of Dr. Martin J. Glennie", Jan. 2012.

Green, Clinical Pharmacology Review of Herceptin, Nov. 1998, 98/0369.

Herceptin Prescribing Information, Sep. 1998.

Information on Herceptin clinical testing NCCTG-983252 provided by the US National Cancer institute (NCI) clinical testing information database (PDQ®) http://web.archive.org/web/20110101000000*/http://www.cancer.gov/clinicaltrials/search/view?cdrid=66689&version=healthprofessional, Published Dec. 1998, Modified Jun. 2007, Downloaded Oct. 13, 2013.

Jones, et. al. "Optimizing Treatment of HER2-Positive Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Seminars in Oncology*, 2009, pp. 29-34.

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Kaufmann, et. al. "The Developing Role of HER2 in Cancer Treatment" *HER-2 State-of-the-Art Conference* Nov. 21-23, 1999, pp. 10-35.

Leyland-Jones, et. al. "Pharmacokinetics, Safety, and Efficacy of Trastuzumab Administered Every Three Weeks in Combination with Paclitaxel" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 2003, 21 (21), pp. 2965-3971.

McLaughlin, et. al. "Rituximab Chimeric Anti-CD20 Monoclonal Antibody Therapy for Relapsed Indolent Lymphoma: Half of Patients Respond to a Four-Dose Treatment Program" *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 1998, vol. 16, No. 8 pp. 2825-2833.

Nisonoff et. al. "The Antibody Molecule" *Immunology: An International Series of Monographs and Treatises*, 1975, pp. 87, 98-99.

Pietras et. al. "Remission of Human Breast Cancer Xenografts on Therapy with Humanized Monoclonal Antibody to HER-2 Receptor and DNA-Reactive Drugs" *Oncogene*, 1998 vol. 17, pp. 2235-2249.

Ray-Coquard, et. al. "Vinorelbine and Cisplatin (CIVIC Regimen) for the Treatment of Metastatic Carcinoma after Failure of Antracycline- and/or Paclitaxel-Containing Regimens" *Cancer*, Jan. 1998, vol. 82 No. 1 pp. 134-140.

Rowland, et. al. "Clinical Pharmacokinetics: Concepts and Applications", Third Edition, M. Rowland and T. Tozer, eds., Lippincot Williams & Wilkins, publishers, 1995, pp. 2-5, 83-84, 87-88, 90, 93-94, 313-322, 347-357, 394-401, 418 and 491-492.

Schacter et. al. "Anticancer Drugs" *Handbook of Phase I/II Clinical Drug Trials*, J. O'Grady and P. Joubert, eds., CRC Press Inc., publishers, 1997, Ch. 38, pp. 523-534.

Shak, "Overview of the trastuzumab (Herceptin) anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody clinical program in HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer." Herceptin Multinational Investigator Study Group. *Seminars in Oncology*, Aug. 1999, vol. 26, No. 4, Suppl 12, pp. 71-77.

Sparano "Taxanes for Breast Cancer: an Evidence-Based Review of Randomized Phase II and Phase III Trials" *Clinical Breast Cancer*, 2000, vol. 1, No. 1, pp. 36-40.

Van Poznak, et. al. "Critical Review of Current Treatment Strategies for Advanced Hormone Insensitive Breast Cancer" *Cancer Investigation*, 2002, vol. 20, Suppl. 2, pp. 1-14.

Vogel, et. al. "Efficacy and Safety of Herceptin" 1998, Dec. 12-15, Abstracts, p. 232, No. 23.

Waldmann, et. al. "Metabolism of Immunoglobulins" *Progr. Allergy*, 1969, vol. 13, pp. 19-31.

Washington, et. al. "A Population Pharmacokinetic (PK) Model for Trastuzumab (T) Following Weekly Dosing", *American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Feb. 2002. MPI-30.

Wong "Trastuzumab: Anti-Her2 Antibody for Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Cancer Practice*, 1999, vol. 7, No. 1, pp. 48-50.

Invalidation action filed by Celltrion against Korean Patent No. 1261749.

Invalidation action filed by Celltrion against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated May 28, 2013 (English translation) (20 pages).

Genentech's response to invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated Oct. 10, 2013 (English translation) (22 pages).

Celltrion's rebuttal brief submitted in invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated Nov. 29, 2013 (English translation) (20 pages).

Genentech's response to Celltrion's rebuttal brief submitted in invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated Feb. 28, 2014 (English translation) (18 pages).

Celltrion's Brief submitted in invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated Mar. 26, 2014 (English translation) (13 pages).

Genentech's Supplemental Brief submitted in invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated May 9, 2014 (English translation) (4 pages).

Celltrion's Supplemental Reply Brief submitted in invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated May 9, 2014 (English translation) (12 pages).

Decision by the Intellectual Property Tribunal in invalidation action against Korean Patent No. 1261749 dated May 28, 2014 (in Korean with English translation) (35 pages).

Galluppi, et. al., "Integration of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics studies in the discovery, development, and review of protein therapeutic agents: a conference report", Clin. Pharmacol. Ther., Jun. 2001, vol. 69, No. 6, pp. 387-399.

Groulx, Adrienne, "Introduction to Pharmacokinetics", ScianNews, 2006, vol. 9, No. 1, pp. 1-5.

Opposition Proceedings regarding European Patent No. 1 210 115.

Opposition by BioGeneriX AG (O1) to EP 1 210 115 dated May 5, 2010 (17 pages).

Opposition by Stada R&D GmbH (O2) to Ep 1 210 115 dated May 5, 2010 (29 pages).

Notice of Opposition by Teva Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd. (O3) to EP 1 210 115 dated May 6, 2010 (4 pages).

Facts and Arguments by Teva Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd (O3) in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated May 6, 2010 (10 pages).

Notice of Opposition by Celltrion, Inc. (O4) to EP 1 210 115 dated May 5, 2010 (5 pages).

Facts and Arguments by Celltrion, Inc. (O4) in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated May 5, 2010 (14 pages).

Opposition by Sandoz AG (O5) to EP 1 210 115 dated May 5, 2010 (27 pages).

Notice of Opposition by Synthon BV (O6) to EP 1 210 115 dated May 6, 2010 (5 pages).

Facts and Arguments by Synthon BV (O6) in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated May 6, 2010 (18 pages).

Proprietor's Response to Oppositions to EP 1 210 115 dated Dec. 24, 2010 (25 pages).

Summons to Attend Oral Hearings in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 21, 2011 (16 pages).

Annex to Summons to Attend Oral Hearings, Nonbinding, Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 21, 2011 (16 pages).

Response to the Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division filed by BioGeneriX AG and Teva Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd. (O1 and O3), in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Dec. 9, 2011 (3 pages).

Response to the Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division filed by STADA R&D GmbH (O2), in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated Dec. 9, 2011 (27 pages).

Response to the Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division filed by Celltrion, Inc. (O4), in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Dec. 9, 2011 (3 pages).

Response to the Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division filed by Sandoz AG (O5), in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Dec. 9, 2011 (27 pages).

Response to the Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division filed by Synthon BV (O6) in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Dec. 9, 2011 (1 page).

Response to the Preliminary Opinion of the Opposition Division filed by Genentech, Inc., in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Dec. 9, 2011 (10 pages).

Further submission by Celltrion, Inc. (O4) in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Jan. 24, 2012 (4 pages).

Further submission by Sandoz AG (O5), Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Jan. 17, 2012 (16 pages).

Further submission by Genentech, Inc. in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated Jan. 27, 2012 (2 pages).

Further submission by Genentech, Inc. in response to evidence filed by Celltrion, Inc. (O4) dated Feb. 3, 2012 (2 pages).

Minutes of the Oral Proceedings in Opposition to EP 1 210 115 dated Feb. 9, 2012 (3 pages).

Decision of Opposition Division in Opposition to EP 1 210 115, dated May 4, 2012 (22 pages).

Leyland-Jones, et. al., "Pharmacologic insights into the future of trastuzumab", Annals of Oncology, 2001, vol. 12, Suppl. 1, pp. S43-S47.

Leyland-Jones, Brian, "Dose Scheduling—Herceptin", Oncology, 2001, vol. 81, Suppl. 2, pp. 31-36.

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Cobleigh, et. al., "Efficacy and Safety of Herceptin™ (Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody) as a Single Agent in 222 Women with HER2 Overexpression Who Relapsed Following Chemotherapy for Metastatic Breast Cancer", Proc. Am Soc. Clin. Oncol., 1998, vol. 17, Abstract #376, p. 97a.

Tokuda, et. al., "Dose escalation and pharmacokinetic study of a humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer", British Journal of Cancer, 1999, vol. 81, No. 8, pp. 1419-1425.

Expert Report of Dr. Martin J. Glennie in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 12, 2011 (8 pages).

Annex of Expert Report of Dr. Martin J. Glennie, Curriculum Vitae of Professor Martin Glennie, in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 12, 2011 (7 pages).

Declaration of Jerome A. Moore in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Dec. 8, 2011 (11 pages).

Declaration of N. "Shasha" Jumbe, PhD in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Dec. 8, 2011 (9 pages).

Pharsight, "WinNolin®—Industry-Standard PK/PD Modeling and Analysis", 2011, retrieved from http://www.pharsight.com/products/prod_winnolin_home.php on Sep. 12, 2011 (3 pages).

Lu, et. al., "Assessment of the Predictive Performance of a New Population Pharmacokinetic Model for Trastuzumab (Herceptin) and Simulation of Trastuzumab Steady-State Exposure During Long-Term Weekly Dosing", Abstracts of the Annual Meeting of the population Approach Group in Europe, 2002, Abstract #310, p. 11.

Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen, M.D. in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 26, 2012 (4 pages).

Exhibit A to Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen, M.D., Curriculum Vitae of Robert Lawrence Cohen in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 26, 2012 (8 pages).

Exhibit B to Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen M.D., Maloney, et. al., "Phase I Clinical Trial Using Escalating Single-Dose Infusion of Chimeric Anti-CD20 Monoclonal Antibody (IDEC-C2B8) in Patients with Recurrent B-Cell Lymphoma", Blood, Oct. 1994, vol. 84, No. 8, pp. 2457-2466 in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 26, 2012.

Exhibit C to Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen M.D., McLaughlin, et. al., "Rituximab Chimeric Anti-CD20 Antibody Therapy for Relapsed Indolent Lymphoma: Half of Patients Respond to a Four-Dose Treatment Program", J. Clin. Oncol., Aug. 1998, vol. 16, No. 8, pp. 2825-2833, in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 26, 2012.

Exhibit D to Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen M.D., Prescribing Information of Rituxan (Rituximab), Initial US approval: 1997, in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 26, 2012 (38 pages).

Exhibit E to Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen M.D., Final Labeling Text for Herceptin (trastuzumab), Initial US Approval: 1998, in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 26, 2012 (32 pages).

Exhibit F to Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen M.D., Berinstein, et. al., "Association of serum Rituximab (IDEC-C2B8) concentration and anti-tumor response in the treatment of recurrent low-grade or follicular non-Hodgkin's lymphoma", Annals of Oncology, 1998, vol. 9, pp. 995-1001, in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 26, 2012.

Second Declaration of Robert Lawrence Cohen, M.D. In Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Feb. 2, 2012 (2 pages).

Notice of Appeal filed by Genentech, Inc. in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jul. 6, 2012 (1 page).

Proprietor's Grounds of Appeal filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 13, 2012 (40 pages).

Further Proprietor's Statement regarding Grounds of Appeal filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 14, 2012 (1 page).

Declaration of George Grass, Pharm.D, Ph.D. in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 11, 2012 (17 pages).

Bruno, et. al., "Population pharmacokinetics of trastuzumab in patients with HER2+ metastatic breast cancer", Cancer Chemother Pharmacol, 2005, vol. 56, pp. 361-369.

Ette, Ene I., "Stability and Performance of a Population Pharmacokinetic Model", J Clin Pharmacol, 1997, vol. 37, pp. 486-495.

Sheiner, et. al., "Estimation of Population Characteristics of Pharmacokinetic Parameters from Routine Clinical Data", Journal of Pharmacokinetics and Biopharmaceutics, 1977, vol. 5, No. 5, pp. 445-479.

US Department of Health and Human Services, "Guidance for Industry: Population Pharmacokinetics", Feb. 1999 (35 pages).

Morell, et. al., "Metabolic Properties of IgG Subclasses in Man", Journal of Clinical Investigation, 1970, col. 49, pp. 673-680.

Opponents' Response to Proprietor's Notice of Appeal by BioGeneriX AG and Teva Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 17, 2013 (12 pages).

Opponent's Response to Proprietor's Notice of Appeal by STADA R&D GmbH filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 24, 2013 (15 pages).

Opponent's Response to Proprietor's Notice of Appeal by Celltrion, Inc. filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 25, 2013 (19 pages).

Declaration of Megan A. Gibbs, Ph.D. in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 18, 2013 (4 pages).

Exhibit A in Declaration of Megan A. Gibbs, Ph.D., Curriculum Vitae of Megan A. Gibbs, Ph.D., in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 18, 2013 (10 pages).

Exhibit S3 in Declaration of Megan A. Gibbs, Ph.D., Morell, et. al., "Metabolic Properties of IgG Subclasses in Men", Journal of Clinical Investigation, 1970, vol. 49, pp. 673-680 in Notice of Opposition of European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 18, 2013.

Exhibit S2 in Declaration of Megan A. Gibbs, Ph.D., Final Labeling Text for Herceptin (trastuzumab), Initial US Approval: 1998, in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 submitted on Jan. 26, 2012 (32 pages).

Opponent's Response to Proprietor's Notice of Appeal by Sandoz AG filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 28, 2013 (19 pages).

Opponent's Response to Proprietor's Notice of Appeal by Synthon BV filed in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jan. 28, 2013 (21 pages).

Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512.

Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Jan. 6, 2012 (in Spanish with English translation) (136 pages).

Genentech's Response to Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Apr. 16, 2012 (in Spanish with English translation) (134 pages).

Manifestations Against the Response Brief regarding Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Aug. 28, 2012 (31 pages).

Technical Report Issued by Mexican Patent Office regarding Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Mar. 21, 2014 (in Spanish with English translation) (196 pages).

Genentech's Allegations Brief filed in response to Technical Opinion Issued by Mexican Patent Office regarding Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated May 16, 2014 (in Spanish with English translation) (35 pages).

Dismissal of Cancellation Action filed by Celltrion against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated May 30, 2014 (in Spanish with English translation) (56 pages).

Ex officio Cancellation Action initiated by Mexican Patent Office (IMPI) against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Oct. 22, 2014 (in Spanish with English translation) (22 pages).

Genentech's Answer to ex officio Cancellation Action initiated by Mexican Patent Office (IMPI) against Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Dec. 5, 2014 (77 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Genentech's Brief of Final Allegations filed with Federal Court of Fiscal and Administrative Justice regarding Mexican Patent No. 259512 dated Jun. 24, 2015 (in Spanish with English translation) (28 pages).
Invalidation Action filed by Celltrion against Polish Patent No. 202369.
Invalidation Action filed by Celltrion against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Aug. 23, 2011 (21 pages).
Genentech's Motion for Suspension of Invalidation Action filed by Celltrion against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Jan. 20, 2012 (3 pages).
Celltrion's Reply to Genentech's Motion for Suspension of Invalidation Action filed by Celltrion against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated May 11, 2012 (in Polish with English translation) (7 pages).
Genentech's Supplemental Reply regarding invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Oct. 2, 2012 (21 pages).
Celltrion's Submission regarding invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Oct. 12, 2012 (18 pages).
Documents submitted by Celltrion in invalidation action against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated May 21, 2013 (13 pages).
Genentech's Pleading submitted in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Jul. 24, 2013 (in Polish with English translation) (35 pages).
Celltrion's Pleading submitted in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Jul. 24, 2013 (11 pages).
Attachment to Celltrion's pleading, 2nd Expert Report of Dr. Martin J. Glennie dated Jan. 23, 2012 in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 (12 pages).
Decision of Polish Patent Office in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Oct. 23, 2013 (26 pages).
Documents Submitted by Celltrion to EMEA, Submitted as evidence in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369, Date: May 24, 2013 (13 pages).
EMEA Scientific Advice for Trastuzumab, Submitted as evidence in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369, Date: Dec. 18, 2008 (29 pages).
1st Central-Eastern European Congress on Biosimilars, "Biosimilar, a New Treatment Option for Breast Cancer", Submitted as evidence in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369, Date: Oct. 13, 2011 (29 pages).
Celltrion's motion for invalidation of the Decision of Patent Office for changing the patent in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Nov. 3, 2013 (29 pages).
Celltrion's Motion to Suspend Court Proceedings in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Nov. 3, 2013 (in Polish) (15 pages).
Celltrion's Further Pleading submitted in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Nov. 3, 2013 (in Polish with English translation) (25 pages).
Genentech's Answer to the Application submitted in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Apr. 8, 2015 (10 pages).
Judgement by the Provincial Administrative Court of Warsaw in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Apr. 22, 2015 (in Polish with English translation) (78 pages).
Genentech's Cassation Appeal submitted in invalidation against Polish Patent No. 202369 dated Aug. 3, 2015 (in Polish with English translation) (12 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260.
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Order regarding Filing Defence, Date: Feb. 18, 2013 (1 page).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Sealed Order for Directions, Date: Jul. 14, 2013 (6 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Summons, Date: Aug. 29, 2013.
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Order for Advertisement, Date: Sep. 17, 2014 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Sealed Order for Adjournment, Date: Sep. 17, 2014 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Sealed Order regarding Claim Amendment, Date: Sep. 17, 2014 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Note from Master Ho regarding Expert Directions, Date: Oct. 7, 2014 (1 page).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Sealed Order regarding Expert Directions, Date: Nov. 14, 2014 (5 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Consent Summons, Section 102 and Fact Evidence, Date: Dec. 10, 2014 (4 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Order for Cost Summary Assessment, Date: Jan. 23, 2015 (1 page).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Sealed Order for Claim Amendment, Date: Jan. 26, 2015 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Consent Summons for Extension of Time to File List of Documents, Date: Feb. 12, 2015 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Consent Summons for Section 102 Timings for Fact Evidence, Date: Mar. 9, 2015 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Consent Summons for Discovery, Date: Mar. 13, 2015 (2 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Letter from the Court with Queries Regarding Consent Summons, Date: Mar. 27, 2015 (1 page).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Order of Master Ho regarding Case Management Conference, Date: Jul. 23, 2015 (3 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Particulars of Objections, Date: Oct. 2, 2013 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Writ of Summons, Date: Oct. 2, 2013 (5 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Acknowledgement of Service of Writ of Summons, Date: Oct. 16, 2013 (1 page).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Defence, Date: Jan. 22, 2014 (2 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Timetabling Questionnaire of the Plaintiff, Date; Mar. 28, 2014 (9 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Further and Better Particulars of Objections, Date: Jul. 4, 2014 (11 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Summons for Further and Better Particulars of Objections, Date: Jul. 23, 2014 (5 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Mediation Certificate of the Defendant, Date: Jul. 28, 2014 (4 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Timetabling Questionnaire of the Defendant, Date; Jul. 28, 2014 (9 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Agreed English Translation of Hong Kong Standard Patent No. 1048260, Date: Aug. 15, 2014 (67 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Plaintiff's Notice to Admit, Date: Sep. 26, 2014 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Defendant's Admissions to Facts, Date: Oct. 23, 2014 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Listing Documents of the Plaintiff, Date: Nov. 14, 2014 (9 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Listing Documents of the Defendant, Date: Feb. 16, 2015 (10 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Plaintiff's Listing Questionnaire, Date: Jul. 20, 2015 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Defendant's Listing Questionnaire, Date: Jul. 21, 2015 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Affidavit of Anthony Clinton Dudley Evans, Date: Jul. 24, 2014 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Second Affidavit of Anthony Clinton Dudley Evans, Date: Aug. 29, 2014 (6 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Affidavit of Wong Tak Kay Alison, Date: Sep. 17, 2014 (7 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Exhibit WTKA-5, Proposed Claim Amendments to Claims of Hong Kong Standard Patent No. HK 1048260, in Affidavit of Wong Tak Kay Alison, Date: Sep. 17, 2014 (5 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Third Affidavit of Anthony Clinton Dudley Evans, Date: Oct. 3, 2014 (11 pages).
Celltrion v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of the Kong Special Administrative Region, Court of First Instance, Case No. 1873 regarding HK Patent No. 1048260, Witness Statement and Affirmation of David Kim, Date: Mar. 20, 2015 (32 pages).
Invalidation Action by Celltrion against South African Patent No. 2002/1229.
Invalidation Action filed by Celltrion against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Oct. 28, 2011 (9 pages).
Genentech's Request for Extension of Time in Invalidation Action against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Jan. 3, 2012 (2 pages).
Grounds for Genentech's Request for Extension of Time—Founding affidavit and motion to amend in Invalidation Action against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Jan. 3, 2012 (2 pages).
Notice of Intention to Amend in Terms of Rule 28 in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Jun. 11, 2012 (9 pages).
Founding Affidavit of Diane Marschang in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Oct. 4, 2012 (23 pages).
Order to Amend Patent in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Mar. 12, 2013 (2 pages).
Celltrion's Amended Motion for Revocation in Invalidation Actin Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Jul. 6, 2012 (18 pages).
Kostowski, W., Excerpt from "Pharmacology, Basics of Pharmacology, Coursebook for Students of Medicine and Physicians", Warsaw, First Edition, 1998, pp. 89-91.
Founding Affidavit of Martin John Glennie in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Aug. 23, 2013 (82 pages).
Supporting Affidavit of Kyungha Shin in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Aug. 20, 2013 (2 pages).
Founding Affidavit of George M. Grass in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Feb. 27, 2014 (125 pages).
Affidavit of Peter Jeffery Barrett-Lee in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Feb. 28, 2014 (40 pages).
Replying Affidavit of Martin John Glennie in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Oct. 3, 2014 (135 pages).
Replying Affidavit of Robert Howard Earhart in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Sep. 30, 2014 (129 pages).
Replying Affidavit of Robert Charles Frederick Leonard in Invalidation Action Against South African Patent No. 2002/1229 dated Sep. 30, 2014 (59 pages).
Invalidation Action Against Chinese Patent No. CN 00814890.3.
Koizumi, et. al., "Multicompartmental Analysis of the Kinetics of Radioiodinated Monoclonal Antibody in Patients with Cancer", J. Nucl. Med., 1986, vol. 27, pp. 1243-1254.
Eger, et. al., "Kinetic Model for the Biodistribution of an ^{111}In-labeled Monoclonal Antibody in Humans", Cancer Res., 1987, vol. 47, pp. 3328-3336.
Genentech's Appeal Brief submitted in Invalidation of Chinese Decision No. 19128 dated Nov. 16, 2012 (Chinese with English translation (16 pages).
Administrative Judgement in Request for invalidation of Chinese Patent No. CN 00814890.3 dated Aug. 23, 2010 (English translation) (12 pages).
Request for Invalidation filed against Chinese Patent No. ZL00814590.3 dated Dec. 30, 2011 (11 pages).
Genentech's Response to Request for invalidation of Chinese Patent No. CN 00814890.3 dated Feb. 26, 2012 (9 pages).
Genentech's Supplemental Response to Request for invalidation of Chinese Patent No. CN 00814890.3 dated May 31, 2012 (11 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Decision of Examination of the Request for Invalidation No. 19128 relating to Chinese Patent No. 00814590.3, Date: Aug. 8, 2012 (English translation) (20 pages).
Administrative Judgement by Beijing First Intermediate People's Court of the PRC in Request for invalidation of Chinese Patent No. CN 000814890.3, Date: Dec. 19, 2013 (English translation) (20 pages).
Administrative Judgement by Beijing High Court of the PRC in Request for invalidation of Chinese Patent No. CN 000814890.3, Date: Dec. 19, 2013 (English translation) (21 pages).
Petition to Supreme People's Court for Retrial in Request for invalidation of Chinese Patent No. CN 000814890.3, Date: Oct. 30, 2015 (Chinese with English translation) (16 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Grounds of Invalidity dated Sep. 13, 2012 (7 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Amended Particulars of Claim, Date: Sep. 13, 2012 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Re-amended Grounds of Invalidity, Date: Sep. 13, 2012 (8 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Re-Amended Defence, Date: Oct. 29, 2012 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (7 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-1, correspondence between Taylor Wessing and Mewburn Ellis in Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (7 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-2, Hospira Press Release, "Hospira, Celltrion, Enter Business Cooperation Agreement to Develop and Market Biogeneric Drugs", 2009, in Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (2 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-3, Hospira website, "About Hospira", in Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (2 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-4, United States Securities and Exchange Commission, Form 10-Q Quarterly report for Hospira, Inc., dated Aug. 1, 2012 in Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (69 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-5, Celltrion Outlook Presentation, 2nd Quarter 2012, in Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (15 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-6, Celltrion Outlook Presentation, 3rd Quarter 2012, in Confidential Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 21, 2012 (16 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Skeleton Argument of the Defendant for Case Management Conference, Date: Nov. 22, 2012 (4 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Skeleton Argument of the Claimant for Case Management Conference, Date: Nov. 22, 2012 (5 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Supplementary Skeleton Argument of the Claimant, Date: Nov. 22, 2012 (1 page).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of the Case Management Conference, Date: Nov. 22, 2012 (21 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. First Witness Statement of Nigel Martin Stoate, Date: Dec. 3, 2012 (4 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order for Directions following Case Management Conference, Date: Nov. 22, 2012 (5 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Consent Order demanding further information, Date: Dec. 12, 2012 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Notice to Admit Facts and Request for Further Information from the Defendant, Date: Feb. 15, 2013 (7 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's Response to the Claimant's Notice to Admit Facts and Part 18 Request for Further Information, Date: Mar. 1, 2013 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Supplemental Claimant's Notice to Admit Facts and Part 18 Request for Further Information from the Defendant, Date: Jul. 4, 2013 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's Response to the Claimant's Supplemental Notice to Admit Facts and Part 18 Request for Further Information, Date: Jul. 15, 2013 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Witness Statement of Charles Anthony Nettleton Balme, Date: Jul. 18, 2013 (7 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit CAB-1, inter partes correspondence regarding confidentiality of material, in Witness Statement of Charles Anthony Nettleton Balme, Date: Jul. 18, 2013 (9 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit CAB-2, Affidavit by HyukJae Lee dated Dec. 5, 2012, in Witness Statement of Charles Anthony Nettleton Balme, Date: Jul. 18, 2013 (6 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Claimant's Pleading of Matters Falling within the Common General Knowledge, Date: Sep. 27, 2013 (7 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's Reply to the Claimant's Pleading of Matters Falling within the Common General Knowledge, Date: Oct. 29, 2013 (17 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Nov. 18, 2013 (5 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-1, Correspondence between Taylor Wessing and Marks & Clerk regarding slide presentation of Dr. Leyland-Jones, in Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Nov. 18, 2013 (9 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Second Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 22, 2013 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJG-7, Correspondence between Taylor Wessing and Marks & Clerk regarding slide presentation of Dr. Leyland-Jones in Second Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: Nov. 22, 2013 (6 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Claimant's Skeleton Argument for Letter of Request Application for Examination of Brian Leyland-Jones, Date: Nov. 26, 2013 (7 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's Skeleton Argument for Letter of Request Application for Examination of Brian Leyland-Jones, Date: Nov. 26, 2013 (6 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of Hearing for Letter of Request Application for Examination of Brian Leyland-Jones, Date: Nov. 26, 2013 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order Directing Issuance of Letter of Request Application for Examination of Brian Leyland-Jones, Date: Nov. 28, 2013 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Expert Report of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (43 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit PBL-1, CV of Professor Robert Barrett-Lee, in Expert Report of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit PBL-2, List of Publications Authored or Co-Authored by Professor Robert Barrett-Lee, in Expert Report of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit PBL-3, Publication of European Patent Specification, Patent No. EP 1 210 115 B1, Published Aug. 5, 2009, in Expert Report of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (51 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Expert Report of Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (57 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-1, Curriculum Vitae of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-2, List of Publications Authored and Co-Authored by Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (13 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-3, List of patents and patent applications in which Alan Boddy is a named inventor, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-4, Schedule of Sources for Figures, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-5, WinNoLin output file regarding one-compartment analysis, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (13 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-6, WinNoLin output file regarding analysis incorporating data from figure 3, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (13 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-7, WinNoLin output file regarding two-compartment analysis of data from Table 2, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (13 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-8, WinNoLin output file regarding two-compartment analysis of data from Table 2 and Table 3, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (13 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit, AVB-9, Output of data underlying Figure 26, in Expert Report of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (100 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (32 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-1, Curriculum Vitae of Robert Charles Frederick Leonard dated Oct. 2012, in Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (42 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-2, Devita, et. al., "Therapy of Locally Advanced and Inflammatory Breast Cancer", Cancer: Principles & Practices of Oncology, Caputo, Grace R., Lippincott-Raven Publishers, 5th Edition, 1997, p. 1599, in Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-3, Taylor, et. al., "The therapeutic potential of novel aromatase inhibitors in breast cancer", Exp. Opin. Invest. Drugs, Mar. 1999, vol. 8, No. 3, pp. 269-279, in Expert Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (11 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-4, Blainey, R. W., "The Role of Selective Non-Steroidal Aromatase Inhibitors in Future Treatment Strategies", Oncology, 1997, vol. 54, Suppl. 2, pp. 27-31, in Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (5 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-5, Dixon, et. al., "Lessons from the use of aromatase inhibitors in the neoadjuvant setting", Endocrine Related Cancer, 1999, vol. 6, pp. 227-230 in Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (5 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-6, ATAC Trialists' Group, "Anastrozole alone or in combination with tamoxifen versus tamoxifen alone for adjuvant treatment of postmenopausal women with early breast cancer: first results of the ATAC randomized trial", Lancet, 2002, vol. 159, pp. 2131-2139, in Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (9 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RFCL-9, Slamon, et. al., "Addition of Herceptin (Humanized Anti-Her2 Antibody) for HER2 Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer (HER2+/MBC) Markedly Increases Anticancer Activity: A Randomised, Multinational Controlled Phase III Trial", Proceedings of ASCO, 1998, vol. 17, Abstract #377, p. 98A, in Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (5 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (39 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-1, Curriculum Vitae of Robert Howard Earhart, in Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (16 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-2, Baselga, et. al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients with HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer", Journal of Clinical Oncology, Mar. 1996, vol. 14, No. 3, pp. 737-744, in Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-3, Pegram, et. al., "Phase II Study of Receptor-Enhanced Chemosensitivity Using Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185$^{HER2/neu}$ Monoclonal Antibody Plus Cisplatin in Patients with HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer Refractory to Chemotherapy Treatment", Journal of Clinical Oncology, Aug. 1998. vol. 16, No. 8, pp. 2659-2671, in Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Dec. 18, 2013 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order dispensing with expert meetings and joint reports, Date: Jan. 16, 2014 (2 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Second Expert Report of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, Date: Jan. 24, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Second Expert Report of Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Jan. 24, 2014 (24 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Second Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Jan. 24, 2014 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Second Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Jan. 24, 2014 (9 pages).

Transcript of Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones dated Jan. 27, 2014 (92 pages).

Exhibit 1 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. Subpoena for Dr. Leyland-Jones, (10 pages).

Exhibit 2 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. Undated slide deck titled "Pharmacological/Screening Insights into the Future of Herceptin." (34 pages).

Exhibit 3 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. Undated slide deck titled "Dose-Scheduling: Herceptin®." (42 pages).

Exhibit 4 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. Meta data on electronic files for Exhibits 2 and 3. (2 pages).

Exhibit 5 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. "HER2 State-of-the Art." (26 pages).

Exhibit 6 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. HER2 State-of-the-Art Conference Report Nov. 21-23, 1999, Workshop Proceedings, from the *Annals of Oncology*, vol. 12, 6 supplement 1, 2001. (10 pages).

Exhibit 7 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. Leyland-Jones, "Dose Scheduling—Herceptin®," *Oncology*, 2001; 61 (suppl 2):31-36.

Exhibit 8 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. "Pharmacokinetics: Safety and efficacy of trastuzumab administered every three weeks in combination with paclitaxel" *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 2003, vol. 21, 3965-3971.

Exhibit 9 from Jan. 27, 2014 Deposition of Brian Leyland-Jones. Face page of a publication titled "Optimising the Role of Herceptin in Breast Cancer." (1 page).

Undated slide deck titled: "Pharmacological/Screening Insights into the Future of Herceptin." (28 pages).

Undated slide deck titled: "Optimising the role of Herceptin® in breast cancer." (87 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (12 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-2, inter partes correspondence with regard to independently valid claims, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-3, inter partes correspondence with regard to the declaration of non-infringement, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (29 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-4, Application Notice, request that Hospira provide further information dated Nov. 23, 2012, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (6 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-5, Consent Order requesting provision of a confidential statement of case dated Dec. 12, 2012, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-6, Confidential Statement of Case Served Pursuant to Court Order dated Dec. 12, 2012, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-7, Expert Report of Professor Zhaohui Sunny Zhou dated Dec. 18, 2013, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (5 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-8, Expert Report of Dr. Uwe Gottschalk dated Dec. 18, 2013, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (4 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-9, Second Expert Report of Dr. Uwe Gottschalk dated Dec. 18, 2013, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-10, inter partes correspondence with regard to directions for the EP '455 amendment, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (12 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-11, Comptroller's objections to claim set 2 dated Nov. 26, 2013, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-12, Draft Trial Timetable, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (2 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-13, inter partes correspondence with regard to costs for EP '632, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-14, inter partes correspondence with regard to disclosure of documents, in Second Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jan. 27, 2014 (16 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Hospira's Skeleton Argument for the Pre-Trial Review, Date: Jan. 29, 2014 (15 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Skeleton Argument for the Pre-Trial Review, Date: Jan. 29, 2014 (8 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Claimant's Civil Evidence Act Notice, Date: Jan. 2014 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Approved Judgement—Pre-trial review, Date: Jan. 2014 (6 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order from Pre-trial review, Date: Jan. 30, 2014 (6 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of the Pre-trial Review, Date: Jan. 30, 2014 (63 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's Statement of Case on Independent Validity, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Third Expert Report of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Third Expert Report of Alan Vincent Boddy, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Third Expert Report of Professor Robert Charles Frederick Leonard, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (5 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (18 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-4, WinNoLin analysis using Model 8, in Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (12 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-5, WinNoLin analysis using Model 1, in Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (12 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-6, Except from Biological Licensing Application submitted to the FDA, May 1, 1998, p. 14, in Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (1 page).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-8, Simulation of alternative dosing regimens, May 21, 1998, in Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (10 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-9, Simulation of alternative dosing regimens, May 22, 1998, in Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (10 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit RHE-10, Excerpt of letter sent by Genentech to the FDA, Feb. 20, 2001, in Third Expert Report of Dr. Robert Howard Earhart, Date: Feb. 10, 2014 (9 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115, Claimant's Response to Defendant's Statement of Case on Independent Validity, Date: Feb. 17, 2014 (3 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Skeleton Argument, Date: Feb. 27, 2014 (37 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Hospira's Skeleton Argument, Date: Feb. 28, 2014 (61 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Supplemental Skeleton Argument, Date: Mar. 4, 2014 (4 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of UK Patents Court Trial (Days 1-9), Date: Mar. 6-19, 2014 (487 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Hospira's Written Closing, Date: Mar. 17, 2014 (60 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Closing Submissions, Date: Mar. 17, 2014 (86 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Consent Order for suspending time to appeal, Date: Apr. 10, 2014 (2 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Approved Judgement, Date: Apr. 10, 2014 (47 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Third Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: May 2, 2014 (9 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Fourth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: May 13, 2014 (5 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-15, Letter from Marks & Clerk regarding draft order and supporting evidence dated Apr. 26, 2014, in Fourth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: May 13, 2014 (2 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-16, Letter from Marks & Clerk requesting further information and clarification regarding statement of costs dated May 9, 2014, in Fourth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: May 13, 2014 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-17, Breakdown of costs incurred by Hospira, in Fourth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: May 13, 2014 (2 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Third Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: May 13, 2014 (10 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJC-8, Letter from Marks & Clerk requesting a limited breakdown of global costs dated May 9, 2014, in Third Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: May 13, 2014 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJC-9, inter partes correspondence regarding declaration about construction, in Third Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: May 13, 2014 (53 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Skeleton Argument on the Final Order, Date: May 14, 2014 (9 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Fourth Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: May 15, 2014 (6 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit MJC-10, Roche Media Release, "Roche delivers strong 2013 results" dated Jan. 30, 2014, in Fourth Witness Statement of Michael John Gilbert, Date: May 15, 2014 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Hospira's Skeleton Argument for the form-of-order hearing, Date: May 16, 2014 (15 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Approved Judgement—Costs, Date: May 16, 2014 (10 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Approved Judgement—Confidentiality of Documents, Date: May 16, 2014 (9 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of Form of Order Hearing, Date: May 16, 2014 (26 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Skeleton Argument for Petition to Appeal, Date: Jun. 6, 2014 (17 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Notice of Appeal and Grounds of Appeal, Date: Jun. 6, 2014 (12 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's list of documents: standard disclosure, Date: Jun. 13, 2014 (12 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Defendant's supplemental list of documents: standard disclosure, Date: Jun. 13, 2014 (12 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Claimant's list of documents: standard disclosure, Date: Jun. 14, 2014 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Fifth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jul. 9, 2014 (8 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-18, Decision of Opposition Division regarding '115 patent dated May 4, 2012, in Fifth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jul. 9, 2014 (16 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Exhibit SCC-19, Proprietor's Grounds of Appeal regarding '115 patent dated Sep. 13, 2012, in Fifth Witness Statement of Simon Charles Cohen, Date: Jul. 9, 2014 (41 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order granting permission to appeal, Date: Jul. 21, 2014 (2 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Skeleton Argument for hearing on Jul. 22, 2014, Date: Jul. 21, 2014 (6 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Hospira's Confidential Skeleton Argument, Date: Jul. 21, 2014 (11 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of Confidentiality Hearing, Date: Jul. 22, 2014 (23 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order of Confidentiality, Date: Jul. 22, 2014 (3 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Respondent's Notice for Upholding Revocation Order and Grounds for Upholding Revocation Order, Date: Aug. 6, 2014 (11 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Genentech's Skeleton Argument on the Appeal, Date: Nov. 7, 2014 (29 pages).
Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Skeleton Argument of the Respondent (Hospira), Date: Dec. 15, 2014 (26 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of Appeal Proceedings, Day 1, Date: Jan. 2015 (61 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Transcript of Appeal Proceedings, Day 2, Date: Jan. 14, 2015 (40 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115. Order dismissing appeal, Date: Feb. 6, 2015 (2 pages).

Coates, et. al., "On the Receiving End—Patient Perception of the Side-effects of Cancer Chemotherapy", Eur. J. Cancer Clin. Oncol., 1983, vol. 19, No. 2, pp. 203-208.

Hainsworth, et. al., "Paclitaxel Administered by 1-Hour Infusion: Preliminary Results of a Phase I/II Trial Comparing Two Schedules", Cancer, Aug. 1994, vol. 74, No. 4, pp. 1377-1382.

Griffin, et. al., "On the receiving end V: Patient Perceptions of the side effects of cancer chemotherapy in 1993", Annals of Oncology, 1996, vol. 7, pp. 189-195.

DeMario, et. al., "Oral Chemotherapy: Rationale and Future Directions", Journal of Clinical Oncology, Jul. 1998, vol. 16, No. 7, pp. 2557-2567.

Barrett-Lee, et. al., "An audit to determine the time taken to administer intravenous bisphosphonate infusions in patients diagnosed with metastatic breast cancer to bone in a hospital setting", Current Medical Research and Opinions, 2007, vol. 23, No. 7, pp. 1575-1582.

Pivot, et. al., "Preference for subcutaneous or intravenous administration of trastuzumab in patients with HER2-positive early breast cancer (PrefHer): an open-label randomized study", Lancet Oncology, Sep. 2013, vol. 14, pp. 962-970.

Figure 24.1—α and β phase (1 page).

Pharmacokinetic calculations (5 pages).

Earhart, Robert H., "Docetaxel (Taxotere): Preclinical and General Clinical Information", Seminars in Oncology, Oct. 1999, vol. 26, No. 5, Suppl. 17, pp. 8-13.

Perez, Edith A., "Paclitaxel in Breast Cancer", The Oncologist, 1998, vol. 3, pp. 373-389.

Seidman, et. al., "Dose-Dense Therapy with Weekly 1-Hour Paclitaxel Infusions in the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer", Journal of Clinical Oncology, 1998, vol. 16, No. 10, pp. 3353-3361.

Decision Institution of Inter Partes Review (Paper 13), Case IPR2017-00804 re: U.S. Pat. No. 6627196, entered Jul. 27, 2017 (15 pages).

Decision Institution of Inter Partes Review (Paper 13), Case IPR2017-00805 re: U.S. Pat. No. 7371379, entered on Jul. 27, 2017 (17 pages).

Decision of the Technical Boards of Appeal of the European Patent Office relating to EP1210115, dated Jul. 24, 2017 (27 pages).

Decision of IMPI Ex-Officio Cancellation Action Initiated by IMPI against Mexican Patent No. 259512, dated Apr. 26, 2017, in Spanish with English translation (51 pages).

Board of Appeal Decision re Nullity Action No. 2016-800071 filed by Celltrion Incorporated and Pfizer Holdings G.K. against Japanese U.S. Pat. No. 5,818,545, dated Jul. 5, 2017, in Japanese (126 pages) with English Translation (126 pages).

Board Communication, Jan. 3, 2018, EP Patent No. 09008313.0 / 2111870, Appeal No. T2363/13-3.3.04 (44 pages).

Decision Institution of Inter Partes Review (Paper 12), IPR2017-01139 re: U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196 (Baughman, et al., "Dosages for treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibodies"), entered Oct. 4, 2017 (17 pages).

Decision Institution of Inter Partes Review (Paper 12), IPR2017-01140 re: U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379 (Baughman, et al., "Dosages for treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibodies"), entered Oct. 4, 2017 (18 pages).

Kempeni et al., "Preliminary Results of early clinical trials with the fully human anti-TNFα monoclonal antibody D2E7" Ann Rheum Dis 58(Suppl I):170-172 (1999).

Van de Putte et al., "Efficacy of the Fully Human Anti-TNF Antibody D2E7 in Rheumatoid Arthritis" ACR Abstract Concurrent Session RA: TNF-Blockade, Wednesday, Nov. 17, 1999, 10:30 a.m. to 12:00 p.m., (1999).

Final Written Decision (Paper No. 83), Inter Partes Review, Case No. IPR2017-00804 re: U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196 B1, *Hospira, Inc., and Samsung Bioepis Co., Ltd.* v. *Genentech, Inc.*, entered on Oct. 3, 2018 (39 pages).

Final Written Decition (Paper No. 83), Inter Partes Review, Case No. IPR2017-00805 re U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379 B2, entered on Oct. 3, 2018 (39 pages).

Final Written Decision (Paper No. 68), Inter Partes Review, Case No. IPR2017-01139 re: U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196 B1, *Celltrion, Inc.*, v. *Genentech, Inc.*, entered on Oct. 3, 2018 (31 pages).

Final Written Decision (Paper No. 69), Inter Partes Review, Case No. IPR2017-01140 re: U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379 B2, *Celltrion, Inc.*, v. *Genentech, Inc.*, entered on Oct. 3, 2018 (31 pages).

Baselga, "Current and Planned Clinical Trials With Trastuzumab (Herceptin)" Seminars in Oncology 27(5 Suppl 9):27-32 (2000).

Zandvliet et al., "Saturable Binding of Indisulam to Plasma Proteins and Distribution to Human Erythrocytes" Drug Metabolism and Disposition 34(6):1041-1046 (2006).

Opposition Proceedings regarding European Patent No. EP 1 210 115.

Summons to Attend Oral Hearing in Appeal relating to EP 1 210 115 dated Dec. 2, 2015 (14 pages).

Letter from Genentech regarding Oral Proceedings relating to Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jul. 7, 2016 (2 pages).

Communication of the EPO Board of Appeal pursuant to Article 15(1) of the Rules of Procedure of the Boards of Appeal issued in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Jul. 26, 2016 (21 pages).

Declaration of Professor Alan Vincent Boddy, including Annexes A and B; Date: Aug. 11, 2016 (11 pages).

Declaration of Professor Peter Barrett-Lee, including Exhibits PBL-1 and PBL-2; Date: Aug. 12, 2016 (21 pages).

Third Party Observation filed in accordance with Article 115 EPC in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Sep. 8, 2016 (3 pages).

Minutes of Oral Proceedings, EPO Boards of Appeals Appeal No. T1592/12-3.3.04, held Oct. 25, 2016 in Opposition to European Patent No. EP 1 210 115 dated Oct. 28, 2016 (11 pages).

Hooks, et. al., "Muromonab CD-3: A Review of its Pharmacology, Pharmacokinetics, and Clinical Use in Transplantation", The Journal of Pharmacology and Drug Therapy, 1991, vol. 11, No. 1, pp. 26-37.

Letter from Genentech, Inc. to Dr. Glen D. Jones, Ph.D. of the Food and Drug Administration, dated Feb. 20, 2001 (9 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 Regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115.

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the High Court of Justice Chancery Division 2 Patents Court, Case No. HC12C03487 regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115, Approved Judgement , Date: Jul. 22, 2014 (9 pages).

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the Court of Appeal (Civil Division) on Appeal from the High Court of Justice Chancery Division, Case Bo: A3 2014 1800, regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115.

Hospira v. *Genentech* trial in the Court of Appeal (Civil Division) on Appeal from the High Court of Justice Chancery Division, Case Bo: A3 2014 1800, regarding EP (UK) 1 210 115Approved Judgment; Date: Feb. 6, 2015(14 Pages).

Opposition Proceedings regarding Hong Kong Patent No. 1048260.

Affidavit of Monique Chu, filed in Opposition Proceedings regarding Hong Kong Patent No. 1048260, HCA 1873/2013, dated Jun. 21, 2016 (8 pages).

Fourth Affidavit of Anthony Clinton Dudley Evans, filed in Opposition Proceedings regarding Hong Kong Patent No. 1048260, HCA 1873/2013, dated Jun. 21, 2016 (33 pages).

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Decision of High Court Deputy Judge Kent Yee, issued in Opposition Proceedings regarding Hong Kong Patent No. 1048260, HCA 1873/2013, dated Jul. 13, 2016, (9 pages).
Order of Master Ho to discontinue proceedings, issued in Opposition Proceedings regarding Hong Kong Patent No. 1048260, HCA 1873/2013, dated Jul. 20, 2016 (2 pages).
Revocation Proceedings regarding South African Patent No. 2002/1229.
Notice of Withdrawal of Action, issued in Revocation Proceedings regarding South African Patent No. 2002/1229, dated Oct. 11, 2016 (2 pages).
Nullity Action No. 2016-900071 by Celltrion against Japanese Patent No. 5818545.
Demand for Invalidation of Japanese Patent No. 5818545 by Celltrion Incorporated, dated Jun. 17, 2016, in Japanese with English translation (130 pages).
"HER2-specific humanized monoclonal antibody trastuzumab [recombinant] Mitsubishi Chemical," New Current 1998, vol. 9, No. 24 in Japanese with English translation (3 pages).
Perez et al., "Two concurrent Phase II trials of Paclitaxel/Carboplatin/Trastuzumab (weekly or every-3-week schedule) as first-line therapy in women with HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer: NCCTG Study 98252," Clinical Breast Cancer 2005, vol. 6, No. 5, pp. 425-432.
"Phase II Study of Paclitaxel, Carboplatin, and Trastuzumab (Herceptin) as First-Line Chemotherapy in Women With Overexpressed HER-2, Metastatic Breast Cancer" http://web.archive.org/web/20111023025823/http://cancer.gov/clinicaltrials/search/view?cdrid=66689&version=healthprofessional; first published: Dec. 1, 1998,_retrieved Apr. 16, 2013.
K.Takada and S. Asada, "Chapter 4: Repetitive administration and dosage regimens," *Essential of Pharmacokinetics*, Hirokawa Publishing Company 2nd printing (1979) of the first edition (1978), pp. 70-85.
Watanabe et al., "Phase I clinical trial results of anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody (MKC-454) to HER2/neu overexpressing metastic breast cancer ," 6th Annual Meeting of the Japanese Breast Cancer Society Programs and Proceedings, May 22-23, 1998, Abstract 121, p. 59. in Japanese with English translation (3 pages).
Genentech's Reply Brief, dated Nov. 2, 2016, in Japanese with English translation (70 pages).
Celltrion's Summary of Oral Arguments, dated Feb. 7, 2017, in Japanese with English translation.
Genentech's Summary of oral arguments dated Jan. 24, 2017, in Japanese with English translation (87 pages).
Declaration of Dr. Robert I. Macey with Appendix A, dated Mar. 4, 2017 (11 pages), submitted by Genentech on Mar. 30, 2017.
Genentech's post-hearing statement, dated Mar. 7, 2017, in Japanese with English translation of parts (2) and (3).
Administrative Litigation Against Chinese Patent No. 200610008639.X.
Administrative Judgement by Supreme People's Court of the People's Republic of China dated Jun. 22, 2016 in Chinese with English translation (10 pages).
Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196, PTAB-IPR2017-00804 by Hospira Inc.
Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196 under 35 U.S.C. § 311 and 37 C.F.R. §42.100 by Hospira, Inc., dated Jan. 30, 2017 (71 pages).
Declaration of Dr. Allan Lipton filed in Inter Partes Review No. IPR2017-00804 re: U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196, dated Jan. 30, 2017 (160 pages).
Declaration of Dr. William Jusko filed in Inter Partes Review No. IPR2017-00804 re: U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196, dated Jan. 30, 2017 (104 pages).
Aaronson, et al., "The European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer QLQ-C30: A Quality-of-Life Instrument for Use in International Clinical Trials in Oncology," J. Nat'l. Cancer Institute 1993, vol. 85, No. 4, pp. 365-376.
Coates, et al., "Quality of Life in Oncology Practice: Prognostic Value of EORTC QLQ-C30 Scores in Patients with Advanced Malignancy," European Journal of Cancer 1997, vol. 33, No. 7, pp. 1025-1030.
Drugs@FDA: FDA Approved Drug Products for Herceptin, retrieved Dec. 22, 2016 from http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/daf/index.cfm?event=overview.process&ApplNo=103792 (3 pages).
Ferrell, "Quality of Life in Breast Cancer," Cancer Practice 1996, vol. 4, No. 6, pp. 331-340.
Pegram, et al., "Phase II Study of Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185 HER-2 Monoclonal Antibody (rhuMAb HER-2) Plus Cisplatin in Patients with HER-2/neu Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer," Proceedings of the American Society of Clinical Oncology 1995, vol. 14, No. 106, abstract 124.
Press Release, Genentech, Inc. "Biotechnology Breakthrough in Breast Cancer Wins FDA Approval," posted Sep. 25, 1998 at https://www.gene.com/media/press-releases/4763/1998-09-25/biotechnology-breakthrough-in-breast-can, retrieved Dec. 30, 2016 (5 pages).
Vogel, et al., "Efficacy and Safety of Herceptin (Trastuzumab, Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody) as a Single Agent in First-Line Treatment of HER2 Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer (HER2+/MBC)," Breast Cancer Research and Treatment 1998, vol. 50, No. 1, abstract 23, p. 232.
Declaration of Dr. Sarah Baughman filed in Inter Partes Review No. IPR2016-00172 re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,889,135, dated Nov. 5, 2015 (47 pages).
Walpole, et al., "The weight of nations: an estimation of adult human biomass," BMC Public Health 2012, vol. 12, No. 439, retrieved Dec. 27, 2016 from https://bmcpublichealth.biomedcentral.com/articles/10.1186/1471-2458-12-439.
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, National Center for Environmental Assessment (NCEA) Office of Research and Development (ORD), "Exposure Factors Handbook" (1997). Retrieved Dec. 27, 2016, (1216 pages) htips://ofmpub.epa.gov/eims/eimscomm.getfile?p_download_id=503445.
Patent Owner's Preliminary Response, dated May 4, 2017 (60 pages).
Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S Pat. No. 6,627,196, PTAB-IPR2017-01139 by Celltron, Inc.
Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196 under 35 U.S.C. § 311 and 37 C.F.R. §42.100 by Celltrion, Inc., dated Mar. 24, 2017 (64 pages).
Declaration of Mark J. Ratain, M.D., dated Mar. 22, 2017 (85 pages).
Coleman, Metastatic Bone Disease: Clinical Features, Pathophysiology and Treatment Strategies, Cancer Treat. Rev. 2001, vol. 27, 165-175.
Ferguson et al.. High Dose, Dose-Intensive Chemotherapy with Doxorubicin and Cyclophosphamide for the Treatment of Advanced Breast Cancer, 67 Br. J. Cancer, 825-829 (1993).
Greenberg et al., "Body Size and Survival in Premenopausal Breast Cancer," Br. J. Cancer 1985, vol. 51, pp. 691-697 (1985).
Mick et al., "Statistical approaches to pharmacodynamics modeling: motivations, methods and misperceptions," Cancer Chemother. Pharmacol. 1993, vol. 33, pp. 1-9.
Miller et al., "Principles of Pharmacology," The Chemotherapy Source Book, ed. Michael C. Perry, 2nd Edition., Williams & Wilkins, 1996, pp. 27-41.
Mordenti et al., "Interspecies Scaling of Clearance and Volume of Distribution Data for Five Therapeutic Proteins," Pharma. Res. 1991, vol. 8, pp. 1351-1359.
Newman et al., "A Study of the Effect of Weight and Dietary Fat on Breast Cancer Survival Time," Am. J. Epidemiol. 1986, vol. 123, pp. 767-774.
Ratain et al., "Statistical and Ethical Issues in the Design and Conduct of Phase I and II Clinical Trials of New Anticancer Agents," 85 J. Nat'l Cancer Inst. 1992, vol. 85, pp. 1637-1643.
Ratain et al., "Critical Role of Phase I Clinical Trials in Cancer Treatment," 15 J. Clin. Onc. 1997, vol. 15, pp. 853-859.
Ratain, "Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics, Pharmacology of Cancer Chemotherapy," Cancer, 5th Edition, Lippincott-Raven, 1997, pp. 375-385.

(56) **References Cited**

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Richards et al., Doxorubicin in Advanced Breast Cancer: Influence of Schedule on Response, Survival and Quality of Life, 28A, 1992, Eur. J. Cancer 1023-1028.

Rothenberg et al., "Alternative Dosing Schedules for Irinotecan," Oncology 1998, vol. 12, pp. 68-71.

Tokuda et al., "Dose Escalation and Pharmacokinetic Study of a Humanized anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody in Patients with HER2/Neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer", 81 Br. J. Cancer, 1999, 1419-1425.

Slamon et al., "Addition of Herceptin (Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody) to First Line Chemotherapy for HER2 Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer(HER2+/MBC)Markedly Increases Anticancer Activity: A Randomized Multinational Controlled Phase III Trial," Proceedings of ASCO May 1998, vol. 17, No. 377, 98a.

Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, PTAB-IPR2017-00805 by Hospira, Inc.

Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, under 35 U.S.C. § 311 and 37 C.F.R. § 42.100 by Hospira, Inc., dated Jan. 30, 2017 (77 pages).

Declaration of Dr. Allan Lipton filed in Inter Partes Review No. IPR2017-00805 re: U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, dated Jan. 30, 2017 (169 pages).

Declaration of Dr. William Jusko filed in Inter Partes Review No. IPR2017-00805 re: U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, dated Jan. 30, 2017 (104 pages).

Patent Owner's Preliminary Response filed in Inter Partes Review No. IPR2017-00805 re: U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, dated May 4, 2017 (62 pages).

Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, PTAB-IPR-01140 by Celltrion, Inc.

Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Pat. No. 7,371,379, under 35 U.S.C. § 311 and 37 C.F.R. §42.100 by Celltrion, Inc., dated Mar. 24, 2017 (72 pages).

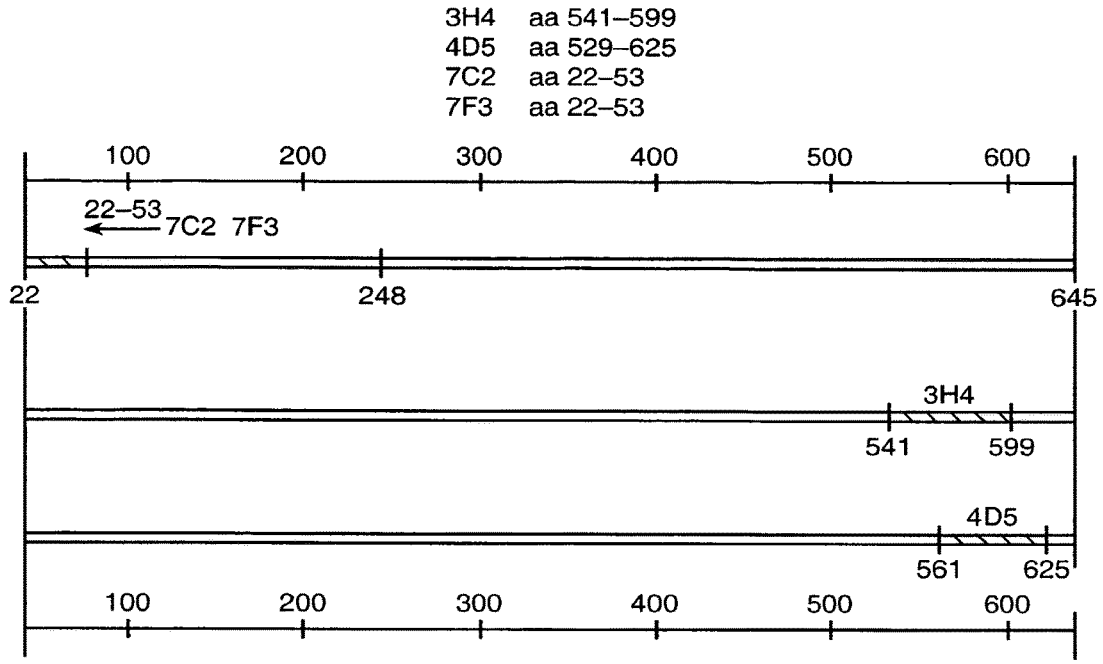
Declaration of Mark Ratain M.D., dated Mar. 22, 2017 (85 pages).

William J. Jusko, "Guidelines for Collection and Pharmacokinetic Analysis of Drug Disposition Data", in Applied Pharmacokinetics, ed. William Evans, Jerome Schentag, & William Jusko, 639-80, (1980).

Rowland and Tozer (1995), "Chapter 22: Dose and Time Dependencies," in *Clinical Pharmacokinetics*, 3rd ed. Williams & Wilkins, pp. 394-423.

Sarfaraz Niazi, "Chapter 7: Pharmacokinetic Principles", in Textbook of Biopharmaceutics and Clinical Pharmacokinetics, 141-203 (1979).

* cited by examiner



3H4 epitope (SEQ ID NO:8) 58 residues

VEECRVLQGLPREYVNARHCLPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVAR
541 **599**

4D5 epitope (SEQ ID NO:9) 64 residues

LPCHPECQPQNGSVTCFGPEADQCVACAHYKDPPFCVARCPSGVKPDLSYMPIWKFPDEEGACQP
561 **625**

FIG._1

1 MELAALCRWGLLLALLPPGAA**STQVCTGTDMKLRLPA**
38 **SPETHLDMLRHLYQGC**QVVQGNLELTYLPTNASLSFL
75 QDIQEVQGYVLIAHNQVRQVPLQRLRIVRGTQLFEDN
112 YALAVLDNGDPLNNTTPVTGASPGGLRELQLRSLTEI
149 LKGGVLIQRNPQLCYQDTILWKDIFHKNNQLALTLID
186 TNRSRA

FIG._2

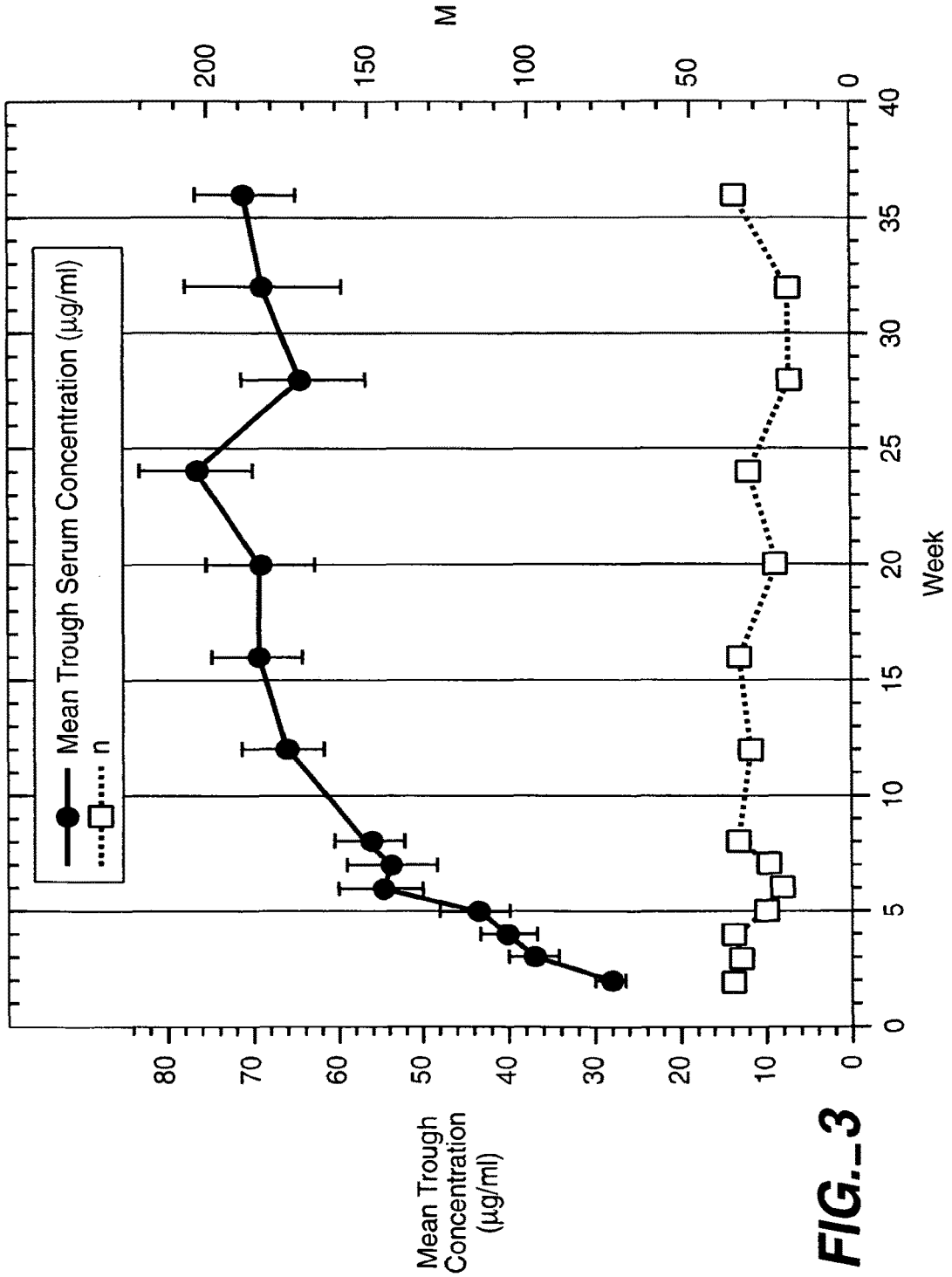

Mean Trough Serum Concentration (µg/ml)
n
Mean Trough Concentration (µg/ml)
Week
M
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
0
50
100
150
200

FIG._3

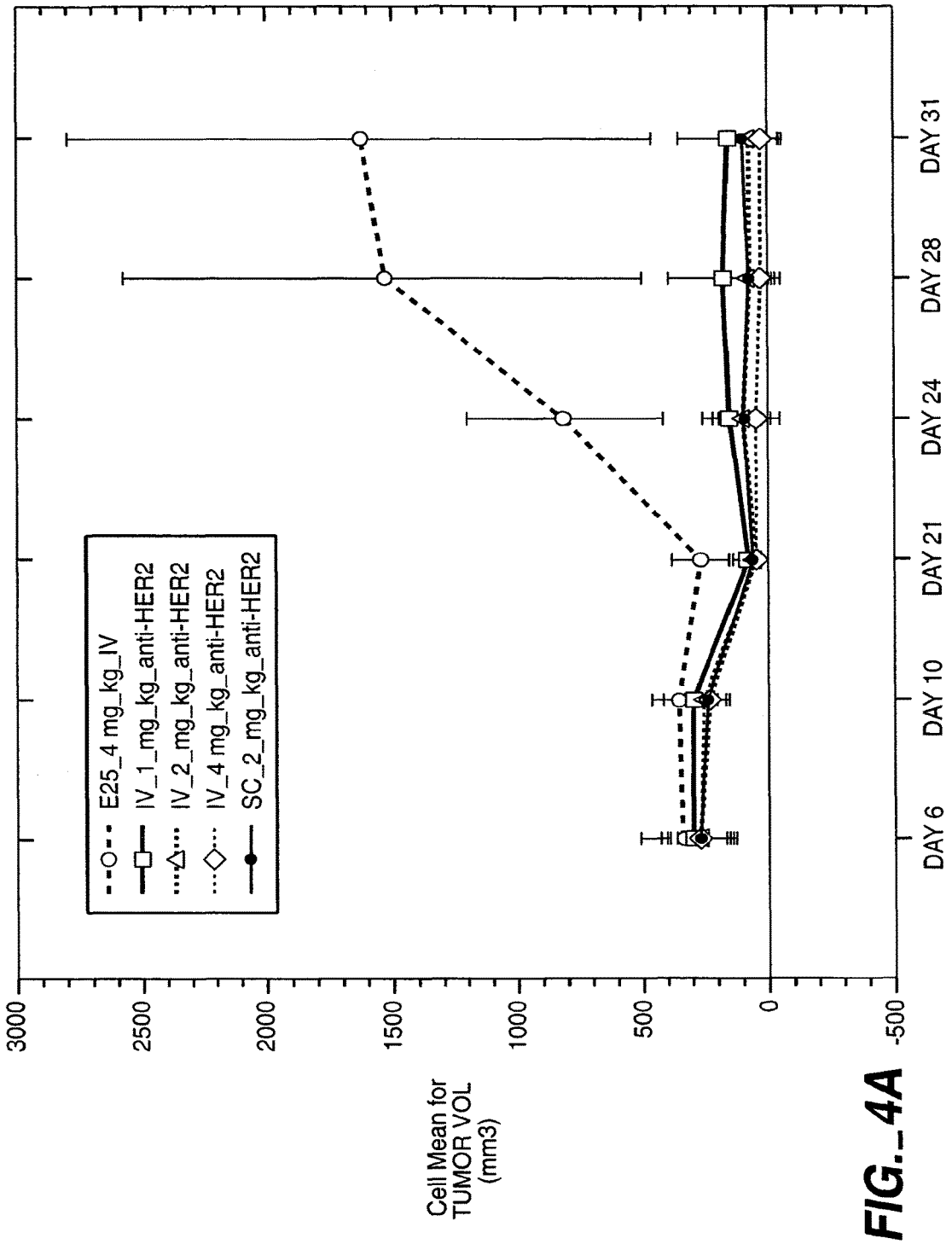

E25_4 mg_kg_IV
IV_1_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_4 mg_kg_anti-HER2
SC_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
Cell Mean for TUMOR VOL (mm3)
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
DAY 6
DAY 10
DAY 21
DAY 24
DAY 28
DAY 31

FIG._4A

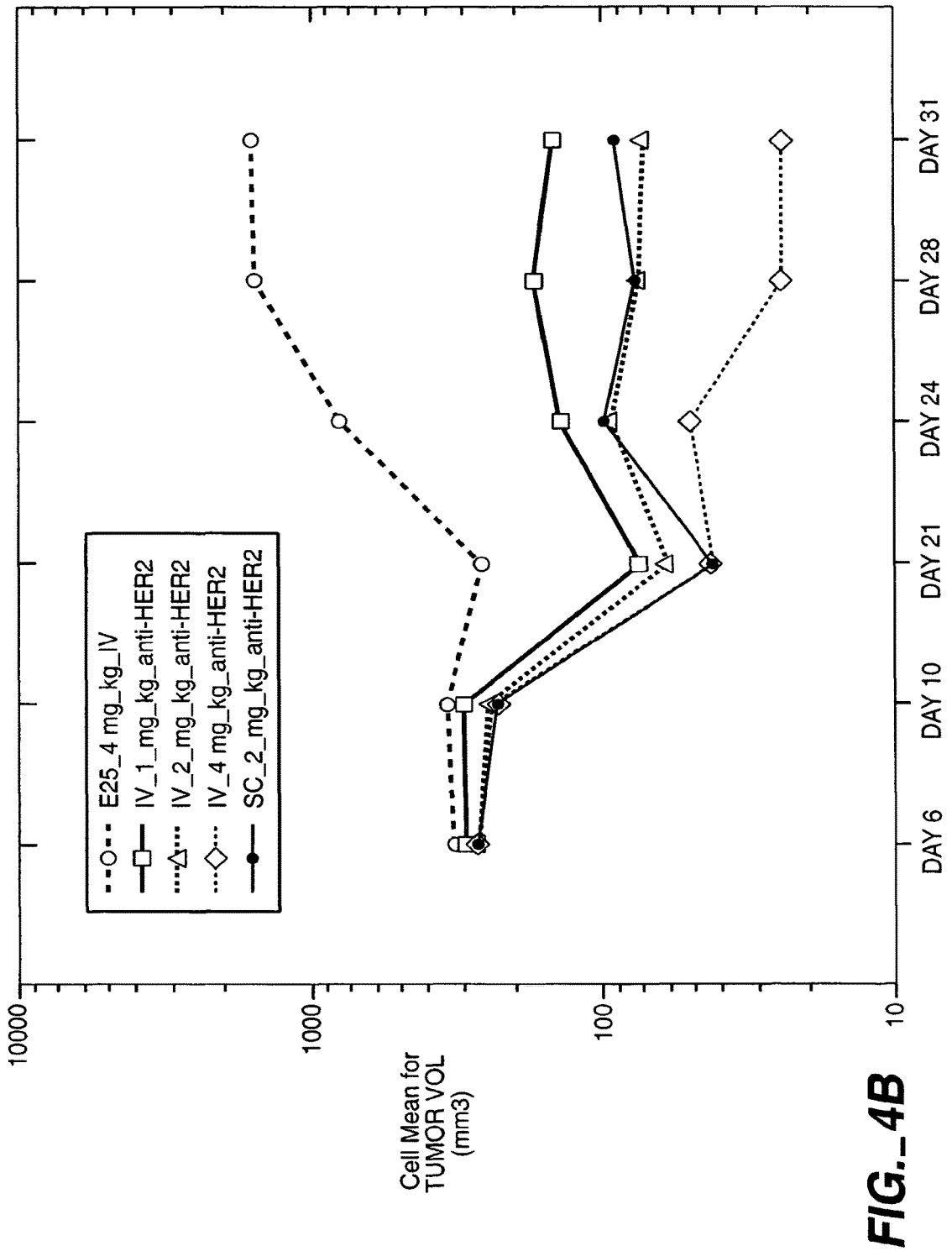

E25_4 mg_kg_IV
IV_1_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
IV_4 mg_kg_anti-HER2
SC_2_mg_kg_anti-HER2
Cell Mean for TUMOR VOL (mm3)
10000
1000
100
10
DAY 6
DAY 10
DAY 21
DAY 24
DAY 28
DAY 31

FIG._4B

VARIABLE LIGHT

```
          1       10        20          30              40
2C4       DTVMTQSHKIMSTSVGDRVSITC [KASQDVSIGVA----] WYQQRP
           **    **** *      *                        *
574       DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC [KASQDVSIGVA----] WYQQKP
                                   *   *  ****
hum kI    DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC [RASQSVSTSSYSYMH] WYQQKP

                    50          60        70        80
2C4       GQSPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTFTISSVQA
           **                   *  *         *    * *
574       GKAPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP
                     *  ****
hum kI    GKAPKLLIY [AASSLES] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP

                   90          100
2C4       EDLAVYYC [QQYYIYPYT] FGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO:10)
            * *                  *   *
574       EDFATYYC [QQYYIYPYT] FGQGTKVEIK (SEQ ID NO:12)
                       ***
hum kI    EDFATYYC [QQYNSLPYT] FGQGTKVEIK (SEQ ID NO:14)
```

FIG._5A

VARIABLE HEAVY

```
          1       10        20          30          40
2C4       EVQLQQSGPELVKPGTSVKISCKAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVKQS
              **  **  *  * ***  **                   *
574       EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVRQA
                                      ** * *
humIII    EVQLVESGGGSVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFSSYAMS] WVRQA

                    50        60          70        80
2C4       HGKSLEWIG [DVNPNSGGSIYNQRFKG] KASLTVDRSSRIVYM
          *  *   **                     *** *    **** *
574       PGKGLEWVA [DVNPNSGGSIYNQRFKG] RFTLSVDRSKNTLYL
                  *  ******  ** ****       * * *
humIII    PGKGLEWVS [VISGDGGSTYYADSVKG] RFTISRDDSKNTLYL

                     90         100          110
2C4       ELRSLTFEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTTLVTSS (SEQ ID NO:11)
          ***  **                                *
574       QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:13)
                            ** ***
humIII    QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [GRGGGS--DY] WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:15)
```

FIG._5B

TREATMENT WITH ANTI-ERBB2 ANTIBODIES

RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is divisional of U.S. Ser. No. 10/600,152 filed Jun. 20, 2003, which is a divisional of U.S. Ser. No. 09/648,067 filed Aug. 25, 2000 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,627,196), which claims priority under 35 USC 119(e) to provisional application Nos. 60/151,018, filed Aug. 27, 1999 and 60/213,822, filed Jun. 23, 2000, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of disorders characterized by the overexpression of ErbB2 or disorders expressing epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), comprising administering to a human or animal presenting the disorders a therapeutically effective amount of an antibody that binds ErbB2. More specifically, the invention concerns the treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer overexpressing ErbB2 or expressing EGFR, where the treatment is with an anti-ErbB2 antibody administered by front loading the dose of antibody during treatment by intravenous and/or subcutaneous administration. The invention optionally includes treatment of cancer in a human patient with a combination of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, such as, but not limited to, a taxoid. The taxoid may be, but is not limited to paclitaxel or docetaxel. The invention further includes treatment of cancer in a human patient with a combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, such as, but not limited to, an anthracycline derivative. Optionally, treatment with a combination of anti-ErbB2 and an anthracycline derivative includes treatment with an effective amount of a cardioprotectant. The present invention further concerns infrequent dosing of anti-ErbB2 antibodies.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Proto-oncogenes that encode growth factors and growth factor receptors have been identified to play important roles in the pathogenesis of various human malignancies, including breast cancer. It has been found that the human ErbB2 gene (erbB2, also known as her2, or c-erbB-2), which encodes a 185-kd transmembrane glycoprotein receptor ($p185^{HER2}$) related to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), is overexpressed in about 25% to 30% of human breast cancer (Slamon et al., *Science* 235:177-182 [1987]; Slamon et al., *Science* 244:707-712 [1989]).

Several lines of evidence support a direct role for ErbB2 in the pathogenesis and clinical aggressiveness of ErbB2-overexpressing tumors. The introduction of ErbB2 into non-neoplastic cells has been shown to cause their malignant transformation (Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7159-7163 [1987]; DiFiore et al., *Science* 237:78-182 [1987]). Transgenic mice that express HER2 were found to develop mammary tumors (Guy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:10578-10582 [1992]).

Antibodies directed against human erbB2 protein products and proteins encoded by the rat equivalent of the erbB2 gene (neu) have been described. Drebin et al., *Cell* 41:695-706 (1985) refer to an IgG2a monoclonal antibody which is directed against the rat neu gene product. This antibody called 7.16.4 causes down-modulation of cell surface p185 expression on B104-1-1 cells (NIH-3T3 cells transfected with the neu proto-oncogene) and inhibits colony formation of these cells. In Drebin et al. *PNAS* (*USA*) 83:9129-9133 (1986), the 7.16.4 antibody was shown to inhibit the tumorigenic growth of neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells as well as rat neuroblastoma cells (from which the neu oncogene was initially isolated) implanted into nude mice. Drebin et al. in *Oncogene* 2:387-394 (1988) discuss the production of a panel of antibodies against the rat neu gene product. All of the antibodies were found to exert a cytostatic effect on the growth of neu-transformed cells suspended in soft agar. Antibodies of the IgM, IgG2a and IgG2b isotypes were able to mediate significant in vitro lysis of neu-transformed cells in the presence of complement, whereas none of the antibodies were able to mediate high levels of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) of the neu-transformed cells. Drebin et al. *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions on the p185 molecule result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice. Biological effects of anti-neu antibodies are reviewed in Myers et al., *Meth. Enzym.* 198:277-290 (1991). See also WO94/22478 published Oct. 13, 1994. Hudziak et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 9(3): 1165-1172 (1989) describe the generation of a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5 which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel, including 7C2 and 7F3, reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. Hudziak et al. conclude that the effect of the 4D5 antibody on SKBR3 cells was cytostatic rather than cytotoxic, since SKBR3 cells resumed growth at a nearly normal rate following removal of the antibody from the medium. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize $p185^{erbB2}$-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-α. See also WO89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. The anti-ErbB2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. are further characterized in Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. *In Vitro* 26(3):59A (1990); Sarup et al. *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11(2): 979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. *Cancer Research* 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:14300-5 (1991); and D'souza et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 91:7202-7206 (1994).

Tagliabue et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933-937 (1991) describe two antibodies which were selected for their reactivity on the lung adenocarcinoma cell line (Calu-3) which overexpresses ErbB2. One of the antibodies, called MGR3, was found to internalize, induce phosphorylation of ErbB2, and inhibit tumor cell growth in vitro.

McKenzie et al. *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies with varying epitope specificities, including the antibody designated TA1. This TA1 antibody was found to induce accelerated endocytosis of ErbB2 (see Maier et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:5361-5369 [1991]). Bacus et al. *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350-362 (1990) reported that the TA1 antibody induced maturation of the breast cancer cell lines AU-565 (which overexpresses the erbB2 gene) and MCF-7 (which does not). Inhibition of growth and acquisition of a mature phenotype in these cells

was found to be associated with reduced levels of ErbB2 receptor at the cell surface and transient increased levels in the cytoplasm.

Stancovski et al. *PNAS* (*USA*) 88:8691-8695 (1991) generated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies, injected them i.p. into nude mice and evaluated their effect on tumor growth of murine fibroblasts transformed by overexpression of the erbB2 gene. Various levels of tumor inhibition were detected for four of the antibodies, but one of the antibodies (N28) consistently stimulated tumor growth. Monoclonal antibody N28 induced significant phosphorylation of the ErbB2 receptor, whereas the other four antibodies generally displayed low or no phosphorylation-inducing activity. The effect of the anti-ErbB2 antibodies on proliferation of SKBR3 cells was also assessed. In this SKBR3 cell proliferation assay, two of the antibodies (N12 and N29) caused a reduction in cell proliferation relative to control. The ability of the various antibodies to induce cell lysis in vitro via complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) and antibody-mediated cell-dependent cytotoxicity (ADCC) was assessed, with the authors of this paper concluding that the inhibitory function of the antibodies was not attributed significantly to CDC or ADCC.

Bacus et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2580-2589 (1992) further characterized the antibodies described in Bacus et al. (1990) and Stancovski et al. of the preceding paragraphs. Extending the i.p. studies of Stancovski et al., the effect of the antibodies after i.v. injection into nude mice harboring mouse fibroblasts overexpressing human ErbB2 was assessed. As observed in their earlier work, N28 accelerated tumor growth, whereas N12 and N29 significantly inhibited growth of the ErbB2-expressing cells. Partial tumor inhibition was also observed with the N24 antibody. Bacus et al. also tested the ability of the antibodies to promote a mature phenotype in the human breast cancer cell lines AU-565 and MDA-MB453 (which overexpress ErbB2) as well as MCF-7 (containing low levels of the receptor). Bacus et al. saw a correlation between tumor inhibition in vivo and cellular differentiation; the tumor-stimulatory antibody N28 had no effect on differentiation, and the tumor inhibitory action of the N12, N29 and N24 antibodies correlated with the extent of differentiation they induced.

Xu et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401-408 (1993) evaluated a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies for their epitope binding specificities, as well as their ability to inhibit anchorage-independent and anchorage-dependent growth of SKBR3 cells (by individual antibodies and in combinations), modulate cell-surface ErbB2, and inhibit ligand stimulated anchorage-independent growth. See also WO94/00136 published Jan. 6, 1994 and Kasprzyk et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2771-2776 (1992) concerning anti-ErbB2 antibody combinations. Other anti-ErbB2 antibodies are discussed in Hancock et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:3758-3765 (1994); and Harwerth et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:15160-15167 (1992).

A recombinant humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody (a humanized version of the murine anti-ErbB2 antibody 4D5, referred to as rhuMAb HER2, HERCEPTIN®, or HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) has been clinically active in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14:737-744 [1996]). The recommended initial loading dose for HERCEPTIN® is 4 mg/kg administered as a 90-minute infusion. The recommended weekly maintenance dose is 2 mg/kg and can be administered as a 30-minute infusion if the initial loading dose is well tolerated.

ErbB2 overexpression is commonly regarded as a predictor of a poor prognosis, especially in patients with primary disease that involves axillary lymph nodes (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra; Ravdin and Chamness, *Gene* 159:19-27 [1995]; and Hynes and Stern, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1198:165-184 [1994]), and has been linked to sensitivity and/or resistance to hormone therapy and chemotherapeutic regimens, including CMF (cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluoruracil) and anthracyclines (Baselga et al., *Oncology* 11(3 Suppl 1):43-48 [1997]). However, despite the association of ErbB2 overexpression with poor prognosis, the odds of HER2-positive patients responding clinically to treatment with taxanes were greater than three times those of HER2-negative patients (Ibid). rhuMab HER2 was shown to enhance the activity of paclitaxel (TAXOL®) and doxorubicin against breast cancer xenografts in nude mice injected with BT-474 human breast adenocarcinoma cells, which express high levels of HER2 (Baselga et al., *Breast Cancer, Proceedings of ASCO*, Vol. 13, Abstract 53 [1994]).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the discovery that an early attainment of an efficacious target trough serum concentration by providing an initial dose or doses of anti-ErbB2 antibodies followed by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amounts of antibody (greater front loading) is more efficacious than conventional treatments. The efficacious target trough serum concentration is reached in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. The target serum concentration is thereafter maintained by the administration of maintenance doses of equal or smaller amounts for the remainder of the treatment regimen or until suppression of disease symptoms is achieved.

The invention further concerns a method for the treatment of a human patient susceptible to or diagnosed with a disorder characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of an anti-ErbB2 antibody subcutaneously. Preferably, the initial dose (or doses) as well as the subsequent maintenance dose or doses are administered subcutaneously. Optionally, where the patient's tolerance to the anti-ErbB2 antibody is unknown, the initial dose is administered by intravenous infusion, followed by subcutaneous administration of the maintenance doses if the patient's tolerance for the antibody is acceptable.

According to the invention, the method of treatment involves administration of an initial dose of anti-ErbB2 antibody of more than approximately 4 mg/kg, preferably more than approximately 5 mg/kg. The maximum initial dose or a subsequent dose does not exceed 50 mg/kg, preferably does not exceed 40 mg/kg, and more preferably does not exceed 30 mg/kg. Administration is by intravenous or subcutaneous administration, preferably intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or more preferably subcutaneous bolus injection. The initial dose may be one or more administrations of drug sufficient to reach the target trough serum concentration in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including one day or less.

According to the invention, the initial dose or doses is/are followed by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amounts

of antibody at intervals sufficiently close to maintain the trough serum concentration of antibody at or above an efficacious target level. Preferably, an initial dose or subsequent dose does not exceed 50 mg/kg, and each subsequent dose is at least 0.01 mg/kg. Preferably the amount of drug administered is sufficient to maintain the target trough serum concentration such that the interval between administration cycles is at least one week. Preferably the trough serum concentration does not exceed 2500 μg/ml and does not fall below 0.01 μg/ml during treatment. The front loading drug treatment method of the invention has the advantage of increased efficacy by reaching a target serum drug concentration early in treatment. The subcutaneous delivery of maintenance doses according to the invention has the advantage of being convenient for the patient and health care professionals, reducing time and costs for drug treatment. Preferably, the initial dose (or the last dose within an initial dose series) is separated in time from the first subsequent dose by 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 3 weeks or less, most preferably 1 week or less.

In an embodiment of the invention, the initial dose of anti-ErbB2 is 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous administration, such as intravenous infusion or subcutaneous bolus injection. The subsequent maintenance doses are 2 mg/kg delivered once per week by intravenous infusion, intravenous bolus injection, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection. The choice of delivery method for the initial and maintenance doses is made according to the ability of the animal or human patient to tolerate introduction of the antibody into the body. Where the antibody is well-tolerated, the time of infusion may be reduced. The choice of delivery method as disclosed for this embodiment applies to all drug delivery regimens contemplated according to the invention.

In another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 12 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In yet another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 8 mg/kg once per week or 8 mg/kg once every 2 to 3 weeks.

In another embodiment, the invention includes initial doses of at least 1 mg/kg, preferably 4 mg/kg, anti-ErbB2 antibody on each of days 1, 2 and 3, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

In another embodiment, the invention includes an initial dose of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg twice per week, wherein the maintenance doses are separated by 3 days.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is 2-3 times per week for 3 weeks. In one embodiment of the invention, each dose is approximately 25 mg/kg or less for a human patient, preferably approximately 10 mg/kg or less. This 3 week cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

In another embodiment, the invention includes a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is daily for 5 days. According to the invention, the cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

The disorder preferably is a benign or malignant tumor characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor, e.g. a cancer, such as, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer. The method of the invention may further comprise administration of a chemotherapeutic agent other than an anthracycline, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin. The chemotherapeutic agent preferably is a taxoid, such as TAXOL® (paclitaxel) or a TAXOL® derivative.

Preferred anti-ErbB2 antibodies bind the extracellular domain of the ErbB2 receptor, and preferably bind to the epitope 4D5 or 3H4 within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence. More preferably, the antibody is the antibody 4D5, most preferably in a humanized form. Other preferred ErbB2-binding antibodies include, but are not limited to, antibodies 7C2, 7F3, and 2C4, preferably in a humanized form.

The method of the present invention is particularly suitable for the treatment of breast or ovarian cancer, characterized by the overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor.

The present application also provides a method of therapy involving infrequent dosing of an anti-ErbB2 antibody. In particular, the invention provides a method for the treatment of cancer (e.g. cancer characterized by overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor) in a human patient comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB2 antibody followed by at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein the first dose and subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks (e.g. from about two weeks to about two months), and optionally at least about three weeks (e.g. from about three weeks to about six weeks). For instance, the antibody may be administered about every three weeks, about two to about 20 times, e.g. about six times. The first dose and subsequent dose may each be from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg; e.g. from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg; and optionally from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg. Generally, two or more subsequent doses (e.g. from about two to about ten subsequent doses) of the antibody are administered to the patient, and those subsequent doses are preferably separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks (e.g. from about two weeks to about two months), and optionally at least about three weeks (e.g. from about three weeks to about six weeks). The two or more subsequent doses may each be from about 2 mg/kg to about 16 mg/kg; or from about 4 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg; or from about 6 mg/kg to about 12 mg/kg. The invention additionally provides an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antibody according to such methods.

The presently described dosing protocols may be applied to other anti-ErbB antibodies such as anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), anti-ErbB3 and anti-ErbB4 antibodies. Thus, the invention provides a method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient, comprising administering an effective amount of an anti-ErbB antibody to the human patient, the method comprising administering to the patient an initial dose of at least approximately 5 mg/kg of the anti-ErbB antibody; and administering to the patient a plurality of subsequent doses of the antibody in an amount that is approximately the same or less than the initial dose. Alternatively, or additionally, the invention pertains to a method for the treatment of cancer in a human patient

comprising administering to the patient a first dose of an anti-ErbB antibody followed by at least one subsequent dose of the antibody, wherein the first dose and subsequent dose are separated from each other in time by at least about two weeks. The invention additionally provides an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB antibody, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antibody according to such methods.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody, optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB2 receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to avoid the use of anthracycline-type chemotherapeutics in combination with the composition. According to the invention, the package insert further includes instructions to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody at an initial dose of 5 mg/kg followed by the same or smaller subsequent dose or doses. In another embodiment of the invention, the package insert further includes instructions to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody subcutaneously for at least one of the doses, preferably for all of the subsequent doses following the initial dose, most preferably for all doses.

In a further aspect, the invention provides a method of treating ErbB2 expressing cancer in a human patient comprising administering to the patient effective amounts of an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent. In one embodiment of the invention, the chemotherapeutic agent is a taxoid including, but not limited to, paclitaxel and docetaxel. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracyline derivative including, but not limited to, doxorubicin or epirubicin. In still another embodiment of the invention, treatment with an anti-ErbB2 antibody and an anthracycline derivative further includes administration of a cardioprotectant to the patient. In still another embodiment, an anthracycline derivative is not administered to the patient with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. One or more additional chemotherapeutic agents may also be administered to the patient. The cancer is preferably characterized by overexpression of ErbB2.

The invention further provides an article of manufacture comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody and a package insert instructing the user of the composition to administer the anti-ErbB2 antibody composition and a chemotherapeutic agent to a patient. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is other than an anthracycline, and is preferably a taxoid, such as TAXOL®. In still another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline, including but not limited to, doxorubicin or epirubicin. In yet another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is an anthracycline and the package insert further instructs the user to administer a cardioprotectant.

The methods and compositions of the invention comprise an anti-ErbB2 antibody and include a humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody. Thus, the invention further pertains to a composition comprising an antibody that binds ErbB2 and the use of the antibody for treating ErbB2 expressing cancer, e.g., ErbB2 overexpressing cancer, in a human. The invention also pertains to the use of the antibody for treating EGFR expressing cancer. Preferably the antibody is a monoclonal antibody 4D5, e.g., humanized 4D5 (and preferably huMAb4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody); or monoclonal antibody 2C4, e.g., humanized 2C4. The antibody may be an intact antibody (e.g., an intact IgG_1 antibody) or an antibody fragment (e.g., a Fab, $F(ab')_2$, diabody, and the like). The variable light chain and variable heavy chain regions of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody 2C4 are shown in FIGS. **5**A and **5**B.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** shows epitope-mapping of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 as determined by truncation mutant analysis and site-directed mutagenesis (Nakamura et al. *J. of Virology* 67(10):6179-6191 [October 1993]; Renz et al. *J. Cell Biol.* 125(6):1395-1406 [June 1994]). The anti-proliferative MAbs 4D5 and 3H4 bind adjacent to the transmembrane domain. The various ErbB2-ECD truncations or point mutations were prepared from cDNA using polymerase chain reaction technology. The ErbB2 mutants were expressed as gD fusion proteins in a mammalian expression plasmid. This expression plasmid uses the cytomegalovirus promoter/enhancer with SV40 termination and polyadenylation signals located downstream of the inserted cDNA. Plasmid DNA was transfected into 293S cells. One day following transfection, the cells were metabolically labeled overnight in methionine and cysteine-free, low glucose DMEM containing 1% dialyzed fetal bovine serum and 25 μCi each of ^{35}S methionine and ^{35}S cysteine. Supernatants were harvested either the ErbB2 MAbs or control antibodies were added to the supernatant and incubated 2-4 hours at 4° C. The complexes were precipitated, applied to a 10-20% Tricine SDS gradient gel and electrophoresed at 100 V. The gel was electroblotted onto a membrane and analyzed by autoradiography. SEQ ID NOs:8 and 9 depict the 3H4 and 4D5 epitopes, respectively.

FIG. **2** depicts with underlining the amino acid sequence of Domain 1 of ErbB2 (SEQ ID NO:1). Bold amino acids indicate the location of the epitope recognized by MAbs 7C2 and 7F3 as determined by deletion mapping, i.e. the "7C2/7F3 epitope" (SEQ ID NO:2).

FIG. **3** is a graph of anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®) trough serum concentration (μg/ml, mean±SE, dark circles) by week from week 2 through week 36 for ErbB2 overexpressing patients treated with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody at 4 mg/kg initial dose, followed by 2 mg/kg weekly. The number of patients at each time point is represented by "n" (white squares).

FIG. **4**A is a linear plot of tumor volume changes over time in mice treated with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. FIG. **4**B is a semi-logarithmic plot of the same data as in FIG. **4**A such that the variation in tumor volume for the treated animals is observed more readily.

FIGS. **5**A and **5**B depict alignments of the amino acid sequences of the variable light (V_L) (FIG. **5**A) and variable heavy (V_H) (FIG. **5**B) domains of murine monoclonal antibody 2C4 (SEQ ID Nos. 10 and 11, respectively); V_L and V_H domains of humanized Fab version 574 (SEQ ID Nos. 12 and 13, respectively), and human V_L and V_H consensus frameworks (hum κ1, light kappa subgroup I; humIII, heavy subgroup III) (SEQ ID Nos. 14 and 15, respectively). Asterisks identify differences between humanized Fab version 574 and murine monoclonal antibody 2C4 or between humanized Fab version 574 and the human framework. Complementarity Determining Regions (CDRs) are in brackets. Humanized Fab version 574, with the changes ArgH71Val, AspH73Arg and IleH69Leu, appears to have binding restored to that of the original chimeric 2C4 Fab fragment. Additional FR and/or CDR residues, such as L2, L54, L55, L56, H35 and/or H48, may be modified (e.g.

substituted as follows—IleL2Thr; ArgL54Leu; TyrL55Glu; ThrL56Ser; AspH35Ser; and ValH48Ile) in order to further refine or enhance binding of the humanized antibody. Alternatively, or additionally, the humanized antibody may be affinity matured in order to further improve or refine its affinity and/or other biological activities.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

I. Definitions

An "ErbB receptor" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes EGFR, HER2, ErbB3 and ErbB4 receptors as well as TEGFR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,708,156) and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a native sequence ErbB receptor or an amino acid sequence variant thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 56:881-914 (1987), including variants thereof (e.g. a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al. *PNAS (USA)* 87:4207-4211 (1990)). erbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product. Examples of antibodies which bind to EGFR include MAb 579 (ATCC CRL HB 8506), MAb 455 (ATCC CRL HB8507), MAb 225 (ATCC CRL 8508), MAb 528 (ATCC CRL 8509) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,533, Mendelsohn et al.) and variants thereof, such as chimerized 225 (C225) and reshaped human 225 (H225) (see, WO 96/40210, Imclone Systems Inc.).

"ErbB3" and "HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968 as well as Kraus et al. *PNAS (USA)* 86:9193-9197 (1989), including variants thereof. Examples of antibodies which bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511 (Akita and Sliwkowski), e.g. the 8B8 antibody (ATCC HB 12070) or a humanized variant thereof.

The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in EP Pat Appln No 599,274; Plowman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., *Nature,* 366:473-475 (1993), including variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in WO 99/19488.

The terms "HER2", "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" are used interchangeably. Unless indicated otherwise, the terms "ErbB2" "c-Erb-B2" and "HER2" when used herein refer to the human protein, and "erbB2," "c-erb-B2," and "her2" refer to human gene. The human erbB2 gene and ErbB2 protein are, for example, described in Semba et al., *PNAS (USA)* 82:6497-6501 (1985) and Yamamoto et al. *Nature* 319:230-234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363). ErbB2 comprises four domains (Domains 1-4).

The "epitope 4D5" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) binds. This epitope is close to the transmembrane region of ErbB2. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 4D5 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed (see FIG. **1**) to assess whether the antibody binds to the 4D5 epitope of ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more residues in the region from about residue 529, e.g. about residue 561 to about residue 625, inclusive).

The "epitope 3H4" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 3H4 binds. This epitope is shown in FIG. **1**, and includes residues from about 541 to about 599, inclusive, in the amino acid sequence of ErbB2 extracellular domain.

The "epitope 7C2/7F3" is the region at the N-terminus of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the 7C2 and/or 7F3 antibodies (each deposited with the ATCC, see below) bind. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 7C2/7F3 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to establish whether the antibody binds to the 7C2/7F3 epitope on ErbB2 (i.e. any one or more of residues in the region from about residue 22 to about residue 53 of ErbB2; SEQ ID NO:2).

The term "induces cell death" or "capable of inducing cell death" refers to the ability of the antibody to make a viable cell become nonviable. The "cell" here is one which expresses the ErbB2 receptor, especially where the cell overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. A cell which "overexpresses" ErbB2 has significantly higher than normal ErbB2 levels compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type. Preferably, the cell is a cancer cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Cell death in vitro may be determined in the absence of complement and immune effector cells to distinguish cell death induced by antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Thus, the assay for cell death may be performed using heat inactivated serum (i.e. in the absence of complement) and in the absence of immune effector cells. To determine whether the antibody is able to induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as evaluated by uptake of propidium iodide (PI), trypan blue (see Moore et al. Cytotechnology 17:1-11 [1995]) or 7AAD can be assessed relative to untreated cells. Preferred cell death-inducing antibodies are those which induce PI uptake in the "PI uptake assay in BT474 cells".

The phrase "induces apoptosis" or "capable of inducing apoptosis" refers to the ability of the antibody to induce programmed cell death as determined by binding of annexin V, fragmentation of DNA, cell shrinkage, dilation of endoplasmic reticulum, cell fragmentation, and/or formation of membrane vesicles (called apoptotic bodies). The cell is one which overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably the "cell" is a tumor cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic or bladder cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SKBR3, BT474, Calu 3 cell, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Various methods are available for evaluating the cellular events associated with apoptosis. For example, phosphatidyl serine (PS) translocation can be measured by annexin binding; DNA fragmentation can be evaluated through DNA laddering as disclosed in the example herein; and nuclear/chromatin condensation along with DNA fragmentation can be evaluated by any increase in hypodiploid cells. Preferably, the antibody which induces apoptosis is

one which results in about 2 to 50 fold, preferably about 5 to 50 fold, and most preferably about 10 to 50 fold, induction of annexin binding relative to untreated cell in an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" (see below).

Sometimes the pro-apoptotic antibody will be one which blocks HRG binding/activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 complex (e.g. 7F3 antibody). In other situations, the antibody is one which does not significantly block activation of the ErbB2/ErbB3 receptor complex by HRG (e.g. 7C2). Further, the antibody may be one like 7C2 which, while inducing apoptosis, does not induce a large reduction in the percent of cells in S phase (e.g. one which only induces about 0-10% reduction in the percent of these cells relative to control).

The antibody of interest may be one like 7C2 which binds specifically to human ErbB2 and does not significantly cross-react with other proteins such as those encoded by the erbB1, erbB3 and/or erbB4 genes. Sometimes, the antibody may not significantly cross-react with the rat neu protein, e.g., as described in Schecter et al. *Nature* 312:513 (1984) and Drebin et al., *Nature* 312:545-548 (1984). In such embodiments, the extent of binding of the antibody to these proteins (e.g., cell surface binding to endogenous receptor) will be less than about 10% as determined by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA).

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide which activates the ErbB2-ErbB3 and ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complexes (i.e. induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the complex upon binding thereto). Various heregulin polypeptides encompassed by this term are disclosed in Holmes et al., *Science,* 256:1205-1210 (1992); WO 92/20798; Wen et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.,* 14(3):1909-1919 (1994); and Marchionni et al., *Nature,* 362:312-318 (1993), for example. The term includes biologically active fragments and/or variants of a naturally occurring HRG polypeptide, such as an EGF-like domain fragment thereof (e.g. $HRG\beta1_{177-244}$).

The "ErbB2-ErbB3 protein complex" and "ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complex" are noncovalently associated oligomers of the ErbB2 receptor and the ErbB3 receptor or ErbB4 receptor, respectively. The complexes form when a cell expressing both of these receptors is exposed to HRG and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., *J. Biol. Chem.,* 269(20):14661-14665 (1994).

"Antibodies" (Abs) and "immunoglobulins" (Igs) are glycoproteins having the same structural characteristics. While antibodies exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen, immunoglobulins include both antibodies and other antibody-like molecules which lack antigen specificity. Polypeptides of the latter kind are, for example, produced at low levels by the lymph system and at increased levels by myelomas.

"Native antibodies" and "native immunoglobulins" are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies among the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light-chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light- and heavy-chain variable domains.

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity determining regions (CDRs) or hypervariable regions both in the light-chain and the heavy-chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework region (FR). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FR regions, largely adopting a β-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *NIH Publ. No.* 91-3242, Vol. I, pages 647-669 [1991]). The constant domains are not involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen-binding fragments, called "Fab" fragments, each with a single antigen-binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. Pepsin treatment yields an $F(ab')_2$ fragment that has two antigen-combining sites and is still capable of cross-linking antigen.

"Fv" is the minimum antibody fragment which contains a complete antigen-recognition and -binding site. This region consists of a dimer of one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain in tight, non-covalent association. It is in this configuration that the three CDRs of each variable domain interact to define an antigen-binding site on the surface of the V_H-V_L dimer. Collectively, the six CDRs confer antigen-binding specificity to the antibody. However, even a single variable domain (or half of an Fv comprising only three CDRs specific for an antigen) has the ability to recognize and bind antigen, although at a lower affinity than the entire binding site.

The Fab fragment also contains the constant domain of the light chain and the first constant domain (CH1) of the heavy chain. Fab' fragments differ from Fab fragments by the addition of a few residues at the carboxy terminus of the heavy chain CH1 domain including one or more cysteines from the antibody hinge region. Fab'-SH is the designation herein for Fab' in which the cysteine residue(s) of the constant domains bear a free thiol group. $F(ab')_2$ antibody fragments originally were produced as pairs of Fab' fragments which have hinge cysteines between them. Other chemical couplings of antibody fragments are also known.

The "light chains" of antibodies (immunoglobulins) from any vertebrate species can be assigned to one of two clearly distinct types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequences of their constant domains.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different

classes of immunoglobulins are called α, δ, ∈, γ, and μ, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

The term "antibody" is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers intact monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g. bispecific antibodies) formed from at least two intact antibodies, and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of an intact antibody, preferably the antigen binding or variable region of the intact antibody. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, and Fv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies (Zapata et al., *Protein Eng.* 8(10):1057-1062 [1995]); single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to conventional (polyclonal) antibody preparations which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they are synthesized by the hybridoma culture, uncontaminated by other immunoglobulins. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies" may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991), for example.

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 81:6851-6855 [1984]).

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric immunoglobulins, immunoglobulin chains or fragments thereof (such as Fv, Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$ or other antigen-binding subsequences of antibodies) which contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementarity determining region (CDR) of the recipient are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat or rabbit having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues which are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences. These modifications are made to further refine and maximize antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the CDRs correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Reichmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.,* 2:593-596 (1992). The humanized antibody includes a PRIMATIZED™ antibody wherein the antigen-binding region of the antibody is derived from an antibody produced by immunizing macaque monkeys with the antigen of interest.

"Single-chain Fv" or "sFv" antibody fragments comprise the V_H and V_L domains of antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Preferably, the Fv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains which enables the sFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding. For a review of sFv see Plückthun in *The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies*, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 269-315 (1994).

The term "diabodies" refers to small antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites, which fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) in the same polypeptide chain (V_H-V_L). By using a linker that is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain, the domains are forced to pair with the complementary domains of another chain and create two antigen-binding sites. Diabodies are described more fully in, for example, EP 404,097; WO 93/11161; and Hollinger et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 90:6444-6448 (1993).

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the antibody will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

As used herein, the term "salvage receptor binding epitope" refers to an epitope of the Fc region of an IgG molecule (e.g., IgG_1, IgG_2, IgG_3, or IgG_4) that is responsible for increasing the in vivo serum half-life of the IgG molecule.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of

treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the anti-ErbB2 antibody. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time to disease progression (TTP), or determining the response rates (RR) (see Example 1, below). Therapeutically effective amount also refers to a target serum concentration, such as a trough serum concentration, that has been shown to be effective in suppressing disease symptoms when maintained for a period of time.

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90} and Re^{186}), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclosphosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphaoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibiotics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabicin, caminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elformithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK®; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxanes, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and docetaxel (TAXOTERE®, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, and toremifene (Fareston); and anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, and goserelin; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB2-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB2 overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (WB Saunders:

Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

"Doxorubicin" is an athracycline antibiotic. The full chemical name of doxorubicin is (8S-cis)-10-[(3-amino-2,3,6-trideoxy-α-L-lyxo-hexopyranosyl)oxy]-7,8,9,10-tetrahydro-6,8,11-trihydroxy-8-(hydroxyacetyl)-1-methoxy-5,12-naphthacenedione.

The term "cytokine" is a generic term for proteins released by one cell population which act on another cell as intercellular mediators. Examples of such cytokines are lymphokines, monokines, and traditional polypeptide hormones. Included among the cytokines are growth hormone such as human growth hormone, N-methionyl human growth hormone, and bovine growth hormone; parathyroid hormone; thyroxine; insulin; proinsulin; relaxin; prorelaxin; glycoprotein hormones such as follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH); hepatic growth factor; fibroblast growth factor; prolactin; placental lactogen; tumor necrosis factor-α and -β; mullerian-inhibiting substance; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor; integrin; thrombopoietin (TPO); nerve growth factors such as NGF-β; platelet-growth factor; transforming growth factors (TGFs) such as TGF-α and TGF-β; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II; erythropoietin (EPO); osteoinductive factors; interferons such as interferon-α, -β, and -γ; colony stimulating factors (CSFs) such as macrophage-CSF (M-CSF); granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF); and granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF); interleukins (ILs) such as IL-1, IL-1α, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12; a tumor necrosis factor such as TNF-α or TNF-β; and other polypeptide factors including LIF and kit ligand (KL). As used herein, the term cytokine includes proteins from natural sources or from recombinant cell culture and biologically active equivalents of the native sequence cytokines.

The term "prodrug" as used in this application refers to a precursor or derivative form of a pharmaceutically active substance that is less cytotoxic to tumor cells compared to the parent drug and is capable of being enzymatically activated or converted into the more active parent form. See, e.g., Wilman, "Prodrugs in Cancer Chemotherapy" *Biochemical Society Transactions,* 14, pp. 375-382, 615th Meeting Belfast (1986) and Stella et al., "Prodrugs: A Chemical Approach to Targeted Drug Delivery," *Directed Drug Delivery*, Borchardt et al., (ed.), pp. 247-267, Humana Press (1985). The prodrugs of this invention include, but are not limited to, phosphate-containing prodrugs, thiophosphate-containing prodrugs, sulfate-containing prodrugs, peptide-containing prodrugs, D-amino acid-modified prodrugs, glycosylated prodrugs, β-lactam-containing prodrugs, optionally substituted phenoxyacetamide-containing prodrugs or optionally substituted phenylacetamide-containing prodrugs, 5-fluorocytosine and other 5-fluorouridine prodrugs which can be converted into the more active cytotoxic free drug. Examples of cytotoxic drugs that can be derivatized into a prodrug form for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, those chemotherapeutic agents described above:

By "solid phase" is meant a non-aqueous matrix to which the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention can adhere. Examples of solid phases encompassed herein include those formed partially or entirely of glass (e.g., controlled pore glass), polysaccharides (e.g., agarose), polyacrylamides, polystyrene, polyvinyl alcohol and silicones. In certain embodiments, depending on the context, the solid phase can comprise the well of an assay plate; in others it is a purification column (e.g., an affinity chromatography column). This term also includes a discontinuous solid phase of discrete particles, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,275,149.

A "liposome" is a small vesicle composed of various types of lipids, phospholipids and/or surfactant which is useful for delivery of a drug (such as the anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein and, optionally, a chemotherapeutic agent) to a mammal. The components of the liposome are commonly arranged in a bilayer formation, similar to the lipid arrangement of biological membranes.

The term "package insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

The term "serum concentration," "serum drug concentration," or "serum HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody concentration" refers to the concentration of a drug, such as HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, in the blood serum of an animal or human patient being treated with the drug. Serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, for example, is preferably determined by immunoassay. Preferably, the immunoassay is an ELISA according to the procedure disclosed herein.

The term "peak serum concentration" refers to the maximal serum drug concentration shortly after delivery of the drug into the animal or human patient, after the drug has been distributed throughout the blood system, but before significant tissue distribution, metabolism or excretion of drug by the body has occurred.

The term "trough serum concentration" refers to the serum drug concentration at a time after delivery of a previous dose and immediately prior to delivery of the next subsequent dose of drug in a series of doses. Generally, the trough serum concentration is a minimum sustained efficacious drug concentration in the series of drug administrations. Also, the trough serum concentration is frequently targeted as a minimum serum concentration for efficacy because it represents the serum concentration at which another dose of drug is to be administered as part of the treatment regimen. If the delivery of drug is by intravenous administration, the trough serum concentration is most preferably attained within 1 day of a front loading initial drug delivery. If the delivery of drug is by subcutaneous administration, the peak serum concentration is preferably attained in 3 days or less. According to the invention, the trough serum concentration is preferably attained in 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, most preferably in 1 week or less, including 1 day or less using any of the drug delivery methods disclosed herein.

The term "intravenous infusion" refers to introduction of a drug into the vein of an animal or human patient over a period of time greater than approximately 5 minutes, preferably between approximately 30 to 90 minutes, although, according to the invention, intravenous infusion is alternatively administered for 10 hours or less.

The term "intravenous bolus" or "intravenous push" refers to drug administration into a vein of an animal or human such that the body receives the drug in approximately 15 minutes or less, preferably 5 minutes or less.

The term "subcutaneous administration" refers to introduction of a drug under the skin of an animal or human patient, preferable within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, by relatively slow, sustained delivery

from a drug receptacle. The pocket may be created by pinching or drawing the skin up and away from underlying tissue.

The term "subcutaneous infusion" refers to introduction of a drug under the skin of an animal or human patient, preferably within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, by relatively slow, sustained delivery from a drug receptacle for a period of time including, but not limited to, 30 minutes or less, or 90 minutes or less. Optionally, the infusion may be made by subcutaneous implantation of a drug delivery pump implanted under the skin of the animal or human patient, wherein the pump delivers a predetermined amount of drug for a predetermined period of time, such as 30 minutes, 90 minutes, or a time period spanning the length of the treatment regimen.

The term "subcutaneous bolus" refers to drug administration beneath the skin of an animal or human patient, where bolus drug delivery is preferably less than approximately 15 minutes, more preferably less than 5 minutes, and most preferably less than 60 seconds. Administration is preferably within a pocket between the skin and underlying tissue, where the pocket is created, for example, by pinching or drawing the skin up and away from underlying tissue.

The term "front loading" when referring to drug administration is meant to describe an initially higher dose followed by the same or lower doses at intervals. The initial higher dose or doses are meant to more rapidly increase the animal or human patient's serum drug concentration to an efficacious target serum concentration. According to the present invention, front loading is achieved by an initial dose or doses delivered over three weeks or less that causes the animal's or patient's serum concentration to reach a target serum trough concentration. Preferably, the initial front loading dose or series of doses is administered in two weeks or less, more preferably in 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. Most preferably, where the initial dose is a single dose and is not followed by a subsequent maintenance dose for at least 1 week, the initial dose is administered in 1 day or less. Where the initial dose is a series of doses, each dose is separated by at least 3 hours, but not more than 3 weeks or less, preferably 2 weeks or less, more preferably 1 week or less, most preferably 1 day or less. To avoid adverse immune reaction to an antibody drug such as an anti-ErbB2 antibody (e.g., HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) in an animal or patient who has not previously been treated with the antibody, it may be preferable to deliver initial doses of the antibody by intravenous infusion. The present invention includes front loading drug delivery of initial and maintenance doses by infusion or bolus administration, intravenously or subcutaneously.

Published information related to anti-ErbB2 antibodies includes the following issued patents and published applications: PCT/US89/00051, published Jan. 5, 1989; PCT/US90/02697, published May 18, 1990; EU 0474727 issued Jul. 23, 1997; DE 69031120.6, issued Jul. 23, 1997; PCT/US97/18385, published Oct. 9, 1997; SA 97/9185, issued Oct. 14, 1997; U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171, issued Oct. 14, 1997; U.S. Pat. No. 5,720,937, issued Feb. 24, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,720,954, issued Feb. 24, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,725,856, issued Mar. 10, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,770,195, issued Jun. 23, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997, issued Jun. 30, 1998; PCT/US98/2626, published Dec. 10, 1998; and PCT/US99/06673, published Mar. 26, 1999, each of which patents and publications is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety.

II. Production of Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

A description follows as to exemplary techniques for the production of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention. The ErbB2 antigen to be used for production of antibodies may be, e.g., a soluble form of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 or a portion thereof, containing the desired epitope. Alternatively, cells expressing ErbB2 at their cell surface (e.g. NIH-3T3 cells transformed to overexpress ErbB2; or a carcinoma cell line such as SKBR3 cells, see Stancovski et al., *PNAS* (*USA*) 88:8691-8695 [1991]) can be used to generate antibodies. Other forms of ErbB2 useful for generating antibodies will be apparent to those skilled in the art.

(i) Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl_2$, or $R^1N{=}C{=}NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 μg or 5 μg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with ⅕ to ⅒ the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(ii) Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies are obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies.

For example, the monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture

medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.,* 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 [Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987]).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

The binding affinity of the monoclonal antibody can, for example, be determined by the Scatchard analysis of Munson et al., *Anal. Biochem.,* 107:220 (1980).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 [Academic Press, 1986]). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of murine antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Review articles on recombinant expression in bacteria of DNA encoding the antibody include Skerra et al., *Curr. Opinion in Immunol.,* 5:256-262 (1993) and Plückthun, *Immunol. Revs.,* 130:151-188 (1992).

In a further embodiment, antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature,* 348:552-554 (1990). Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352: 624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology,* 10:779-783 [1992]), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.,* 21:2265-2266 [1993]). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 81:6851 [1984]), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

(iii) Humanized and Human Antibodies

Methods for humanizing non-human antibodies are well known in the art. Preferably, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., *Science,* 239:1534-1536 [1988]), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework region (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 196:901 [1987]). Another method uses a particular framework region derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immnol.,* 151:2623 [1993]).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer

programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature,* 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., *Year in Immuno.,* 7:33 (1993). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 227:381 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 [1991]).

(iv) Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al., *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107-117 (1992) and Brennan et al., *Science,* 229:81 [1985]). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form $F(ab')_2$ fragments (Carter et al., Bio/Technology 10:163-167 [1992]). According to another approach, $F(ab')_2$ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv). See WO 93/16185.

(v) Bispecific Antibodies

Bispecific antibodies are antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of the ErbB2 protein. For example, one arm may bind an epitope in Domain 1 of ErbB2 such as the 7C2/7F3 epitope, the other may bind a different ErbB2 epitope, e.g. the 4D5 epitope. Other such antibodies may combine an ErbB2 binding site with binding site(s) for EGFR, ErbB3 and/or ErbB4. Alternatively, an anti-ErbB2 arm may be combined with an arm which binds to a triggering molecule on a leukocyte such as a T-cell receptor molecule (e.g. CD2 or CD3), or Fc receptors for IgG (FcγR), such as FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16) so as to focus cellular defense mechanisms to the ErbB2-expressing cell. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express ErbB2. These antibodies possess an ErbB2-binding arm and an arm which binds the cytotoxic agent (e.g. saporin, anti-interferon-α, vinca alkaloid, ricin A chain, methotrexate or radioactive isotope hapten). Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments (e.g. $F(ab')_2$ bispecific antibodies).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature,* 305:537-539 [1983]). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.,* 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology,* 121:210 (1986).

According to another approach described in WO96/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science,* 229: 81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate $F(ab')_2$ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli*, which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.,* 175: 217-225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody $F(ab')_2$ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.,* 148(5):1547-1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:6444-6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.,* 152:5368 (1994).

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al., *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

(vi) Screening for Antibodies with the Desired Properties

Techniques for generating antibodies have been described above. Those antibodies having the characteristics described herein are selected.

To select for antibodies which induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as indicated by, e.g., PI, trypan blue or 7AAD uptake is assessed relative to control. The preferred assay is the "PI uptake assay using BT474 cells". According to this assay, BT474 cells (which can be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection [Rockville, Md.]) are cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (D-MEM): Ham's F-12 (50:50) supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS (Hyclone) and 2 mM L-glutamine. (Thus, the assay is performed in the absence of complement and immune effector cells). The BT474 cells are seeded at a density of 3×10^6 per dish in 100×20 mm dishes and allowed to attach overnight. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the appropriate MAb. The cells are incubated for a 3 day time period. Following each treatment, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 5 minutes at 4° C., the pellet resuspended in 3 ml ice cold Ca^{2+} binding buffer (10 mM Hepes, pH 7.4, 140 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM $CaCl_2$) and aliquoted into 35 mm strainer-capped 12×75 tubes (1 ml per tube, 3 tubes per treatment group) for removal of cell clumps. Tubes then receive PI (10 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of cell death as determined by PI uptake are selected.

In order to select for antibodies which induce apoptosis, an "annexin binding assay using BT474 cells" is available. The BT474 cells are cultured and seeded in dishes as discussed in the preceding paragraph. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 μg/ml of the MAb. Following a three day incubation period, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged, resuspended in Ca^{2+} binding buffer and aliquoted into tubes as discussed above for the cell death assay. Tubes then receive labeled annexin (e.g. annexin V-FTIC) (1 μg/ml). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of annexin binding relative to control are selected as apoptosis-inducing antibodies.

In addition to the annexin binding assay, a "DNA staining assay using BT474 cells" is available. In order to perform this assay, BT474 cells which have been treated with the antibody of interest as described in the preceding two paragraphs are incubated with 9 μg/ml HOECHST 33342™ for 2 hr at 37° C., then analyzed on an EPICS ELITE™ flow cytometer (Coulter Corporation) using MODFIT LT™ software (Verity Software House). Antibodies which induce a change in the percentage of apoptotic cells which is 2 fold or greater (and preferably 3 fold or greater) than untreated cells (up to 100% apoptotic cells) may be selected as pro-apoptotic antibodies using this assay.

To screen for antibodies which bind to an epitope on ErbB2 bound by an antibody of interest, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed by methods known in the art.

To identify anti-ErbB2 antibodies which inhibit growth of SKBR3 cells in cell culture by 50-100%, the SKBR3 assay described in WO 89/06692 can be performed. According to this assay, SKBR3 cells are grown in a 1:1 mixture of F12 and DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine

serum, glutamine and penicillinstreptomycin. The SKBR3 cells are plated at 20,000 cells in a 35 mm cell culture dish (2 mls/35 mm dish). 2.5 μg/ml of the anti-ErbB2 antibody is added per dish. After six days, the number of cells, compared to untreated cells are counted using an electronic COULTER™ cell counter. Those antibodies which inhibit growth of the SKBR3 cells by 50-100% are selected for combination with the apoptotic antibodies as desired.

(vii) Effector Function Engineering

It may be desirable to modify the antibody of the invention with respect to effector function, so as to enhance the effectiveness of the antibody in treating cancer, for example. For example, cysteine residue(s) may be introduced in the Fc region, thereby allowing interchain disulfide bond formation in this region. The homodimeric antibody thus generated may have improved internalization capability and/or increased complement-mediated cell killing and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). See Caron et al., *J. Exp Med.* 176:1191-1195 (1992) and Shopes, B. *J. Immunol.* 148:2918-2922 (1992). Homodimeric antibodies with enhanced anti-tumor activity may also be prepared using heterobifunctional cross-linkers as described in Wolff et al. *Cancer Research* 53:2560-2565 (1993). Alternatively, an antibody can be engineered which has dual Fc regions and may thereby have enhanced complement lysis and ADCC capabilities. See Stevenson et al. *Anti-Cancer Drug Design* 3:219-230 (1989).

(viii) Immunoconjugates

The invention also pertains to immunoconjugates comprising the antibody described herein conjugated to a cytotoxic agent such as a chemotherapeutic agent, toxin (e.g. an enzymatically active toxin of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof), or a radioactive isotope (i.e., a radioconjugate).

Chemotherapeutic agents useful in the generation of such immunoconjugates have been described above. Enzymatically active toxins and fragments thereof which can be used include diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, *Aleurites fordii* proteins, dianthin proteins, *Phytolaca americana* proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), *momordica charantia* inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin and the tricothecenes. A variety of radionuclides are available for the production of radioconjugated anti-ErbB2 antibodies. Examples include ^{212}Bi, ^{131}I, ^{131}In, ^{90}Y and ^{186}Re.

Conjugates of the antibody and cytotoxic agent are made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithiol) propionate (SPDP), iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCL), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutaraldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as bis(p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine), bis-diazonium derivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as tolyene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). For example, a ricin immunotoxin can be prepared as described in Vitetta et al. *Science* 238: 1098 (1987). Carbon-14-labeled 1-isothiocyanatobenzyl-3-methyldiethylene triaminepentaacetic acid (MX-DTPA) is an exemplary chelating agent for conjugation of radionucleotide to the antibody. See WO 94/11026.

In another embodiment, the antibody may be conjugated to a "receptor" (such streptavidin) for utilization in tumor pretargeting wherein the antibody-receptor conjugate is administered to the patient, followed by removal of unbound conjugate from the circulation using a clearing agent and then administration of a "ligand" (e.g. avidin) which is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g. a radionucleotide).

(ix) Immunoliposomes

The anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein may also be formulated as immunoliposomes. Liposomes containing the antibody are prepared by methods known in the art, such as described in Epstein et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 82:3688 (1985); Hwang et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 77:4030 (1980); and U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545. Liposomes with enhanced circulation time are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,556.

Particularly useful liposomes can be generated by the reverse phase evaporation method with a lipid composition comprising phosphatidylcholine, cholesterol and PEG-derivatized phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE). Liposomes are extruded through filters of defined pore size to yield liposomes with the desired diameter. Fab' fragments of the antibody of the present invention can be conjugated to the liposomes as described in Martin et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 257: 286-288 (1982) via a disulfide interchange reaction. A chemotherapeutic agent is optionally contained within the liposome. See Gabizon et al., *J. National Cancer Inst.* 81(19)1484 (1989).

(x) Antibody Dependent Enzyme Mediated Prodrug Therapy (ADEPT)

The antibodies of the present invention may also be used in ADEPT by conjugating the antibody to a prodrug-activating enzyme which converts a prodrug (e.g. a peptidyl chemotherapeutic agent, see WO 81/01145) to an active anti-cancer drug. See, for example, WO 88/07378 and U.S. Pat. No. 4,975,278.

The enzyme component of the immunoconjugate useful for ADEPT includes any enzyme capable of acting on a prodrug in such a way so as to covert it into its more active, cytotoxic form.

Enzymes that are useful in the method of this invention include, but are not limited to, alkaline phosphatase useful for converting phosphate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; arylsulfatase useful for converting sulfate-containing prodrugs into free drugs; cytosine deaminase useful for converting non-toxic 5-fluorocytosine into the anti-cancer drug, 5-fluorouracil; proteases, such as serratia protease, thermolysin, subtilisin, carboxypeptidases and cathepsins (such as cathepsins B and L), that are useful for converting peptide-containing prodrugs into free drugs; D-alanylcarboxypeptidases, useful for converting prodrugs that contain D-amino acid substituents; carbohydrate-cleaving enzymes such as β-galactosidase and neuraminidase useful for converting glycosylated prodrugs into free drugs; β-lactamase useful for converting drugs derivatized with β-lactams into free drugs; and penicillin amidases, such as penicillin V amidase or penicillin G amidase, useful for converting drugs derivatized at their amine nitrogens with phenoxyacetyl or phenylacetyl groups, respectively, into free drugs. Alternatively, antibodies with enzymatic activity, also known in the art as "abzymes", can be used to convert the prodrugs of the invention into free active drugs (see, e.g., Massey, *Nature* 328: 457-458 [1987]). Antibody-abzyme conjugates can be prepared as described herein for delivery of the abzyme to a tumor cell population.

The enzymes of this invention can be covalently bound to the anti-ErbB2 antibodies by techniques well known in the art such as the use of the heterobifunctional crosslinking reagents discussed above. Alternatively, fusion proteins

comprising at least the antigen binding region of an antibody of the invention linked to at least a functionally active portion of an enzyme of the invention can be constructed using recombinant DNA techniques well known in the art (see, e.g., Neuberger et al., *Nature*, 312: 604-608 [1984]).

(xi) Antibody-Salvage Receptor Binding Epitope Fusions

In certain embodiments of the invention, it may be desirable to use an antibody fragment, rather than an intact antibody, to increase tumor penetration, for example. In this case, it may be desirable to modify the antibody fragment in order to increase its serum half life. This may be achieved, for example, by incorporation of a salvage receptor binding epitope into the antibody fragment (e.g. by mutation of the appropriate region in the antibody fragment or by incorporating the epitope into a peptide tag that is then fused to the antibody fragment at either end or in the middle, e.g., by DNA or peptide synthesis).

A systematic method for preparing such an antibody variant having an increased in vivo half-life comprises several steps. The first involves identifying the sequence and conformation of a salvage receptor binding epitope of an Fc region of an IgG molecule. Once this epitope is identified, the sequence of the antibody of interest is modified to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. After the sequence is mutated, the antibody variant is tested to see if it has a longer in vivo half-life than that of the original antibody. If the antibody variant does not have a longer in vivo half-life upon testing, its sequence is further altered to include the sequence and conformation of the identified binding epitope. The altered antibody is tested for longer in vivo half-life, and this process is continued until a molecule is obtained that exhibits a longer in vivo half-life.

The salvage receptor binding epitope being thus incorporated into the antibody of interest is any suitable such epitope as defined above, and its nature will depend, e.g., on the type of antibody being modified. The transfer is made such that the antibody of interest still possesses the biological activities described herein.

The epitope preferably constitutes a region wherein any one or more amino acid residues from one or two loops of a Fc domain are transferred to an analogous position of the antibody fragment. Even more preferably, three or more residues from one or two loops of the Fc domain are transferred. Still more preferred, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region (e.g., of an IgG) and transferred to the CH1, CH3, or V_H region, or more than one such region, of the antibody. Alternatively, the epitope is taken from the CH2 domain of the Fc region and transferred to the C_L region or V_L region, or both, of the antibody fragment.

In one most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope comprises the sequence (5' to 3'): PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3), and optionally further comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of HQSLGTQ (SEQ ID NO:4), HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7), particularly where the antibody fragment is a Fab or $F(ab)_2$. In another most preferred embodiment, the salvage receptor binding epitope is a polypeptide containing the sequence(s) (5' to 3'): HQNLSDGK (SEQ ID NO:5), HQNISDGK (SEQ ID NO:6), or VISSHLGQ (SEQ ID NO:7) and the sequence: PKNSSMISNTP (SEQ ID NO:3).

(xii) Purification of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

When using recombinant techniques, the antibody can be produced intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. If the antibody is produced intracellularly, as a first step, the particulate debris, either host cells or lysed fragments, is removed, for example, by centrifugation or ultrafiltration. Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163-167 (1992) describe a procedure for isolating antibodies which are secreted to the periplasmic space of *E. coli*. Briefly, cell paste is thawed in the presence of sodium acetate (pH 3.5), EDTA, and phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) over about 30 min. Cell debris can be removed by centrifugation. Where the antibody is secreted into the medium, supernatants from such expression systems are preferably first concentrated using a commercially available protein concentration filter, for example, an Amicon or Millipore Pellicon ultrafiltration unit. A protease inhibitor such as PMSF may be included in any of the foregoing steps to inhibit proteolysis and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants.

The antibody composition prepared from the cells can be purified using, for example, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, and affinity chromatography, with affinity chromatography being the preferred purification technique. The suitability of protein A as an affinity ligand depends on the species and isotype of any immunoglobulin Fc domain that is present in the antibody. Protein A can be used to purify antibodies that are based on human γ1, γ2, or γ4 heavy chains (Lindmark et al., *J. Immunol. Meth.* 62:1-13 [1983]). Protein G is recommended for all mouse isotypes and for human γ3 (Guss et al., *EMBO J.* 5:15671575 [1986]). The matrix to which the affinity ligand is attached is most often agarose, but other matrices are available. Mechanically stable matrices such as controlled pore glass or poly(styrenedivinyl)benzene allow for faster flow rates and shorter processing times than can be achieved with agarose. Where the antibody comprises a C_H3 domain, the Bakerbond ABX™ resin (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, N.J.) is useful for purification. Other techniques for protein purification such as fractionation on an ion-exchange column, ethanol precipitation, Reverse Phase HPLC, chromatography on silica, chromatography on heparin SEPHAROSE™ chromatography on an anion or cation exchange resin (such as a polyaspartic acid column), chromatofocusing, SDS-PAGE, and ammonium sulfate precipitation are also available depending on the antibody to be recovered.

Following any preliminary purification step(s), the mixture comprising the antibody of interest and contaminants may be subjected to low pH hydrophobic interaction chromatography using an elution buffer at a pH between about 2.5-4.5, preferably performed at low salt concentrations (e.g. from about 0-0.25M salt).

III. Determination of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration in Serum

The following non-limiting assay is useful for determining the presence of and to quantitate the amount of specific rhuMAb HER2 (humanized anti-$p185^{HER2}$ monoclonal antibody, including HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody) in a body fluid of a mammal including, but not limited to, serum, amniotic fluid, milk, umbilical cord serum, ocular aqueous and vitreous liquids, and ocular vitreous gel.

Plate Binding Activity Assay for rhuMAb HER2 (Humanized Anti-$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody

The method of assaying rhuMAb HER2 described herein is meant as an example of such a method and is not meant to be limiting. A standardized preparation of rhuMAb HER2 (Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, Calif.), controls, and serum samples were diluted with Assay Diluent (PBS/0.5% BSA/0.05% Polysorbate 20/0.01% Thimerosal). The dilu-

tions of standardized rhuMAb HER2 were prepared to span a range of concentrations useful for a standard curve. The samples were diluted to fall within the standard curve.

An aliquot of Coat Antigen in Coating buffer (recombinant $p185^{HER2}$ (Genentech, Inc.) in 0.05 M sodium carbonate buffer) was added to each well of a microtiter plate and incubated at 2-8° C. for 12-72 hours. The coating solution was removed and each well was washed six times with water, then blotted to remove excess water:

An aliquot of Assay Diluent was added to each well and incubated for 1-2 hours at ambient temperature with agitation. The wells were washed as in the previous step.

Aliquots of diluted standard, control and sample solutions were added to the wells and incubated at ambient temperature for 1 hour with agitation to allow binding of the antibody to the coating antigen. The wells are washed again with water as in previous steps.

Horse radish peroxidase-conjugate (HRP-conjugate, Goat anti-human IgG Fc conjugated to horseradish peroxidase; Organon Teknika catalog #55253 or equivalent) was diluted with Assay Diluent to yield an appropriate optical density range between the highest and lowest standards. An aliquot of the HRP-conjugate solution was added to each well and incubated at ambient temperature for 1 hour with agitation. The wells were washed with water as in previous steps.

An aliquot of Substrate Solution (o-phenylenediamine (OPD) 5 mg tablet (Sigma P6912 or equivalent) in 12.5 ml 4 mM H_2O_2 in PBS) was added to each well and incubated for a sufficient period of time (approximately 8-10 minutes) in the dark at ambient temperature to allow color development. The reaction was stopped with an aliquot of 4.5 N sulfuric acid. Optical density was read at 490-492 nm for detection absorbance and 405 nm for reference absorbance. The standard curve data are plotted and the results for the controls and samples are determined from the standard curve.

IV. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. [1980]), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2 antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein be reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2 (e.g. an antibody which binds a different epitope on ErbB2), ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, cytokine or growth inhibitory agent. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(−)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S—S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

V. Treatment with the Anti-ErbB2 Antibodies

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB2 receptor. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such

as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies of the invention are administered to a human patient, in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

The treatment of the present invention involves the administration of an anti-ErbB2 antibody to an animal or human patient, followed at intervals by subsequent doses of equal or smaller doses such that a target serum concentration is achieved and maintained during treatment. Preferably, maintenance doses are delivered by bolus delivery, preferably by subcutaneous bolus administration, making treatment convenient and cost-effective for the patient and health care professionals.

Where combined administration of a chemotherapeutic agent (other than an antracycline) is desired, the combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

It may be desirable to also administer antibodies against other tumor associated antigens, such as antibodies which bind to the EGFR, ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). Alternatively, or additionally, two or more anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be co-administered to the patient. Sometimes, it may be beneficial to also administer one or more cytokines to the patient. The ErbB2 antibody may be co-administered with a growth inhibitory agent. For example, the growth inhibitory agent may be administered first, followed by the ErbB2 antibody. However, simultaneous administration, or administration of the ErbB2 antibody first is also contemplated. Suitable dosages for the growth inhibitory agent are those presently used and may be lowered due to the combined action (synergy) of the growth inhibitory agent and anti-ErbB2 antibody.

In addition to the above therapeutic regimens, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells and/or radiation therapy.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of anti-ErbB2 antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments. Where the treatment involves a series of treatments, the initial dose or initial doses are followed at daily or weekly intervals by maintenance doses. Each maintenance dose provides the same or a smaller amount of antibody compared to the amount of antibody administered in the initial dose or doses.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

According to the invention, dosage regimens may include an initial dose of anti-ErbB2 of 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous infusion, followed by subsequent weekly maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg by intravenous infusion, intravenous bolus injection, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection. Where the antibody is well-tolerated by the patient, the time of infusion may be reduced.

Alternatively, the invention includes an initial dose of 12 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

Another dosage regimen involves an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

Still another dosage regimen involves an initial dose of 8 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 8 mg/kg once per week or 8 mg/kg once every 2 to 3 weeks.

As an alternative regimen, initial doses of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody may be administered on each of days 1, 2 and 3, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once per 3 weeks.

An additional regimen involves an initial dose of 4 mg/kg anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by subsequent maintenance doses of 2 mg/kg twice per week, wherein the maintenance doses are separated by 3 days.

Alternatively, the invention may include a cycle of dosing in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is 2-3 times per week for 3 weeks. The 3 week cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms.

The invention further includes a cyclic dosage regimen in which delivery of anti-ErbB2 antibody is daily for 5 days. According to the invention, the cycle is preferably repeated as necessary to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. Further information about suitable dosages is provided in the Examples below.

VI. Articles of Manufacture

In another embodiment of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, a label and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example, the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection

needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-ErbB2 antibody. The label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes. In addition, the article of manufacture may comprise a package inserts with instructions for use, including, e.g., a warning that the composition is not to be used in combination with anthacycline-type chemotherapeutic agent, e.g. doxorubicin or epirubicin.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990
2C4	ATCC HB-12697	Apr. 8, 1999

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

EXAMPLES

Example 1: Preparation and Efficacy of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

Materials and Methods

Anti-ErbB2 Monoclonal Antibody

The anti-ErbB2 $IgG_1\kappa$ murine monoclonal antibody 4D5, specific for the extracellular domain of ErbB2, was produced as described in Fendly et al., *Cancer Research* 5o:1550-1558 (1990) and WO89/06692. Briefly, NIH 3T3/HER2-3_{400} cells (expressing approximately 1×10^5 ErbB2 molecules/cell) produced as described in Hudziak, et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* (*USA*) 84:7159 (1987) were harvested with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 25 mM EDTA and used to immunize BALB/c mice. The mice were given injections i.p. of 10^7 cells in 0.5 ml PBS on weeks, 0, 2, 5 and 7. The mice with antisera that immunoprecipitated ^{32}P-labeled ErbB2 were given i.p. injections of a wheat germ agglutinin-Sepharose (WGA) purified ErbB2 membrane extract on weeks 9 and 13. This was followed by an i.v. injection of 0.1 ml of the ErbB2 preparation and the splenocytes were fused with mouse myeloma line X63-Ag8.653. Hybridoma supernatants were screened for ErbB2-binding by ELISA and radioimmunoprecipitation. MOPC-21 (IgG1), (Cappell, Durham, N.C.), was used as an isotype-matched control.

The treatment was performed with a humanized version of the murine 4D5 antibody (HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody). The humanized antibody was engineered by inserting the complementarity determining regions of the murine 4D5 antibody into the framework of a consensus human immunoglobulin IgG_1 (IgG_1) (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:4285-4289 [1992]). The resulting humanized anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody has high affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ (Dillohiation constant [K_d]=0.1 nmol/L), markedly inhibits, in vitro and in human xenografts, the growth of breast cancer cells that contain high levels of $p185^{HER2}$, induces antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), and has been found clinically active, as a single agent, in patients with ErbB2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that had received extensive prior therapy. HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is produced by a genetically engineered Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cell line, grown in large scale, that secretes the antibody into the culture medium. The antibody is purified from the CHO culture media using standard chromatographic and filtration methods. Each lot of antibody used in this study was assayed to verify identity, purity, and potency, as well as to meet Food and Drug Administration requirements for sterility and safety.

Eligibility Criteria

Patients had to fulfill all of the following criteria to be eligible for study admission:

- Metastatic breast cancer
- Overexpression of the ErbB2 (HER2) oncogene (2+ to 3+ as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). [Tumor expression of ErbB2 can be determined by immunohistochemical analysis, as previously described (Slamon et al., [1987] and [1989], supra), of a set of thin sections prepared from the patient's paraffin-archived tumor blocks. The primary detecting antibody used is murine 4D5 MAb, which has the same CDRs as the humanized antibody used for the treatment. Tumors are considered to overexpress ErbB2 if at least 25% of tumor cells exhibit characteristic membrane staining for $p185^{HER2}$].
- Bidimensionally measurable disease (including lytic bone lesions) by radiographic means, physical examination, or photographs

Measurable disease was defined as any mass reproducibly measurable in two perpendicular diameters by physical examination, X-ray (plain films), computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasound, or photographs.

Osteoblastic metastases, pleural effusions, or ascites were not considered to be measurable. Measurable lesions must be at least 1 cm in greatest dimension. Enumeration of evaluable sites of metastatic disease and number of lesions in an evaluable site (e.g. lung) had to be recorded on the appropriate Case Report Form (CRF). If a large number of pulmonary or hepatic lesions were present, the six largest lesions per site were followed.

- The ability to understand and willingness to sign a written informed consent form
- Women ≤18 years
- Suitable candidates for receiving concomitant cytotoxic chemotherapy as evidenced by screening laboratory assessments of hematologic, renal, hepatic, and metabolic functions.

Exclusion Criteria

Patients with any of the following were excluded from study entry:

- Prior cytotoxic chemotherapy for metastatic breast cancer
- Patients may have received prior hormonal therapy (e.g. tamoxifen) for metastatic disease or cytotoxic therapy in the adjuvant setting.
- Concomitant malignancy that has not been curatively treated
- A performance status of <60% on the Karnofsky scale
- Pregnant or nursing women; women of childbearing potential, unless using effective contraception as determined by the investigator

Bilateral breast cancer (either both primary tumors must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression, or the metastatic site must have 2+ to 3+ HER2 overexpression)

Use of investigational or unlicensed agents within 30 days prior to study entry

Clinically unstable or untreated metastases to the brain (e.g. requiring radiation therapy)

Based upon the foregoing criteria, 469 patients were chosen, and enrolled in the study. Half the patients (stratified by chemotherapy) were randomized to additionally receive the HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody (see below).

Administration and Dosage

Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

On day 0, a 4 mg/kg dose of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN®, H) was administered intravenously, over a 90-minute period. Beginning on day 7, patients received weekly administration of 2 mg/kg antibody (i.v.) over a 90-minute period.

Chemotherapy

The patients received one of two chemotherapy regimens for a minimum of six cycles, provided their disease was not progressing: a) cyclophosphamide and doxorubicin or epirubicin (AC), if patients have not received anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting, or b) paclitaxel (T, TAXOL®), if patients have received any anthracycline therapy in the adjuvant setting. The initial dose of the HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody preceded the first cycle of either chemotherapy regimen by 24 hours. Subsequent doses of the antibody were given immediately before chemotherapy administration, if the initial dose of the antibody was well tolerated. If the first dose of the antibody was not well tolerated, subsequent infusions continued to precede chemotherapy administration by 24 hours. Patients were permitted to continue receiving chemotherapy beyond six cycles if, in the opinion of the treating physician, they were continuing to receive treatment benefit.

Cyclophosphamide (600 mg/m^2) was given either by iv push over a minimum period of 3 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours.

Doxorubicin (60 mg/m^2) or epirubicin (75 mg/m^2) were given either by slow iv push over a minimum period of 3-5 minutes or by infusion over a maximum period of 2 hours, according to institutional protocol.

Paclitaxel (TAXOL®) was given at a dose of 175 mg/m^2 over 3 hours by intravenous administration. All patients receiving paclitaxel were premedicated with dexamethasone (or its equivalent) 20 mg×2, administered orally 12 and 6 hours prior to paclitaxel; diphenhydramine (or its equivalent) 50 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel, and dimetidine (or another H_2 blocker) 300 mg, iv, administered 30 minutes prior to paclitaxel.

Response Criteria

Progressive Disease

Objective evidence of an increase of 25% or more in any measurable lesion. Progressive disease also includes those instances when new lesions have appeared. For bone lesions, progression is defined as a 25% increase in objective measurement by plain film, CT, MRI; symptomatic new lesions not due to fracture; or requirement for palliative radiotherapy.

Complete Response

Disappearance of all radiographically and/or visually apparent tumor for a minimum of 4 weeks. Skin and chest wall complete responses had to be confirmed by biopsy.

Partial Response

A reduction of at least 50% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions for a minimum period of 4 weeks. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Minor Response

A reduction of 25% to 49% in the sum of the products of the perpendicular diameters of all measurable lesions. No new lesions may have appeared, nor may any lesions have progressed in size.

Stable Disease

No change of greater than 25% in the size of measurable lesions. No lesions may have appeared.

Time to disease progression (TTP) was calculated from the beginning of therapy to progression.

Confidence limits for response rates were calculated using the exact method for a single proportion. (Fleiss, J L, *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions* (ed. 2), New York, N.Y., Wiley, 1981, pp 13-17).

Results

At a median follow-up of 10.5 months, assessments of time to disease progression (TTP in months) and response rates (RR) showed a significant augmentation of the chemotherapeutic effect by HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, without increase in overall severe adverse events (AE):

TABLE 1

HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Efficacy

	Enrolled	TTP (months)	RR (%)	AE (%)
CRx	234	5.5	36.2	66
CRx + H	235	8.6*	62.00**	69
AC	145	6.5	42.1	71
AC + H	146	9.0	64.9	68
T	89	4.2	25.0	59
T + H	89	7.1	57.3	70

*$p < 0.001$ by log-rank test;

**$p < 0.01$ by X^2 test;

CRx: chemotherapy;

AC: anthracycline/cyclophosphamide treatment;

H: HERCEPTIN ® anti-ErbB2 antibody;

T: TAXOL ®

A syndrome of myocardial dysfunction similar to that observed with anthracyclines was reported more commonly with a combined treatment of AC+H (18% Grade 3/4) than with AC alone (3%), T (0%), or T+H (2%).

These data indicate that the combination of anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment with chemotherapy markedly increases the clinical benefit, as assessed by response rates and the evaluation of disease progression. However, due to the increased cardiac side-effects of doxorubicin or epirubicin, the combined use of anthracyclines with anti-ErbB2 antibody therapy is contraindicated. The results, taking into account risk and benefit, favor treatment with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody and paclitaxel (TAXOL®) where a combined treatment regimen is desired.

Example 2: Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamic Properties of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody (HERCEPTIN®)

HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was administered by intravenous infusion to human patients selected according to the criteria provided in Example 1. An initial dose of 4 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was delivered by intravenous infusion, followed by subsequent i.v. infusions of 2 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody weekly for several weeks. Two hundred thirteen patients began this treatment regimen and serum drug concentration was obtained beyond 8 weeks for fewer than 90 patients as

selective discontinuation of patients with rapidly progressing disease occurred. Of the 213 patients who began treatment, serum trough concentration data were available for 80 patients at Week 12, for 77 patients at Week 16, for 44 patients at Week 20, for 51 patients at Week 24, for 25 patients at Week 28, for 23 patients at Week 32, and for 37 patients at Week 36.

HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough Serum Concentrations for Weeks 0-36

The HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody trough serum concentrations (μg/ml, mean±SE) from Week 2 through Week 36 are plotted in FIG. **3** (dark circles). The number of patients was fairly constant because data from patients discontinued from the program due to rapidly progressing disease were excluded from this analysis. Trough serum concentrations tended to increase through Week 12 and tended to plateau after that time.

HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough and Peak Serum Concentrations for Weeks 1-8

Some HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentration data were available for 212 of the original 213 patients. Trough and peak serum concentration data reflecting the first HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody infusion were available for 195 of the 212 patients. For the seventh infusion, trough serum concentration data were available for 137/212 patients and peak serum concentration data were available for 114/212 patients. Table 2 presents a summary of statistics from trough and peak serum concentrations for the first 8 weeks of treatment. Peak samples were drawn shortly after the end of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody administration; trough samples were drawn prior to the subsequent dose (i.e., 1 week later). Serum concentrations of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody were determined as disclosed herein.

TABLE 2

HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Trough and Peak Serum Concentrations for the First 8 Weeks of Treatment (μg/ml)

	Dose Number	n	Mean	SD	Minimun	Maximum
Peak	1	195	100.3	35.2	30.7	274.6
Trough		195	25.0	12.7	0.16	60.7
Peak	2	190	74.3	31.3	20.8	307.9
Trough		167	30.4	16.0	0.2	74.4
Peak	3	167	75.3	26.8	16.1	194.8
Trough		179	33.7	17.9	0.2	98.2
Peak	4	175	80.2	26.9	22.2	167
Trough		132	38.6	20.1	0.2	89.4
Peak	5	128	85.9	29.2	27.8	185.8
Trough		141	42.1	24.8	0.2	148.7
Peak	6	137	87.2	32.2	28.9	218.1
Trough		115	43.2	24.0	0.2	109.9
Peak	7	114	89.7	32.5	16.3	187.8
Trough		137	48.8	24.9	0.2	105.2
Peak	8	133	95.6	35.9	11.4	295.6

The data in Table 2 suggest that there was an increase in trough serum concentration over time. Of the many patients studied, there were 18 patients for whom the trough concentrations did not exceed 20 μg/ml from Week 2 through Week 8. A HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody trough serum concentration of 20 μg/ml was nominally targeted for these studies based on prior pharmacologic studies in animals and exploratory analyses in clinical trials.

Patient response status was evaluated relative to serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. For this purpose, mean serum concentration (an average of troughs and peaks) was calculated for various times and patient response status (where the patient response status was determined by an independent Response Evaluation Committee). The increase in serum concentration between Weeks 2 and 8 appeared to be greater in responders than in nonresponders, suggesting that there is a relationship between response status and HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentration. A statistical analysis (analysis of variance) of trough serum concentration values at Week 2 and an average of Weeks 7 and 8 in relation to response status indicated a highly significant relationship between response status and average trough of Weeks 7 and 8 ($p<0.001$). The results indicated that there was a significant difference between the trough serum concentration (average troughs of Weeks 7 and 8) in the responders and nonresponders: trough concentrations were 60±20 μg/ml in the responders versus 44±25 μg/ml in the nonresponders (mean±SD). HER2 overexpression level and type of metastatic sites were associated with significant differences in trough serum concentrations. At Week 2, patients with 2+ HER2 overexpression had significantly higher trough serum concentrations (n=40, mean=28.8 μg/ml, SD=10.4) compared with patients with 3+ HER2 overexpression (n=155, mean=24.1 μg/ml, SD=13.1). This difference in the average trough serum concentrations for Weeks 7 and 8 was no longer statistically significant. Further, at Week 2, patients with superficial disease had significantly higher trough serum concentrations (n=12, mean 34.1 μg/ml, SD=12.0) compared with patients with visceral disease (n=183, mean=24.4 μg/ml, SD=12.6). This difference in the average trough serum concentrations for Weeks 7 and 8 was significant. These data indicate that the rise in trough serum concentrations between Weeks 2 and 7/8 occurs for human patients with various disease profiles.

In a subsequent, similarly designed study, human breast cancer patients were treated with a loading dose of 8 mg/kg followed by maintenance doses of 4 mg/kg weekly. The results of this preliminary human study indicated that an 8 mg/kg load:4 mg/kg weekly maintenance regimen was efficacious in reducing tumor volume in the patients.

The data disclosed in this Example indicate that front loading of antibody, such that a target serum concentration is reached more quickly, may be associated with improved outcomes.

Example 3: I.V. Bolus Delivery and Subcutaneous Infusion of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Effectively Decrease Tumor Volume in the Mouse

The efficacy of infusion or bolus delivery of humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody (HERCEPTIN® see Example 1 for preparation), either by intravenous injection or subcutaneous injection, was examined. The purpose of the study was to ask whether subcutaneous delivery was feasible and whether the convenient subcutaneous bolus delivery was useful in treating metastatic breast cancer in animals inoculated with a cell line that overexpresses the HER2 gene. The results, detailed below, show that i.v. and s.c. infusion and bolus delivery are feasible treatment methodologies.

A study in a nude mouse xenograft model, which incorporates a human breast cancer cell line that naturally overexpresses the HER2 gene (BT-474M1, derived from BT-474 cells, ATCC Accession number HTB-20), comparing tumor volume as a function of i.v. bolus versus s.c. infusion was performed as follows. In the first study athymic nude nu nu 7-9 week old female mice were obtained from Taconic Inc (Germantown, N.Y.). To initiate tumor development, each mouse was inoculated subcutaneously with 3×10^6 BT474M 1 cells suspended in Matrigel™. When tumor nodules reached a volume of approximately 100 mm^3, animals were randomized to 4 treatment groups. The groups were treated according to Table 3.

TABLE 3

Animal Groups and Doses for Comparison of I.V. Bolus and S.C. Infusion

Group, Dose, Antibody	Target Serum Conc. µg/ml	Route of Administration	Loading Dose (mg/kg)	Maintenance Dose
1—Control, rhuMAb E25	20	IV LD and SC infusion	2.20	0.250 mg/ml (infusate)
2—Low Dose SC rhuMAb HER2	1	IV LD and SC infusion	0.313	0.050 mg/ml (infusate)
3—High Dose SC rhuMAb HER2	20	IV LD and SC infusion	6.25	1.00 mg/ml (infusate)
4—IV Multi-Dose rhuMAb HER2	20 (trough)	IV LD and MD	4.00	2 mg/kg/week (IV bolus)

Serum Conc. = concentration in serum.

LD = loading dose.

MD = maintenance dose.

Infusate concentration was calculated to achieve targeted serum concentration using Alzet ® osmotic minipumps (Alza Corp., Palo Alto, CA).

Animals were exposed to estrogen by subcutaneous sustained release estrogen pellet 9 days before the start of dosing to promote growth of grafted tumor cells. The animals were inoculated with the BT474M1 cells 8 days before the beginning of treatment and tumors were allowed to grow. The animals were then treated with nonrelevant antibody E25 (non-specific for HER2 receptor, but a member of the monoclonal IgG class) or test antibody HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody as indicated in Table 3. The dosage levels were selected to achieve target serum concentrations of HERCEPTIN®, either 1 µg/ml or 20 µg/ml, by subcutaneous pump infusion or by i.v. bolus delivery. The study groups were treated until day 35. The serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was measured weekly (just prior to dosing for Group 4) using 3 mice/group/time point. The anti-ErbB2 antibody concentration was determined according to the method disclosed herein involving standard techniques. Tumor volumes were measured two days before dosing began and twice per week from day 6 to day 35 in the study for which data is tabulated below. Tumors were measured in three dimensions and volumes were expressed in mm^3. Efficacy was determined by a statistical comparison (ANOVA) of tumor volumes of test animals relative to untreated control animals.

As shown in Table 4, below, treatment of the BT474M1 tumor-bearing mice with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by the indicated dosage methods significantly inhibited the growth of the tumors. All HERCEPTIN®-treated groups showed similar inhibition of tumor growth relative to the control group. No dose-response was observed.

The results tabulated above indicate that maintenance of a serum concentration of approximately 2 µg/ml was as effective as a concentration of 20 µg/ml in this study. The results indicated that dosing by subcutaneous infusion was as effective as intravenous bolus dosing and achieved similar trough serum concentrations. The results also indicate that the dose levels studied are at the top of the dose-response curve in this model and that subcutaneous dosing is effective in treating breast cancer tumors. Thus, subcutaneous administration of maintenance doses is feasible as part of a HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody treatment regimen.

Example 4: I.V. Bolus and Subcutaneous Bolus Deliveries of HERCEPTIN® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Effectively Decrease Tumor Volume in the Mouse

Subcutaneous bolus delivery is convenient and cost-effective for the patient and health care professionals. The results of the study disclosed in this example indicate that subcutaneous bolus delivery was as effective as intravenous bolus delivery in reducing breast cell tumor size in a mouse.

This study was set up as disclosed herein in Example 3 for the comparison of intravenous bolus and subcutaneous infusion delivery. A sustained release estrogen implant was inserted subcutaneously one day before tumor cell inoculation as described in Example 3. Six days after tumor cell inoculation, the initial tumor measurement was performed. Seven days after tumor cell inoculation, the first dose of control antibody or HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was delivered. The animal groups, type of delivery, loading dose and maintenance doses are provided in Table 4. Animals were dosed once weekly for 4 weeks.

TABLE 4

Comparison of S.C. Infusion and I.V. Bolus Delivery

Treatment Group	Tumor Volume (mm^3), Day 35, (n = 14)	Tumor Volume (area under curve) Day 6-Day 35 (n = 13)	HERCEPTIN ® Serum Conc. (µg/ml), Day 27, (n = 3)
control s.c. infusion	764 ± 700	5650 ± 4700	4.16 ± 1.94
s.c. infusion (low dose)	80.6 ± 158	1610 ± 1250	2.11 ± 1.74
s.c. infusion (high dose)	31 ± 75.6	1440 ± 1140	22.1 ± 5.43
i.v. bolus dose*	49.7 ± 95.7	2150 ± 1480	21.7 ± 17.1**

s.c. = subcutaneous delivery;

i.v. = intravenous delivery.

*4.0 mg/kg Loading Dose and 2.0 mg/kg/week Maintenance Dose.

**at predose (trough serum concentration immediately prior to a maintenance dose)

TABLE 5

Animal Groups and Doses for Comparison of I.V. Bolus and S.C. Bolus Delivery

Group	Route of Administration	Loading Dose (mg/kg)	Maintenance Dose (mg/kg/week)	n
1—Control rhuMAb E25	IV	8	4	10
2—rhuMAb HER2	IV	2	1	10
3—rhuMAb HER2	IV	4	2	10
4—rhuMAb HER2	IV	8	4	10
5—rhuMAb HER2	SC	4	2	10

IV = intraveneous;
SC = subcutaneous;
n = number of animals per group.

The mice were treated according to the information in Table 4 and using the techniques disclosed in Example 3. The serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody was measured weekly before each weekly i.v. maintenance dose according to the procedure described herein and using standard techniques. The control E25 antibody serum concentration was determined according to standard immunoassay techniques. Table 6 shows the increase in HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody serum concentrations with time.

TABLE 6

IV versus SC Bolus Delivery: Serum HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration
Serum Concentration, μg/ml

Treatment Group (delivery, MD)	Day 0 Mean (SD)	Day 7 Mean (SD)	Day 14 Mean (SD)	Day 21 Mean (SD)
1—Control rhu MAb E25 (IV, 4 mg/kg)	0 (0)	25.9 (8.29)	34.6 (11.2)	38.5 (14.4)
2—rhu MAb HER2 (IV, 1 mg/kg)	0 (0)	4.96 (3.79)	8.55 (5.83)	8.05 (4.67)
3—rhu MAb HER2 (IV, 2 mg/kg)	0 (0)	13.4 (9.24)	18.9 (12.0)	22.6 (9.21)

TABLE 6-continued

IV versus SC Bolus Delivery: Serum HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Concentration
Serum Concentration, μg/ml

Treatment Group (delivery, MD)	Day 0 Mean (SD)	Day 7 Mean (SD)	Day 14 Mean (SD)	Day 21 Mean (SD)
4—rhu MAb HER2 (IV, 4 mg/kg)	0 (0)	29.6 (13.5)	37.7 (14.4)	46.2 (13.8)
5—rhu MAb HER2 (SC, 2 mg/kg)	0 (0)	12.5 (7.33)	16.9 (10.2)	17.6 (10.7)

n = 10 for time points Days 0, 7 and 14.
N = 9 for Day 21.

Table 7 shows the relative efficacy of intravenous bolus delivery and subcutaneous bolus delivery for Groups 1-5 having achieved the serum antibody concentrations presented in Table 6. For this study, efficacy was measured as a decrease in tumor volume. Tumor volume was measured twice weekly.

TABLE 7

Efficacy of HERCEPTIN ® Anti-ErbB2 Antibody Measured as a Change in Tumor Volume Comparing Intravenous Bolus and Subcutaneous Bolus Delivery, Mean (SD)

Treatment Group (Delivery, MD)	Tumor Vol. Day 6, mm^3	Tumor Vol. Day 28, mm^3	Tumor Vol. Day 31, mm^3	Day 6-Day 31* Area Under Curve Tumor Vol., mm^3	Tumor Growth Rate on Log (TM + 1)
1—IV Control	321 (190)	1530 (1040)	1630 (1170)	13600 (7230)	0.0660 (0.0200)
2—IV Herceptin 1 mg/kg	297 (130)	175 (215)	151 (188)	4690 (1400)	−0.0505 (0.142)
3—IV Herceptin 2 mg/kg	269 (129)	75.7 (92.4)	73.6 (84.5)	3510 (1220)	−0.0608 (0.110)
4—IV Herceptin 4 mg/kg	272 (117)	25.3 (75.9)	25.8 (72.9)	2880 (1230)	−0.0810 (0.0859)
5—SC Herceptin 2 mg/kg	268 (117)	76.2 (98.8)	90.4 (105)	3230 (1440)	−0.0304 (0.104)

N = 10 for each data point.
TM = tumor measurement.
IV = intravenous.
SC = subcutaneous.
MD = maintenance dose.
Tumor Vol. = tumor volume, mm^3.
*Day 17 excluded due to measurement error.
Tumor growth rate calculated on Day 21-Day 31 Log(TM + 1). Area under the curve is the area beneath a plot of tumor volume versus time.

FIGS. **4**A and **4**B are graphical plots of changes in tumor volume over time, some of which data is found in Table 7. FIG. **4**A is a linear plot of tumor volume versus time. FIG. **4**B is a semilogarithmic plot of the same data, allowing the test points be viewed more clearly. The data in Table 7 and FIGS. **4**A and **4**B indicate that, although a dose-related response was not observed between HERCEPTIN-treated groups, dosing by subcutaneous bolus was as effective as intravenous bolus dosing and achieved similar trough serum concentrations.

Example 5: Regimens for Intravenous and Subcutaneous Delivery of Anti-ErbB2 Antibody

According to the invention, methods of anti-ErbB2 antibody (e.g., HERCEPTIN®) delivery comprise greater front loading of the drug to achieve a target serum concentration in approximately 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including one day or less. According to the inven-

tion, this initial dosing is followed by dosing that maintains the target serum concentration by subsequent doses of equal or smaller amount. An advantage of the methods of the invention is that the maintenance dosing may be less frequent and/or delivered by subcutaneous injection, making the treatment regimens of the invention convenient and cost-effective for the patient and medical professionals administering the antibody. In addition, a subcutaneous maintenance dose regimen may be interrupted by intravenous dosing (such as infusion) when the patient's chemotherapy requires delivery of other drugs by intravenous injection.

To test the following dosage regimens, human subjects are selected according to the criteria disclosed in Example 1, above. The number of initial doses is one or more doses sufficient to achieve an efficacious target serum concentration in approximately 4 weeks or less, preferably 3 weeks or less, more preferably 2 weeks or less, and most preferably 1 week or less, including 1 day or less. The number of maintenance doses may be one or more doses sufficient to achieve suppression of disease symptoms, such as a decrease in tumor volume. The maintenance doses are equal to or smaller than the initial dose or doses, consistent with an object of the invention of administering HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by regimens providing greater front loading. The specific drug delivery regimens disclosed herein are representative of the invention and are not meant to be limiting.

In one trial, an initial dose of 6 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg, or 12 mg/kg of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered to human patients by intravenous or subcutaneous injection. Initial doses (loading doses) are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection or preferably subcutaneous bolus injection. Preferably a target trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody of approximately 10-20 μg/m^1 is achieved (averaged for all patients in the treatment group) and maintained by subsequent doses of anti-ErbB2 antibody that are equal to or smaller than the initial dose. In one method, a target trough serum concentration is achieved and maintained by once-per-week deliveries of 2 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody by intravenous or subcutaneous injection for at least eight weeks. Alternatively, for this or any dosage regimen disclosed herein, subcutaneous continuous infusion by subcutaneous pump is used to delivery subsequent maintenance doses.

In another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous injection (infusion or bolus injection) or by subcutaneous bolus injection. This is followed by intravenous bolus injections, intravenous infusion, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection of 6 mg/kg at 3-week intervals to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10-20 μg/ml, averaged for an entire treatment group.

In another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 12 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous injection (infusion or bolus injection) or by subcutaneous bolus injection. This is followed by intravenous bolus injections, intravenous infusion, subcutaneous infusion, or subcutaneous bolus injection of 6 mg/kg at 3-week intervals to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10-20 μg/ml.

In yet another method, an initial (front loading) dose of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or preferably by subcutaneous bolus injection or infusion. This is followed by administration of 8 mg/kg per week or 8 mg/kg per 2-3 weeks to maintain a trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody of approximately 10-20 μg/ml. Maintenance doses are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection, or preferably by subcutaneous infusion or bolus injection.

In another method, the front loading initial dose is a series of intravenous or subcutaneous injections, for example, one on each of days 1, 2, and 3 of at least 1 mg/kg for each injection (where the amount of anti-ErbB2 antibody delivered by the sum of initial injections is more than 4 mg/kg), followed by maintenance doses of 6 mg/kg once each 3 week interval to maintain a target trough serum concentration (for example, approximately 10-20 μg/ml) of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. The maintenance doses are delivered by intravenous infusion or bolus injection or by subcutaneous infusion or subcutaneous bolus injection.

In yet another method, the front loading is by intravenous infusion of at least 1 mg/kg, preferably 4 mg/kg on each of five consecutive days, followed by repeats of this cycle a sufficient number of times to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. Following the initial dose or doses, subsequent doses may be delivered by subcutaneous infusion or bolus injection if tolerated by the patient. Such subcutaneous delivery is convenient and cost-effective for the patient and administering health care professionals.

In still another method, HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is delivered initially as at least 2 intravenous infusions per week for three weeks, followed by repeats of this cycle to maintain an efficacious trough serum concentration of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody. The dose is at least 4 mg/kg of anti-ErbB2 antibody, preferably at least 5 mg/kg. The maintenance drug deliveries may be intravenous or subcutaneous.

Where the animal or patient tolerates the antibody during and after an initial dose, delivery of subsequent doses may be subcutaneous, thereby providing greater convenience and cost-effectiveness for the patient and health care professionals.

In animal studies, an initial dose of more than 4 mg/kg, preferably more than 5 mg/kg delivered by intravenous or subcutaneous injection, is followed by subcutaneous bolus injections of 2 mg/kg twice per week (separated by 3 days) to maintain a trough serum concentration of approximately 10-20 μg/ml. In addition, where the animal or patient is known to tolerate the antibody, an initial dose of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody is optionally and preferably deliverable by subcutaneous bolus injection followed by subcutaneous maintenance injections.

While target serum concentrations are disclosed herein for the purpose of comparing animal studies and human trials, target serum concentrations in clinical uses may differ. The disclosure provided herein guides the user in selecting a front loading drug delivery regimen that provides an efficacious target trough serum concentration.

The methods of the invention disclosed herein optionally include the delivery of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent (other than an anthrocycline derivative) to achieve suppression of disease symptoms. The chemotherapeutic agent may be delivered with HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody or separately and according to a different dosing schedule. For example, subcutaneous delivery of HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody with TAXOL® is included in the invention. In addition, intravenous or subcutaneous injection of 8 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody, followed by intravenous or subcutaneous injection of 6 mg/kg HERCEPTIN® anti-ErbB2 antibody every 3 weeks is administered in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent, such as a taxoid (e.g. paclitaxel 175 mg/m2 every 3 weeks) or an anthracy-

cline derivative (e.g. doxorubicin 60 mg/m2 or epirubicin 75 mg/m2 every 3 weeks). Optionally, where an anthracycline derivative is administered, a cardioprotectant (e.g. 600 mg/m2 cyclophosphamide every 3 weeks) is also administered. In another combination therapy, anti-ErbB2 antibody is administered in a loading dose of more than 4 mg/kg, preferably more than 5 mg/kg, and more preferably at least 8 mg/kg. The loading dose is followed by maintenance doses of at least 2 mg/kg weekly, preferably 6 mg/kg every 3 weeks. The combination therapy includes administration of a taxoid during treatment with anti-ErbB2 antibody. According to one embodiment of the invention, the taxoid is paclitaxel and is administered at a dose of 70-100 mg/m^2/week. According to another embodiment of the invention, the taxoid is docetaxel and is administered at a dose of 30-70 mg/m^2/week.

Example 6: HERCEPTIN® Administered Intravenously Every Three Weeks in Combination with Paclitaxel

Currently, the recommended dose of HERCEPTIN® is 2 mg/kg once weekly. Patients will be administered HERCEPTIN® every three weeks instead of weekly, along with paclitaxel (175 mg/m^2 every three weeks). Simulation of the proposed treatment regimen suggests that the trough serum concentrations will be 17 mcg/ml, in the range (10-20 mcg/ml) of the targeted trough serum concentrations from previous HERCEPTIN® IV clinical trials. After the first 12 patients the PK parameters will be assessed, if exposure is felt inadequate, then the dose will be increased to 8 mg/kg every three weeks for the remaining 12 patients.

Inclusion Criteria

1) Females ≤18 years of age
2) Histologically confirmed ErbB2 over-expressing metastatic breast cancer
3) Patients who have been newly diagnosed with metastatic disease
4) Have a Karnofsky performance status of ≤70%
5) Give written informed consent prior to any study specific screening procedures with the understanding that the patient has the right to withdraw from the study at any time, without prejudice.

Exclusion Criteria

1) Pregnant or lactating women
2) Women of childbearing potential unless (1) surgically sterile or (2) using adequate measures of contraception such as oral contraceptive, intra-uterine device or barrier method of contraception in conjunction with spermicidal jelly.
3) Clinical or radiologic evidence of CNS metastases.
4) History of any significant cardiac disease
5) LVEF ≤50%
6) No prior taxane therapy in any treatment setting.
7) Any of the following abnormal baseline hematologic values:
   Hb less than 9 g/dl
   WBC less than 3.0×10^9/l
   Granulocytes less than 1.5×10^9/l
   Platelets less than 100×10^9/l
8) Any of the following abnormal baseline liver function tests:
   Serum bilirubin greater than 1.5×ULN (upper normal limit)
   ALT and/or AST greater than 2.5×ULN (greater than 4.0×ULN if liver or bone metastasis)
   Alkaline phosphatase greater than 2.5×ULN (greater than 4.0×ULN if liver or bone metastasis)
9) The following abnormal baseline renal function tests:
   serum creatinine greater than 1.5×ULN
10) History of other serious medical conditions that would preclude patient participation in an investigational study.

HERCEPTIN®

Loading dose and schedule: 8 mg/kg for first dose. Maintenance dose and schedule: 6 mg/kg every 3 weeks.

Paclitaxel—

175 mg/m^2 IV every 3 weeks×6 cycles as a 3-hour infusion.

NOTE: On the first cycle of treatment, paclitaxel will be dosed 8 hours prior to HERCEPTIN® to determine the PK of paclitaxel alone. HERCEPTIN® will be administered 8 hours post-paclitaxel for the 1st cycle only. In subsequent treatment cycles, HERCEPTIN® will be administered prior to paclitaxel.

The total duration of this study is 18 weeks. Study subjects will receive up to 6 total HERCEPTIN® doses. After the last subject has received the last cycle of paclitaxel, data collection for safety and pharmacokinetic analysis will stop, and the study will close to protocol specified treatment. Study subjects may continue to receive the HERCEPTIN®+/−paclitaxel at the discretion of the investigator.

It is believed that the above treatment regimen will be effective in treating metastatic breast cancer, despite the infrequency with which HERCEPTIN® is administered to the patient.

While the particular aspects and embodiments of the invention as herein shown and disclosed in detail is fully capable of obtaining the objects and providing the advantages herein before stated, it is to be understood that it is merely illustrative of some of the presently preferred embodiments of the invention and that no limitations are intended to the details of methods and articles of manufacture shown other than as described in the appended claims. The disclosures of all citations in the specification are expressly incorporated herein by reference.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 15

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 166
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

```
Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr
1               5                  10                  15

His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val Val Gln
            20                  25                  30
```

```
Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser Leu Ser Phe
        35                  40                  45

Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu Ile Ala His Asn
    50                  55                  60

Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu Gln Arg Leu Arg Ile Val Arg Gly Thr
65                  70                  75                  80

Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr Ala Leu Ala Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp
                85                  90                  95

Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro Val Thr Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu
            100                 105                 110

Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val
        115                 120                 125

Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp
    130                 135                 140

Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys Asn Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp
145                 150                 155                 160

Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg Ala
                165


<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 32
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys
            20                  25                  30


<210> SEQ ID NO 3
<211> LENGTH: 11
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic
      salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Pro Lys Asn Ser Ser Met Ile Ser Asn Thr Pro
1               5                   10


<210> SEQ ID NO 4
<211> LENGTH: 7
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic
      salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

His Gln Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln
1               5


<210> SEQ ID NO 5
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic
      salvage receptor binding epitope
```

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

His Gln Asn Leu Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

His Gln Asn Ile Ser Asp Gly Lys
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
<211> LENGTH: 8
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic salvage receptor binding epitope

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

Val Ile Ser Ser His Leu Gly Gln
1 5

<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 59
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

Val Glu Glu Cys Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val Asn
1 5 10 15

Ala Arg His Cys Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly
20 25 30

Ser Val Thr Cys Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala
35 40 45

His Tyr Lys Asp Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg
50 55

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 65
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys
1 5 10 15

Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp
20 25 30

Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys Pro Asp Leu
35 40 45

Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu Gly Ala Cys Gln
50 55 60

Pro
65

<210> SEQ ID NO 10
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 10

Asp Thr Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Ile Met Ser Thr Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser Ile Gly
20 25 30

Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Arg Pro Gly Gln Ser Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
35 40 45

Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp Arg Phe Thr Gly
50 55 60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile Ser Ser Val Gln Ala
65 70 75 80

Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr
85 90 95

Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu Ile Lys
100 105

<210> SEQ ID NO 11
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 11

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly Thr
1 5 10 15

Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr Asp Tyr
20 25 30

Thr Met Asp Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu Glu Trp Ile
35 40 45

Gly Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr Asn Gln Arg Phe
50 55 60

Lys Gly Lys Ala Ser Leu Thr Val Asp Arg Ser Ser Arg Ile Val Tyr
65 70 75 80

Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Phe Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
85 90 95

Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
100 105 110

Thr Thr Leu Thr Val Ser Ser
115

<210> SEQ ID NO 12
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic humanized VL polypeptide sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 12

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser Ile Gly
20 25 30

Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
35 40 45

```
Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys
            100                 105


<210> SEQ ID NO 13
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic
      humanized VH polypeptide sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 13

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr Asp Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Thr Met Asp Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Ala Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr Asn Gln Arg Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Leu Ser Val Asp Arg Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
            100                 105                 110

Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115


<210> SEQ ID NO 14
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic
      VL consensus sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 14

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser Asn Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
        35                  40                  45

Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys
            100                 105
```

-continued

<210> SEQ ID NO 15
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic VH consensus sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 15

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser Ser Tyr
20 25 30

Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
35 40 45

Ala Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val
50 55 60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
85 90 95

Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
100 105 110

Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
115

The invention claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of a human patient diagnosed with breast cancer characterized by 2+ or 3+ overexpression of ErbB2 receptor as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), comprising the steps of administering to the patient an initial dose of 8 mg/kg of anti-ErbB2 huMAb 4D5-8 antibody; and administering to the patient a plurality of subsequent doses of 6 mg/kg of the antibody, wherein all doses are separated in time from each other by three weeks.

2. The method of claim **1**, further comprising administering an effective amount of a chemotherapeutic agent.

3. The method of claim **2**, wherein said chemotherapeutic agent is a taxoid.

4. The method of claim **3**, wherein said taxoid is paclitaxel or docetaxel.

5. The method of claim **4** wherein said taxoid is paclitaxel.

6. The method of claim **1**, wherein said antibody is administered by intravenous injection.

7. A method for the treatment of a human patient diagnosed with breast cancer characterized by 2+ or 3+ overexpression of ErbB2 receptor as determined by immunohistochemistry or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), the method comprising: administering intravenously to the patient an initial dose of 8 mg/kg of anti-ErbB2 huMAb 4D5-8 antibody; and administering intravenously to the patient a plurality of subsequent 6 mg/kg doses of the antibody, wherein the initial dose is separated in time from the first subsequent dose by three weeks, and the subsequent doses are separated from each other in time by three weeks.

8. The method of claim **7**, wherein the intravenous administration is an intravenous infusion.

9. The method of claim **8**, wherein the subsequent doses maintain a trough serum concentration of the anti-ErbB2 huMAb 4D5-8 antibody at or above 10 μg/mL.

10. The method of claim **8**, wherein the subsequent doses maintain a trough serum concentration of the anti-ErbB2 huMAb 4D5-8 antibody at or above 20 μg/mL.

11. The method of claim **7**, wherein the subsequent doses maintain a trough serum concentration of the anti-ErbB2 huMAb 4D5-8 antibody at or above 10 μg/mL.

12. The method of claim **7**, wherein the subsequent doses maintain a trough serum concentration of the anti-ErbB2 huMAb 4D5-8 antibody at or above 20 μg/mL.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT F

US007993834B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Mass

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,993,834 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: Aug. 9, 2011**

(54) **DETECTION OF ERBB2 GENE AMPLIFICATION TO INCREASE THE LIKELIHOOD OF THE EFFECTIVENESS OF ERBB2 ANTIBODY BREAST CANCER THERAPY**

(75) Inventor: **Robert D. Mass**, Mill Valley, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 276 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **11/942,449**

(22) Filed: **Nov. 19, 2007**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2008/0112958 A1 May 15, 2008

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Continuation of application No. 11/441,995, filed on May 26, 2006, now abandoned, which is a division of application No. 09/863,101, filed on May 18, 2001, now abandoned.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/205,754, filed on May 19, 2000.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
C12Q 1/68 (2006.01)
G01N 33/574 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **435/6**; 435/7.23

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... None
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,753,894	A	6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,935,341	A	6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A	7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A	11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A	12/1990	Senter et al.
5,169,774	A	12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A	2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A	2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A	10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A	11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A	3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A	11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A	1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,514,554	A	5/1996	Bacus
5,571,894	A	11/1996	Wels et al.
5,578,482	A	11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,587,458	A	12/1996	King et al.
5,604,107	A	2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A	6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,663,144	A	9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,165	A	10/1997	de Boer et al.
5,677,171	A	10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A	1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A	3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A	3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A	3/1998	Bissery
5,736,137	A	4/1998	Anderson et al.
5,747,261	A	5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A	7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A	7/1998	Arakawa et al.
5,783,404	A	7/1998	Koski
5,801,005	A	9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,804,396	A	9/1998	Plowman
5,821,337	A	10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A	10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A	11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A	11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A	12/1998	Cheever et al.
5,846,749	A	12/1998	Slamon et al.
5,856,089	A	1/1999	Wang et al.
5,856,110	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A	2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A	3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A	3/1999	Huston et al.
5,908,835	A	6/1999	Bissery
5,910,486	A	6/1999	Curiel et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0 332 865 A2 9/1989

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Modjtahedi et al (Br J Cancer, 1993, 67:254-261, IDS).* Johns et al (FASEB Journal express article 10.1096/fj.04-1766fje. Mar. 17, 2005, IDS).*
Kersting et al (Laboratory Investigation, 2006, 86:54-61, IDS).*
Brady et al (J Neurosurgical Sciences, 1990, 34:243-249, IDS).*
Tripp et al (Analytical and Quantitative Cytology and Histology (2005, 27:71-78, IDS).*
Baselga et al (Seminars in Oncology, Aug. 1999, 26 (suppl 12):78-83, IDS).*
Persons et al (Annals of Clinical & Laboratory Science, Jan. 2000, 30:41-48, IDS).*
Pauletti et al (Oncogene, 1996, 13:63-72, IDS).*

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Laura B Goddard
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Arnold & Porter LLP; Diane Marschang; Ginger R. Dreger

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The invention provides a method for more effective treatment of patients susceptible to or diagnosed with tumors overexpressing ErbB, as determined by a gene amplification assay, with an ErbB antagonist. Such method comprises administering a cancer-treating dose of the ErbB antagonist, preferably in addition to chemotherapeutic agents, to a subject in whose tumor cells ErbB has been found to be amplified e.g., by fluorescent in situ hybridization. ErbB antagonists described include an anti-HER2 antibody. Pharmaceutical packaging for providing the components for such treatment is also provided.

6 Claims, No Drawings

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,922,845	A	7/1999	Deo et al.	
5,925,519	A	7/1999	Jensen et al.	
5,939,531	A	8/1999	Wels et al.	
5,968,511	A	10/1999	Akita et al.	
5,977,322	A	11/1999	Marks et al.	
5,985,553	A	11/1999	King et al.	
5,994,071	A	11/1999	Ross et al.	
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel et al.	
6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter et al.	
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring	
6,096,873	A	8/2000	Schaefer et al.	
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver et al.	
6,156,321	A	12/2000	Thorpe et al.	
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak et al.	
6,270,765	B1	8/2001	Deo et al.	
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel et al.	
6,358,682	B1	3/2002	Jaffee et al.	
6,387,371	B1	5/2002	Hudziak et al.	
6,395,272	B1	5/2002	Deo et al.	
6,399,063	B1 *	6/2002	Hudziak et al.	424/138.1
6,403,630	B1	6/2002	Dannenberg et al.	
6,407,213	B1	6/2002	Carter et al.	
6,458,356	B1	10/2002	Arakawa et al.	
6,512,097	B1	1/2003	Marks et al.	
6,573,043	B1	6/2003	Cohen et al.	
6,582,919	B2	6/2003	Danenberg	
6,602,670	B2	8/2003	Danenberg	
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman et al.	
6,632,979	B2	10/2003	Erickson et al.	
6,719,971	B1	4/2004	Carter et al.	
6,800,738	B1	10/2004	Carter et al.	
7,097,840	B2	8/2006	Erickson et al.	
7,575,768	B2	8/2009	Perlman et al.	
2002/0031515	A1	3/2002	Caligiuri et al.	
2002/0051785	A1	5/2002	Slamon et al.	
2002/0064785	A1	5/2002	Mass	
2002/0076408	A1	6/2002	Buchsbaum	
2002/0076695	A1	6/2002	Ross	
2002/0090662	A1	7/2002	Ralph	
2002/0141993	A1	10/2002	Ashkenazi et al.	
2002/0142328	A1	10/2002	Danenberg	
2002/0155527	A1	10/2002	Stuart et al.	
2002/0173629	A1	11/2002	Jakobovits et al.	
2002/0192211	A1	12/2002	Hudziak et al.	
2002/0192652	A1	12/2002	Danenberg	
2003/0022918	A1	1/2003	Horak et al.	
2003/0059790	A1	3/2003	Jaffee et al.	
2003/0103973	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.	
2003/0108545	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.	
2003/0134344	A1	7/2003	Mass	
2003/0144252	A1	7/2003	Furr	
2003/0147884	A1	8/2003	Paton et al.	
2003/0152987	A1	8/2003	Cohen et al.	
2003/0157097	A1	8/2003	Noguchi et al.	
2003/0170234	A1	9/2003	Hellmann	
2003/0211530	A1	11/2003	Danenberg	
2004/0037823	A9	2/2004	Paton et al.	
2005/0148607	A1	7/2005	Suzuki et al.	
2007/0166753	A1 *	7/2007	Mass	435/6

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 559 274	A1	6/1994
EP	0 616 812	B1	9/1994
EP	0 656 367		6/1995
EP	0 412 116		11/1995
EP	0 494 135		4/1996
EP	0 502 812		8/1996
EP	0 711 565		8/1998
EP	0 554 441		1/1999
EP	616812	B1	11/1999
EP	1 006 194		6/2000
EP	0 444 181		10/2001
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	95006982	B2	1/1995
JP	7-59588		3/1995
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105	B2	5/1999
WO	WO 87/07646	A2	12/1987
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 89/10412	A1	11/1989
WO	WO 90/14357		11/1990
WO	WO 91/02062	A2	2/1991
WO	WO 91/05264	A1	4/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 92/20798		11/1992
WO	WO 93/03741	A1	3/1993
WO	WO 93/12220	A1	6/1993
WO	WO 93/16185	A2	8/1993
WO	WO 93/21232	A1	10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319	A1	10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136	A1	1/1994
WO	WO 94/22478	A1	10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/07321	A1	3/1996
WO	WO 96/16673	A1	6/1996
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/40789	A1	12/1996
WO	WO 97/00271	A1	1/1997
WO	WO 97/04801		2/1997
WO	WO 97/20858	A1	6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/35885		10/1997
WO	WO 97/38731	A1	10/1997
WO	WO 98/02463	A1	1/1998
WO	WO 98/02540		1/1998
WO	WO 98/02541		1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797	A1	4/1998
WO	WO 98/18489	A1	5/1998
WO	WO 98/33914	A1	8/1998
WO	WO 98/45479	A1	10/1998
WO	WO 99/31140	A1	6/1999
WO	WO 99/39729		8/1999
WO	WO 99/48527	A1	9/1999
WO	WO 99/55367	A1	11/1999
WO	WO 00/20641		4/2000
WO	WO 00/61145	A1	10/2000
WO	WO 00/61185	A1	10/2000
WO	WO 00/69460	A1	11/2000
WO	WO 00/78347	A1	12/2000
WO	WO 01/00238	A1	1/2001
WO	WO 01/00244	A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/00245	A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/05425	A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/09187	A2	2/2001
WO	WO 01/15730	A1	3/2001
WO	WO 01/20033	A1	3/2001
WO	WO 01/21192	A2	3/2001
WO	WO 01/32155	A2	5/2001
WO	WO 01/34574		5/2001
WO	WO 01/53354	A2	7/2001
WO	WO 01/56604	A1	8/2001
WO	WO 01/64246	A2	9/2001
WO	WO 01/76586	A1	10/2001
WO	WO 01/76630	A1	10/2001
WO	WO 01/87334	A1	11/2001
WO	WO 01/87336	A1	11/2001
WO	WO 01/89566	A1	11/2001
WO	WO 02/05791	A1	1/2002
WO	WO 02/11677	A2	2/2002
WO	WO 02/44413	A2	6/2002
WO	WO 02/45653	A2	6/2002
WO	WO 02/09754	A1	7/2002
WO	WO 02/055106	A2	7/2002
WO	WO 2005/117553		12/2005
WO	2006/107854	A2	10/2006

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Couturier et al (Mod Pathol, 2000, 13:1238-1243).*
Stancovski et al (PNAS,USA, 88:8691-8695, 1991, IDS).*
Lewis et al (Cancer Immunology Immunotherapy 37: 255-263, 1993, IDS).*
Strobel et al (Gynecologic Oncology 73: 362-367, 1999, IDS).*
Jacobs et al (J of Clinical Oncology, Jul. 1999, 17:1974-1982, IDS).*
Aasland et al., "Expression of Oncogenes in Thyroid Tumours: Coexpression of c-erbB2/neu and c-erbB" *Brittish Journal or Cancer* 57(4):358-363 (Apr. 1988).
Agus et al., "Differential Anti-Tumor Effects of Targeting Distinct Epitopes of the Her-2/neu Extracellular Domain in Xenograft Models of Prostate Cancer." *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research Annual Meeting* (Abstract #4570) 41:719 (Mar. 2000).
Agus et al., "Response of Prostate Cancer to Anti-Her-2/neu Antibody in Androgen-Dependent and -Independent Human Xenograft Models" *Cancer Research* 59:4761-4764 (1999).
Agus et al., "Targeting ligand-activated ErbB2 signaling inhibits breast and prostate tumor growth" *Cancer Cell* 2(2):127-137 (Aug. 2002).
Akiyama et al., "Tumor Promoter and Epidermal Growth Factor Stimulate Phosphorylation on the c-erbB-2 Gene Product in MKN-7 Human Adenocarcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 8(3):1019-1026 (Mar. 1988).
Anastasi et al., "Cytogenetic Clonality in Myelodysplastic Syndromes Studied With Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization: Lineage, Response to Growth Factor Therapy, and Clone Expansion" *Blood* 81(6):1580-1585 (Mar. 15, 1993).
Anastasi et al., "Detection of Trisomy 12 in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization to Interphase Cells: A Simple and Sensitive Method" *Blood* 79(7):1796-1801 (Apr. 1, 1992).
Anastasi et al., "Direct Correlation of Cytogenetic Findings With Cell Morphology Using In Situ Hybridization: An Analysis of Suspicious Cells in Bone Marrow Specimens of Two Patients Completing Therapy for Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia" *Blood* 77(11):2456-2462 (Jun. 1, 1991).
Arteaga et al., "p185$^{c\text{-}erbB\text{-}2}$ Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-induced DNA Repair" *Cancer Research* 54(14):3758-3765 (Jul. 15, 1994).
Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/neu Antigen" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(6):350-362 (1990).
Bacus et al., "Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER-2/neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells" *Cancer Research* 52(9):2580-2589 (May 1, 1992).
Baselga and Mendelsohn, "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies As Anti-Cancer Therapy" *Pharmac. Ther.* 64:127-154 (1994).
Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" *Proceedings of ASCO-13th Annual Meeting* (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63 (Mar. 1994).
Baselga et al., "HER2 Overexpression and Paclitaxel Sensitivity in Breast Cancer: Therapeutic Implications" *Oncology* (Supplement No. 2) 11(3):43-48 (Mar. 1997).
Baselga at al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against Growth Factor Receptors Enhance the Efficacy of Chemotherapeutic Agents." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).
Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *J. Clin. Oncol*14(3):737-744 (Mar. 1996).
Baselga et al., "Phase II study of weekly intravenous trastuzumab (Herceptin) in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 26(4 Suppl 12):78-83 with (Aug. 1999).
Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpessing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts" *Cancer Research* 58:2825-2831 (Jul. 1998).
Borst et al., "Oncogene Alterations in Endometrial Carcinoma" 1990) *Gynecologic Oncology* 38(3):364-366 (Sep. 1990).
Brady et al., "Iodine125 labeled anti-epidermal growth factor receptor-425 in the treatment of malignant astrocytomas. A pilot study" *Journal of Neurosurgical Sciences* 34(3-4):243-249 (Jul.-Dec. 1990).
Burden and Yarden., "Neuregulins and Their Receptors: A Versatile Oncogenesis and Oncongenesis." *Neuron* 18(6):847-855 (Jun. 1997).
Burris III, H., "Docetaxel (Taxotere) in HER-2-positive patients and in combination with trastuzumab (Herceptin)" *Seminars in Oncology* 27(2 Suppl 3):19-23 (Apr. 2000).
Cappuzzo et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor gene and protein and gefitinib sensitivity in non-small-cell lung cancer" *Journal of the National Cancer Institute* 97(9):643-655 (May 4, 2005).
Carlson et al., "HER2 testing in breast cancer: NCCN Task Force report and recommendations" *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network* 4(Suppl 3):S1-S24 (Jul. 2006).
Carraway and Cantley, "A Neu Acquaintance for ErbB3 and ErbB4: A Role for Receptor Heterodimerization in Growth Signaling" *Cell* 78:5-8 (Jul. 15, 1994).
Carraway et al., "Neuregulin-2, A New Ligand of ErbB3/ErbB4-Receptor Tyrosine Kinases" *Nature* 387:512-516 (May 1997).
Carter et al., "Humanization of an Anti-p185^{HER2} Antibody For Human Cancer Therapy" *Prod. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(10):4285-4289 (May 1992).
Chang at al., "Ligands for ErbB-Family Receptors Encoded By a Neuregulin-Like Gene" *Nature* 387:509-512 (May 29, 1997).
Choong et al., "Gefitinib response of erlotinib-refractory lung cancer involving menings—role of EGFR mutation" *Nature Clinical Practice Oncology* 3(1):50-57 (Jan. 2006).
Cobleigh et al., "Multinational study of the efficacy and safety of humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in women who have HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer that has progressed after chemotherapy for metastatic disease" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 17(9):2639-2648 (Sep. 1999).
Cohen et al., "Expression Pattern of the neu (NGL) Gene-Encoded Growth Factor Receptor Protein (p185^{neu}) in Normal and Transformed Epithelial Tissues of the Digestive Tract" *Onogene* 4(1):81-88 (Jan. 1989).
Connelly and Stern., "The Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor and the Product of the neu Protooncogne Are Members of a Receptor Tyrosine Phosphorylation Cascade." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87:6054-6057 (Aug. 1990).
Craft et al., "A Mechanism for Hormone-Independent Prostate Cancer Through Modulation of Androgen Receptor Signaling by the HER-2/neu Tyrosine Kinase." *Nature Medicine* 5(3):280-285 (Mar. 1999).
D'Souza and Taylor-Papadimitriou., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-Cadherin Gene" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91(15):7202-7206 (Jul. 19, 1994).
Dacic et al., "Significance of EGFR protein expression and gene amplification in non-small cell lung carcinoma" *American Journal of Clinical Pathology* 125(6):860-865 (Jun. 2006).
DakoCytomation, "HERCEPTEST TM for immunocytochemical staining" (package insert) pp. 1-25 (2004).
De Santes et al., "Radiolabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" *Cancer Research* 52:1916-1923 (1992).
Di Fiore et al., "erbB-2 Is A Potent Oncogene When Overexpressed In NIH/3T3 Cells." *Science* 237(4811):178-182 (Jul. 10, 1987).
Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cell* 41(3):695-706 (Jul. 1985).
Drebin et al., "Inhibition of Tumor Growth By a Monoclonal Antibody Reactive With an Oncogene-Encoded Tumor Antigen" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 83:9129-9133 (Dec. 1986).
Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encoded p185 Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-Tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988).
Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2(4):387-394 (1988).

Dressler et al., "Amplification of ErbB2 by Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH): An Alternate Method to Predict Outcome Following Dose-Escalated CAF in Stage II, Node Positive Breast Cancer Patients." *Proc. Annual Meet. Amer. Soc. Clin. Oncol.* (Meeting Abstract) 18:A281 (1999).

Earp et al., "Heterodimerization and Functional Interaction Between EGF Receptor Family Members: A New Signaling Paradigm With Implications for Breast Cancer Research" *Breast Cancer Res and Treatment* 35:115-132 (1995).

Fendly, B.M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Fleiss, JL *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions*, 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13-17 (1981).

Fukushige et al., "Localization of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene, c-erbB-2, on Human Chromosome 17 and Its Amplification in a Gastric Cancer Cell Line" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 6(3):955-958 (Mar. 1986).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).

Goldenberg, M., "Trastuzumab, a Recombinant DNA-Derived Humanized Monoclonal Antibody, A Novel Agent for the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Clinical Therapeutics* 21(2):309-318 (1999).

Goldman et al., "Heterodimerization of the erbB-1 and erbB-2 Receptors in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: A Mechanism for Receptor Transregulation" *Biochemistry* 29(50):11024-11028.

Graus-Porta et al., "ErbB-2, The Preferred Heterodimerization Partner of All ErbB Receptors, Is a Mediator of Lateral Signaling." *EMBO Journal* 16(7):1647-1655 (1997).

Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Chemotherapy Protector" *Cancer Research* 54(3):738-741 (Feb. 1, 1994).

Groenen et al., "Structure-Function Relationships for the EGF/TGF-α Family of Mitogens" *Growth Factors* 11:235-257 (1994).

Gu et al., "Overexpression of her-2/neu in Human Prostate Cancer and Benign Hyperplasia" *Cancer Letters* 99:185-189 (1996).

Guerin et al., "Overexpression of Either c-myc or c-erbB-2/neu Carcinomas: Correlation with Poor Prognosis" *Oncogene Res.* 3:21-31. (1988).

Guy et al., "Expression of the neu Protooncogene in the Mammary Epithelium of Transgenic Mice Induces Metastatic Disease." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(22):10578-10582 (Nov. 15, 1992).

Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enchances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines" *Cancer Research* 51:4575-4580 (Sep. 1, 1991).

Harari et al., "Neuregulin-4: A Novel Growth Factor That Acts Through the ErbB-4 Receptor Tyrosine Kinase" *Oncogene* 18:2681-2689 (1999).

Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracellular Domain of the erbB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligands Agonists" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 267(21):15160-15167 (Jul. 25, 1992).

Hirsch and Bunn Jr., "Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in lung cancer: smaller or larger molocules, selected or unselected populations?" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 23(36):9044-9047 (Dec. 20, 2005).

Hirsch et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor in non-small-cell lung carcinomas: correlation between gene copy number and protein expression and impact on prognosis" *Journal of Clinical Onocology* 21(20):3798-3807 (Oct. 15, 2003).

Hirsch et al., "Increased epidermal growth factor receptor gene copy number detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization associates with increased sensitivity to gefitinib in patients with bronchioloalveolar carcinoma subtypes: a Southwest Oncology Group Study" *J Clin Oncol* 23:6838-6845 (2005).

Hirsch et al., "Molecular analysis of EGFR gene copy number. EGFR expression and Akt activation status in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (aNSCLC) treated with gefitinib or placebo (ISEL trial)" *Clinical Cancer Research* (abstract #A268) 11(24 Suppl) :9031s (Dec. 15, 2005).

Holmes et al., "Identification of Heregulin, A Specific Activator $p185^{erbB2}$" *Science* 256:1205-1210 (May 22, 1992).

Hudziak et al., "Increased Expression of the Putative Growth Factor Receptor $p185^{HER2}$ Causes Transformation and Tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 Cells" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84(20):7159-7163 (Oct. 1987).

Hudziak et al., "$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165-1172 (Mar. 1989).

Hynes and Stern, "The Biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and Its Role in Cancer" *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1198(2-3):165-184 (Dec. 30, 1994).

Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract #3209) (Mar. 1996).

Jacobs et al., "Comparison of fluorescence in situ hybridization and immunohistochemistry for the evaluation of HER-2/neu in breast cancer" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 17(7):1974-1982 (Jul. 1999).

James et al., "Phase II Trial of the Bispecific Antibody MDX-H210 (anti-Her2/Neu X anti-CD64) Combined With GM-CSF in Patients With Advanced Prostate and Renal Cell Carcinoma That Express Her2/Neu." *Brittish Journal of Cancer* (Abstract #56) 78:19 (1998).

Johns et al., "The antitumor monoclonal antibody 806 recognizes a high-mannose form of the EGF receptor that reaches the cell surface when cells over-express the receptor " *FASEB Journal* (Express article 10.1096/fj.04-1766fje published online.) pp. 1-18 (Mar. 17, 2005).

Jones et al., "Binding Interaction of the Heregulinβ egf Domain with ErbB3 and ErbB4 Receptors Assessed by Alanine Scanning Mutagenesis" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 273(19):11667-11674 (May 8, 1998).

Kannan et al., "Cripto Enhances the Tyrosine Phosphorylation of Shc and Activates Mitogen-activated Protein Kinase (MAPK) in Mammary Epithelial Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 272(6):3330-3335 (Feb. 7, 1997).

Karunagaran et al., "ErbB-2 is a Common Auxiliary Subunit of NDF and EGF Receptors: Implications for Breast Cancer" *EMBO Journal* 15(2):254-264 (1996).

Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 52(10):2771-2776 (May 15, 1992).

Kern et al., "$p185^{neu}$ Expression in Human Lung Adenocarcinomas Predicts Shortend Survival" *Cancer Research* 50(16):5184-5191 (Aug. 15, 1990).

Kersting et al., "Amplifications of the epidermal growth factor receptor gene (egfr) are common in phyllodes tumors of the breast and are associated with tumor progression" *Laboratory Investigation* 86(1):54-61 (Jan. 2006).

King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma" *Science* 229:974-976 (Sep. 1985).

King et al., "EGF Binding to its Receptor Triggers a Rapid Tyrosine Phosphorylation of the erbB-2 Protein in the Mammary Tumor Cell Line SK-BR-3." *EMBO Journal* 7(6):1647-1651.

Klapper et al., "A Subclass of Tumor-Inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to ErbB-2/HER2 Blocks Crosstalk With Growth Factor Receptors" *Oncogene* 14:2099-2109 (1997).

Kobayashi et al., "EGFR mutation and resistance of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib" *New England J. of Medicine* 352(8):786-792 (Feb. 24, 2005).

Kokai et al., "Synergistic Interaction of p185c-neu and the EGF Receptor Leads to Transformation of Rodent Fibroblasts" *Cell* 58:287-292 (Jul. 28, 1989).

Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" In Vitro Abstract #176) 26(3):59A (1990).

Kotts et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Breast Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Combinations of Interferon-Gamma and Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against the Extracellular Domain of the Her2/erbB2 Oncogene Protein" *FASEB Journal* (abstract #1470) 4(7) :A1946 (1990).

Kotts et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Breast Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Combinations of Interferon-gamma and Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" (Program 1470, Joint Mtg of ASBMB & AAI in New Orleans, LA on Jun. 4-7, 1990 poster).

Kraus et al., "Isolation and Characterization of ERBB3, A Third Member of the ERBB/Epidermal Factor Receptor Family: Evidence for Overexpression in a Subset of Human Mammary Tumors" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:9193-9197 (Dec. 1989).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Celluar Biology* 11(2):979-986 (Feb. 1991).

Kuter, I., "Breast cancer" *The Oncologist* 6(4):338-346 (2001).

Lee et al., "Transforming Growth Factor α: Expression, Regulation, and Biological Activities" *Pharmacological Reviews* 47(1):51-85 (Mar. 1995).

Lemke,G., "Neuregulins in Development" *Molecular and Cellular Neurosciences* 7:247-262 (1996).

Leonard et al., "Anti-human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 monoclonal antibody therapy for breast cancer" *British Joural of Surgery* 89(3):262-271 (Mar. 2002).

Levi et al., "The Influence of Heregulins on Human Schwann Cell Proliferation" *J. Neuroscience* 15(2):1329-1340 (Feb. 1995).

Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Immunol. Immunother*. 37:255-263 (1993).

Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (Mar. 15, 1996).

Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed against the HER-2/neu Gene Product c-erbB-2" *Cancer Research* 51(19):5361-5369 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 44(3):1002-1007.

Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" *Jpn J. Cancer Res*. 80:10-14 (Jan. 1989).

McCann et al., "Prognostic Significance of c-erbB-2 and Estrogen Status in Human Breast Cancer" *Cancer Research* 51(12):3296-3303 (Jun. 15, 1991).

McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" *Cancer* 65(1):88-92 (Jan. 1, 1990).

McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene Product, p185" *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989).

"Could Medarex's MAb be prostate cancer's Herceptin?" *Scrip* 2442:25 (Jun. 2, 1999).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer Therapy." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1) :22 (1996).

Modjtahedi et al., "Immunotherapy of human tumour xenografts overexpressing the EGF receptor with rat antibodies that block growth factor-receptor interaction" *British Journal of Cancer* 67(2) :254-261 (Feb. 1993).

Morrissey et al., "Axon-Induced Mitogenesis of Human Schwann Cells Involves Heregulin and p185^{erbB2}" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 92:1431-1435 (Feb. 1995).

Mrhalova et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor-its expression and copy numbers of EGFR gene in patients with head and neck squamous cell carcinomas" *Neoplasma* 52(4):338-343 (2005).

Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185neu" *Methods in Enzymology* 198:277-290 (1991).

Myers et al., "Intracellular antibody mediated down-regulation of p185^{erbB2} expression in malignant prostatic cells" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research Annual Meeting* (Abstract #2334) 37:342 (1996).

Nahta and Esteva, "HER-2-targeted therapy: lessons learned and future directions" *Clinical Cancer Research* 9(14):5078-5084 (Nov. 1, 2003).

Nelson et al., "Comparison of HER-2/NEU Amplification Using Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH) with Immunohistochemically Determined Overexpression in Breast Cancers" *Modern Pathology* (abstract No. 106) 9(1):21A (Jan. 1996).

Norton, L., "Evolving Concepts in the Systemic Drug Therapy of Breast Cancer." *Seminars in Oncology* 24 (4 Suppl. 10):S10-3-S10-10 (Aug. 1997).

Pao et al., "EGF receptor gene mutations are common in lung cancers from "never smokers" and are associated with sensitivity of tumors to gefitinib and erlotinib" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101(36):13306-13311 (Sep. 7, 2004).

Park et al., "Amplification, Overexpression, and Rearrangement of erbB-2 Protooncogene in Primary Human Stomach Carcinomas" *Cancer Research* 49(23):6605-6609 (Dec. 1, 1989).

Park et al., "EGFR gene and protein expression in breast cancers" *Eur. J. Surg. Oncol.* (article in press, doi:10.1016/j.ejso.2007.01.033) pp. 1-5 (2007).

Paterson et al., "Correlation Between c-erbB-2 Amplification and Risk of Recurrent Disease in Node-Negative Breast Cancer" *Cancer Research* 51(2):556-567 (Jan. 15, 1991).

Pauletti et al., "Detection and quantitation of HER-2/neu gene amplification in human breast cancer archival material using fluorescence in situ hybridization" *Oncogene* 13(1):63-72 (Jul. 4, 1996).

Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast ancers" *Oncogene* 18:2241-2251 (1999).

Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Receptor-Enhanced Chemosensitivity Using Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185$^{HER2/neu}$ Monoclonal Antibody Plus Cisplatin in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer Refractory to Chemotherapy Treatment" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 16(8):2659-2671 (1998).

Perrotta and Abuel, "Response of Chronic Relapsing ITP of 10 Years Duration to Rituximab" *Blood* (Abstract #3360) 92(10 Suppl. 1 Part 1-2):88b (1998).

Persons, D.L. et al., "Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH) for detection on HER-2/neu Amplification in Breast Cancer: A Multicenter Portability Study." *Annals of Clinical and Laboratory Science* 30(1):41-48 (Jan. 2000).

Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994).

Plowman et al., "Heregulin Induces Tyrosine Phosphorylation of HER4/p180^{erbB4}," *Nature* Letters to Nature) 366:473-475 (Dec. 2, 1993).

Plowman et al., "Ligand-Specific Activation of HER4/p180^{erbB4}, A Forth Member of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90:1746-1750 (Mar. 1993).

Presta et al., "Humanization of an Anti-Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor Monoclonal Antibody for the Therapy of Solid Tumors and Other Disorders" *Cancer Research* 57(20):4593-4599 (Oct. 15, 1997).

Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First- or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress HER2" *Proceedings of ASCO* (*Abstract #523*) 18:137a (1999).

Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular markers—a review" *Gene* 159(1):19-27 (Jun. 14, 1995).

Riely et al., "Clinical course of patients with non-small cell lung cancer and epidermal growth factor receptor exon 19 and exon 21 mutations treated with gefitinib or erlotinib" *Clinical Cancer Research* 12(3 Pt 1):839-844 (Feb. 1, 2006).

Ro et al., "Amplified and overexpressed epidermal growth factor receptor gene in uncultured primary human breast carcinoma" *Cancer Research* 48(1):161-164 (Jan. 1, 1988).

Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" *J. Cellular Biochem*. 35(4):315-320 (1987).

Ross et al., "HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status in Prostate Cancer by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization" *Hum. Pathol*. 28(7):827:833 (Jul. 1997).

Ross et al., "Prognostic Significance of HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization of Prostate Carcinoma" *Cancer* 79(11):2162-2170 (Jun. 1, 1997).
Ross, J. and J. Fletcher, "The HER-2/neu Oncogene in Breast Cancer: Prognostic Factor, Predictive Factor, and Target for Therapy." *Stem Cells* 16(6):413-428 (1998).
Sadasivan et al., "Overexpression of Her-2/Neu May Be An Indicator of Poor Prognosis in Prostate Cancer" *J. Urol.* 150:126-131 (Jul. 1993).
Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti-P185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991).
Schaefer et al., "A Discrete Three-amino Acid Segment (LVI) at the C-terminal End of Kinase-impaired ErbB3 is required for Transactivation of ErbB2" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 274(2):859-866 (Jan. 8, 1999).
Schaefer et al., "γ-Heregulin: A Novel Heregulin Isoform That is an Autocrine Growth Factor for the Human Breast Cancer Cell Line, MDA-MB-175" *Oncogene* 15:1385-1394 (1997).
Scher et al., "Changing Pattern of Expression of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Growth Factor and Transforming Growth Factor α in the Progression of Prostatic Neoplasms" *Clinical Cancer Research* 1:545-550 (May 1995).
Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" *Molecular Foundations of Oncology*, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter 6, pp. 95-134 (1991).
Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 266(22):14300-14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).
Seifert et al., "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity" *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28(9):1063-1072 (Sep. 1994).
Shawver et al., "Ligand-Like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB-2 Antibodies Do Not Correlated with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells" *Cancer Research* 54(5):1367-1373 (Mar. 1, 1994).
Sheng et al., "Inhibition of Human Colon Cancer Cell Growth by Selective Inhibition of Cyclooxygenase-2" *J. Clin. Invest.* 99(9):2254-2259 (May 1997).
Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991).
Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-induced cardiomyopathy" *New England J. of Medicine* 339(13):900-905 (Sep. 24, 1998).
Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardiomyopathy" *Jornal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology* 27(4):1055-1063 (Apr. 1995).
Skrepnik et al., "Recombinant Oncotoxin AR209 (anti-p195^{erbB-2}) Diminishes Human Prostate Carcinoma Xenografts" *Journal of Urology* 161:984-989 (1999).
Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" *Science* 235:177-182 (Jan. 9, 1987).
Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science* 244:707-712 (May 12, 1989).
Slamon et al., "Use of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody that overexpresses HER2 for metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses HER2" *New England J. of Medicine* 344(11):783-792 (Mar. 15, 2001).
Sliwkowski et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpressing cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract only) breast 37:625-626 (Mar. 1996).
Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 269(20):14661-14665 (May 20, 1994).
Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monoclonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88(19):8691-8695 (Oct. 1, 1991).
Statement Regarding HERCEPTIN Clinical Trials pp. 1 (2004).
Stern and Kamps., "EGF-Stimulated Tyrosine Phosphorylation of Interactions of p185^{neu}: A Potential Model For Receptor Interactions." *EMBO Journal* 7(4):995-1001 (1988).
Strobel and Cannistra, "β1-integrins partly mediate binding of ovarian cancer cells to peritoneal mesothelium in vitro" *Gynecologic Oncology* 73(3):362-367 (Jun. 1999).
Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of p185^{HER2} and Growth Inhibition of Cells With HER2/Neu Gene Amplification" *International Journal of Cancer* 47(6):933-937 (Apr. 1, 1991).
Tandon et al., "HER-2/neu oncogene protein and prognosis in breast cancer" *Journal of Clinical Onocology* 7(8):1120-1128 (Aug. 1989).
Thatcher et al., "Gefitinib plus best supportive care in previously treated patients with refractory advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre study (Iressa Survival Evaluation in Lung Cancer)" *Lancet* 366(9496):1527-1537 (Oct. 29, 2005).
Tockman et al., "Considerations in Bringing a Cancer Biomarker to Clinical Application" *Cancer Research* 52:2711s-2718s (May 1, 1992).
Tokumo et al., "Double mutation and gene copy number of EGFR in gefitinib refactory non-small-cell lung cancer" *Lung Cancer* 53:117-121 (2006).
Tripp et al., "Relationship between EGFR overexpression and gene amplification status in central nervous system gliomas" *Analytical & Quantitative Cytology & Histology* 27(2):71-78 (Apr. 2005).
Tsao et al., "Erlotinib in lung cancer—molecular and clinical predictors of outcome" *New England J. of Medicine* 353(2):133-144 (Jul. 14, 2005).
Vadlamudi et al., "Regulation of Cyclooxygenase-2 pathway by HER2 receptor" *Oncogene* 18:305-314 (1999).
Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role for Their Use in Cancer Therapy" *Cancer Research* 54(20):5301-5309 (Oct. 15, 1994).
Wada et al., "Intermolecular Association of the p185^{neu} Protein and EGF Receptor Modulates EGF Receptor Function" *Cell* 61:1339-1347 (Jun. 29, 1990).
Waha et al., "A polymerase chain reaction-based assay for the rapid detection of gene amplification in human tumors" *Diagnostic Molecular Pathology* 5(2):147-150 (Jun. 1996).
Walker et al., "An Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for c-erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short-Term Prognosis in Breast Cancer." *British Journal of Cancer* 60(3):426-429 (Sep. 1989).
Wang et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor protein expression and amplification in small cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder" *Clinical Cancer Research* 13(3):953-957 (Feb. 1, 2007).
Wang et al., "Laboratory Assessment of the Status of Her-2/neu Protein and Oncogene in Breast Cancer Specimens: Comparison of Immunohistochemistry Assay with Fluorescence in Situ Hybridisation Assays." *J. Clinical Pathology* 53(5):374-381 (May 2000).
Weiner et al., "Expression of the neu Gene-encoded Protein (P185^{neu}) in Human Non-Small Cell Carcinomas of the Lung" *Cancer Research* 50(2):421-425 (Jan. 15, 1990).
Werther et al., "Humanization of an Anti-Lymphocyte Function-Associated Antigen (LFA)-1 Monoclonal Antibody and Reengineering of the Humanized Antibody for Binding to Rhesus LFA-1" *J. of Immunology* 157:4986-4995 (1996).
Williams et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 in Human Pancreatic Adenocarcinomas" (1991) *Pathobiology* 59(1):46-52 (1991).
Winstanley et al., "The long term prognostic significance of c-erbB-2 in primary breast cancer" *Brittish Journal of Cancer* 63(3):447-450 (Mar. 1991).
Winter, "Antibody-based Therapy—Humanized Antibodies" *TIPS*, UK:Elsevier Science Publishers vol. 14:139-143 (1993).
Wofsy et al., "Modification and Use of Antibodies to Label Cell Surface Antigens" *Selected Methods in Cellular Immunology*, Mishel and Schiigi, eds., San Francisco:WJ Freeman Co., Chapter 13, pp. 287-304 (1980).
Wolff et al., "American society of clinical oncology/college of american pathologists guideline recommendations for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 testing in breast cancer" *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 131:18-43 (Jan. 2007).
Wolman et al., "An Approach to Definition of Genetic Alterations in Prostate Cancer" *Diagnostic Molecular Pathology* 1(3):192-199 (Sep. 1992).

Worthylake et al., "Structural Aspects of the Epidermal Growth Transmodulation of erbB-2/neu" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 272(13):8594-8601 (Mar. 28, 1997).
Wright et al., "An Incomplete Program of Cellular Tyrosine Phosphorylations Induced by Kinase-defective Epidermal Growth Factor Receptors" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 270(20):12085-12093 (May 19, 1995).
Wright et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein: A Prognostic Indicator in Human Breast Cancer" *Cancer Research* 49(8):2087-2090 (Apr. 15, 1989).
Wu et al., "Apoptosis Induced by an Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibody in a Human Colorectal Carcinoma Cell Line and Its Delay By Insulin" *Journal of Clinical Investigation*95(4):1897-1950 (Apr. 1995).
Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product p185" *International Journal of Cancer* 53(3):401-408 (Feb. 1, 1993).
Yeh et al., "From HER2/Neu signal cascade to androgen receptor and its coactivators: A novel pathway by induction of androgen target genes through MAP kinase in prostate cancer cells" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 96:5458-5463 (May 1999).
Yokota et al., "Amplification of c-erbB-2 Oncogene in Human Adenocarcinomas in Vivo" *Lancet* 1(8484):765-767 (Apr. 5, 1986).
Yonemura et al., "Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short Term Prognosis in Gastric Cancer" *Cancer Research* 51(3):1034-1038 (Feb. 1, 1991).
Zhang et al., "Neuregulin-3 (NRG3): A novel neural tissue-enriched protein that binds and activates ErbB4" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9562-9567 (Sep. 22, 1997).
Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti-p185$^{her2/neu}$ monoclonal antibodies" *Experimental and Molecular Pathology* 67:15-25 (1999).
Zhau et al., "Amplification and Expression of the c-erb B-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Bladder Cancer" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(5):254-257 (1990).
Zitzelsberger et al., "Numerical Abnormalities of Chromosome 7 in Human Prostate Cancer Detected by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization (FISH) on Paraffin-Embedded Tissue Sections With Centromere-Specific DNA Probes" *Journal of Pathology* 172(4):325-335 (Apr. 1994).
van Lom et al., "In Situ Hybridization on May-Grunwald Giemsa-Stained Bone Marrow and Blood Smears of Patients With Hematologic Disorders Allows Detection of Cell-Lineage-Specific Cytogenetic Abnormalities" *Blood* 82(3):884-888 (Aug. 1, 1993).
van de Vijver et al., "Neu-Protein Overexpression in Breast Cancer: Association With Comedo-Type Ductal Carcinoma In Situ and Limited Prognostic Value in Stage II Breast Cancer." *New England J. of Medicine* 319(19):1239-1245 (Nov. 10, 1988).
Sauter, et al., "*Guidelines for Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor 2 Testing: Biologic and Methodologic Considerations*", Journal of Clinical Oncology—Special Article, pp. 1-11, Feb. 19, 2009.

* cited by examiner

DETECTION OF ERBB2 GENE AMPLIFICATION TO INCREASE THE LIKELIHOOD OF THE EFFECTIVENESS OF ERBB2 ANTIBODY BREAST CANCER THERAPY

This is a continuation of application Ser. No. 11/441,995 filed on May 26, 2006 (now abandoned), which is a divisional application of non-provisional application Ser. No. 09/863,101 filed on May 18, 2001 (now abandoned), which claims priority under 35U.S.C.§119(e) to provisional application Ser. No. 60/205,754, filed on May 19, 2000, the entire disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of cancers characterized by the overexpression of of a tumor antigen, such as an ErbB receptor, particularly HER2. More specifically, the invention concerns more effective treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer, in which the tumor cells overexpress ErbB as determined by a gene amplification assay, with an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody. The invention further provides pharmaceutical packages for such treatment.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Advancements in the understanding of genetics and developments in technology and epidemiology have allowed for the correlation of genetic abnormalities with certain malignancies as well as risk assessment of an individual for developing certain malignancies. However, most of the methodologies available for evaluation of tissue for the presence of genes associated with or predisposing an individual to a malignancy have well-known drawbacks. For example, methods that require disaggregation of the tissue, such as Southern, Northern, or Western blot analysis, are rendered less accurate by dilution of the malignant cells by the normal or otherwise non-malignant cells that are present in the same tissue. Furthermore, the resulting loss of tissue architecture precludes the ability to correlate malignant cells with the presence of genetic abnormalities in a context that allows morphological specificity. This issue is particularly problematic in tissue types known to be heterogeneous, such as in human breast carcinoma, where a significant percentage of the cells present in any area may be non-malignant.

The her2/neu gene encodes a protein product, often identified as p185HER2. The native p185HER2 protein is a membrane receptor-like molecule with homology to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Amplification and overexpression of HER2 in human breast cancer has been correlated with shorter disease-free interval and shorter overall survival in some studies (van de Vijver et al. New Eng. J. Med. 319: 1239 (1988); Walker et al. Br. J. Cancer 60:426 (1989); Tandon et al. J. Clin. Invest. 7:1120 (1989); Wright et al. Cancer Res. 49:2087 (1989); McCann et al. Cancer Res 51:3296 (1991); Paterson et al. Cancer Res. 51:556 (1991); and Winstanley et al. Br. J. Cancer 63:447 (1991)) but not in others (Zhou et al. Oncogene 4:105 (1989); Heintz et al. Arch Path Lab Med 114:160 (1990); Kury et al. Eur. J. Cancer 26:946 (1990); Clark et al. Cancer Res. 51:944 (1991); and Ravdin et al. J. Clin. Oncol. 12:467-74 (1994)).

In an initial evaluation of 103 patients with breast cancer, those having more than three tumor cell positive axillary lymph nodes (node positive) were more likely to overexpress HER2 protein than patients with less than three positive nodes

(Slamon et al. Science 235:177 (1987)). In a subsequent evaluation of 86 node-positive patients with breast cancer, there was a significant correlation among the extent of gene amplification, early relapse, and short survival. HER2 overexpression was determined using Southern and Northern blotting, which correlate with the HER2 oncoprotein expression evaluated by Western blotting and immunohistochemistry (IHC) (Slamon et al. Science 235:177 (1987); Slamon et al. Science 244:707 (1989)). The median period of survival was found to be approximately 5-fold shorter in patients with more than five copies of the her2 gene than in patients without gene amplification. This correlation was present even after correcting for nodal status and other prognostic factors in multivariate analyses. These studies were extended in 187 node-positive patients and indicated that gene amplification, increased amounts of mRNA (determined by Northern blotting), and increased protein expression (determined immunohistochemically) were also correlated with shortened survival time (Slamon et al. Science 244:707 (1989)); (see also U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). Nelson et al. have compared her2/neu gene amplification using FISH with immunohistochemically determined overexpression in breast cancer (Nelson et al. Modern Pathology 9 (1) 21A (1996)).

Immunohistochemical staining of tissue sections has been shown to be a reliable method of assessing alteration of proteins in a heterogeneous tissue. Immunohistochemistry (IHC) techniques utilize an antibody to probe and visualize cellular antigens in situ, generally by chromagenic or fluorescent methods. This technique excels because it avoids the unwanted effects of disaggregation and allows for evaluation of individual cells in the context of morphology. In addition, the target protein is not altered by the freezing process.

However, in the clinical trial assay (CTA), IHC of formaldehyde-fixed, paraffin embedded tissue samples only demonstrated 50%-80% sensitivity, relative to frozen IHC samples (Press, Cancer Research 54:2771 (1994)). Thus, IHC can lead to false negative results, excluding from treatment patients who might benefit from the treatment.

Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is a recently developed method for directly assessing the presence of genes in intact cells. FISH is an attractive means of evaluating paraffin-embedded tissue for the presence of malignancy because it provides for cell specificity, yet overcomes the cross-linking problems and other protein-altering effects caused by formalin fixation. FISH has historically been combined with classical staining methodologies in an attempt to correlate genetic abnormalities with cellular morphology (see, e.g., Anastasi et al., Blood 77:2456-2462 (1991); Anastasi et al., Blood 79:1796-1801 (1992); Anastasi et al., Blood 81:1580-1585 (1993); van Lom et al., Blood 82:884-888 (1992); Wolman et al., Diagnostic Molecular Pathology 1(3): 192-199 (1992); Zitzelberger, Journal of Pathology 172:325-335 (1994)).

To date, there has been no correlation of her2 gene amplification with anti-HER2 antibody treatment outcome, only with disease prognosis. The standard assay has been IHC on formalin fixed, paraffin embedded samples. These samples, when scored as 3+ or 2+, identify patients who are likely to benefit from treatment with an anti-HER2 antibody, like Herceptin®. The 3+ and 2+ scores correlate with her2 gene amplification, e.g., as tested by FISH. However, there remains a need for more effective identification of candidates for successful ErbB antagonist therapies, such as Herceptin® treatment. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention advantageously provides a method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of an ErbB antagonist cancer treatment. The method comprises administering a can-

cer treating dose of the ErbB antagonist to a subject wherein an erbB gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject has been found to be amplified. Preferably the ErbB is HER2. In a specific embodiment, the method further comprises administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic, particularly a taxol.

In a specific preferred embodiment, exemplified herein, the invention provides a method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of an anti-HER2 antibody to treat cancer. This method comprises administering a cancer treating dose of the anti-HER2 antibody to the subject in whom a her2 gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject have been found to be. amplified.

The unexpected clinical results underlying the invention, in which gene amplification proved to be a more effective indication of antibody-based tumor therapy than protein detection by immunohistochemistry, extends to tumor antigens in general. Thus, any anti-tumor-specific antigen based antibody therapy can have increased likelihood of success in patients who are found to have gene amplification of the gene encoding the tumor antigen.

A particular advantage of the invention is that it permits selection of patients for treatment who, based on immunohistochemical criteria, would be excluded. Thus, in a specific embodiment, the subject has been found to have an antigen level corresponding to a 0 or 1+ score for HER2 by immunohistochemistry on a formaldehyde-fixed tissue sample.

The invention further provides a pharmaceutical package comprising an ErbB antagonist for treating a cancer, and instructions to administer the ErbB antagonist to a subject if an erbB gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject is amplified. Preferably the ErbB antagonist is an anti-ErbB antibody, such as an anti-HER2 antibody. In a further aspect, the instructions also teach administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic, e.g., a taxol. Such pharmaceutical packages, including the instructions for use, can be provided for any antibody-based therapeutic specific for a tumor-specific antigen.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

The present invention advantageously permits treatment of patients who have a greater likelihood of responding to the treatment by administering therapeutic agents, i. e., anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibodies or ErbB receptor antagonists, to patients who are found to have an amplified gene encoding such a tumor antigen or ErbB receptor protein. The invention is based, in part, on the unexpected discovery that her2 gene amplification, e.g., as detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), although it correlates with HER2 expression as detected by immunohistochemistry (IHC), provides a more accurate basis for selecting patients for treatment because FISH status unexpectedly correlates better with response to treatment. This outcome was surprising in part because FISH status has about the same rate of correlation with a clinical trial assay (CTA) IHC assay as another IHC assay (HercepTest). Based on this observation, FISH would be expected to have a similar correlation with treatment response. This outcome also surprises because direct measurement of protein (by immunoassay) would be expected to provide a more accurate assessment of a cancer therapy targeted to the protein than an indirect measure of expression, like gene amplification.

Evaluation of patient groups and subgroups demonstrates the power of gene amplification analysis for selecting patients more likely to respond to treatment. IHC provides a score for HER2 expression on tumor cells: 0 (no expression) through 3+ (very high levels of expression). Clinical selection criteria exclude patients with 0 and 1+ scores and select patients with 2+ and 3+ scores. The data show that 14% of combined 2+/3+ patients respond to Herceptin®, while 20% of FISH+ (amplified her2 gene) patients respond to Herceptin®. The 3+ subgroup has a 17% response rate, which is very close to the FISH+ subjects' response rate. However, the 2+ subgroup has less than half the response rate of FISH+ subjects. Thus, gene amplification clearly differentiates large sub-populations within the 2+ subgroup, permitting more effective treatment for those who are FISH+, and quickly identifying patients for whom alternative treatment modalities are appropriate and should commence immediately.

Gene amplification analysis also identifies patients who are unnecessarily excluded because of anomalies in the IHC analysis, particularly when the tests are performed on formalyn fixed, paraffin embedded samples (such sample processing can disrupt or destroy antibody epitopes on the HER2 protein, but has much less impact on gene amplification assays). As shown in the examples, a subset of 0 and 1+ subjects are FISH+. These patients are likely to respond to anti-HER2 antibody therapy, e.g., with Herceptin®, although by IHC criteria they would be excluded from receiving this treatment.

Thus, the present invention advantageously permits inclusion of patients who are more likely to benefit from treatment but who, by standard IHC criteria, would be excluded from treatment. At the same time, the invention permits exclusion of patients who should promptly seek an alternative mode of treatment because the anti-tumor antigen therapy (i.e., ErbB antagonist or tumor antigen-specific therapeutic antibody) is not likely to succeed.

In short, the present invention is a powerful adjunct to IHC assays for target protein expression level-based selection of patients. It can also be employed on its own, i.e., without IHC, to provide initial screening and selection of patients. The invention significantly improves screening and selection for subjects to receive a cancer-treating dose of an anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibody treatment, ErbB receptor antagonist treatment, and other treatment targeted to overexpressed tumor antigens (or tumor-specific antigens), resulting in an increased likelihood of benefit from such treatments.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture or package, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody (or other anti-tumor-specific antigen antibody), optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antagonist to patients who have been found to have an amplified erbB gene.

Definitions

As used herein, an "ErbB receptor" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes EGFR, HER2, ErbB3, and ErbB4 receptors, as well as TEGFR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,708,156) and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a native sequence ErbB receptor or an amino acid

sequence variant thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

ErbB receptors are examples of tumor-specific antigens or tumor antigens. The term "tumor antigen" is used herein to refer to a protein that is expressed at a higher level on tumor cells compared to normal cells. Generally, the normal cells for comparison are of the same tissue type, particularly phenotype, as the tumor, or from which the tumor arose. A "tumor specific antigen" refers to an antigen expressed either preferentially or only on tumor cells. Examples of tumor-specific antigens include, in addition to the ErbB receptors, MART1/Melan A, gp-100, and tyrosinase (in melanoma); MAGE-1 and MAGE-3 (in bladder, head and neck, and non-small cell carcinoma); HPV EG and E7 proteins (in cervical cancer); Mucin/MUC-1 (in breast, pancreas, colon, and prostate cancers); prostate specific antigen/PSA (in prostate cancer); and carninoembryonic antigen/CEA (in colon, breast, and gastrointestinal cancers).

By "amplification" is meant the presence of one or more extra gene copies of erbB or other tumor antigen-encoding gene in a chromosome complement. Gene amplification can result in overexpression of protein, e.g., ErbB receptor protein. Gene amplification in cells from a tissue sample can be measured by many techniques, particularly Fluorescence in situ Hybridization (FISH), but also including and not limited to quantitative PCR, quantitative Southern hybridization, and the like.

By "tissue sample" is meant a collection of similar cells obtained from a tissue of a subject or patient, preferably containing nucleated cells with chromosomal material. The four main human tissues are (1) epithelium; (2) the connective tissues, including blood vessels, bone and cartilage; (3) muscle tissue; and (4) nerve tissue. The source of the tissue sample maybe solid tissue as from a fresh, frozen and/or preserved organ or tissue sample or biopsy or aspirate; blood or any blood constituents; bodily fluids such as cerebral spinal fluid, amniotic fluid, peritoneal fluid, or interstitial fluid; cells from any time in gestation or development of the subject. The tissue sample may also be primary or cultured cells or cell lines. The tissue sample may contain compounds which are not naturally intermixed with the tissue in nature such as preservatives, anticoagulants, buffers, fixatives, nutrients, antibiotics, or the like. In one embodiment of the invention, the tissue sample is "non-hematologic tissue" (i.e., not blood or bone marrow tissue).

For the purposes herein a "section" of a tissue sample is meant a single part or piece of a tissue sample, e.g., a thin slice of tissue or cells cut from a tissue sample. It is understood that multiple sections of tissue samples may be taken and subjected to analysis according to the present invention, provided that it is understood that the present invention comprises a method whereby the same section of tissue sample may be analyzed at both morphological and molecular levels, or may be analyzed with respect to both protein and nucleic acid.

By "correlate" or "correlating" is meant comparing, in any way, the performance and/or results of a first analysis with the performance and/or results of a second analysis. For example, one may use the results of a first analysis in carrying out the second analysis and/or one may use the results of a first analysis to determine whether a second analysis should be performed and/or one may compare the results of a first analysis with the results of a second analysis. In relation to IHC combined with FISH, one may use the results of IHC to determine whether FISH should be performed and/or one may compare the level of protein expression with gene amplification to further characterize a tumor biopsy (e.g. to compare HER2 protein expression with her2 gene amplification). One advantageous feature of the invention is the ability to identify patients likely to benefit from treatment using FISH even if IHC indicates that they are antigen low.

By "nucleic acid" is meant to include any DNA or RNA, for example, chromosomal, mitochondrial, viral and/or bacterial nucleic acid present in tissue sample. The term "nucleic acid" encompasses either or both strands of a double stranded nucleic acid molecule and includes any fragment or portion of an intact nucleic acid molecule.

By "gene" is meant any nucleic acid sequence or portion thereof with a functional role in encoding or transcribing an RNA (rRNA, tRNA, or mRNA, the latter capable of translation as a protein) or regulating other gene expression. The gene may consist of all the nucleic acids responsible for encoding a functional protein or only a portion of the nucleic acids responsible for encoding or expressing a protein. The nucleic acid sequence may contain a genetic abnormality within exons, introns, initiation or termination regions, promoter sequences, other regulatory sequences or unique adjacent regions to the gene.

By "ErbB ligand" is meant a polypeptide which binds to and/or activates an ErbB receptor. The ErbB ligand of particular interest herein is a native sequence human ErbB ligand such as Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF) (Savage et al., J. Biol. Chem. 247:7612-7621 (1972)); Tansforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha) (Marquardt et al., Science 223: 1079-1082 (1984)); amphiregulin, also known as schwanoma or keratinocyte autocrine growth factor (Shoyab et al. Science 243:1074-1076 (1989); Kimura et al. Nature 348:257-260 (1990); and Cook et al. Mol. Cell. Biol. 11:2547-2557 (1991)); betacellulin (Shing et al., Science 259:1604-1607 (1993); and Sasada et al. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 190:1173 (1993)); heparin-binding epidermal growth factor (HB-EGF) (Higashiyama et al., Science 251:936-939 (1991)); epiregulin (Toyoda et al., J. Biol. Chem. 270:7495-7500 (1995); and Komurasaki et al. Oncogene 15:2841-2848 (1997)), a heregulin (see below); neuregulin-2 (NRG-2) (Carraway et al., Nature 387:512-516 (1997)); neuregulin-3 (NRG-3) (Zhang et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 94:9562-9567 (1997)); or cripto (CR-1) (Kannan et al., J. Biol. Chem. 272 (6):3330-3335 (1997)). ErbB ligands that bind EGFR include EGF, TGF-alpha, amphiregulin, betacellulin, HB-EGF and epiregulin. ErbB ligands which bind HER3 include heregulins. ErbB ligands capable of binding HER4 include betacellulin, epiregulin, HB-EGF, NRG-2, NRG-3 and heregulins.

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence encoded by the heregulin gene product as disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869 or Marchionni et al., Nature, 362:312-318 (1993), and biologically active variants of such polypeptides. Examples of heregulins include heregulin-alpha, heregulin-beta1, heregulin-beta2, and heregulin-beta3 (Holmes et al., Science, 256:1205-1210 (1992); and U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869); neu differentiation factor (NDF) (Peles et al. Cell 69:205-216 (1992)); acetylcholine receptor-inducing activity (ARIA) (Falls et al. Cell 72:801-815 (1993)); glial growth factors (GGFs) (Marchionni et al., Nature, 362:312-318 (1993)); sensory and motor neuron derived factor(SMDF) (Ho et al. J. Biol. Chem. 270:14523-14532 (1995)); gamma-heregulin (Schaefer et al. Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)). An example of a biologically active fragment/amino acid sequence variant of a native sequence HRG polypeptide, is an EGF-like domain fragment (e.g., HRG-beta1, 177-244).

An "ErbB hetero-oligomer" herein is a noncovalently associated oligomer comprising at least two different ErbB receptors. Such complexes may form when a cell expressing two or more ErbB receptors is exposed to an ErbB ligand and can be

isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., (J. Biol. Chem., 269(20):14661-14665 (1994)), for example. Examples of such ErbB hetero-oligomers include EGFR-HER2, HER2-HER3, and HER3-HER4 complexes. Moreover, the ErbB hetero-oligomer may comprise two or more HER2 receptors combined with a different ErbB receptor, such as HER3, HER4, or EGFR. Other proteins, such as a cytokine receptor subunit (e.g., gp130), may be included in the hetero-oligomer.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. (Ann. Rev. Biochem. 56:881-914 (1987)), including variants thereof (e.g., a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 87:4207-4211 (1990)). ErbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product. Examples of antibodies which bind to EGFR include MAb 579 (ATCC CRL HB 8506), Mab 455 (ATCC CRL HB 8507), MAb 225 (ATCC CRL 8508), MAb 528 (ATCC CRL 8509) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,533) and variants thereof, such as chimerized 225 (C225) and reshaped human 225 (H225) (see, PCT Publication No. WO 96/40210).

The expressions "ErbB2" and "HER2" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence human HER2 protein described, for example, in Semba et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci U.S.A. 82:6497-6501 (1985)) and Yamamoto et al. (Nature 319:230-234(1986)) (Genebank accession number X03363), and variants thereof. The term erbB2 refers to the gene encoding human HER2 and neu refers to the gene encoding rat p185neu. Preferred HER2 is native sequence human HER2. Examples of antibodies which bind HER2 include MAbs 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463), 2C4 (ATCC HB-12697), 7F3 (ATCC HB-12216), and 7C2 (ATCC HB-12215) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997; PCT Publication No. WO 98/17797; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,840,525, expressly incorporated herein by reference). Humanized anti-HER2 antibodies include huMAb4D5-1, huMAb4D5-2, huMAb4D5-3, huMAb4D5-4, huMAb4D5-5, huMAb4D5-6, huMAb4D5-7, and huMAb4D5-8 (Herceptin®) as described in Table 3 of U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337, which is expressly incorporated herein by reference; and humanized 520C9 (PCT Publication No. WO 93/21319). Human anti-HER2 antibodies are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997 and PCT Publication No. WO 97/00271.

"ErbB3" and "HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968, as well as Kraus et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.) 86:9193-9197 (1989)), including variants thereof. Exemplary antibodies that bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511, e.g., the 8B8 antibody (ATCC HB-12070) or a humanized variant thereof. The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in European Application No. EP 599,274; Plowman et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A., 90:1746-1750 (1993)); and Plowman et al., (Nature, 366:473-475 (1993)), including variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 99/19488.

An "ErbB antagonist" is any molecule that binds to an ErbB receptor and blocks ligand activation of the ErbB receptor. Such antagonists include, but are not limited to, modified ligands, ligand peptides (i.e., ligand fragments), soluble ErbB receptors, and, preferably, anti-ErbB antibodies.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the ErbB antagonist, e.g., anti-ErbB2 antibody, and more generally, any cancer in which administration of an antibody against an over-expressed antigen can treat the cancer. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount elicits antibody-mediated cytotoxicity, activates complement, has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time for disease progression (TTP), survival, tumor size, or determining the response rates (RR) (see the Example below).

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, melanoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small-cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung, squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, and various types of head and neck cancer.

An "ErbB-expressing cancer" is one comprising cells which have ErbB protein present at their cell surface, such that an anti-ErbB antibody is able to bind to the cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90}, and Re^{186}), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclosphosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphorarmide, triethylenethiophosphaoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibi-

otics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabicin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; antimetabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK®; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxoids, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and doxetaxel (Taxotere, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; carminomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone; and anti-androgens such as flutamide and nilutamide; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (WB Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

ErbB Receptor Tyrosine Kinases

The ErbB receptor tyrosine kinases are important mediators of cell growth, differentiation and survival. The receptor family includes at least four distinct members including Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR or ErbB1), HER2 (ErbB2 or p185neu), HER3 (ErbB3), and HER4 (ErbB4 or tyro2).

EGFR, encoded by the ErbB1 gene, has been causally implicated in human malignancy. In particular, increased expression of EGFR has been observed in breast, bladder, lung, head, neck and stomach cancer, as well as glioblastomas. Increased EGFR receptor expression is often associated with increased production of the EGFR ligand, Transforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha), by the same tumor cells resulting in receptor activation by an autocrine stimulatory pathway. Baselga and Mendelsohn Pharmac. Ther. 64:127-154 (1994). Monoclonal antibodies directed against the EGFR or its ligands, TGF-alpha and EGF, have been evaluated as therapeutic agents in the treatment of such malignancies. See, e.g., Baselga and Mendelsohn., supra; Masui et al. Cancer Research 44:1002-1007 (1984); and Wu et al. J. Clin. Invest. 95:1897-1905 (1995).

The second member of the ErbB family, p185neu, was originally identified as the product of the transforming gene from neuroblastomas of chemically treated rats. The activated form of the neu proto-oncogene results from a point mutation (valine to glutamic acid) in the transmembrane region of the encoded protein. Amplification of the human homolog of neu is observed in breast and ovarian cancers and correlates with a poor prognosis (Slamon et al., Science, 235:177-182(1987); Slamon et al., Science, 244:707-712 (1989); and U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). To date, no point mutation analogous to that in the neu proto-oncogene has been reported for human tumors. Overexpression of HER2 (frequently but not uniformly due to gene amplification) has also been observed in other carcinomas including carcinomas of the stomach, endometrium, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreas and bladder.

Antibodies directed against the rat p185neu and human HER2 protein products have been described. Drebin and colleagues have raised antibodies against the rat neu gene product, p185neu (see, for example, Drebin et al., Cell 41:695-706 (1985); Myers et al., Meth. Enzym. 198:277-290 (1991); and W094/22478). Drebin et al. (Oncogene 2:273-277(1988)) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions of p185neu result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice (see also U.S.Pat. No. 5,824,311).

Hudziak et al., (Mol. Cell. Biol. 9(3):1165-1172 (1989)) describe the generation of a panel of anti-HER2 antibodies, which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5, which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize HER2-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-alpha (see, also, U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171). The anti-HER2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. were further characterized (Fendly et al. Cancer Research 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. In Vitro 26(3):

59A (1990); Sarup et al. Growth Regulation 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. J. Clin. Immunol. 11(3):117-127 (1991);Kumar et al. Mol. Cell. Biol. 11(2):979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. CancerImmunol. Immunother. 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. Oncogene 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. Cancer Research 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. J. Biol. Chem. 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. J. Biol. Chem. 266:14300-5 (1991); D'souza et al. Proc. Natl. Acad-.Sci. 91:7202-7206 (1994); Lewis et al. Cancer Research 56:1457-1465(1996); and Schaefer et al. Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)).

A recombinant humanized IgG1 version of the murine anti-HER2 antibody 4D5 (rhuMAb HER2 or Herceptin®; commercially available from Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco) is clinically active in patients with HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that have received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., J. Clin. Oncol. 14:737-744 (1996)). Herceptin®received marketing approval from the Food and Drug Administration Sep. 25, 1998 for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer whose tumors overexpress the HER2 protein. The current treatment protocol employs IHC to determine HER2 protein overexpression.

Other anti-HER2 antibodies with various properties have been described (Tagliabue et al., Int. J. Cancer 47:933-937 (1991); McKenzie et al., Oncogene 4:543-548 (1989); Maier et al., Cancer Res. 51:5361-5369 (1991); Bacus et al., Molecular Carcinogenesis 3:350-362 (1990); Stancovski et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.) 88:8691-8695 (1991); Bacus et al., Cancer Research 52:2580-2589 (1992); Xu et al. Int. J. Cancer 53:401-408 (1993); PCT Publication No. WO94/00136; Kasprzyk et al., Cancer Research 52:2771-2776 (1992); Hancock et al., Cancer Res. 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al., Cancer Res. 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. Cancer Res. 54:3758-3765 (1994); Harwerth et al., J. Biol. Chem. 267:15160-15167 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,783,186; Klapper et al. Oncogene 14:2099-2109 (1997); and PCT Publication No. WO 98/17797).

Homology screening has resulted in the ErbB receptor family members: HER3 (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968; Kraus et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 86:9193-9197 (1989)) and HER4 (European Patent Application No. EP 599 274; Plowman et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A., 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., Nature, 366:473-475 (1993)). Both of these receptors display increased expression on at least some breast cancer cell lines.

The ErbB receptors are generally found in various combinations in cells and heterodimerization is thought to increase the diversity of cellular responses to a variety of ErbB ligands (Earp et al., Breast Cancer Research and Treatment 35:115-132 (1995)). EGFR is bound by six different ligands: Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF), Transforming Growth Factor-alpha (TGF-alpha), amphiregulin, Heparin Binding Epidermal Growth Factor (HB-EGF), betacellulin, and epiregulin (Groenen et al. GrowthFactors 11:235-257 (1994)). A family of heregulin proteins resulting from alternative splicing of a single gene are ligands for HER3 and HER4. The heregulin family includes alpha, beta, and gamma heregulins (Holmes et al., Science, 256:1205-1210 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869; and Schaefer et al., Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)); neu differentiation factors (NDFs), glial growth factors (GGFs); acetylcholine receptor inducing activity (ARIA); and sensory and motorneuron derived factor (SMDF) (for a review, see Groenen et al., Growth Factors 11:235-257 (1994); Lemke, G. Molec. & Cell. Neurosci. 7:247-262 (1996) and Lee et al. Pharm. Rev. 47:51-85 (1995)). Recently, two additional ErbB ligands were identified: neuregulin-2 (NRG-2), which is reported to bind either HER3 or HER4 (Chang et al., Nature: 387 509-512 (1997); and Carraway et al Nature 387:512-516 (1997)) and neuregulin-3, which binds HER4 (Zhang et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.) 94(18): 9562-7 (1997)). HB-EGF, betacellulin, andepiregulin also bind to HER4.

While EGF and TGF-alpha do not bind HER2, EGF stimulates EGFR and HER2 to form a heterodimer, which activates EGFR and results in transphosphorylation of HER2 in the heterodimer. Dimerization and/or transphosphorylation appears to activate the HER2 tyrosine kinase, (Earp et al., supra.) Likewise, when HER3 is co-expressed with HER2, an active signaling complex is formed and antibodies directed against HER2 are capable of disrupting this complex (Sliwkowski et al., J. Biol.Chem., 269(20):14661-14665 (1994)). Additionally, the affinity of HER3 for heregulin (HRG) is increased to a higher affinity state when co-expressed with HER2. See also, Levi et al., Journal of Neuroscience 15:1329-1340 (1995); Morrissey et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 92:1431-1435 (1995); and Lewis et al., Cancer Res., 56:1457-1465 (1996) with respect to the HER2-HER3 protein complex. HER4, like HER3, forms an active signaling complex with HER2 (Carraway and Cantley, Cell 78:5-8(1994)).

Detecting Gene Amplification

The present invention contemplates using any technique to detect gene amplification. (see, Boxer, J. Clin. Pathol. 53:19-21(2000)). These techniques include in situ hybridization (Stoler, Clin. Lab. Med. 12:215-36 (1990), using radioisotope or fluorophore-labeled probes; polymerase chain reaction (PCR); quantitative Southern blotting, and other techniques for quantitating individual genes. Preferably probes or primers selected for gene amplification evaluation are highly specific, to avoid detecting closely related homologous genes.

The word "label" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which is conjugated or fused directly or indirectly to a reagent such as a nucleic acid probe or an antibody and facilitates detection of the reagent to which it is conjugated or fused. The label may itself be detectable (e.g., radioisotope labels or fluorescent labels) or, in the case of an enzymatic label, may catalyze chemical alteration of a substrate compound or composition which is detectable. A hapten or epitope that is immunospecifically bound by an antibody can also serve as a label.

The term "fluorescently labeled nucleic acid probe" refers to a probe comprising (1) a nucleic acid having a sequence rendering it capable of hybridizing with a target nucleic acid sequence and (2) a fluorescent label. Preferably such hybridization is specific, i. e., it can occur under high stringency conditions.

Sample Preparation

Any tissue sample from a subject may be used. Examples of tissue samples that may be used include, but are not limited to, breast, prostate, ovary, colon, lung, endometrium, stomach, salivary gland or pancreas. The tissue sample can be obtained by a variety of procedures including, but not limited to surgical excision, aspiration, or biopsy. The tissue may be fresh or frozen. In one embodiment, the tissue sample is fixed and embedded in paraffin or the like.

The tissue sample may be fixed (i.e., preserved) by conventional methodology (See e.g., *Manual of Histological Staining Method of the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, 3rd Edition* Lee G. Luna, HT (ASCP) Editor, The Blakston Division McGraw-Hill Book Company: New York; (1960);

The Armed Forces Institute of Pathology Advanced Laboratory Methods in Histology and Pathology (1994) Ulreka V. Mikel, Editor, Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, American Registry of Pathology, Washington, D.C.). One of skill in the art will appreciate that the choice of a fixative is determined by the purpose for which the tissue is to be histologically stained or otherwise analyzed. One of skill in the art will also appreciate that the length of fixation depends upon the size of the tissue sample and the fixative used. By way of example, neutral buffered formalin, Bouin's or paraformaldehyde, may be used to fix a tissue sample.

Generally, the tissue sample is first fixed and is then dehydrated through an ascending series of alcohols, infiltrated, and embedded with paraffin or other sectioning media so that the tissue sample may be sectioned. Alternatively, one may section the tissue and fix the sections obtained. By way of example, the tissue sample may be embedded and processed in paraffin by conventional methodology. Examples of paraffin that may be used include, but are not limited to, Paraplast, Broloid, and Tissuemay. Once the tissue sample is embedded, the sample may be sectioned by a. microtome or the like. By way of example for this procedure, sections may range from about three microns to about five microns in thickness. Once sectioned, the sections may be attached to slides by several standard methods. Examples of slide adhesives include, but are not limited to, silane, gelatin, poly-L-lysine, and the like. For example, the paraffin embedded sections may be attached to positively charged slides, slides coated with poly-L-lysine.

If paraffin has been used as the embedding material, the tissue sections are generally deparaffinized and rehydrated to water. The tissue sections may be deparaffinized by several conventional standard methodologies. For example, xylenes and a gradually descending series of alcohols may be used. Alternatively, commercially available deparaffinizing non-organic agents such as Hemo-De7 (CMS, Houston, Tex.) may be used.

Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH)

In situ hybridization is generally carried out on cells or tissue sections fixed to slides. In situ hybridization may be performed by several conventional methodologies (see, e.g., Leitch et al., *In Situ Hybridization: A Practical Guide*, Oxford BIOS Scientific Publishers, Micropscopy Handbooks v. 27 (1994)). In one in situ procedure, fluorescent dyes (such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) which fluoresces green when excited by an Argon ion laser) are used to label a nucleic acid sequence probe that is complementary to a target nucleotide sequence in the cell. Each cell containing the target nucleotide sequence will bind the labeled probe producing a fluorescent signal upon exposure, of the cells to a light source of a wavelength appropriate for excitation of the specific fluorochrome used. A "target nucleotide sequence" is a sequence specific for a over-expressed tumor antigen, such as ErbB. FISH analysis can be used in conjunction with other assays, including without limitation morphological staining (of serial sections or the same section; see PCT Publication No. WO 00/20641, specifically incorporated herein by reference).

Various degrees of hybridization stringency can be employed. As the hybridization conditions become more stringent, a greater degree of complementarity is required between the probe and target to form and maintain a stable duplex. Stringency is increased by raising temperature, lowering salt concentration, or raising formamide concentration. Adding dextran sulfate or raising its concentration may also increase the effective concentration of labeled probe to increase the rate of hybridization and ultimate signal intensity. After hybridization, slides are washed in a solution generally containing reagents similar to those found in the hybridization solution with washing time varying from minutes to hours depending on required stringency. Longer or more stringent washes typically lower nonspecific background but run the risk of decreasing overall sensitivity.

Probes used in the FISH analysis may be either RNA or DNA oligonucleotides or polynucleotides and may contain not only naturally occurring nucleotides but their analogs like digoxygenin dCTP, biotin dcTP 7-azaguanosine, azidothymidine, inosine, or uridine. Other useful probes include peptide probes and analogues thereof, branched gene DNA, peptidomimetics, peptide nucleic acid (PNA), and/or antibodies.

Probes should have sufficient complementarity to the target nucleic acid sequence of interest so that stable and specific binding occurs between the target nucleic acid sequence and the probe. The degree of homology required for stable hybridization varies with the stringency of the hybridization medium and/or wash medium. Preferably, completely homologous probes are employed in the present invention, but persons of skill in the art will readily appreciate that probes exhibiting lesser but sufficient homology can be used in the present invention (see e.g., Sambrook, J., et al., *Molecular Cloning A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Press, (1989)).

One of skill in the art will appreciate that the choice of probe depends on the characteristics of the target gene of interest. Examples of amplification include, but are not limited to, her2/neu in breast and ovarian cancer, n-myc in neuroblastoma, c-myc in small cell lung cancer. By way of example for evaluating her2/neu amplification a probe spanning a 140 kb region on the long arm of chromosome 17 containing the her2/neu gene (17q 11.2-17q12) may be used. A probe for the -satellite sequences in the centromeric region of chromosome 17(D1721) may be used to evaluate for aneusomy of chromosome 17 as a source or cause for her2/neu amplification. For example, a cocktailed version of these probes may be obtained from Vysis, Inc. where each probe is directly labeled with easily distinguishable fluorophores, such as SPECTRUM ORANGE® and SPECTRUM GREEN®.

Probes may also be generated and chosen by several means including, but not limited to, mapping by in situ hybridization, somatic cell hybrid panels, or spot blots of sorted chromosomes; chromosomal linkage analysis; or cloned and isolated from sorted chromosome libraries from human cell lines or somatic cell hybrids with human chromosomes, radiation somatic cell hybrids, microdissection of a chromosome region, or from yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs) identified by PCR primers specific for a unique chromosome locus or other suitable means like an adjacent YAC clone. Probes may be genomic DNA, cDNA, or RNA cloned in a plasmid, phage, cosmid, YAC, Bacterial Artificial Chromosomes (BACs), viral vector, or any other suitable vector. Probes may be cloned or synthesized chemically by conventional methods. When cloned, the isolated probe nucleic acid fragments are typically inserted into a vector, such as lambda phage, pBR322, M13, or vectors containing the SP6 or T7 promoter and cloned as a library in a bacterial host (see, e.g., Sambrook, supra).

Probes are preferably labeled with a fluorophor. Examples of fluorophores include, but are not limited to, rare earth chelates (europium chelates), Texas Red, rhodamine, fluorescein, dansyl, Lissamine, umbelliferone, phycocrytherin, phycocyanin, or commercially available fluorophors such SPECTRUM ORANGE® and SPECTRUM GREEN®, and/or

derivatives of any one or more of the above. Multiple probes used in the assay may be labeled with more than one distinguishable fluorescent or pigment color. These color differences provide a means to identify the hybridization positions of specific probes. Moreover, probes that are not separated spatially can be identified by a different color light or pigment resulting from mixing two other colors (e.g., light red+green=yellow), pigment (e.g., blue+yellow=green), or by using a filter set that passes only one color at a time.

Probes can be labeled directly or indirectly with the fluorophor, utilizing conventional methodology. Additional probes and colors may be added to refine and extend this general procedure to include more genetic abnormalities or serve as internal controls. By way of example the her2/neu gene is in chromosome 17, and as an internal control a probe for satellite sequences specific for chromosome 17 (D17Z1) may be used (Vysis, Inc.) to prove diploidy in areas of non-malignant cells and/or to establish the presence or absence of chromosome 17 aneusomy in areas of her2/neu amplification.

After processing for FISH, the slides may be analyzed by standard techniques of fluorescence microscopy (see, e.g., Ploem and Tanke, *Introduction to Fluorescence Microscopy*, Oxford University Press: New York (1987)). Briefly, each slide is observed using a microscope equipped with appropriate excitation filters, dichromic, and barrier filters. Filters are chosen based on the excitation and emission spectra of the fluorochromes used. Photographs of the slides may be taken with the length of time of film exposure depending on the fluorescent label used, the signal intensity and the filter chosen. For FISH analysis the physical loci of the cells of interest determined in the morphological analysis are recalled and visually conformed as being the appropriate area for FISH quantification.

In order to correlate IHC with FISH, one may use a computer-driven, motorized stage which stores location of coordinates. This may be used to evaluate the same area by two different analytical techniques. For example, color images of the morphologically stained areas may be captured and saved using a computer-assisted cooled CCD camera. The same section may be subsequently taken through the FISH procedure, the stored locations recalled, and the designated areas scored for the presence of fluorescent nuclear signals. A similar procedure for IHC followed by FISH is contemplated.

Typically, hundreds of cells are scanned in a tissue sample and quantification of the specific target nucleic acid sequence is determined in the form of fluorescent spots, which are counted relative to the number of cells. Deviation of the number of spots in a cell from a norm (e.g., such as probing for the her2/neu gene in a normal cell will produce two copies, abnormal greater than two) is indicative of a greater likelihood of benefit from a tumor antigen-specific antibody therapy, e.g., an ErbB antagonist therapy. As exemplified infra, her2 gene amplification provides a much more effective indication of the likelihood that an anti-HER2 antibody therapy will be effective.

Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antagonists, e.g., antibodies, used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 17th edition, Osol, A. Ed.), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2 antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein be reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2, ErbB3, ErbB4, vascular endothelial factor (VEGF), or an antibody that binds to a different epitope on the target ErbB, in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, a chemotherapeutic, a cytokine, growth inhibitory agent and/or cardioprotectant. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 17th edition, Osol, A. Ed.

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration are preferably, and in the case of humans, must be, sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(—)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mecha-

nism is discovered to be intermolecular S-S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

Treatment with the Anti-ErbB Antagonists

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB antibodies or other antagonists may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB receptor in patients who have been found to have an amplified erbB gene. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic, glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal, blastocoelic, inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies, chemotherapeutic agents and any other active agents of the invention are administered to a human patient in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

In one embodiment, the treatment of the present invention involves the combined administration of an anti-ErbB antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, e.g., a taxoid. The present invention contemplates administration of cocktails of different chemotherapeutic agents. The combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

In addition to the above therapeutic regimes, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells (tumor resection) and/or radiation therapy.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of antagonist, e.g. antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

Pharmaceutical Packages: Articles of Manufacture

In a related aspect of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, optionally labeled, and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials, such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition that is effective for treating the condition and preferably has a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibody or an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody. A label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. This second buffer can be used to reconstitute the active agent, if that is provided as a lyophilysate or dried powder, or to dilute a concentrated preparation of the active agent. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes.

In addition, the article of manufacture comprises a package insert or inserts with instructions for use in patients who have been found to have erbB gene amplification, e.g., by FISH testing. Such patients may be subjects who, by IHC, would be excluded from treatment with the ErbB antagonist, e.g., patients who score a 0 or 1+ using an anti-HER2 antibody.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., U.S.A. (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

EXAMPLE 1

Concordance Between the Clinical Trials Assay (CTA) and Fluorescence

In Situ Hybridization (FISH) in the Herceptin® Pivotal Trials

Overexpression of HER2 at the 2+ or 3+ level by immunohistochemistry (IHC) was required for enrollment in the

pivotal Herceptin® metastatic breast cancer trials. The Clinical Testing Assay (CTA) involves two separate IHC assays performed with either monoclonal antibodies 4D5 (after protease digestion of the formalin fixed sample) or CB11 (after heat treatment of the formalin fixed sample). Subjects were eligible if either assay was scored at 2+ or 3+. If both were performed, the final score was the higher of the two results.

Concordance between the CTA and another IHC, HercepTest (HT), is 79%. This was the basis for FDA approval of HT to aid in the selection of patients for Herceptin therapy.

This Example describes a similar concordance study, utilizing clinical material submitted for screening for the Herceptin® pivotal trials, that compares the CTA to her2/neu gene amplification measured by the PathVysion FISH assay. In the pivotal trials, 5998 subjects were screened for HER2 expression; 1915 (32%) were positive by the CTA and 4083 (68%) were negative. A random sample of 623 specimens (1:1 ratio of positive:negative) were selected for this analysis, 317 CTA+ and 306 CTA−. Specimens were not freshly cut from blocks. They had been stored between 2 and 4 years as 4-6μ sections on glass slides. Each section was assayed for her2/neu amplification using the protocol specified in the package insert of the PathVysion assay. Amplification was defined as a signal ratio of greater than or equal to 2. The results are shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1

FISH/CTA Concordance

		CTA				
		0	1+	2+	3+	
FISH	−	207	28	67	21	
	+	7	2	21	176	
		4%	7%	24%	89%	529

FISH+ = HER2:CEP17 signal ratio ≧2
Concordance = 82% (79-85%)

For the total 623 specimens tested, a FISH signal result was obtained in 529. Assay failure occurred in 19.9% of CTA− and 10.4% CTA+ samples. Amplification in the 0, 1+, 2, and 3+ groups was 4.2%, 6.7%, 23.9%, and 89.3%, respectively. The sample concordance was 81.3%, similar to the CTA/HT concordance of 79%. Single copy overexpression was 31%, predominantly in the 2+ group. Amplification was rarely (4.6%) noted in the CTA− group. The higher assay failure rate in the CTA− group may be due to non-assay related factors such as tissue fixation. These may have also resulted in false negative results for IHC.

These data were closely interpreted to suggest that her2/neu amplification status may have unexpectedly superior predictive value for identifying patients who are more likely to benefit from Herceptin® treatment as compared to HercepTest. The observation that only 24% of 2+ patients are FISH+ suggest that this sub-group may have less predictable treatment outcomes when selected by IHC only. Identification of FISH+ patients in the 1+ and 0 sub-groups might identify subjects who, though failing the IHC criteria for Herceptin® treatment, would likely benefit from Herceptin® treatment. A direct analysis of Herceptin® benefit based on FISH score compared to IHC score is presented in Example 2.

EXAMPLE 2

FISH/Clinical Outcome Study

This example links the results from three Herceptin® Trials with FISH status. In this study, 805 subjects were selected at random from all three trials. Of these, 167 lacked slides. Another 78 assays (9.7%) failed. Thus, formalin-fixed cut sections stored between 2.5 and 4.5 years from 540 subjects provided the sample pool for this study. There were no imbalances in demographics or prognostic indicators in these samples. Results are reported for different treatment groups.

Correlation of FISH status with response was evaluated for patients who received Herceptin® as a second or third line therapy. These data are reported for 2+and 3+ (by CTA) subjects in Table 2.

TABLE 2

FISH/Response with single agent Herceptin ®, 2nd or 3rd line Therapy, 2+/3+ Combined

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	21	0
No response	84	37
response rate	20%	0%
	(12.5-27.5%)	(0.7%)

N = 142

The 20% response rate of FISH+ subjects unexpectedly exceeds the 15% response rate of 2+ and 3+ patients in this study and 14% response rate observed in patients selected by CTA with a 2+ or 3+ immunohistochemistry score during the pivotal trials. Thus, while FISH correlates well with IHC to about the same degree as another IHC assay, the Hercep Test, as shown in Example 1, it unexpectedly is superior in identifying patients who are more likely to benefit from Herceptin® therapy.

When these data were broken down into the components 3+ and 2+ subjects, the same 20% response rate of FISH+ subjects was seen (Tables 3 and 4).

TABLE 3

FISH/Response with single agent Herceptin ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 3+ subgroup

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	18	0
No response	72	17
response rate	20%	0%
	(12-28%)	(0-14%)

N = 107

TABLE 4

FISH/Response with single agent Herceptin ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 2+ subgroup

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	3	0
No response	12	20
response rate	20%	0%
	(1-40%)	(0-14%)

N = 35

In the 3+ sub-group, the FISH+ response rate (20%) was very close but still exceeded the 17% response rate of 3+ subjects. The 2+ subgroup showed a much greater difference, with only a 9% response rate versus 20% by FISH+ selection. These data show that FISH+ status (her2 gene amplification) greatly increases the likelihood of response to Herceptin®.

Data were also evaluated for patient responses to Herceptin® as a first line therapy (Table 5).

TABLE 5

FISH/Response with single agent Herceptin ® as 1st line therapy, 2+/3+ combined

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	17	1
No response	24	20
response rate	41% (26-56%)	20% (0-14%)

N = 62

The 41% response rate of FISH+ subjects was notably greater than the 27% response rate of 3+, 2+, subjects.

The surprising increase in likelihood of beneficial response based on FISH analysis extended to responses to chemotherapy plus Herceptin®, as shown in Table 6. FISH+ subjects showed a much greater response to chemotherapy and Herceptin® (54%) than FISH−(41%). Tables 7-9 contain more extensive data, broken down by different chemotherapeutic agents (adrinomycin and cyclophosphamide, AC; and Paditaxol, P) and different endpoints (response rate, time to progression, and survival) for Herceptin® in combination with chemotherapy.

TABLE 6

FISH/Response rate to chemotherapy +/− Herceptin ®, 1st line therapy; 2+/3+ combined

	C alone	C + H
FISH−	39% (26-52%)	41% (27-55%)
FISH+	27% (19-35%)	54% (45-63%)

N = 336

TABLE 7

Response rate of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	56*	42	41*	17	50*	32
3+	349	60*	42	49*	17	56*	31
FISH+	240	58*	40	49*	14	54*	27

*p < 0.05

TABLE 8

Time to progression (months) of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	7.8*	6.1	6.9*	2.7	7.4*	4.6
3+	349	8.1*	6.0	7.1*	3.0	7.8*	4.6
FISH+	240	7.8*	6.2	7.0*	3.2	7.3*	4.6

*p < 0.05

TABLE 9

Survival (months) of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	27	21	22	18	25*	20
3+	349	31*	21	25	18	29*	20
FISH+	240	29*	20	25*	14	27*	18

*p < 0.05

These data uniformly confirm that FISH+ analysis, though correlating closely to IHC, provides a much more accurate indicator of likelihood of success with Herceptin® treatment. Across the board, FISH+ selection has about ⅓ (30%) greater response rate than 2+/3+ IHC-selection. When focused on 2+ patients, FISH status provides a much more effective tool for patient selection. FISH states also identifies patients who, because of 0 or 1+ status as determined by IHC, would otherwise be excluded from treatment.

These observations have broad implications for ErbB receptor antagonist-based cancer therapies and anti-tumor antigen cancer therapies in general. Thus erbB antagonists, e.g., anti-erbB receptor antibodies like Herceptin®, can have an increased likelihood of efficacy when administered to patients who are positive for erbB gene amplification, e.g., by a FISH test. This is certainly the case, based on these data, with Herceptin®.

The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the specific embodiments described herein. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and the accompanying figures. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

It is further to be understood that all values are approximate, and are provided for description.

Patents, patent applications, publications, product descriptions, and protocols are cited throughout this application, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties for all purposes.

What is claimed:

1. A method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of breast cancer treatment with humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody huMAb4D5-8, which method comprises administering a cancer treating dose of said antibody to a human subject diagnosed with breast cancer, wherein an erbB2 gene amplification in breast cancer cells in a tissue sample from the subject has been detected, and wherein the breast cancer cells from the human subject have been found to have a 0 or 1+ score of ErbB2 protein expression by immunohistochemistry.

2. The method according to claim **1**, wherein the breast cancer cells from the human subject have been found to have a 0 or 1+ score of ErbB2 protein expression by immunohistochemistry on a formaldehyde-fixed tissue sample.

3. The method according to claim **1** wherein the erbB2 gene amplification is detected by detecting fluorescence of a fluorescent-labeled nucleic acid probe hybridized to the gene.

4. The method according to claim **1**, which further comprises administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic drug.

5. The method according to claim **4**, wherein the chemotherapeutic drug is a taxoid.

6. The method according to claim **1** wherein the likelihood of effectiveness increases by about 30%.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT G

US008076066B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Mass

(10) **Patent No.: US 8,076,066 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: *Dec. 13, 2011**

(54) **GENE DETECTION ASSAY FOR IMPROVING THE LIKELIHOOD OF AN EFFECTIVE RESPONSE TO A HER2 ANTIBODY CANCER THERAPY**

(75) Inventor: **Robert D. Mass**, Mill Valley, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **11/690,304**

(22) Filed: **Mar. 23, 2007**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2007/0166753 A1 Jul. 19, 2007

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 09/863,101, filed on May 18, 2001, now abandoned.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/205,754, filed on May 19, 2000.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
C12Q 1/68 (2006.01)
G01N 33/574 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **435/6**; 435/7.23

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... None
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,753,894	A	6/1988	Frankel et al.
4,935,341	A	6/1990	Bargmann et al.
4,943,533	A	7/1990	Mendelsohn et al.
4,968,603	A	11/1990	Slamon et al.
4,975,278	A	12/1990	Senter et al.
5,169,774	A	12/1992	Frankel et al.
5,183,884	A	2/1993	Kraus et al.
5,288,477	A	2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A	10/1994	Capon et al.
5,367,060	A	11/1994	Vandlen et al.
5,401,638	A	3/1995	Carney et al.
5,464,751	A	11/1995	Greene et al.
5,480,968	A	1/1996	Kraus et al.
5,514,554	A	5/1996	Bacus
5,571,894	A	11/1996	Wels et al.
5,578,482	A	11/1996	Lippman et al.
5,587,458	A	12/1996	King et al.
5,604,107	A	2/1997	Carney et al.
5,641,869	A	6/1997	Vandlen et al.
5,648,237	A	7/1997	Carter
5,663,144	A	9/1997	Greene et al.
5,677,165	A	10/1997	de Boer et al.
5,677,171	A	10/1997	Hudziak et al.
5,705,157	A	1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,720,954	A	2/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,725,856	A	3/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,726,023	A	3/1998	Cheever et al.
5,728,687	A	3/1998	Bissery
5,736,137	A	4/1998	Anderson et al.
5,747,261	A	5/1998	King et al.
5,770,195	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,772,997	A	6/1998	Hudziak et al.
5,776,427	A	7/1998	Thorpe et al.
5,783,186	A	7/1998	Arakawa et al.
5,783,404	A	7/1998	Koski
5,801,005	A	9/1998	Cheever et al.
5,804,396	A	9/1998	Plowman
5,821,337	A	10/1998	Carter et al.
5,824,311	A	10/1998	Greene et al.
5,834,229	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,837,243	A	11/1998	Deo et al.
5,837,523	A	11/1998	Greene et al.
5,840,525	A	11/1998	Vandlen et al.
5,846,538	A	12/1998	Cheever et al.
5,846,749	A	12/1998	Slamon et al.
5,856,089	A	1/1999	Wang et al.
5,856,110	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,859,206	A	1/1999	Vandlen et al.
5,869,445	A	2/1999	Cheever et al.
5,876,712	A	3/1999	Cheever et al.
5,877,305	A	3/1999	Huston et al.
5,908,835	A	6/1999	Bissery

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 332 865	A2	9/1989
EP	0 599 274	A1	6/1994
EP	0 616 812	B1	9/1994
EP	0 656 367		6/1995
EP	0 412 116		11/1995

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Baselga et al (Seminars in Oncology, Aug. 1999, 26 (suppl 12):78-83, IDS).*

Persons et al (Annals of Clinical & Laboratory Science, Jan. 2000, 30:41-48, IDS).*

Pauletti et al (Oncogene, 1996, 13:63-72).*

Couturier et al (Mod Pathol, 2000, 13:1238-1243).*

Pauletti et al (Oncogene, 1996, 13:63-72, IDS).*

Brady et al., "Iodine125 labeled anti-epidermal growth factor receptor-425 in the treatment of malignant astrocytomas. A pilot study" *Journal of Neurosurgical Sciences* 34(3-4):243-249 (Jul.-Dec. 1990).

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Laura B Goddard

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Diane Marshang; Ginger R. Dreger; Arnold & Porter LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The invention provides a method for more effective treatment of patients susceptible to or diagnosed with tumors overexpressing HER2, as determined by a gene amplification assay, with a HER2 antibody. Such method comprises administering a cancer-treating dose of the HER2 antibody, preferably in addition to chemotherapeutic agents, to a subject in whose tumor cells her2 has been found to be amplified e.g., by fluorescent in situ hybridization.

6 Claims, No Drawings

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,910,486	A	6/1999	Curiel et al.
5,922,845	A	7/1999	Deo et al.
5,925,519	A	7/1999	Jensen et al.
5,939,531	A	8/1999	Wels et al.
5,968,511	A	10/1999	Akita et al.
5,977,322	A	11/1999	Marks et al.
5,985,553	A	11/1999	King et al.
5,994,071	A	11/1999	Ross et al.
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel et al.
6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter et al.
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring
6,096,873	A	8/2000	Schaefer et al.
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver et al.
6,156,321	A	12/2000	Thorpe et al.
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak et al.
6,270,765	B1	8/2001	Deo et al.
6,333,169	B1	12/2001	Hudziak et al.
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel et al.
6,358,682	B1	3/2002	Jaffee et al.
6,387,371	B1	5/2002	Hudziak et al.
6,395,272	B1	5/2002	Deo et al.
6,399,063	B1	6/2002	Hudziak et al.
6,403,630	B1	6/2002	Dannenberg et al.
6,407,213	B1	6/2002	Carter et al.
6,458,356	B1	10/2002	Arakawa et al.
6,512,097	B1	1/2003	Marks et al.
6,573,043	B1	6/2003	Cohen et al.
6,582,919	B2	6/2003	Danenberg
6,602,670	B2	8/2003	Danenberg
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman et al.
6,632,979	B2	10/2003	Erickson et al.
6,639,055	B1	10/2003	Carter et al.
6,719,971	B1	4/2004	Carter et al.
6,800,738	B1	10/2004	Carter et al.
6,905,830	B2	5/2005	Cohen et al.
6,984,494	B2	1/2006	Ralph
7,018,809	B1	3/2006	Carter
7,097,840	B2	8/2006	Erickson et al.
7,129,051	B2	10/2006	Cohen et al.
7,279,287	B2	10/2007	Ralph
7,371,376	B1	5/2008	Fendly
7,371,379	B2	5/2008	Baughman et al.
2002/0001587	A1	1/2002	Erickson et al.
2002/0031515	A1	3/2002	Caligiuri et al.
2002/0035736	A1	3/2002	Erickson et al.
2002/0051785	A1	5/2002	Slamon et al.
2002/0064785	A1	5/2002	Mass
2002/0076408	A1	6/2002	Buchsbaum
2002/0076695	A1	6/2002	Ross
2002/0090662	A1	7/2002	Ralph
2002/0141993	A1	10/2002	Ashkenazi et al.
2002/0142328	A1	10/2002	Danenberg
2002/0155527	A1	10/2002	Stuart et al.
2002/0173629	A1	11/2002	Jakobovits et al.
2002/0192211	A1	12/2002	Hudziak et al.
2002/0192652	A1	12/2002	Danenberg
2003/0022918	A1	1/2003	Horak et al.
2003/0059790	A1	3/2003	Jaffee et al.
2003/0103973	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.
2003/0108545	A1	6/2003	Rockwell et al.
2003/0134344	A1	7/2003	Mass
2003/0144252	A1	7/2003	Furr
2003/0147884	A1	8/2003	Paton et al.
2003/0152987	A1	8/2003	Cohen et al.
2003/0157097	A1	8/2003	Noguchi et al.
2003/0170234	A1	9/2003	Hellmann
2003/0211530	A1	11/2003	Danenberg
2003/0228663	A1	12/2003	Lowman et al.
2004/0037823	A9	2/2004	Paton et al.
2004/0106161	A1	6/2004	Bossenmaier et al.
2005/0002928	A1	1/2005	Hellmann
2005/0100944	A1	5/2005	Cohen et al.
2005/0148607	A1	7/2005	Suzuki et al.
2005/0208043	A1	9/2005	Adams et al.
2005/0238640	A1	10/2005	Sliwkowski
2005/0244929	A1	11/2005	Carter
2006/0013819	A1	1/2006	Kelsey
2006/0034842	A1	2/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0046270	A1	3/2006	Ralph
2006/0067930	A1	3/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0073143	A1	4/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0121044	A1	6/2006	Amler et al.
2006/0165702	A1	7/2006	Allison et al.
2006/0183150	A1	8/2006	Cohen et al.
2006/0188509	A1	8/2006	Dernyck et al.
2006/0193854	A1	8/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0198843	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0204505	A1	9/2006	Sliwkowski
2006/0210561	A1	9/2006	Baughman et al.
2006/0228745	A1	10/2006	Mass
2006/0275305	A1	12/2006	Bryant
2007/0009976	A1	1/2007	Lenz et al.
2007/0020261	A1	1/2007	Sliwkowski et al.
2007/0037228	A1	2/2007	Moecks et al.
2007/0184055	A1	8/2007	Sliwkowski
2007/0202516	A1	8/2007	Mass
2007/0224203	A1	9/2007	Friess et al.
2007/0269429	A1	11/2007	Kelsey et al.
2007/0292419	A1	12/2007	Hellman
2008/0038271	A1	2/2008	Amler et al.
2008/0050373	A1	2/2008	Cohen
2008/0050385	A1	2/2008	Friess et al.
2008/0102069	A1	5/2008	Friess et al.
2008/0108096	A1	5/2008	Ralph
2008/0112957	A1	5/2008	Fendly et al.
2008/0112958	A1	5/2008	Mass

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 494 135		4/1996
EP	0 502 812		8/1996
EP	0 711 565		8/1998
EP	0 554 441		1/1999
EP	616812	B1	11/1999
EP	1 006 194		6/2000
EP	0 444 181		10/2001
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	5-317084		12/1993
JP	95006982	B2	1/1995
JP	7-59588		3/1995
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105	B2	5/1999
WO	WO 87/07646	A2	12/1987
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 89/10412	A1	11/1989
WO	WO 90/14357		11/1990
WO	WO 91/02062	A2	2/1991
WO	WO 91/05264	A1	4/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 92/20798		11/1992
WO	WO 93/03741	A1	3/1993
WO	WO 93/12220	A1	6/1993
WO	WO 93/16185	A2	8/1993
WO	WO 93/21232	A1	10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319	A1	10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136	A1	1/1994
WO	WO 94/22478	A1	10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/07321	A1	3/1996
WO	WO 96/16673	A1	6/1996
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/40789	A1	12/1996
WO	WO 97/00271	A1	1/1997
WO	WO 97/04801		2/1997
WO	WO 97/20858	A1	6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/35885		10/1997
WO	WO 97/38731	A1	10/1997
WO	WO 98/02463	A1	1/1998
WO	WO 98/02540		1/1998
WO	WO 98/02541		1/1998

WO	WO 98/17797	A1	4/1998
WO	WO 98/18489	A1	5/1998
WO	WO 98/33914	A1	8/1998
WO	WO 98/45479	A1	10/1998
WO	WO 99/31140	A1	6/1999
WO	WO 99/39729		8/1999
WO	WO 99/48527	A1	9/1999
WO	WO 99/55367	A1	11/1999
WO	WO 00/20641		4/2000
WO	WO 00/61145	A1	10/2000
WO	WO 00/61185	A1	10/2000
WO	00/69460		11/2000
WO	WO 00/69460	A1	11/2000
WO	WO 00/78347	A1	12/2000
WO	WO 01/00238	A1	1/2001
WO	WO 01/00244	A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/00245	A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/05425	A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/09187	A2	2/2001
WO	WO 01/15730	A1	3/2001
WO	WO 01/20033	A1	3/2001
WO	WO 01/21192	A2	3/2001
WO	WO 01/32155	A2	5/2001
WO	WO 01/34574		5/2001
WO	WO 01/53354	A2	7/2001
WO	WO 01/56604	A1	8/2001
WO	WO 01/64246	A2	9/2001
WO	WO 01/76586	A1	10/2001
WO	WO 01/76630	A1	10/2001
WO	WO 01/87334	A1	11/2001
WO	WO 01/87336	A1	11/2001
WO	WO 01/89566	A1	11/2001
WO	WO 02/05791	A1	1/2002
WO	WO 02/11677	A2	2/2002
WO	WO 02/44413	A2	6/2002
WO	WO 02/45653	A2	6/2002
WO	WO 02/009754	A1	7/2002
WO	WO 02/055106	A2	7/2002
WO	03/087131		10/2003
WO	2004/008099	A2	1/2004
WO	WO 2005/117553		12/2005
WO	2006/007398	A1	6/2006
WO	2006/063042	A2	6/2006
WO	2006/078307	A1	7/2006
WO	2006/091693		8/2006
WO	2006/096861		9/2006
WO	2006/107854	A2	10/2006
WO	2007/003420		1/2007
WO	2007/013950		2/2007
WO	2007/019899		9/2007
WO	2007/107329		9/2007
WO	2007/145862		12/2007
WO	2008/031531		3/2008

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Cappuzzo et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor gene and protein and gefitinib sensitivity in non-small-cell lung cancer" *Journal of the National Cancer Institute* 97(9):643-655 (May 4, 2005).

Carlson et al., "HER2 testing in breast cancer: NCCN Task Force report and recommendations" *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network* 4(Suppl 3):S1-S24 (Jul. 2006).

Dacic et al., "Significance of EGFR protein expression and gene amplification in non-small cell lung carcinoma" *American Journal of Clinical Pathology* 125(6):860-865 (Jun. 2006).

Hirsch et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor in non-small-cell lung carcinomas: correlation between gene copy number and protein expression and impact on prognosis" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 21(20):3798-3807 (Oct. 15, 2003).

Hirsch et al., "Increased epidermal growth factor receptor gene copy number detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization associates with increased sensitivity to gefitinib in patients with bronchioloalveolar carcinoma subtypes: a Southwest Oncology Group Study" *J Clin Oncol* 23:6838-6845 (2005).

Johns et al., "The antitumor monoclonal antibody 806 recognizes a high mannose form of the EGF receptor that reaches the cell surface when cells over-express the receptor" *FASEB Journal* (Express article 10.1096/fj.04-1766fje published online.) pp. 1-18 (Mar. 17, 2005).

Kersting et al., "Amplifications of the epidermal growth factor receptor gene (egfr) are common in phyllodes tumors of the breast and are associated with tumor progression" *Laboratory Investigation* 86(1):54-61 (Jan. 2006).

Modjtahedi et al., "Immunotherapy of human tumour xenograpfts overexpressing the EGF receptor with rat antibodies that block growth factor-receptor interaction" *British Journal of Cancer* 67(2):254-261 (Feb. 1993).

Mrhalova et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor-its expression and copy numbers of EGFR gene in patients with head and neck squamous cell carcinomas" *Neoplasma* 52(4):338-343 (2005).

Park et al., "EGFR gene and protein expression in breast cancers" *Eur. J. Surg. Oncol.* (article in press, doi:10.1016/j.ejso.2007.01.033) pp. 1-5 (2007).

Ro et al., "Amplified and overexpressed epidermal growth factor receptor gene in uncultured primary human breast carcinoma" *Cancer Research* 48(1):161-164 (Jan. 1, 1988).

Tockman et al., "Considerations in Bringing a Cancer Biomarker to Clinical Application" *Cancer Research* 52:2711s-2718s (May 1, 1992).

Tripp at al., "Relationship between EGFR overexpression and gene amplification status in central nervous system gliomas" *Analytical & Quantitative Cytology & Histology* 27(2):71-78 (Apr. 2005).

Waha et al., "A polymerase chain reaction-based assay for the rapid detection of gene amplification in human tumors" *Diagnostic Molecular Pathology* 5(2):147-150 (Jun. 1996).

Wang at al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor protein expression and gene amplification in small cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder" *Clinical Cancer Research* 13(3):953-957 (Feb 1, 2007).

Wolff et al., "American society of clinical oncology/college of american pathologists guideline recommendations for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 testing in breast cancer" *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 131:18-43 (Jan. 2007).

Aasland et al., "Expression of Oncogenes in Thyroid Tumours: Coexpression of c-erbB2/neu and c-erbB" *British Journal of Cancer* 57(4):358-363 (Apr. 1988).

Agus at al., "Differential Anti-Tumor Effects of Targeting Distinct Epitopes of the Her-2/neu Extracellular Domain in Xenograft Models of Prostate Cancer." *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research Annual Meeting* (Abstract #4570) 41:719 (Mar. 2000).

Agus et al., "Response of Prostate Cancer to Anti-Her-2/neu Antibody in Androgen-Dependent and -Independent Human Xenograft Models" *Cancer Research* 59: 4761-4764 (1999).

Agus et al., "Targeting ligand-activated ErbB2 signaling inhibits breast and prostate tumor growth" *Cancer Cell* 2(2):127-137 (Aug. 2002).

Akiyama et al., "Tumor Promoter and Epidermal Growth Factor Stimulate Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2 Gene Product in MKN-7 Human Adenocarcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 8(3):1019-1026 (Mar. 1988).

Anastasi et al., "Cytogenetic Clonality in Myelodysplastic Syndromes Studied With Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization: Lineage, Response to Growth Factor Therapy, and Clone Expansion" *Blood* 81(6):1580-1585 (Mar. 15, 1993).

Anastasi et al., "Detection of Trisomy 12 in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization to Interphase Cells: A Simple and Sensitive Method" *Blood* 79(7):1796-1801 (Apr. 1, 1992).

Anastasi et al., "Direct Correlation of Cytogenetic Findings With Cell Morphology Using In Situ Hybridization: An Analysis of Suspicious Cells in Bone Marrow Specimens of Two Patients Completing Therapy For Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia" *Blood* 77(11):2456-2462 (Jun. 1, 1991).

Arteaga et al., "p185$^{c\text{-}erbB\text{-}2}$ Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-induced DNA Repair" *Cancer Research* 54(14):3758-3765 (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/neu Antigen" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(6):350-362 (1990).

Bacus et al., "Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER-2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells" *Cancer Research* 52(9):2580-2589 (May 1, 1992).

Baselga and Mendelsohn, "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies As Anti-Cancer Therapy" *Phamac. Ther.* 64:127-154 (1994).

Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" *Proceedings of ASCO—13th Annual Meeting* (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63 (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "HER2 Overexpression and Paclitaxel Sensitivity in Breast Cancer: Therapeutic Implications" *Oncology* (Supplement No. 2) 11(3):43-48 (Mar. 1997).

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against Growth Factor Receptors Enhance the Efficacy of Chemotherapeutic Agents." *Annals of Oncology* (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).

Baselga at al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14(3):737-744 (Mar. 1996).

Baselga et al., "Phase II study of weekly intravenous trastuzumab (Herceptin) in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer" *Seminars in Oncology* 26(4 Suppl 12):78-83 (Aug. 1999).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpessing Human Breast Cancer. Xenografts" *Cancer Research* 58:2825-2831 (Jul. 1998).

Borst et al., "Oncogene Alterations in Endometrial Carcinoma" *Gynecologic Oncology* 38(3):364-366 (Sep. 1990).

Burden and Yarden., "Neuregulins and Their Receptors: A Versatile Signaling Module in Organogenesis and Oncogenesis." *Neuron* 18(6):847-855 (Jun. 1997).

Burris III, H., "Docetaxel (Taxotere) in HER-2-positive patients and in combination with trastuzumab (Herceptin)" *Seminars in Oncology* 27(2 Suppl 3):19-23 (Apr. 2000).

Carraway and Cantley, "A Neu Acquaintance for ErbB3 and ErbB4: A Role for Receptor Heterodimerization in Growth Signaling" *Cell* 78:5-8 (Jul. 15, 1994).

Carraway et al., "Neuregulin-2, A New Ligand of ErbB3/ErbB4-Receptor Tyrosine Kinases" *Nature* 387:512-516 (May 1997).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an Anti-p185^{HER2} Antibody for Human Cancer Therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(10):4285-4289 (May 1992).

Chang et al., "Ligands for ErbB-Family Receptors Encoded by a Neuregulin-Like Gene" *Nature* 387:509-512 (May 29, 1997).

Choong et al., "Gefitinib response of erlotinib-refractory lung cancer involving meninges—role of EGFR mutation" *Nature Clinical Practice Oncology* 3(1):50-57 (Jan. 2006).

Cobleigh et al., "Multinational study of the efficacy and safety of humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in women who have HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer that has progressed after chemotherapy for metastatic disease" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 17(9):2639-2648 (Sep. 1999).

Cohen et al., "Expression Pattern of the neu (NGL) Gene-Encoded Growth Factor Receptor Protein (p185^{neu}) in Normal and Transformed Epithelial Tissues of the Digestive Tract" *Oncogene* 4(1):81-88 (Jan. 1989).

Connelly and Stern., "The Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor and the Product of the neu Protooncogene Are Members of a Receptor Tyrosine Phosphorylation Cascade." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87:6054-6057 (Aug. 1990).

Craft et al., "A Mechanism for Hormone-Independent Prostate Cancer Through Modulation of Androgen Receptor Signaling by the HER-2/neu Tyrosine Kinase." *Nature Medicine* 5(3):280-285 (Mar. 1999).

D'Souza and Taylor-Papadimitriou., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-Cadherin Gene" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91(15):7202-7206 (Jul. 19, 1994).

DakoCytomation, "HERCEPTEST TM for immunocytochemical staining" (package insert) pp. 1-25 (2004).

De Santes et al., "Radiolabeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" *Cancer Research* 52:1916-1923 (1992).

Di Fiore et al., "erbB-2 Is a Potent Oncogene When Overexpressed in NIH/3T3 Cells." *Science* 237(4811):178-182 (Jul. 10, 1987).

Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cell* 41(3):695-706 (Jul. 1985).

Drebin at al., "Inhibition of Tumor Growth by a Monoclonal Antibody Reactive With an Oncogene-Encoded Tumor Antigen" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 83:9129-9133 (Dec. 1986).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encode p185 Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-Tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" *Oncogene* 2(4):387-394 (1988).

Dressler et al., "Amplification of ErbB2 by Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH): An Alternate Method to Predict Outcome Following Dose-Escalated CAF in Stage II, Node Positive Breast Cancer Patients." *Proc. Annual Meet. Amer. Soc. Clin. Oncol.* (Meeting Abstract) 18:A281 (1999).

Earp et al., "Heterodimerization and Functional Interaction Between EGF Receptor Family Members: A New Signaling Paradigm With Implications for Breast Cancer Research" *Breast Cancer Res and Treatment* 35:115-132 (1995).

Fendly, B.M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Fleiss, JL *Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions*, 2nd edition, New York, NY:Wiley pp. 13-17 (1981).

Fukushige et al., "Localization of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene, c-erbB-2, on Human Chromosome 17 and Its Amplification in a Gastric Cancer Cell Line" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 6(3):955-958 (Mar. 1986).

Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).

Goldenberg, M., "Trastuzumab, a Recombinant DNA-Derived Humanized Monoclonal Antibody, a Novel Agent for the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" *Clinical Therapeutics* 21(2):309-318 (1999).

Goldman at al., "Heterodimerization of the erbB-1 and erbB-2 a Receptors in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: A Mechanism for Receptor Transregulation" *Biochemistry* 29(50):11024-11028 (1990).

Graus-Porta et al., "ErbB-2, The Preferred Heterodimerization Partner of All ErbB Receptors, Is a Mediator of Lateral Signaling." *EMBO Journal* 16(7):1647-1655 (1997).

Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector" *Cancer Research* 54(3):738-741 (Feb. 1, 1994).

Groenen et al., "Structure-Function Relationships for the EGF/TGF-α Family of Mitogens" *Growth Factors* 11:235-257 (1994).

Gu et al., "Overexpression of her-2/neu in Human Prostate Cancer and Benign Hyperplasia" *Cancer Letters* 99:185-189 (1996).

Guerin et al., "Overexpression of Either c-myc or c-erbB-2/neu Proto-Oncogenes in Human Breast Carcinomas: Correlation with Poor Prognosis" *Oncogene Res.* 3:21-31 (1988).

Guy et al., "Expression of the neu Protooncogene in the Mammary Epithelium of Transgenic Mice Induces Metastatic Disease." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89(22):10578-10582 (Nov. 15, 1992).

Hancock et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines" *Cancer Research* 51:4575-4580 (Sep. 1, 1991).

Harari at al., "Neuregulin-4: A Novel Growth Factor That Acts Through the ErbB-4 Receptor Tyrosine Kinase" *Oncogene* 18:2681-2689 (1999).

Harwerth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracellular Domain of the erbB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 267(21):15160-15167 (Jul. 25, 1992).

Hirsch and Bunn Jr., "Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in lung cancer: smaller or larger molecules, selected or unselected populations?" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 23(36):9044-9047 (Dec. 20, 2005).

Hirsch et al., "Molecular analysis of EGFR gene copy number. EGFR expression and Akt activation status in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (aNSCLC) treated with gefitinib or placebo (ISEL trial)" *Clinical Cancer Research* (abstract #A268) 11(24 Suppl):9031s (Dec. 15, 2005).

Holmes et al., "Identification of Heregulin, A Specific Activator of $p185^{erbB2}$" *Science* 256:1205-1210 (May 22, 1992).

Hudziak et al., "Increased Expression of the Putative Growth Factor Receptor $p185^{HER2}$ Causes Transformation and Tumorigenesis of NIH 3T3 Cells" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84(20):7159-7163 (Oct. 1987).

Hudziak et al., "$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165-1172 (Mar. 1989).

Hynes and Stern, "The Biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and Its Role in Cancer" *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1198(2-3):165-184 (Dec. 30, 1994).

Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-HER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast cancer tumor cells in vitro" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract #3209) 37:470 (Mar. 1996).

Jacobs et al., "Comparison of fluorescence in situ hybridization and immunohistochemistry for the evaluation of HER-2/neu in breast cancer" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 17(7):1974-1982 (Jul. 1999).

James et al., "Phase II Trial of the Bispecific Antibody MDX-5210 (anti-Her2/Neu X anti-CD64) Combined With GM-CSF in Patients With Advanced Prostate and Renal Cell Carcinoma That Express Her2/Neu." *British Journal of Cancer* (Abstract #56) 78:19 (1998).

Jones et al., "Binding Interaction of the Heregulinβ egf Domain with ErbB3 and ErbB4 Receptors Assessed by Alanine Scanning Mutagenesis" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 273(19):11667-11674 (May 8, 1996).

Kannan et al., "Cripto Enhances the Tyrosine Phosphorylation of Shc and Activates Mitogen-activated Protein Kinase (MAPK) in Mammary Epithelial Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 272(6):3330-3335 (Feb. 7, 1997).

Karunagaran et al., "ErbB-2 is a Common Auxiliary Subunit of NDF and EGF Receptors: Implications for Breast Cancer" *EMBO Journal* 15(2):254-264 (1996).

Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 52(10):2771-2776 (May 15, 1992).

Kern et al., "$p185^{neu}$ Expression in Human Lung Adenocarcinomas Predicts Shortened Survival" *Cancer Research* 50(16):5184-5191 (Aug. 15, 1990).

King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma" *Science* 229:974-976 (Sep. 1985).

King et al., "EGF Binding to its Receptor Triggers a Rapid Tyrosine Phosphorylation of the erbB-2 Protein in the Mammary Tumor Cell Line SK-BR-3." *EMBO Journal* 7(6):1647-1651 (1988).

Klapper et al., "A Subclass of Tumor-Inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to ErbB-2/HER2 Blocks Crosstalk With Growth Factor Receptors" *Oncogene* 14:2099-2109 (1997).

Kobayashi et al., "EGFR mutation and resistance of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib" *New England J. of Medicine* 352(8):786-792 (Feb. 24, 2005).

Kokai et al., "Synergistic Interaction of p185c-neu and the EGF Receptor Leads to Transformation of Rodent Fibroblasts" *Cell* 58:287-292 (Jul. 28, 1989).

Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" In Vitro (Abstract #176) 26(3):59A (1990).

Kotts et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Breast Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Combinations of Interferon-Gamma and Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against the Extracellular Domain of the Her2/erbB2 Oncogene Protein" *FASEB Journal* (abstract #1470) 4(7):A1946 (1990).

Kotts et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Breast Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Combinations of Interferon-gamma and Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" (Program 1470, Joint Mtg of ASBMB & AAI in New Orleans, LA on Jun. 4-7, 1990 poster).

Kraus et al., "Isolation and Characterization of ERBB3, A Third Member of the ERBB/Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family: Evidence for Overexpression in a Subset of Human Mammary Tumors" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:9193-9197 (Dec. 1989).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 11(2):979-986 (Feb. 1991).

Kuter, I., "Breast cancer" *The Oncologist* 6(4):338-346 (2001).

Lee et al., "Transforming Growth Factor α: Expression, Regulation, and Biological Activities" *Pharmacological Reviews* 47(1):51-85 (Mar. 1995).

Lemke,G., "Neuregulins in Development" *Molecular and Cellular Neurosciences* 7:247-262 (1996).

Leonard et al., "Anti-human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 monoclonal antibody therapy for breast cancer" *British Journal of Surgery* 89(3):262-271 (Mar. 2002).

Levi et al., "The Influence of Heregulins on Human Schwann Cell Proliferation" *J. Neuroscience* 15(2):1329-1340 (Feb. 1995).

Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-$p185^{HER2}$ Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Immunol. Immunother*. 37:255-263 (1993).

Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (Mar. 15, 1996).

Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed against the HER-2/neu Gene Product c-erbB-2" *Cancer Research* 51(19):5361 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" *Cancer Research* 44(3):1002-1007 (Mar. 1984).

Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" *Jpn J. Cancer Res*. 80:10-14 (Jan. 1989).

McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" *Cancer* 65(1):88-92 (Jan. 1, 1990).

McCann et al., "Prognostic Significance of c-erbB-2 and Estrogen Receptor Status in Human Breast Cancer" *Cancer Research* 51(12):3296-3303 (Jun. 15, 1991).

McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene Product, p185" *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989).

"Could Medarex's MAb be prostate cancer's Herceptin?" *Scrip* 2442:25 (Jun. 2, 1999).

Mendelsohn et al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer Therapy." *Annals of Oncology* abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1):22 (1996).

Morrissey et al., "Axon-Induced Mitogenesis of Human Schwann Cells Involves Heregulin and $p185^{erbB2}$" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 92:1431-1435 (Feb. 1995).

Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185neu" *Methods in Enzymology* 198:277-290 (1991).

Myers et al., "Intracellular antibody mediated down-regulation of $p185^{erbB-2}$ expression in malignant prostatic cells" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research Annual Meeting* (Abstract #2334) 37:342 (1996).

Nahta and Esteva, "HER-2-targeted therapy: lessons learned and future directions" *Clinical Cancer Research* 9(14):5078-5084 (Nov. 1, 2003).

Nelson et al., "Comparison of HER-2/NEU Amplification Using Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH) with Immunohistochemically Determined Overexpression in Breast Cancers" *Modern Pathology* (abstract No. 106) 9(1):21A (Jan. 1996).

Norton, L., "Evolving Concepts in the Systemic Drug Therapy of Breast Cancer." *Seminars in Oncology* 24(4 Suppl 10):S10-3-S10-10 (Aug. 1997).

Pao et al., "EGF receptor gene mutations are common in lung cancers from "never smokers" and are associated with sensitivity of tumors to gefitinib and erlotinib" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101(36):13306-13311 (Sep. 7, 2004).

Park et al., "Amplification, Overexpression, and Rearrangement of the erbB-2 Protooncogene in Primary Human Stomach Carcinomas" *Cancer Research* 49(23):6605-6609 (Dec. 1, 1989).

Paterson et al., "Correlation Between c-erbB-2 Amplification and Risk of Recurrent Disease in Node-Negative Breast Cancer" *Cancer Research* 51(2):556-567 (Jan. 15, 1991).

Pauletti et al., "Detection and quantitation of HER-2/neu gene amplification in human breast cancer archival material using fluorescence in situ hybridization" *Oncogene* 13(1):63-72 (Jul. 4, 1996).

Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" *Oncogene* 18:2241-2251 (1999).

Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Receptor-Enhanced Chemosensitivity Using Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185$^{HER2/neu}$ Monoclonal Antibody Plus Cisplatin in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer Refractory to Chemotherapy Treatment" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 16(8):2659-2671 (1998).

Perrotta and Abuel, "Response of Chronic Relapsing ITP of 10 Years Duration to Rituximab" *Blood* (Abstract #3360) 92(10 Suppl. 1 Part 1-2):88b (1998).

Persons, D.L. et al., "Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH) for Detection of HER-2/neu Amplification in Breast Cancer: A Multicenter Portability Study." *Annals of Clinical and Laboratory Science* 30(1):41-48 (Jan. 2000).

Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994).

Plowman et al., "Heregulin Induces Tyrosine Phosphorylation of HER4/p180^{erbB4}" *Nature* (Letters to Nature) 366:473-475 (Dec. 2, 1993).

Plowman et al., "Ligand-Specific Activation of HER4/p180^{erbB4}, A Fourth Member of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90:1746-1750 (Mar. 1993).

Presta et al., "Humanization of an Anti-Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor Monoclonal Antibody for the Therapy of Solid Tumors and Other Disorders" *Cancer Research* 57(20):4593-4599 (Oct. 15, 1997).

Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First- or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress HER2" *Proceedings of ASCO* (Abstract #523) 18:137a (1999).

Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular markers—a review" *Gene* 159(1):19-27 (Jun. 14, 1995).

Riely et al., "Clinical course of patients with non-small cell lung cancer and epidermal growth factor receptor exon 19 and exon 21 mutations treated with gefitinib or erlotinib" *Clinical Cancer Research* 12(3 Pt 1) :839-844 (Feb. 1, 2006).

Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" *J. Cellular Biochem.* 35(4):315-320 (1987).

Ross et al., "HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status in Prostate Cancer by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization" *Hum. Pathol.* 28(7):827-833 (Jul. 1997).

Ross et al., "Prognostic Significance of HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization of Prostate Carcinoma" *Cancer* 79(11):2162-2170 (Jun. 1, 1997).

Ross, J. and J. Fletcher, "The HER-2/neu Oncogene in Breast Cancer: Prognostic Factor, Predictive Factor, and Target for Therapy." *Stem Cells* 16(6):413-428 (1998).

Sadasivan et al., "Overexpression of Her-2/Neu May Be an Indicator of Poor Prognosis in Prostate Cancer" *J. Urol.* 150:126-131 (Jul. 1993).

Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti-P185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991).

Schaefer et al., "A Discrete Three-amino Acid Segment (LVI) at the C-terminal End of Kinase-impaired ErbB3 is required for Transactivation of ErbB2" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 274(2):859-866 (Jan. 8, 1999).

Schaefer et al., "γ-Heregulin: A Novel Heregulin Isoform That is an Autocrine Growth Factor for the Human Breast Cancer Cell Line, MDA-MB-175" *Oncogene* 15:1385-1394 (1997).

Scher et al., "Changing Pattern of Expression of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor and Transforming Growth Factor α in the Progression of Prostatic Neoplasms" *Clinical Cancer Research* 1:545-550 (May 1995).

Schlom, J., "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" *Molecular Foundations of Oncology*, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD:Williams & Wilkins, Chapter 6, pp. 95-134 (1991).

Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 266(22):14300-14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).

Seifert et al., "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity" *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28(9):1063-1072 (Sep. 1994).

Shawver et al., "Ligand-Like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB-2 Antibodies Do Not Correlate with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells" *Cancer Research* 54(5):1367-1373 (Mar 1, 1994).

Sheng et al., "Inhibition of Human Colon Cancer Cell Growth by Selective Inhibition of Cyclooxygenase-2" *J. Clin. Invest.* 99(9):2254-2259 (May 1997).

Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991).

Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-induced cardiomyopathy" *New England J. of Medicine* 339(13):900-905 (Sep. 24, 1998).

Singal et al., "Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardiomyopathy" *Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology* 27(4):1055-1063 (Apr. 1995).

Skrepnik et al., "Recombinant Oncotoxin AR209 (anti-p185^{erbB-2}) Diminishes Human Prostate Carcinoma Xenografts" *Journal of Urology* 161:984-989 (1999).

Slamon at al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" *Science* 235:177-182 (Jan. 9, 1987).

Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science* 244:707-712 (May 12, 1989).

Slamon et al., "Use of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses HER2" *New England J. of Medicine* 344(11):783-792 (Mar. 15, 2001).

Sliwkowski et al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpressing breast cancer" *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research* (abstract only) 37:625-626 (Mar. 1996).

Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 269(20):14661-14665 (May 20, 1994).

Stancovski at al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monoclonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88(19):8691-8695 (Oct. 1, 1991).

Statement Regarding HERCEPTIN Clinical Trials pp. 1 (2004).

Stern and Ramps., "EGF-Stimulated Tyrosine Phosphorylation of p185^{neu}: A Potential Model for Receptor Interactions." *EMBO Journal* 7(4):995-1001 (1988).

Strobel and Cannistra, "β1-integrins partly mediate binding of ovarian cancer cells to peritoneal mesothelium in vitro" *Gynecologic Oncology* 73(3):362-367 (Jun. 1999).

Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of p185^{HER2} and Growth Inhibition of Cells With HER2/Neu Gene Amplification" *International Journal of Cancer* 47(6):933-937 (Apr. 1, 1991).

Tandon et al., "HER-2/neu oncogene protein and prognosis in breast cancer" *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 7(8):1120-1128 (Aug. 1989).

Thatcher et al., "Gefitinib plus best supportive care in previously treated patients with refractory advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre study

(Iressa Survival Evaluation in Lung Cancer)" *Lancet* 366(9496):1527-1537 (Oct. 29, 2005).
Tokumo et al., "Double mutation and gene copy number of EGFR in gefitinib refractory non-small-cell lung cancer" *Lung Cancer* 53:117-121 (2006).
Tsao et al., "Erlotinib in lung cancer—molecular and clinical predictors of outcome" *New England J. of Medicine* 353(2):133-144 (Jul. 14, 2005).
Vadlamudi et al., "Regulation of Cyclooxygenase-2 pathway by HER2 receptor" *Oncogene* 18:305-314 (1999).
van de Vijver et al., "Neu-Protein Overexpression in Breast Cancer: Association With Comedo-Type Ductal Carcinoma In Situ and Limited Prognostic Value in Stage II Breast Cancer." *New England J. of Medicine* 319(19):1239-1245 (Nov. 10, 1968).
van Lom et al., "In Situ Hybridization on May-Grunwald Giemsa-Stained Bone Marrow and Blood Smears of Patients With Hematologic Disorders Allows Detection of Cell-Lineage-Specific Cytogenetic Abnormalities" *Blood* 82(3):884-888 (Aug. 1, 1993).
Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role for Their Use in Cancer Therapy" *Cancer Research* 54(20):5301-5309 (Oct. 15, 1994).
Wada et al., "Intermolecular Association of the p185^{neu} Protein and EGF Receptor Modulates EGF Receptor Function" *Cell* 61:1339-1347 (Jun. 29, 1990).
Walker et al., "An Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for c-erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short-Term Prognosis in Breast Cancer." *British Journal of Cancer* 60(3):426-429 (Sep. 1989).
Wang et al., "Laboratory Assessment of the Status of Her-2/neu Protein and Oncogene in Breast Cancer Specimens: Comparison of Immunohistochemistry Assay with Fluorescence in Situ Hybridisation Assays." *J. Clinical Pathology* 53(5):374-381 (May 2000).
Weiner et al., "Expression of the neu Gene-encoded Protein (P185^{neu}) in Human Non-Small Cell Carcinomas of the Lung" *Cancer Research* 50(2):421-425 (Jan. 15, 1990).
Werther et al., "Humanization of an Anti-Lymphocyte Function-Associated Antigen (LFA)-1 Monoclonal Antibody and Reengineering of the Humanized Antibody for Binding to Rhesus LFA-1" *J. of Immunology* 157:4986-4995 (1996).
Williams et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 in Human Pancreatic Adenocarcinomas" *Pathobiology* 59(1):46-52 (1991).
Winstanley et al., "The long term prognostic significance of c-erbB-2 in primary breast cancer" *Bristish Journal of Cancer* 63(3):447-450 (Mar. 1991).
Winter, "Antibody-based Therapy—Humanized Antibodies" *TIPS*, UK:Elsevier Science Publishers vol. 14:139-143 (1993).
Wofsy et al., "Modification and Use of Antibodies to Label Cell Surface Antigens" *Selected Methods in Cellular Immunology*, Mishel and Schiigi, eds., San Francisco:WJ Freeman Co., Chapter 13, pp. 287-304 (1980).
Wolman et al., "An Approach to Definition of Genetic Alterations in Prostate Cancer" *Diagnostic Molecular Pathology* 1(3):192-199 (Sep. 1992).
Worthylake et al., "Structural Aspects of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Required for Transmodulation of erbB-2/neu" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 272(13):8594-8601 (Mar. 28, 1997).
Wright et al., "An Incomplete Program of Cellular Tyrosine Phosphorylations Induced by Kinase-defective Epidermal Growth Factor Receptors" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 270(20):12085-12093 (May 19, 1995).
Wright et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein: A Prognostic Indicator in Human Breast Cancer" *Cancer Research* 49(8):2087-2090 (Apr. 15, 1989).
Wu et al., "Apoptosis Induced by an Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibody in a Human Colorectal Carcinoma Cell Line and Its Delay by Insulin" *Journal of Clinical Investigation* 95(4):1897-1905 (Apr. 1995).
Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product p185" *International Journal of Cancer* 53(3):401-408 (Feb. 1, 1993).
Yeh et al., "From HER2/Neu signal cascade to androgen receptor and its coactivators: A novel pathway by induction of androgen target genes through MAP kinase in prostate cancer cells" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 96:5458-5463 (May 1999).
Yokota et al., "Amplification of c-erbB-2 Oncogene in Human Adenocarcinomas in Vivo" *Lancet* 1(8484):765-767 (Apr. 5, 1986).
Yonemura et al., "Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short Term Prognosis in Gastric Cancer" *Cancer Research* 51(3):1034-1038 (Feb 1, 1991).
Zhang et al., "Neuregulin-3 (NRG3): A novel neural tissue-enriched protein that binds and activates ErbB4" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9562-9567 (Sep. 22, 1997).
Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti-p185$^{her2/neu}$ monoclonal antibodies" *Experimental and Molecular Pathology* 67:15-25 (1999).
Zhau at al., "Amplification and Expression of the c-erb B-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Bladder Cancer" *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3(5):254-257 (1990).
Zitzelsberger et al., "Numerical Abnormalities of Chromosome 7 in Human Prostate Cancer Detected by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization (FISH) on Paraffin-Embedded Tissue Sections With Centromere-Specific DNA Probes" *Journal of Pathology* 172(4):325-335 (Apr. 1994).
Clark, Gary M. et al., "Follow-up Study of HER-2/*neu* Amplification in Primary Breast Cancer", *Cancer Research* 51, 944-948, Feb. 1, 1991.
Têtu, Bernard et al., "Prevalence and Clinical Significance of HER-2/neu, p53 and Rb Expression in Primary Superficial Bladder Caner", The *Journal of Urology*, vol. 155, 1784-1788, May 1996.
FDA Clinical Review of Bla 98/0369 Herceptin, Trastuzumab (rhuMAb HER2), Date of Approval: Sep. 25, 1998, (99 pgs).
Product Approval Information—Licensing Action, FDA Archive (1 pg);.
Sneige, N. et al., "Abstract 258", 2000 Annual Meeting US and Canadian Academy of Pathology Meeting, Mar. 25-31, 2000, New Orleans, LA (2 pgs).
Mitchell, Malcolm S. et al., "The Role of Immunohistochemistry and Fluorescense In Situ Hybridization of HER-2/*neu* in Assessing the Prognosis of Brest Cancer", *Seminars in Oncology*, vol. 26, No. 4, Suppl 12 (Aug.) 1999, pp. 108-116.
Ross, Jeffrey S. et al., "The HER-2/*neu* oncogene: prognostic factor, predictive factor and target for therapy", *seminars in CANCER BIOLOGY*, vol. 9, 1999, pp. 125-138.
Herceptin 150 mg Powder for concentrate for solution for infusion, Approved label from UK Medicines Agency, pp. 1-28.

* cited by examiner

GENE DETECTION ASSAY FOR IMPROVING THE LIKELIHOOD OF AN EFFECTIVE RESPONSE TO A HER2 ANTIBODY CANCER THERAPY

This continuation application claims priority to non-provisional application Ser. No. 09/863,101 filed May 18, 2001 now abandoned which claims priority under 35 U.S.C. §119 (e) of provisional application 60/205,754, filed May 19, 2000, which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of cancers characterized by the overexpression of a tumor antigen, such as an ErbB receptor, particularly HER2. More specifically, the invention concerns more effective treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer, in which the tumor cells overexpress ErbB as determined by a gene amplification assay, with an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody. The invention further provides pharmaceutical packages for such treatment.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Advancements in the understanding of genetics and developments in technology and epidemiology have allowed for the correlation of genetic abnormalities with certain malignancies as well as risk assessment of an individual for developing certain malignancies. However, most of the methodologies available for evaluation of tissue for the presence of genes associated with or predisposing an individual to a malignancy have well-known drawbacks. For example, methods that require disaggregation of the tissue, such as Southern, Northern, or Western blot analysis, are rendered less accurate by dilution of the malignant cells by the normal or otherwise non-malignant cells that are present in the same tissue. Furthermore, the resulting loss of tissue architecture precludes the ability to correlate malignant cells with the presence of genetic abnormalities in a context that allows morphological specificity. This issue is particularly problematic in tissue types known to be heterogeneous, such as in human breast carcinoma, where a significant percentage of the cells present in any area may be non-malignant.

The her2/neu gene encodes a protein product, often identified as p185HER2. The native p185HER2 protein is a membrane receptor-like molecule with homology to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Amplification and overexpression of HER2 in human breast cancer has been correlated with shorter disease-free interval and shorter overall survival in some studies (van de Vijver et al. New Eng. J. Med. 317: 1239 (1988); Walker et al. Br. J. Cancer 60:426 (1989); Tandon et al. J. Clin. Invest. 7:1120 (1989); Wright et al. Cancer Res. 49:2087 (1989); McCann et al. Cancer Res 51:3296 (1991); Paterson et al. Cancer Res. 51:556 (1991); and Winstanley et al. Br. J. Cancer 63:447 (1991)) but not in others (Zhou et al. Oncogene 4:105 (1989); Heintz et al. Arch Path Lab Med 114:160 (1990); Kury et al. Eur. J. Cancer 26:946 (1990); Clark et al. Cancer Res. 51:944 (1991); and Ravdin et al. J. Clin. Oncol. 12:467-74 (1994)).

In an initial evaluation of 103 patients with breast cancer, those having more than three tumor cell positive axillary lymph nodes (node positive) were more likely to overexpress HER2 protein than patients with less than three positive nodes (Slamon et al. Science 235:177 (1987)). In a subsequent evaluation of 86 node-positive patients with breast cancer, there was a significant correlation among the extent of gene amplification, early relapse, and short survival. HER2 overexpression was determined using Southern and Northern blotting, which correlate with the HER2 oncoprotein expression evaluated by Western blotting and immunohistochemistry (IHC) (Slamon et al. Science 235:177 (1987); Slamon et al. Science 244:707 (1989)). The median period of survival was found to be approximately 5-fold shorter in patients with more than five copies of the her2 gene than in patients without gene amplification. This correlation was present even after correcting for nodal status and other prognostic factors in multivariate analyses. These studies were extended in 187 node-positive patients and indicated that gene amplification, increased amounts of mRNA (determined by Northern blotting), and increased protein expression (determined immunohistochemically) were also correlated with shortened survival time (Slamon et al. Science 244:707 (1989)); (see also U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). Nelson et al. have compared her2/neu gene amplification using FISH with immunohistochemically determined overexpression in breast cancer (Nelson et al. Modern Pathology 9 (1) 21A (1996)).

Immunohistochemical staining of tissue sections has been shown to be a reliable method of assessing alteration of proteins in a heterogeneous tissue. Immunohistochemistry (IHC) techniques utilize an antibody to probe and visualize cellular antigens in situ, generally by chromagenic or fluorescent methods. This technique excels because it avoids the unwanted effects of disaggregation and allows for evaluation of individual cells in the context of morphology. In addition, the target protein is not altered by the freezing process.

However, in the clinical trial assay (CTA), IHC of formaldehyde-fixed, paraffin embedded tissue samples only demonstrated 50%-80% sensitivity, relative to frozen IHC samples (Press, Cancer Research 54:2771 (1994)). Thus, IHC can lead to false negative results, excluding from treatment patients who might benefit from the treatment.

Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is a recently developed method for directly assessing the presence of genes in intact cells. FISH is an attractive means of evaluating paraffin-embedded tissue for the presence of malignancy because it provides for cell specificity, yet overcomes the cross-linking problems and other protein-altering effects caused by formalin fixation. FISH has historically been combined with classical staining methodologies in an attempt to correlate genetic abnormalities with cellular morphology (see, e.g., Anastasi et al., Blood 77:2456-2462 (1991); Anastasi et al., Blood 79:1796-1801 (1992); Anastasi et al., Blood 81:1580-1585 (1993); van Lom et al., Blood 82:884-888 (1992); Wolman et al., Diagnostic Molecular Pathology 1(3): 192-199 (1992); Zitzelberger, Journal of Pathology 172:325-335 (1994)).

To date, there has been no correlation of her2 gene amplification with anti-HER2 antibody treatment outcome, only with disease prognosis. The standard assay has been IHC on formalin fixed, paraffin embedded samples. These samples, when scored as 3+ or 2+, identify patients who are likely to benefit from treatment with an anti-HER2 antibody, like HERCEPTIN®. The 3+ and 2+ scores correlate with her2 gene amplification, e.g., as tested by FISH. However, there remains a need for more effective identification of candidates for successful ErbB antagonist therapies, such as HERCEPTIN® treatment.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention advantageously provides a method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of an ErbB antagonist cancer treatment. The method comprises administering a can-

cer treating dose of the ErbB antagonist to a subject wherein an erbB gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject has been found to be amplified. Preferably the ErbB is HER2. In a specific embodiment, the method further comprises administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic, particularly a taxol.

In a specific preferred embodiment, exemplified herein, the invention provides a method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of an anti-HER2 antibody to treat cancer. This method comprises administering a cancer treating dose of the anti-HER2 antibody to the subject in whom a her2 gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject have been found to be amplified.

The unexpected clinical results underlying the invention, in which gene amplification proved to be a more effective indication of antibody-based tumor therapy than protein detection by immunohistochemistry, extends to tumor antigens in general. Thus, any anti-tumor-specific antigen based antibody therapy can have increased likelihood of success in patients who are found to have gene amplification of the gene encoding the tumor antigen.

A particular advantage of the invention is that it permits selection of patients for treatment who, based on immunohistochemical criteria, would be excluded. Thus, in a specific embodiment, the subject has been found to have an antigen level corresponding to a 0 or 1+ score for HER2 by immunohistochemistry on a formaldehyde-fixed tissue sample.

The invention further provides a pharmaceutical package comprising an ErbB antagonist for treating a cancer, and instructions to administer the ErbB antagonist to a subject if an erbB gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject is amplified. Preferably the ErbB antagonist is an anti-ErbB antibody, such as an anti-HER2 antibody. In a further aspect, the instructions also teach administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic, e.g., a taxol. Such pharmaceutical packages, including the instructions for use, can be provided for any antibody-based therapeutic specific for a tumor-specific antigen.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

The present invention advantageously permits treatment of patients who have a greater likelihood of responding to the treatment by administering therapeutic agents, i.e., anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibodies or ErbB receptor antagonists, to patients who are found to have an amplified gene encoding such a tumor antigen or ErbB receptor protein. The invention is based, in part, on the unexpected discovery that her2 gene amplification, e.g., as detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), although it correlates with HER2 expression as detected by immunohistochemistry (IHC), provides a more accurate basis for selecting patients for treatment because FISH status unexpectedly correlates better with response to treatment. This outcome was surprising in part because FISH status has about the same rate of correlation with a clinical trial assay (CTA) IHC assay as another IHC assay (HERCEPTEST®). Based on this observation, FISH would be expected to have a similar correlation with treatment response. This outcome also surprises because direct measurement of protein (by immunoassay) would be expected to provide a more accurate assessment of a cancer therapy targeted to the protein than an indirect measure of expression, like gene amplification.

Evaluation of patient groups and subgroups demonstrates the power of gene amplification analysis for selecting patients more likely to respond to treatment. IHC provides a score for HER2 expression on tumor cells: 0 (no expression) through 3+ (very high levels of expression). Clinical selection criteria exclude patients with 0 and 1+ scores and select patients with 2+ and 3+ scores. The data show that 14% of combined 2+/3+ patients respond to HERCEPTIN®, while 20% of FISH+ (amplified her2 gene) patients respond to HERCEPTIN®. The 3+ subgroup has a 17% response rate, which is very close to the FISH+ subjects' response rate. However, the 2+ subgroup has less than half the response rate of FISH+ subjects. Thus, gene amplification clearly differentiates large subpopulations within the 2+ subgroup, permitting more effective treatment for those who are FISH+, and quickly identifying patients for whom alternative treatment modalities are appropriate and should commence immediately.

Gene amplification analysis also identifies patients who are unnecessarily excluded because of anomalies in the IHC analysis, particularly when the tests are performed on formalyn fixed, paraffin embedded samples (such sample processing can disrupt or destroy antibody epitopes on the HER2 protein, but has much less impact on gene amplification assays). As shown in the examples, a subset of 0 and 1+ subjects are FISH+. These patients are likely to respond to anti-HER2 antibody therapy, e.g., with HERCEPTIN®, although by IHC criteria they would be excluded from receiving this treatment.

Thus, the present invention advantageously permits inclusion of patients who are more likely to benefit from treatment but who, by standard IHC criteria, would be excluded from treatment. At the same time, the invention permits exclusion of patients who should promptly seek an alternative mode of treatment because the anti-tumor antigen therapy (i.e., ErbB antagonist or tumor antigen-specific therapeutic antibody) is not likely to succeed.

In short, the present invention is a powerful adjunct to IHC assays for target protein expression level-based selection of patients. It can also be employed on its own, i.e., without IHC, to provide initial screening and selection of patients. The invention significantly improves screening and selection for subjects to receive a cancer-treating dose of an anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibody treatment, ErbB receptor antagonist treatment, and other treatment targeted to overexpressed tumor antigens (or tumor-specific antigens), resulting in an increased likelihood of benefit from such treatments.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture or package, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody (or other anti-tumor-specific antigen antibody), optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antagonist to patients who have been found to have an amplified erbB gene.

Definitions

As used herein, an "ErbB receptor" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes EGFR, HER2, ErbB3, and ErbB4 receptors, as well as TEGFR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,708,156) and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a native sequence ErbB receptor or an amino acid

sequence variant thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

ErbB receptors are examples of tumor-specific antigens or tumor antigens. The term "tumor antigen" is used herein to refer to a protein that is expressed at a higher level on tumor cells compared to normal cells. Generally, the normal cells for comparison are of the same tissue type, particularly phenotype, as the tumor, or from which the tumor arose. A "tumor specific antigen" refers to an antigen expressed either preferentially or only on tumor cells. Examples of tumor-specific antigens include, in addition to the ErbB receptors, MART1/Melan A, gp-100, and tyrosinase (in melanoma); MAGE-1 and MAGE-3 (in bladder, head and neck, and non-small cell carcinoma); HPV EG and E7 proteins (in cervical cancer); Mucin/MUC-1 (in breast, pancreas, colon, and prostate cancers); prostate specific antigen/PSA (in prostate cancer); and carninoembryonic antigen/CEA (in colon, breast, and gastrointestinal cancers).

By "amplification" is meant the presence of one or more extra gene copies of erbB or other tumor antigen-encoding gene in a chromosome complement. Gene amplification can result in overexpression of protein, e.g., ErbB receptor protein. Gene amplification in cells from a tissue sample can be measured by many techniques, particularly Fluorescence in situ Hybridization (FISH), but also including and not limited to quantitative PCR, quantitative Southern hybridization, and the like.

By "tissue sample" is meant a collection of similar cells obtained from a tissue of a subject or patient, preferably containing nucleated cells with chromosomal material. The four main human tissues are (1) epithelium; (2) the connective tissues, including blood vessels, bone and cartilage; (3) muscle tissue; and (4) nerve tissue. The source of the tissue sample may be solid tissue as from a fresh, frozen and/or preserved organ or tissue sample or biopsy or aspirate; blood or any blood constituents; bodily fluids such as cerebral spinal fluid, amniotic fluid, peritoneal fluid, or interstitial fluid; cells from any time in gestation or development of the subject. The tissue sample may also be primary or cultured cells or cell lines. The tissue sample may contain compounds which are not naturally intermixed with the tissue in nature such as preservatives, anticoagulants, buffers, fixatives, nutrients, antibiotics, or the like. In one embodiment of the invention, the tissue sample is "non-hematologic tissue" (i.e., not blood or bone marrow tissue).

For the purposes herein a "section" of a tissue sample is meant a single part or piece of a tissue sample, e.g., a thin slice of tissue or cells cut from a tissue sample. It is understood that multiple sections of tissue samples may be taken and subjected to analysis according to the present invention, provided that it is understood that the present invention comprises a method whereby the same section of tissue sample may be analyzed at both morphological and molecular levels, or may be analyzed with respect to both protein and nucleic acid.

By "correlate" or "correlating" is meant comparing, in any way, the performance and/or results of a first analysis with the performance and/or results of a second analysis. For example, one may use the results of a first analysis in carrying out the second analysis and/or one may use the results of a first analysis to determine whether a second analysis should be performed and/or one may compare the results of a first analysis with the results of a second analysis. In relation to IHC combined with FISH, one may use the results of IHC to determine whether FISH should be performed and/or one may compare the level of protein expression with gene amplification to further characterize a tumor biopsy (e.g. to compare HER2 protein expression with her2 gene amplification). One advantageous feature of the invention is the ability to identify patients likely to benefit from treatment using FISH even if IHC indicates that they are antigen low.

By "nucleic acid" is meant to include any DNA or RNA, for example, chromosomal, mitochondrial, viral and/or bacterial nucleic acid present in tissue sample. The term "nucleic acid" encompasses either or both strands of a double stranded nucleic acid molecule and includes any fragment or portion of an intact nucleic acid molecule.

By "gene" is meant any nucleic acid sequence or portion thereof with a functional role in encoding or transcribing an RNA (rRNA, tRNA, or mRNA, the latter capable of translation as a protein) or regulating other gene expression. The gene may consist of all the nucleic acids responsible for encoding a functional protein or only a portion of the nucleic acids responsible for encoding or expressing a protein. The nucleic acid sequence may contain a genetic abnormality within exons, introns, initiation or termination regions, promoter sequences, other regulatory sequences or unique adjacent regions to the gene.

By "ErbB ligand" is meant a polypeptide which binds to and/or activates an ErbB receptor. The ErbB ligand of particular interest herein is a native sequence human ErbB ligand such as Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF) (Savage et al., J. Biol. Chem. 247:7612-7621 (1972)); Tansforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha) (Marquardt et al., Science 223: 1079-1082 (1984)); amphiregulin, also known as schwanoma or keratinocyte autocrine growth factor (Shoyab et al. Science 243:1074-1076 (1989); Kimura et al. Nature 348:257-260 (1990); and Cook et al. Mol. Cell. Biol. 11:2547-2557 (1991)); betacellulin (Shing et al., Science 259:1604-1607 (1993); and Sasada et al. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 190:1173 (1993)); heparin-binding epidermal growth factor (HB-EGF) (Higashiyama et al., Science 251:936-939 (1991)); epiregulin (Toyoda et al, J. Biol. Chem. 270:7495-7500 (1995); and Komurasaki et al. Oncogene 15:2841-2848 (1997)), a heregulin (see below); neuregulin-2 (NRG-2) (Carraway et al., Nature 387:512-516 (1997)); neuregulin-3 (NRG-3) (Zhang et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 94:9562-9567 (1997)); or cripto (CR-1) (Kannan et al., J. Biol. Chem. 272 (6):3330-3335 (1997)). ErbB ligands that bind EGFR include EGF, TGF-alpha, amphiregulin, betacellulin, HB-EGF andepiregulin. ErbB ligands which bind HER3 include heregulins. ErbB ligands capable of binding HER4 include betacellulin, epiregulin, HB-EGF, NRG-2, NRG-3 and heregulins.

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence encoded by the heregulin gene product as disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869 or Marchionni et al., Nature, 362:312-318 (1993), and biologically active variants of such polypeptides. Examples of heregulins include heregulin-alpha, heregulin-beta1, heregulin-beta2, and heregulin-beta3 (Holmes et al., Science, 256:1205-1210 (1992); and U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869); neu differentiation factor (NDF) (Peles et al. Cell 69: 205-216 (1992)); acetylcholine receptor-inducing activity (ARIA) (Falls et al. Cell 72:801-815 (1993)); glial growth factors (GGFs) (Marchionni et al., Nature, 362:312-318 (1993)); sensory and motor neuron derived factor (SMDF) (Ho et al. J. Biol. Chem. 270:14523-14532 (1995)); gamma-heregulin (Schaefer et al. Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)). An example of a biologically active fragment/amino acid sequence variant of a native sequence HRG polypeptide, is an EGF-like domain fragment (e.g., HRG-beta1, 177-244).

An "ErbB hetero-oligomer" herein is a noncovalently associated oligomer comprising at least two different ErbB receptors. Such complexes may form when a cell expressing two or more ErbB receptors is exposed to an ErbB ligand and can be

isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., (J. Biol. Chem., 269(20): 14661-14665 (1994)), for example. Examples of such ErbB hetero-oligomers include EGFR-HER2, HER2-HER3, and HER3-HER4 complexes. Moreover, the ErbB hetero-oligomer may comprise two or more HER2 receptors combined with a different ErbB receptor, such as HER3, HER4, or EGFR. Other proteins, such as a cytokine receptor subunit (e.g., gp130), may be included in the hetero-oligomer.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. (Ann. Rev. Biochem. 56:881-914 (1987)), including variants thereof (e.g., a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 87:4207-4211 (1990)). ErbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product. Examples of antibodies which bind to EGFR include MAb 579 (ATCC CRL HB 8506), Mab 455 (ATCC CRL HB 8507), MAb 225 (ATCC CRL 8508), MAb 528 (ATCC CRL 8509) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,533) and variants thereof, such as chimerized 225 (C225) and reshaped human 225 (H225) (see, PCT Publication No. WO 96/40210).

The expressions "ErbB2" and "HER2" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence human HER2 protein described, for example, in Semba et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA 82:6497-6501 (1985)) and Yamamoto et al. (Nature 319:230-234 (1986)) (Genebank accession number X03363), and variants thereof. The term erbB2 refers to the gene encoding human HER2 and neu refers to the gene encoding rat p185neu. Preferred HER2 is native sequence human HER2. Examples of antibodies which bind HER2 include MAbs 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463), 2C4 (ATCC HB-12697), 7F3 (ATCC HB-12216), and 7C2 (ATCC HB-12215) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997; PCT Publication No. WO 98/17797; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,840,525, expressly incorporated herein by reference). Humanized anti-HER2 antibodies include huMAb4D5-1, huMAb4D5-2, huMAb4D5-3, huMAb4D5-4, huMAb4D5-5, huMAb4D5-6, huMAb4D5-7, and huMAb4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN®) as described in Table 3 of U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337, which is expressly incorporated herein by reference; and humanized 520C9 (PCT Publication No. WO 93/21319). Human anti-HER2 antibodies are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997 and PCT Publication No. WO 97/00271.

"ErbB3" and "HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968, as well as Kraus et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA) 86:9193-9197 (1989)), including variants thereof. Exemplary antibodies that bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511, e.g., the 8B8 antibody (ATCC HB-12070) or a humanized variant thereof. The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in European Application No. EP 599,274; Plowman et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 90:1746-1750 (1993)); and Plowman et al., (Nature, 366:473-475 (1993)), including variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 99/19488.

An "ErbB antagonist" is any molecule that binds to an ErbB receptor and blocks ligand activation of the ErbB receptor. Such antagonists include, but are not limited to, modified ligands, ligand peptides (i.e., ligand fragments), soluble ErbB receptors, and, preferably, anti-ErbB antibodies.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the ErbB antagonist, e.g., anti-ErbB2 antibody, and more generally, any cancer in which administration of an antibody against an over-expressed antigen can treat the cancer. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount elicits antibody-mediated cytotoxicity, activates complement, has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time for disease progression (TTP), survival, tumor size, or determining the response rates (RR) (see the Example below).

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, melanoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small-cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung, squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, and various types of head and neck cancer.

An "ErbB-expressing cancer" is one comprising cells which have ErbB protein present at their cell surface, such that an anti-ErbB antibody is able to bind to the cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90}, and Re^{186}), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclosphosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphaoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibi-

otics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabicin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; antimetabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elformithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK®; razoxane; sizofuran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxoids, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and doxetaxel (Taxotere, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; carminomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone; and anti-androgens such as flutamide and nilutamide; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (W B Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

ErbB Receptor Tyrosine Kinases

The ErbB receptor tyrosine kinases are important mediators of cell growth, differentiation and survival. The receptor family includes at least four distinct members including Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR or ErbB1), HER2 (ErbB2 or p 185neu), HER3 (ErbB3), and HER4 (ErbB4 or tyro2).

EGFR, encoded by the ErbB1 gene, has been causally implicated in human malignancy. In particular, increased expression of EGFR has been observed in breast, bladder, lung, head, neck and stomach cancer, as well as glioblastomas. Increased EGFR receptor expression is often associated with increased production of the EGFR ligand, Transforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha), by the same tumor cells resulting inreceptor activation by an autocrine stimulatory pathway. Baselga and Mendelsohn Pharmac. Ther. 64:127-154 (1994). Monoclonal antibodies directed against the EGFR or its ligands, TGF-alpha and EGF, have been evaluated as therapeutic agents in the treatment of such malignancies. See, e.g., Baselga and Mendelsohn., supra; Masui et al. Cancer Research 44: 1002-1007 (1984); and Wu et al. J. Clin. Invest. 95:1897-1905 (1995).

The second member of the ErbB family, p185neu, was originally identified as the product of the transforming gene from neuroblastomas of chemically treated rats. The activated form of the neu proto-oncogene results from a point mutation (valine to glutamic acid) in the transmembrane region of the encoded protein. Amplification of the human homolog of neu is observed in breast and ovarian cancers and correlates with a poor prognosis (Slamon et al., Science, 235:177-182(1987); Slamon et al., Science, 244:707-712 (1989); and U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). To date, no point mutation analogous to that in the neu proto-oncogene has been reported for human tumors. Overexpression of HER2 (frequently but not uniformly due to gene amplification) has also been observed in other carcinomas including carcinomas of the stomach, endometrium, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreas and bladder.

Antibodies directed against the rat p185neu and human HER2 protein products have been described. Drebin and colleagues have raised antibodies against the rat neu gene product, p185neu (see, for example, Drebin et al., Cell 41:695-706 (1985); Myers et al., Meth. Enzym. 198:277-290 (1991); and WO94/22478). Drebin et al. (Oncogene 2:273-277(1988)) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions of p185neu result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice (see also U.S. Pat. No. 5,824,311).

Hudziak et al., (Mol. Cell. Biol. 9(3):1165-1172 (1989)) describe the generation of a panel of anti-HER2 antibodies, which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5, which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize HER2-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-alpha (see, also, U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171). The anti-HER2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. were further characterized (Fendly et al. Cancer Research 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. In Vitro 26(3):

59A (1990); Sarup et al. Growth Regulation 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. J. Clin. Immunol. 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. Mol. Cell. Biol. 11(2):979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. CancerImmunol. Immunother. 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. Oncogene 9: 1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. Cancer Research 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. J. Biol. Chem. 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. J. Biol. Chem. 266:14300-5 (1991); D'souza et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 91:7202-7206 (1994); Lewis et al. Cancer Research 56:1457-1465(1996); and Schaefer et al. Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)).

A recombinant humanized IgG1 version of the murine anti-HER2 antibody 4D5 (rhuMAb HER2 or HERCEPTIN®; commercially available from Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco) is clinically active in patients with HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that have received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., J. Clin. Oncol. 14:737-744 (1996)). HERCEPTIN® received marketing approval from the Food and Drug Administration Sep. 25, 1998 for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer whose tumors overexpress the HER2 protein. The current treatment protocol employs IHC to determine HER2 protein overexpression.

Other anti-HER2 antibodies with various properties have been described (Tagliabue et al., Int. J. Cancer 47:933-937 (1991); McKenzie et al., Oncogene 4:543-548 (1989); Maier et al., Cancer Res. 51:5361-5369 (1991); Bacus et al., Molecular Carcinogenesis 3:350-362 (1990); Stancovski et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA) 88:8691-8695 (1991); Bacus et al., Cancer Research 52:2580-2589 (1992); Xu et al. Int. J. Cancer 53:401-408 (1993); PCT Publication No. WO94/00136; Kasprzyk et al., Cancer Research 52:2771-2776 (1992); Hancock et al., Cancer Res. 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al., Cancer Res. 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. Cancer Res. 54:3758-3765 (1994); Harwerth et al., J. Biol. Chem. 267:15160-15167 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,783,186; Klapper et al. Oncogene 14:2099-2109 (1997); and PCT Publication No. WO 98/17797).

Homology screening has resulted in the ErbB receptor family members: HER3 (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968; Kraus et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:9193-9197 (1989)) and HER4 (European Patent Application No. EP 599 274; Plowman et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., Nature, 366:473-475 (1993)). Both of these receptors display increased expression on at least some breast cancer cell lines.

The ErbB receptors are generally found in various combinations in cells and heterodimerization is thought to increase the diversity of cellular responses to a variety of ErbB ligands (Earp et al., Breast Cancer Research and Treatment 35: 115-132 (1995)). EGFR is bound by six different ligands: Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF), Transforming Growth Factor-alpha (TGF-alpha), amphiregulin, Heparin Binding Epidermal Growth Factor (HB-EGF), betacellulin, and epiregulin (Groenen et al. GrowthFactors 11:235-257 (1994)). A family of heregulin proteins resulting from alternative splicing of a single gene are ligands for HER3 and HER4. The heregulin family includes alpha, beta, and gamma heregulins (Holmes et al., Science, 256:1205-1210 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869; and Schaefer et al., Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)); neu differentiation factors (NDFs), glial growth factors (GGFs); acetylcholine receptor inducing activity (ARIA); and sensory and motorneuron derived factor (SMDF) (for a review, see Groenen et al., Growth Factors 11:235-257 (1994); Lemke, G. Molec. & Cell. Neurosci. 7:247-262 (1996) and Lee et al. Pharm. Rev. 47:51-85 (1995)). Recently, two additional ErbB ligands were identified: neuregulin-2 (NRG-2), which is reported to bind either HER3 or HER4 (Chang et al., Nature: 387 509-512 (1997); and Carraway et al Nature 387:512-516 (1997)) and neuregulin-3, which binds HER4 (Zhang et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA) 94(18): 9562-7 (1997)). HB-EGF, betacellulin, and epiregulin also bind to HER4.

While EGF and TGF-alpha do not bind HER2, EGF stimulates EGFR and HER2 to form a heterodimer, which activates EGFR and results in transphosphorylation of HER2 in the heterodimer. Dimerization and/or transphosphorylation appears to activate the HER2 tyrosine kinase, (Earp et al., supra.) Likewise, when HER3 is co-expressed with HER2, an active signaling complex is formed and antibodies directed against HER2 are capable of disrupting this complex (Sliwkowski et al., J. Biol. Chem., 269(20):14661-14665 (1994)). Additionally, the affinity of HER3 for heregulin (HRG) is increased to a higher affinity state when co-expressed with HER2. See also, Levi et al., Journal of Neuroscience 15: 1329-1340 (1995); Morrissey et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:1431-1435 (1995); and Lewis et al., Cancer Res., 56:1457-1465 (1996) with respect to the HER2-HER3 protein complex. HER4, like HER3, forms an active signaling complex with HER2 (Carraway and Cantley, Cell 78:5-8(1994)).

Detecting Gene Amplification

The present invention contemplates using any technique to detect gene amplification. (see, Boxer, J. Clin. Pathol. 53: 19-21(2000)). These techniques include in situ hybridization (Stoler, Clin. Lab. Med. 12:215-36 (1990), using radioisotope or fluorophore-labeled probes; polymerase chain reaction (PCR); quantitative Southern blotting, and other techniques for quantitating individual genes. Preferably probes or primers selected for gene amplification evaluation are highly specific, to avoid detecting closely related homologous genes.

The word "label" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which is conjugated or fused directly or indirectly to a reagent such as a nucleic acid probe or an antibody and facilitates detection of the reagent to which it is conjugated or fused. The label may itself be detectable (e.g., radioisotope labels or fluorescent labels) or, in the case of an enzymatic label, may catalyze chemical alteration of a substrate compound or composition which is detectable. A hapten or epitope that is immunospecifically bound by an antibody can also serve as a label.

The term "fluorescently labeled nucleic acid probe" refers to a probe comprising (1) a nucleic acid having a sequence rendering it capable of hybridizing with a target nucleic acid sequence and (2) a fluorescent label. Preferably such hybridization is specific, i.e., it can occur under high stringency conditions.

Sample Preparation

Any tissue sample from a subject may be used. Examples of tissue samples that may be used include, but are not limited to, breast, prostate, ovary, colon, lung, endometrium, stomach, salivary gland or pancreas. The tissue sample can be obtained by a variety of procedures including, but not limited to surgical excision, aspiration, or biopsy. The tissue may be fresh or frozen. In one embodiment, the tissue sample is fixed and embedded in paraffin or the like.

The tissue sample may be fixed (i.e., preserved) by conventional methodology (See e.g., *Manual of Histological Staining Method of the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology,* 3rd Edition Lee G. Luna, HT (ASCP) Editor, The Blakston Division McGraw-Hill Book Company: New York; (1960); *The Armed Forces Institute of Pathology Advanced Laboratory Methods in Histology and Pathology* (1994) Ulreka V. Mikel, Editor, Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, American Registry of Pathology, Washington, D.C.). One of skill in the

art will appreciate that the choice of a fixative is determined by the purpose for which the tissue is to be histologically stained or otherwise analyzed. One of skill in the art will also appreciate that the length of fixation depends upon the size of the tissue sample and the fixative used. By way of example, neutral buffered formalin, Bouin's or paraformaldehyde, may be used to fix a tissue sample.

Generally, the tissue sample is first fixed and is then dehydrated through an ascending series of alcohols, infiltrated, and embedded with paraffin or other sectioning media so that the tissue sample may be sectioned. Alternatively, one may section the tissue and fix the sections obtained. By way of example, the tissue sample may be embedded and processed in paraffin by conventional methodology. Examples of paraffin that may be used include, but are not limited to, Paraplast, Broloid, and Tissuemay. Once the tissue sample is embedded, the sample may be sectioned by a microtome or the like. By way of example for this procedure, sections may range from about three microns to about five microns in thickness. Once sectioned, the sections may be attached to slides by several standard methods. Examples of slide adhesives include, but are not limited to, silane, gelatin, poly-L-lysine, and the like. For example, the paraffin embedded sections may be attached to positively charged slides, slides coated with poly-L-lysine.

If paraffin has been used as the embedding material, the tissue sections are generally deparaffinized and rehydrated to water. The tissue sections may be deparaffinized by several conventional standard methodologies. For example, xylenes and a gradually descending series of alcohols may be used. Alternatively, commercially available deparaffinizing non-organic agents such as Hemo-De7 (CMS, Houston, Tex.) may be used.

Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH)

In situ hybridization is generally carried out on cells or tissue sections fixed to slides. In situ hybridization may be performed by several conventional methodologies (see, e.g., Leitch et al., *In Situ Hybridization: A Practical Guide*, Oxford BIOS Scientific Publishers, Micropscopy Handbooks v. 27 (1994)). In one in situ procedure, fluorescent dyes (such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) which fluoresces green when excited by an Argon ion laser) are used to label a nucleic acid sequence probe that is complementary to a target nucleotide sequence in the cell. Each cell containing the target nucleotide sequence will bind the labeled probe producing a fluorescent signal upon exposure, of the cells to a light source of a wavelength appropriate for excitation of the specific fluorochrome used. A "target nucleotide sequence" is a sequence specific for a over-expressed tumor antigen, such as ErbB. FISH analysis can be used in conjunction with other assays, including without limitation morphological staining (of serial sections or the same section; see PCT Publication No. WO 00/20641, specifically incorporated herein by reference).

Various degrees of hybridization stringency can be employed. As the hybridization conditions become more stringent, a greater degree of complementarity is required between the probe and target to form and maintain a stable duplex. Stringency is increased by raising temperature, lowering salt concentration, or raising formamide concentration. Adding dextran sulfate or raising its concentration may also increase the effective concentration of labeled probe to increase the rate of hybridization and ultimate signal intensity. After hybridization, slides are washed in a solution generally containing reagents similar to those found in the hybridization solution with washing time varying from minutes to hours depending on required stringency. Longer or more stringent washes typically lower nonspecific background but run the risk of decreasing overall sensitivity.

Probes used in the FISH analysis may be either RNA or DNA oligonucleotides or polynucleotides and may contain not only naturally occurring nucleotides but their analogs like digoxygenin dCTP, biotin dcTP 7-azaguanosine, azidothymidine, inosine, or uridine. Other useful probes include peptide probes and analogues thereof, branched gene DNA, peptidometics, peptide nucleic acid (PNA), and/or antibodies.

Probes should have sufficient complementarity to the target nucleic acid sequence of interest so that stable and specific binding occurs between the target nucleic acid sequence and the probe. The degree of homology required for stable hybridization varies with the stringency of the hybridization medium and/or wash medium. Preferably, completely homologous probes are employed in the present invention, but persons of skill in the art will readily appreciate that probes exhibiting lesser but sufficient homology can be used in the present invention (see e.g., Sambrook, J., et al., *Molecular Cloning A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Press, (1989)).

One of skill in the art will appreciate that the choice of probe depends on the characteristics of the target gene of interest. Examples of amplification include, but are not limited to, her2/neu in breast and ovarian cancer, n-myc in neuroblastoma, c-myc in small cell lung cancer. By way of example for evaluating her2/neu amplification a probe spanning a 140 kb region on the long arm of chromosome 17 containing the her2/neu gene (17q 11.2-17q12) may be used. A probe for the -satellite sequences in the centromeric region of chromosome 17(D1721) may be used to evaluate for aneusomy of chromosome 17 as a source or cause for her2/neu amplification. For example, a cocktailed version of these probes may be obtained from Vysis, Inc. where each probe is directly labeled with easily distinguishable fluorophores, such as SPECTRUM ORANGE® and SPECTRUM GREEN®.

Probes may also be generated and chosen by several means including, but not limited to, mapping by in situ hybridization, somatic cell hybrid panels, or spot blots of sorted chromosomes; chromosomal linkage analysis; or cloned and isolated from sorted chromosome libraries from human cell lines or somatic cell hybrids with human chromosomes, radiation somatic cell hybrids, microdissection of a chromosome region, or from yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs) identified by PCR primers specific for a unique chromosome locus or other suitable means like an adjacent YAC clone. Probes may be genomic DNA, cDNA, or RNA cloned in a plasmid, phage, cosmid, YAC, Bacterial Artificial Chromosomes (BACs), viral vector, or any other suitable vector. Probes may be cloned or synthesized chemically by conventional methods. When cloned, the isolated probe nucleic acid fragments are typically inserted into a vector, such as lambda phage, pBR322, M13, or vectors containing the SP6 or T7 promoter and cloned as a library in a bacterial host (see, e.g., Sambrook, supra).

Probes are preferably labeled with a fluorophor. Examples of fluorophores include, but are not limited to, rare earth chelates (europium chelates), Texas Red, rhodamine, fluorescein, dansyl, Lissamine, umbelliferone, phycocrytherin, phycocyanin, or commercially available fluorophors such SPECTRUM ORANGE® and SPECTRUM GREEN®, and/or derivatives of any one or more of the above. Multiple probes used in the assay may be labeled with more than one distinguishable fluorescent or pigment color. These color differences provide a means to identify the hybridization positions of specific probes. Moreover, probes that are not separated spatially can be identified by a different color light or pigment resulting from mixing two other colors (e.g., light red+green=yellow), pigment (e.g., blue+yellow=green), or by using a filter set that passes only one color at a time.

Probes can be labeled directly or indirectly with the fluorophor, utilizing conventional methodology. Additional probes and colors may be added to refine and extend this general procedure to include more genetic abnormalities or serve as internal controls. By way of example the her2/neu gene is in chromosome 17, and as an internal control a probe for satellite sequences specific for chromosome 17 (D17Z1) may be used (Vysis, Inc.) to prove diploidy in areas of non-malignant cells and/or to establish the presence or absence of chromosome 17 aneusomy in areas of her2/neu amplification.

After processing for FISH, the slides may be analyzed by standard techniques of fluorescence microscopy (see, e.g., Ploem and Tanke, *Introduction to Fluorescence Microscopy*, Oxford University Press: New York (1987)). Briefly, each slide is observed using a microscope equipped with appropriate excitation filters, dichromic, and barrier filters. Filters are chosen based on the excitation and emission spectra of the fluorochromes used. Photographs of the slides may be taken with the length of time of film exposure depending on the fluorescent label used, the signal intensity and the filter chosen. For FISH analysis the physical loci of the cells of interest determined in the morphological analysis are recalled and visually conformed as being the appropriate area for FISH quantification.

In order to correlate IHC with FISH, one may use a computer-driven, motorized stage which stores location of coordinates. This may be used to evaluate the same area by two different analytical techniques. For example, color images of the morphologically stained areas may be captured and saved using a computer-assisted cooled CCD camera. The same section may be subsequently taken through the FISH procedure, the stored locations recalled, and the designated areas scored for the presence of fluorescent nuclear signals. A similar procedure for IHC followed by FISH is contemplated.

Typically, hundreds of cells are scanned in a tissue sample and quantification of the specific target nucleic acid sequence is determined in the form of fluorescent spots, which are counted relative to the number of cells. Deviation of the number of spots in a cell from a norm (e.g., such as probing for the her2/neu gene in a normal cell will produce two copies, abnormal greater than two) is indicative of a greater likelihood of benefit from a tumor antigen-specific antibody therapy, e.g., an ErbB antagonist therapy. As exemplified infra, her2 gene amplification provides a much more effective indication of the likelihood that an anti-HER2 antibody therapy will be effective.

Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antagonists, e.g., antibodies, used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 17th edition, Osol, A. Ed.), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2 antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein be reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2, ErbB3, ErbB4, vascular endothelial factor (VEGF), or an antibody that binds to a different epitope on the target ErbB, in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, a chemotherapeutic, a cytokine, growth inhibitory agent and/or cardioprotectant. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 17th edition, Osol, A. Ed.

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration are preferably, and in the case of humans, must be, sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(−)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S—S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

Treatment with the Anti-ErbB Antagonists

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB antibodies or other antagonists may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB receptor in patients who have been found to have an amplified erbB gene. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal,

liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic, glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal, blastocoelic, inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies, chemotherapeutic agents and any other active agents of the invention are administered to a human patient in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

In one embodiment, the treatment of the present invention involves the combined administration of an anti-ErbB antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, e.g., a taxoid. The present invention contemplates administration of cocktails of different chemotherapeutic agents. The combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

In addition to the above therapeutic regimes, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells (tumor resection) and/or radiation therapy.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of antagonist, e.g., antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

Pharmaceutical Packages: Articles of Manufacture

In a related aspect of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, optionally labeled, and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials, such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition that is effective for treating the condition and preferably has a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibody or an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody. A label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. This second buffer can be used to reconstitute the active agent, if that is provided as a lyophilysate or dried powder, or to dilute a concentrated preparation of the active agent. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes.

In addition, the article of manufacture comprises a package insert or inserts with instructions for use in patients who have been found to have erbB gene amplification, e.g., by FISH testing. Such patients may be subjects who, by IHC, would be excluded from treatment with the ErbB antagonist, e.g., patients who score a 0 or 1+ using an anti-HER2 antibody.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

EXAMPLE 1

Concordance Between the Clinical Trials Assay (CTA) and Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH) in the HERCEPTIN® Pivotal Trials

Overexpression of HER2 at the 2+ or 3+ level by immunohistochemistry (IHC) was required for enrollment in the pivotal HERCEPTIN® metastatic breast cancer trials. The Clinical Testing Assay (CTA) involves two separate IHC assays performed with either monoclonal antibodies 4D5 (after protease digestion of the formalin fixed sample) or CB11 (after heat treatment of the formalin fixed sample). Subjects were eligible if either assay was scored at 2+ or 3+. If both were performed, the final score was the higher of the two results.

Concordance between the CTA and another IHC, HERCEPTEST® (HT), is 79%. This was the basis for FDA approval of HT to aid in the selection of patients for HERCEPTIN® therapy.

This Example describes a similar concordance study, utilizing clinical material submitted for screening for the HERCEPTIN® pivotal trials, that compares the CTA to her2/neu gene amplification measured by the PathVysion FISH assay. In the pivotal trials, 5998 subjects were screened for HER2 expression; 1915 (32%) were positive by the CTA and 4083 (68%) were negative. A random sample of 623 specimens (1:1 ratio of positive:negative) were selected for this analysis, 317 CTA+ and 306 CTA−. Specimens were not freshly cut

from blocks. They had been stored between 2 and 4 years as 4-6μ sections on glass slides. Each section was assayed for her2/neu amplification using the protocol specified in the package insert of the PathVysion assay. Amplification was defined as a signal ratio of greater than or equal to 2. The results are shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1

FISH/CTA Concordance

		CTA				
		0	1+	2+	3+	
FISH	–	207	28	67	21	
	+	7	2	21	176	
		4%	7%	24%	89%	529

FISH+ = HER2:CEP17 signal ratio ≧ 2

Concordance = 82% (79-85%)

For the total 623 specimens tested, a FISH signal result was obtained in 529. Assay failure occurred in 19.9% of CTA− and 10.4% CTA+ samples. Amplification in the 0, 1+, 2, and 3+ groups was 4.2%, 6.7%, 23.9%, and 89.3%, respectively. The sample concordance was 81.3%, similar to the CTA/HT concordance of 79%. Single copy overexpression was 31%, predominantly in the 2+ group. Amplification was rarely (4.6%) noted in the CTA− group. The higher assay failure rate in the CTA− group may be due to non-assay related factors such as tissue fixation. These may have also resulted in false negative results for IHC.

These data were closely interpreted to suggest that her2/neu amplification status may have unexpectedly superior predictive value for identifying patients who are more likely to benefit from HERCEPTIN® treatment as compared to HERCEPTEST®. The observation that only 24% of 2+ patients are FISH+ suggest that this sub-group may have less predictable treatment outcomes when selected by IHC only. Identification of FISH+ patients in the 1+ and 0 sub-groups might identify subjects who, though failing the IHC criteria for HERCEPTIN® treatment, would likely benefit from HERCEPTIN® treatment. A direct analysis of HERCEPTIN® benefit based on FISH score compared to IHC score is presented in Example 2.

EXAMPLE 2

FISH/Clinical Outcome Study

This example links the results from three HERCEPTIN® Trials with FISH status. In this study, 805 subjects were selected at random from all three trials. Of these, 167 lacked slides. Another 78 assays (9.7%) failed. Thus, formalin-fixed cut sections stored between 2.5 and 4.5 years from 540 subjects provided the sample pool for this study. There were no imbalances in demographics or prognostic indicators in these samples. Results are reported for different treatment groups.

Correlation of FISH status with response was evaluated for patients who received HERCEPTIN® as a second or third line therapy. These data are reported for 2+ and 3+ (by CTA) subjects in Table 2.

TABLE 2

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ®, 2nd or 3rd line Therapy, 2+/3+ Combined

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	21	0
No response	84	37
response rate	20%	0%
	(12.5-27.5%)	(0.7%)

N = 142

The 20% response rate of FISH+ subjects unexpectedly exceeds the 15% response rate of 2+ and 3+ patients in this study and 14% response rate observed in patients selected by CTA with a 2+ or 3+ immunohistochemistry score during the pivotal trials. Thus, while FISH correlates well with IHC to about the same degree as another IHC assay, the Hercep Test, as shown in Example 1, it unexpectedly is superior in identifying patients who are more likely to benefit from HERCEPTIN® therapy.

When these data were broken down into the components 3+ and 2+ subjects, the same 20% response rate of FISH+ subjects was seen (Tables 3 and 4).

TABLE 3

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 3+ subgroup

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	18	0
No response	72	17
response rate	20%	0%
	(12-28%)	(0-14%)

N = 107

TABLE 4

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 2+ subgroup

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	3	0
No response	12	20
response rate	20%	0%
	(1-40%)	(0-14%)

N = 35

In the 3+ sub-group, the FISH+ response rate (20%) was very close but still exceeded the 17% response rate of 3+ subjects. The 2+ subgroup showed a much greater difference, with only a 9% response rate versus 20% by FISH+ selection. These data show that FISH+ status (her2 gene amplification) greatly increases the likelihood of response to HERCEPTIN®.

Data were also evaluated for patient responses to HERCEPTIN® as a first line therapy (Table 5).

TABLE 5

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ® as 1st line therapy, 2+/3+ combined

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	17	1
No response	24	20
response rate	41%	20%
	(26-56%)	(0-14%)

N = 62

The 41% response rate of FISH+ subjects was notably greater than the 27% response rate of 3+, 2+ subjects.

The surprising increase in likelihood of beneficial response based on FISH analysis extended to responses to chemotherapy plus HERCEPTIN®, as shown in Table 6. FISH+ subjects showed a much greater response to chemotherapy and HERCEPTIN® (54%) than FISH-(41%). Tables 7-9 contain more extensive data, broken down by different chemotherapeutic agents (adrinomycin and cyclophosphamide, AC; and Paditaxol, P) and different endpoints (response rate, time to progression, and survival) for HERCEPTIN® in combination with chemotherapy.

TABLE 6

FISH/Response rate to chemotherapy +/− HERCEPTIN ®, 1st line therapy; 2+/3+ combined

	C alone	C + H
FISH−	39% (26-52%)	41% (27-55%)
FISH+	27% (19-35%)	54% (45-63%)

N = 336

TABLE 7

Response rate of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	56*	42	41*	17	50*	32
3+	349	60*	42	49*	17	56*	31
FISH+	240	58*	40	49*	14	54*	27

*p < 0.05

TABLE 8

Time to progression (months) of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	7.8*	6.1	6.9*	2.7	7.4*	4.6
3+	349	8.1*	6.0	7.1*	3.0	7.8*	4.6
FISH+	240	7.8*	6.2	7.0*	3.2	7.3*	4.6

*p < 0.05

TABLE 9

Survival (months) of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	27	21	22	18	25*	20
3+	349	31*	21	25	18	29*	20
FISH+	240	29*	20	25*	14	27*	18

*p < 0.05

These data uniformly confirm that FISH+ analysis, though correlating closely to IHC, provides a much more accurate indicator of likelihood of success with HERCEPTIN® treatment. Across the board, FISH+ selection has about ⅓ (30%) greater response rate than 2+/3+ IHC-selection. When focused on 2+ patients, FISH status provides a much more effective tool for patient selection. FISH states also identifies patients who, because of 0 or 1+ status as determined by IHC, would otherwise be excluded from treatment.

These observations have broad implications for ErbB receptor antagonist-based cancer therapies and anti-tumor antigen cancer therapies in general. Thus erbB antagonists, e.g., anti-erbB receptor antibodies like HERCEPTIN®, can have an increased likelihood of efficacy when administered to patients who are positive for erbB gene amplification, e.g., by a FISH test. This is certainly the case, based on these data, with HERCEPTIN®.

The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the specific embodiments described herein. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and the accompanying figures. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

It is further to be understood that all values are approximate, and are provided for description.

Patents, patent applications, publications, product descriptions, and protocols are cited throughout this application, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties for all purposes.

What is claimed:

1. A method of identifying and treating a breast cancer patient disposed to respond favorably to a HER2 antibody, huMAb4D5-8, which method comprises detecting her2 gene amplification in cancer cells in a breast tissue sample from the patient and treating the patient with her2 gene amplification with the HER2 antibody in an amount effective to treat the breast cancer, wherein the patient's cancer cells express HER2 at a 0 or 1+ level by immunohistochemistry.

2. The method of claim **1** wherein her2 gene amplification is detected by detecting fluorescence of a fluorescent-labeled nucleic acid probe hybridized to the gene.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein a formaldehyde-fixed tissue sample containing the patient's breast cancer cells has been subjected to immunohistochemistry assay and found to express HER2 at a 0 or 1+ level.

4. The method of claim 3 wherein the immunohistochemistry assay is performed prior to detecting her2 gene amplification.

5. The method of claim 1 which further comprises administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic drug.

6. The method of claim 5 wherein the chemotherapeutic drug is a taxoid.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT H

US008440402B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Mass

(10) **Patent No.: US 8,440,402 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: *May 14, 2013**

(54) **GENE DETECTION ASSAY FOR IMPROVING THE LIKELIHOOD OF AN EFFECTIVE RESPONSE TO A HER2 ANTIBODY CANCER THERAPY**

(75) Inventor: **Robert D. Mass**, Mill Valley, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **13/323,322**

(22) Filed: **Dec. 12, 2011**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2012/0093838 A1 Apr. 19, 2012

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 11/690,304, filed on Mar. 23, 2007, now Pat. No. 8,076,066, which is a continuation of application No. 09/863,101, filed on May 18, 2001, now abandoned.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/205,754, filed on May 19, 2000.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
C12Q 1/68 (2006.01)
G01N 33/574 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**
USPC **435/6.1**; 435/7.23

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... None
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,753,894	A	6/1988	Frankel
4,935,341	A	6/1990	Bargmann
4,943,533	A	7/1990	Mendelsohn
4,968,603	A	11/1990	Slamon
4,975,278	A	12/1990	Senter
5,169,774	A	12/1992	Frankel
5,183,884	A	2/1993	Kraus
5,288,477	A	2/1994	Bacus
5,359,046	A	10/1994	Capon
5,367,060	A	11/1994	Vandlen
5,401,638	A	3/1995	Carney
5,464,751	A	11/1995	Greene
5,480,968	A	1/1996	Kraus
5,514,554	A	5/1996	Bacus
5,571,894	A	11/1996	Wels
5,578,482	A	11/1996	Lippman
5,587,458	A	12/1996	King
5,604,107	A	2/1997	Carney
5,641,869	A	6/1997	Vandlen
5,663,144	A	9/1997	Greene
5,677,165	A	10/1997	de Boer
5,677,171	A	10/1997	Hudziak
5,705,157	A	1/1998	Greene
5,720,937	A	2/1998	Hudziak
5,720,954	A	2/1998	Hudziak
5,725,856	A	3/1998	Hudziak
5,726,023	A	3/1998	Cheever
5,728,687	A	3/1998	Bissery
5,736,137	A	4/1998	Anderson
5,747,261	A	5/1998	King
5,770,195	A	6/1998	Hudziak
5,772,997	A	6/1998	Hudziak
5,776,427	A	7/1998	Thorpe
5,783,186	A	7/1998	Arakawa
5,783,404	A	7/1998	Koski
5,801,005	A	9/1998	Cheever
5,804,396	A	9/1998	Plowman
5,821,337	A	10/1998	Carter
5,824,311	A	10/1998	Greene
8,824,311		10/1998	Greene
5,834,229	A	11/1998	Vandlen
5,837,243	A	11/1998	Deo
5,837,523	A	11/1998	Greene
5,840,525	A	11/1998	Vandlen
5,846,538	A	12/1998	Cheever
5,846,749	A	12/1998	Slamon
5,856,089	A	1/1999	Wang
5,856,110	A	1/1999	Vandlen
5,859,206	A	1/1999	Vandlen
5,869,445	A	2/1999	Cheever
5,876,712	A	3/1999	Cheever
5,877,305	A	3/1999	Huston
5,908,835	A	6/1999	Bissery
5,910,486	A	6/1999	Curiel
5,922,845	A	7/1999	Deo
5,925,519	A	7/1999	Jensen
5,939,531	A	8/1999	Wels
5,968,511	A	10/1999	Akita
5,977,322	A	11/1999	Marks

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	412116	4/1989
EP	332865	9/1989

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Sneige et al, 2000 Annual Meeting United States and Canadian Academy of Pathology, Mar. 25-31, 2000, abstract #258 on p. 47A.*

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Laura B Goddard

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Diane Marschang; Ginger R. Dreger; Arnold & Porter LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The invention provides a method for more effective treatment of patients susceptible to or diagnosed with tumors overexpressing HER2, as determined by a gene amplification assay, with a HER2 antibody. Such method comprises administering a cancer-treating dose of the HER2 antibody, preferably in addition to chemotherapeutic agents, to a subject in whose tumor cells her2 has been found to be amplified e.g., by fluorescent in situ hybridization.

6 Claims, No Drawings

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,985,553	A	11/1999	King
5,994,071	A	11/1999	Ross
6,015,567	A	1/2000	Hudziak
6,028,059	A	2/2000	Curiel
6,054,297	A	4/2000	Carter
6,054,561	A	4/2000	Ring
6,096,873	A	8/2000	Schaefer
6,123,939	A	9/2000	Shawver
6,165,464	A	12/2000	Hudziak
6,270,765	B1	8/2001	Deo
6,333,348	B1	12/2001	Vogel
6,358,682	B1	3/2002	Jaffee
6,387,371	B1	5/2002	Hudziak
6,395,272	B1	5/2002	Deo
6,399,063	B1	6/2002	Hudziak
6,403,630	B1	6/2002	Danenberg
6,407,213	B1	6/2002	Carter
6,458,356	B1	10/2002	Arakawa
6,512,097	B1	1/2003	Marks
6,573,043	B1	6/2003	Cohen
6,582,919	B2	6/2003	Danenberg
6,602,670	B2	8/2003	Daneberg
6,627,196	B1	9/2003	Baughman
6,632,979	B2	10/2003	Erickson
6,719,971	B1	4/2004	Carter
6,800,738	B1	10/2004	Carter et al.
6,984,494	B2	1/2006	Ralph
7,018,809	B1	3/2006	Carter
7,097,840	B2	8/2006	Erickson et al.
7,129,051	B2	10/2006	Cohen et al.
7,279,287	B2	10/2007	Ralph
7,371,376	B1	5/2008	Fendly
7,371,379	B2	5/2008	Baughman et al.
2002/0001587	A1	1/2002	Erickson et al.
2002/0031515	A1	3/2002	Caligiuri
2002/0035736	A1	3/2002	Erickson et al.
2002/0051785	A1	5/2002	Salmon
2002/0064785	A1	5/2002	Mass
2002/0076408	A1	6/2002	Buchsbaum
2002/0076695	A1	6/2002	Ross
2002/0090662	A1	7/2002	Ralph
2002/0141993	A1	10/2002	Ashkenazi
2002/0142328	A1	10/2002	Danenberg
2002/0155527	A1	10/2002	Stuart
2002/0173629	A1	11/2002	Jakobovits et al.
2002/0192211	A1	12/2002	Hudziak
2002/0192652	A1	12/2002	Danenberg
2003/0022918	A1	1/2003	Horak
2003/0059790	A1	3/2003	Jaffee
2003/0103973	A1	6/2003	Rockwell
2003/0108545	A1	6/2003	Rockwell
2003/0134344	A1	7/2003	Mass
2003/0144252	A1	7/2003	Furr
2003/0147884	A1	8/2003	Paton et al.
2003/0152987	A1	8/2003	Cohen
2003/0157097	A1	8/2003	Noguchi et al.
2003/0170234	A1	9/2003	Hellmann
2003/0190689	A1	10/2003	Crosby
2003/0211530	A1	11/2003	Danenberg
2003/0228663	A1	12/2003	Lowman et al.
2004/0037823	A9	2/2004	Paton
2004/0106161	A1	6/2004	Bossenmaier et al.
2005/0100944	A1	5/2005	Cohen et al.
2005/0208043	A1	9/2005	Adams et al.
2005/0238640	A1	10/2005	Sliwkowski
2005/0244929	A1	11/2005	Carter
2006/0013819	A1	1/2006	Kelsey
2006/0034842	A1	2/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0046270	A1	3/2006	Ralph
2006/0067930	A1	3/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0073143	A1	4/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0121044	A1	6/2006	Amler et al.
2006/0198843	A1	9/2006	Adams et al.
2006/0204505	A1	9/2006	Sliwkowski
2006/0210561	A1	9/2006	Baughman et al.
2006/0228745	A1	10/2006	Mass
2006/0275305	A1	12/2006	Bryant
2007/0009976	A1	1/2007	Lenz et al.
2007/0020261	A1	1/2007	Sliwkowski
2007/0037228	A1	2/2007	Moecks et al.
2007/0292419	A1	12/2007	Hellmann
2008/0038271	A1	2/2008	Amler et al.
2008/0050373	A1	2/2008	Cohen
2008/0050385	A1	2/2008	Friess et al.
2008/0102069	A1	5/2008	Friess et al.
2008/0108096	A1	5/2008	Ralph
2008/0112957	A1	5/2008	Fendly et al.
2008/0112958	A1	5/2008	Mass

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	494135		9/1989
EP	444181		8/1990
EP	1006194		8/1990
EP	502812		1/1992
EP	554441		8/1992
EP	656367		8/1992
EP	616812		3/1993
EP	599274		11/1993
EP	711565		11/1995
JP	3-240498		10/1991
JP	5-117165		5/1993
JP	5-170667		7/1993
JP	5-213775		8/1993
JP	2761543	B2	6/1998
JP	2895105	B2	5/1999
WO	WO 87/07646	A2	12/1987
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989
WO	WO 89/10412		11/1989
WO	WO 90/14357		11/1990
WO	WO 91/02062		2/1991
WO	WO 91/05264		4/1991
WO	WO 92/10573		6/1992
WO	WO 92/20798		11/1992
WO	WO 93/03741		3/1993
WO	WO 93/12220		6/1993
WO	WO 93/16185		8/1993
WO	WO 93/21232		10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319		10/1993
WO	WO 94/00136		1/1994
WO	WO 94/22478		10/1994
WO	WO 94/28127		12/1994
WO	WO 95/16051		6/1995
WO	WO 95/17507		6/1995
WO	WO 95/28485		10/1995
WO	WO 96/07321		3/1996
WO	WO 96/16673		6/1996
WO	WO 96/18409		6/1996
WO	WO 96/40789		12/1996
WO	WO 97/00271		1/1997
WO	WO 97/04801		2/1997
WO	WO 97/20858		6/1997
WO	WO 97/27848		8/1997
WO	WO 97/35885		10/1997
WO	WO 97/38731		10/1997
WO	WO 98/02463		1/1998
WO	WO 98/02540		1/1998
WO	WO 98/02541		1/1998
WO	WO 98/17797		4/1998
WO	WO 98/18489		5/1998
WO	WO 98/33914		8/1998
WO	WO 98/45479		10/1998
WO	WO 99/31140		6/1999
WO	WO 99/39729		8/1999
WO	WO 99/48527		9/1999
WO	WO 99/55367		11/1999
WO	WO 00/20641		4/2000
WO	WO 00/61145		10/2000
WO	WO 00/61185		10/2000
WO	WO 00/69460		11/2000
WO	WO 00/78347		12/2000
WO	WO 01/00238		1/2001
WO	WO 01/00244		1/2001
WO	WO 01/00245		1/2001
WO	WO 01/05425		1/2001
WO	WO 01/09187		2/2001
WO	WO 01/15730		3/2001
WO	WO 01/20033		3/2001

WO	WO 01/21192		3/2001
WO	WO 01/32155		5/2001
WO	WO 01/34574		5/2001
WO	WO 01/53354		7/2001
WO	WO 01/56604		8/2001
WO	WO 01/64246		9/2001
WO	WO 01/76586		10/2001
WO	WO 01/76630		10/2001
WO	WO 01/87334		11/2001
WO	WO 01/87336		11/2001
WO	WO 01/89566		11/2001
WO	WO 02/05791		1/2002
WO	WO 02/09754		2/2002
WO	WO 02/11677		2/2002
WO	WO 02/44413		6/2002
WO	WO 02/45653		6/2002
WO	WO 02/055106		7/2002
WO	WO 03/087131		10/2003
WO	WO 2004/008099	A2	1/2004
WO	WO 2005/117553		12/2005
WO	WO 2006/007398	A1	6/2006
WO	WO 2006/063042	A2	6/2006
WO	WO 2006/078307	A1	7/2006
WO	WO 2006/091693		8/2006
WO	WO 2006/096861		9/2006
WO	WO 2006/107854	A2	10/2006
WO	WO 2007/003420		1/2007
WO	WO 2007/013950		2/2007
WO	WO 2007/019899		9/2007
WO	WO 2007/107329		9/2007
WO	WO 2007/145862		12/2007
WO	WO 2008/031531		3/2008

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

"Could Medarex's MAb be prostate cancer's Herceptin?" Scrip 2442:25, (Jun. 2, 1999).

Aasland et al., "Expression of Oncogenes in Thyroid Tumours: Coexpression of c-erbB2/neu and c-erbB", British Journal of Cancer 57(4): 358-363, (1988).

Agus at al., "Differential Anti-Tumor Effects of Targeting Distinct Epitopes of the Her-2/neu extracellular Domain in Xenograft Models of Prostate Cancer.", Proceedings of the American Association, for Cancer Research Annual Meeting (Abstract #4570) 41:719 (Mar. 2000).

Agus et al., "Response of Prostate Cancer to Anti-Her-2/neu Antibody in Androgen-Dependent and-Independent Human Xenograft Models", Cancer Research 59: 4761-4764, (1999).

Agus et al., "Targeting ligand-activated BrbB2 signaling inhibits breast and prostate tumor growth", Cancer Cell 2(2): 127-137, (2002).

Akiyama et al., "Tumor Promoter and Epidermal Growth Factor Stimulate Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2 Gene Product in MKN-7 Human Adenocarcinoma Cells" Molecular & Cellular Biology 8(3): 1019-1026, (Mar. 1988).

Anastasi et al, "Detection of Trisomy 12 in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization to Interphase Cells: A Simple and Sensitive Method", Blood 79(7):1796-1801, (1992).

Anastasi et al., "Cytogenetic Clonality in Myelodysplastic Syndromes Studied With Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization: Lineage, Response To Growth Factor Therapy, and Clone Expansion", Blood 81(6): 1580-1585, (Mar. 15, 1993).

Anastasi et al., "Direct Correlation of Cytogenetic Findings With Cell Morphology Using In Situ Hybridization: An Analysis of Suspicious Cells,in Bone Marrow Specimens of Two Patients. Completing Therapy for Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia" Blood 77(11):2456-2462 (Jun. 1, 1991).

Arteaga et al., "p185n^{-}cerne^{-4} Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-induced DNA Repair", Cancer Research 54(14): 3758-3765, (Jul. 15, 1994).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/neu Antigen" Molecular Carcinogenesis 3(6):350-362 (1990).

Bacus et al., "Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to the HER-2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells" Cancer Research 52(9): 2580-2589, (1992).

Baselga and Mendelsohn, "Receptor Blockade With Monoclonal Antibodies As Anti-Cancer Therapy" Pharmac. Ther. 64: 127-154, (1994).

Baselga et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against Growth Factor Receptors Enhance the Efficacy of Chemotherapeutic Agents." Annals of Oncology (abstract #010) 5(Suppl. 5) (1994).

Baselga et al., "Anti HER2 Humanized Monoclonal Antibody (MAb) Alone and in Combination with Chemotherapy Against Human Breast Carcinoma Xenografts" Proceedings of ASCO—13th Annual Meeting (Abstract #53), Dallas, TX 13:63, (Mar. 1994).

Baselga et al., "HER2 Overexpression and Paclitaxel Sensitivity in Breast Cancer: Therapeutic Implications" Oncology (Supplement No. 2) 11(3): 43-48 (Mar. 1997).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recoinnant Humanized Anti-p185 a-ha-d Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" J. Clin. Oncol. 14(3):737-744 (Mar. 1996).

Baselga et al., "Phase II study of weekly intravenous trastnzumab (Herceptin) in patients with HER2/neu-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer" Seminars in Oncology 26(4 Suppl 12): 78-83, (1999).

Baselga et al., "Recombinant Humanized Anti-HER2 Antibody (Herceptin) Enchances the Antitumor Activity of Paclitaxel and Doxorubicin against HER2/neu Overexpessing Human Breast Cancer Xenografts", Cancer Research 58: 2825-2831 (Jul. 1998).

Borst et al., "Oncogene Alterations in Endometrial Carcinoma", Gynecologic Oncology 38(3): 364-366, (1990).

Brady et al., "Iodine125 labeled anti-epidermal growth factor receptor-425 in the treatment of malignant astrocytomas. A pilot Study" Journal of Neurosurgical Sciences 34(3-4):243-249 (Jul.-Dec. 1990).

Burden and Yarden., "Neuregulins and Their Receptors: A Versatile signaling Module in Organogenesis and Oncogenesis." Neuron 18(6): 847-855, (Jun. 1997).

Burris III, H., "Docetaxel (Taxotere) in HER-2-positive patients and in combination with trastuzumab (Herceptin)", Seminars in Oncology 27(2 Suppl 3):19-23, (Apr. 2000).

Cappuzzo et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor gene and protein and gefitinib sensitivity in non-small-cell lung cancer" Journal of the National Cancer Institute 97(9): 643-655, (May 4, 2005).

Carlson et al., "HER2 testing in breast cancer: NCCN Task Force report and recommendations", Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network 4(Suppl 3):S1-S24, (2006).

Carraway and Cantley, "A Neu Acquaintance for ErbB3 and ErbB4: A Role for Receptor Heterodimerization in Growth Signaling" Cell 78: 5-8, (Jul. 15, 1994).

Carraway et al., "Neuregulin-2, A New Ligand of ErbB3/Erb84-Receptor Tyrosine Kinases", Nature 387: 512-516, (May 1997).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an Anti-p185HERA Antibody for Human Cancer Therapy", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89(10): 4285-4289, (May 1992).

Chang et al., "Ligands for ErbB-Family Receptors Encoded by a Neuregulin-Like Gene", Nature 387: 509-512, (1997).

Choong et al., "Gelltinib response of erlotinib-refractory lung cancer involving meninges—role of EGFR mutation" Nature Clinical Practice Oncology 3(1): 50-57, (2006).

Clark, Gary M. et al., "Follow-up Study of HER-2/neu Amplification in Primary Breast Cancer", Cancer Research, 51, 944-948, Feb. 1, 1991.

Cobleigh et al., "Multinational study of the efficacy and safety of humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody in women who have HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancer that has progressed after chemotherapy for metastatic disease" Journal of Clinical Oncol 17(9):2639-2648 (Sep. 1999).

Cohen et al., "Expression Pattern of the neu NGL Gene-Encoded Growth Factor Receptor Protein (p185neu) in Normal and Transformed Epithelial Tissues of the Digestive Tract" Oncogene 4(1): 81-88, (1989).

Connelly and Stern., "The Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor and the Product of the neu Protooncogene Are Members of a Receptor Tyrosine Phosphorylation Cascade." Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 87: 6054-6057, (1990).

Couturier et al (Mod Pathol, 2000, 13:1238-1243).
Craft et al., "A Mechanism for Hormone-Independent Prostate Cancer Through Modulation of Androgen Receptor Signaling by the HER-2/neu Tyrosine Kinase." Nature Medicine 5(3):280-285 (Mar. 1999).
Dacic et al., "Significance of EGFR protein expression and gene amplification in non-small cell lung carcinoma" American Journal of Clinical Pathology 125(6): 860-865, (2006).
DakoCytomation, "Herceptest TM for immunocytochemicaf staining" (package insert) pp. 1-25 (2004).
De Santes et al., "Raido labeled Antibody Targeting of the HER-2/neu Oncoprotein" Cancer Research 52: 1916-1923 (1992).
Di Fiore et al., "erbB-2 is a Potent Oncogene When Overexpressed in NIH/3T3 Cells.", Science 237(4811):178-182, (Jul. 10, 1987).
Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies", Cell, vol. 41, pp. 695-706 (1985).
Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive with Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encoded p185 Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-tumor Effects in Vivo", Oncogene, vol. 2, pp. 273-277 (1988).
Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the neu Oncogene Product Directly Mediate Anti-tumor Effects In Vivo" Oncogene 2(4): 387-394, (1988).
Drebin et al., Inhibition of Tumor Growth by a Monoclonal Antibody Reactive With an Oncogene-Encoded Tumor Antigen Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 83: 9129-9133 (Dec. 1986).
Dressler et al., "Amplification of ErbB2 by Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH): An Alternate Method to Predict Outcome Following Dose-Escalated CAF in Stage II, Node Positive Breast Cancer Patients." Proc. Annual Meet. Amer. Soc. Clin. Oncol. (Meeting Abstract) 18:A281 (1999).
D'Souza et al., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-cadherin Gene", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA, vol. 91, pp. 7202-7206 (1994).
Earp et al., "Heterodimerization and Functional Interaction Between MP Receptor Family Members: A New Signaling Paradigm With. Implications for Breast Cancer Research", Breast Cancer Res and Treatment 35: 115-132 (1995).
FDA Clinical Review of BLA 98-0369 Herceptin, Trastuzumab (rhuMAb HER2), Date of Approval: Sep. 25, 1998, (pp. 1-99).
Fendly, B.M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/neu Gene Product" Cancer Research 50: 1550-1558, (1990).
Fleiss, JL Statistical Methods for Rates and Proportions, 2nd edition, New York, NY: Wiley pp. 13-17, (1981).
Fukushige et al., "Localization of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene, c-erbB-2, on Human Chromosome 17 and its Amplification in a Gastric Cancer Cell Line", Molecular and Cellular Biology, vol. 6, No. 3, pp. 955-958 (1986).
Gemzar (gemcitabine HCL), "Product Information—PDR" (2000).
Goldenberg, M., "Trastuzumab, a Recombinant DNA-Derived Humanized Monoclonal Antibody, a Novel Agent for the Treatment of Metastatic Breast Cancer" Clinical Therapeutics 21(2):309-316 (1999).
Goldman et al., Heterodimerization of the erbB-1 and erbB-2 Receptors in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: A Mechanism for Receptor Transregulation Biochemistry 29(50):11024-11028, (1990).
Graus-Porta at al., "ErbB-2, The Preferred Heterodimerization Partner of All ErbB Receptors, is a Mediator of Lateral Signaling." EMBO Journal 16(7): 1647-1655, (1997).
Green et al., "Preclinical Evaluation of WR-151327: An Orally Active Chemotherapy Protector", Cancer Research 54(3): 738-741 (Feb. 1, 1994).
Groenen et al., "Structure-Function Relationships for the EGF/TGF-a Family of Mitogens", Growth Factors 11: 235-257, (1994).
Gu et al., "Overexpression of her-2/neu in Human Prostate Cancer and Benign Hyperplasia", Cancer Letters, vol. 99, pp. 185-189 (1996).
Guerin et al., "Overexpression of Either c-myc or c-erbB-2/neu Proto-Oncogenes in Human Breast Carcinomas: Correlation with Poor Prognosis" Oncogene Research, vol. 3, pp. 21-31 (1988).
Guy et al., "Expression of the neu Protooncogene in the Mammary Epithelium of Transgenic Mice Induces Metastatic Disease." Proc. Natl. Acad. Sol. USA 89(22): 10578-10582, (Nov. 15, 1992).
Hancock, M.C. et al., A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines:, vol. 51, pp. 4575-4580 (1991).
Harari at al., "Neuregulin-4: A. Novel Growth Factor That Acts Through the ErbB-4 Receptor Tyrosine Kinase" Oncogene 18: 2681-2689 (1999).
Harweth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracelluler Domain of the erbB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists", The Journal of Biological Chemistry, vol. 267, No. 21, pp. 15160-15167 (1992).
Herceptin 150 mg Powder for concentrate for solution for infusion, Approved label from UK Medicines Agency, pp. 1-28.
Hirsch and Bunn Jr., "Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in lung cancer: smaller or larger molecules, selected or unselected populations?" Journal of Clinical Oncology 23(36):9044-9047, (2005).
Hirsch et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor in non-small-cell lung carcinomas: correlation between gene copy number and protein expression and impact on prognosis", Journal of Clinical Oncology 21(20): 3798-3807 (Oct. 15, 2003).
Hirsch et al., "Increased epidermal growth factor receptor gene copy number detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization associates with increased sensitivity to gefitinib in patients with bronchioloalveolar carcinoma subtypes: a Southwest Oncology Group Study" J Clin Oncol 23:6838-6845 (2005).
Holmes et al., "Identification of Heregulin, A Specific Activator of p185erns2" Science 256: 1205-1210, (1992).
Hudziak et al., "Increased Expression of the Putative Growth Factor Receptor p185E-k4 Causes Transformation and Tumorigenesis of NTH 3T3 Cells" Proc. Nat': Acad. gci. USA 84(20):7159-7163, (1987).
Hudziak et al., "p185HER2 Monoclonal Antibody has Antiproliferative Effects in Vitro Effects in Vitro and Sensitizes Huamn Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor", Molecular and Cellular Biology, vol. 9, No. 3, pp. 1165-1172 (1989).
Hynes and Stern, "The Biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and Its Role in•Cancer" Biochimica et Biophysica Acta 1198(2-3): 165-184, (Dec. 30, 1994).
Ilgen et al., "Characterization of anti-BER/2 antibodies which inhibit the growth of breast tumor cells in vitro" Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research (abstract #3209) 37:470 (Mar. 1996).
Jacobs et al., "Comparison of fluorescence in situ hybridization and immunohistochemistry for the evaluation of HER-2/neu in breast cancer" Journal of Clinical Oncology 17(7): 1974-1982, (1999).
James et al., "Phase II. Trial of the Bispecific Antibody MDX-H210 (anti-Her2/Neu X-anti-CD64) Combined With GM-CSF in Patients With Advanced Prostate and Renal Cell Carcinoma That Express Her2/Neu." British Journal of Cancer (Abstract #56) 78:19 (1998).
Johns et al., "The antitumor monoclonal antibody 806 recognizes a high-mannose form of the EGF receptor that reaches the cell surface when cells over-express the receptor", FASEB Journal (Express article 10.1096/fj.04-1766fje published online.) pp. 1-18 (Mar. 17, 2005).
Jones et al., "Binding Interaction of the Heregulinβ egf Domain with ErbB3 and ErbB4 Receptors Assessed by Alanine Scanning Mutagenesis" Journal of Biological Chemistry 273(19):11667-11674, (1998).
Kannan at al., "Cripto Enhances the Tyrosine Phosphorylation of Shc and Activates Mitogen-activated Protein Kinase (Mum) in Mammary Epithelial Cells" Journal of Biological Chemistry 272(6): 3330-3335, (1997).
Karunagaran et al., "ErbB-2 is a Common Auxiliary Subunit of NDF and EGF Receptors: Implications for Breast Cancer" EMBO Journal 15(2): 254-264 (1996).
Kasprzyk et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonal Antibodies" Cancer Research 52(10): 2771-2776 (May 15, 1992).

Kern et al., "p185neu Expression in Human Lung Adenocarcinomas Predicts Shortened Survival", Cancer Research—50(16): 5184-5191, (Aug. 15, 1990).
Kersting et al., "Amplifications of the epidermal growth factor receptor gene (egfr) are common in phyllodes tumors of the breast and are associated with tumor progression" Laboratory Investigation 86(1): 54-61 (Jan. 2006).
King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma", Science, 229: 974-976, (Sep. 1985).
King et al., TEGF Binding to its Receptor Triggers a Rapid Tyrosine Phosphorylation of the erbB-2 Protein in the Mammary Tumor Cell Line SK-BR-3. EMBO Journal 7(6):1647-1651, (1988).
Klapper et al., "A Subclass of Tumor-Inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to ErbB-2/HER2 Blocks Crosstalk With Growth Factor Receptors" Oncogene 14: 2099-2109 (1997).
Kobayashi et al., "EGER mutation and resistance of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib", New England U. of Medicine 352(8): 786-792, (2005).
Kokai et al., "Synergistic Interaction of p185c-neu and the EGF Receptor Leads to Transformation of Rodent Fibroblasts" Cell 58: 287-292 (Jul. 28, 1989).
Kotts et al., "Differential Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene", In Vitro (Abstract #176) 26(3):59A (1990).
Kotts et al., "GroWS7AMilOn of Human Breast Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Combinations of Interferon-gamma and Monoclonal Antibodies Directed against the Extracellular Domain of the HER2/ERBB2 Protooncogene" (Program 1470, Joint Mtg of ASBMB & AAI in New Orleans, LA on Jun. 4-7, 1990 poster).
Kotts et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Breast Carcinoma Cells Exposed to Combinations of Interferon-Gamma and Monoclonal Antibodies Directed Against the Extracellular Domain of the Her2/erbB2 Oncogene Protein" FASEB Journal (abstract #1470) 4(7);A1946 (1990).
Kraus et al., "Isolation and Characterization of ERBB3, A Third Member of the ERBB/Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family: Evidence for Overexpression in a Subset of Human Mammary Tumors" Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA 86:9193-9197 (Dec. 1989).
Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells", Molecular & Cellular Biology 11(2):979-986, (1991).
Kuter, I., "Breast cancer" The Oncologist 6(4):338-346 (2001).
Lee et al., "Transforming Growth Factor C(: Expression, Regulation, and Biological Activities", Pharmacological Reviews 47(1):51-85 (Mar. 1995).
Lemke,G., "Neuregulins in Development" Molecular and Cellular Neurosciences 7:247-262, (1996).
Leonard et al., "Anti-human epidermal growth tactor receptor 2 monoclonal antibody therapy for breast cancer" British Journal of Surgery 89(3): 262-271 (Mar. 2002).
Levi et al., "The Influence of Heregulins on Human Schwann Cell Proliferation" J. Neuroscience 15(2):1329-1340, (Feb. 1995).
Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-p185tusx^4 Monoclonal Antibodies" Cancer Immunol. Immunother. 37:255-263 (1993).
Lewis et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness", Cancer Research 56:1457-1465, (Mar. 15, 1996).
Maier et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed against the HER-2/neu Gene Product c-erbB-2" Cancer Research 51(19):5361-5369, (1991).
Masui et al., "Growth Inhibition of Human Tumor Cells in Athymic Mice by Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibodies" Cancer Research 44(3):1002-1007, (1984).
Masuko et al., "A murine Monoclonal Antibody That Recognizes an Extracellular Domain of the Human c-erbB-2 Protooncogene Product" Jpn J. Cancer Res. 80:10-14, (1989).
McCann at al., "Prognostic Significance of c-erbB-2 and Estrogen Receptor Status in Human Breast Cancer", Cancer Research 51(12):3296-3303 (Jun. 15, 1991).
McCann et al., "c-crbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors" Cancer 65(1):88-92, (1990).
McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene product, p185" Oncogene 4:543-548 (1989).
MenTilsohn at al., "Receptor Blockade and Chemotherapy: A New Approach to Combination Cancer Therapy." Annals of Oncology (abstract #040) 7(Suppl. 1):22 (1996).
Mitchell, Malcolm S et al., "The Role of Immunohistocheinistry and Fluorescense In Situ Hybridization for HER-2/neu in Assessing the Prognosis of Breast Cancer", Seminars in Oncology, vol. 26, No. 4, Suppl 12, pp. 108-116, (1999).
Modjtahedi et al., "Immunotherapy of human tumour xenografts overexpressing the EGF receptor with rat antibodies that block growth factor-receptor interaction" British Journal of Cancer 67(2): 254-261, (Feb. 1993).
Morrissey at al., "Axon-Induced Mitogenesis of Human Schwann Cells Involves Heregulin and p185^{erb2}", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:1431-1435 (Feb. 1995).
Mrhalova et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor—its expression and copy numbers of EGFR gene in patients with head and neck squamous cell carcinomas" Neoplasma 52(4): 338-343 (2005).
Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185neu" Methods in Enzymology 198: 277-290 (1991).
Myers et al., "Intracellular antibody mediated down-regulation of ple5ersb-2 expression in malignant prostatic cells" Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research Annual Meeting (Abstract #2334) 37: 342, (1996).
Nahta and Esteva, "HER-2-targeted therapy: lessons learned and future directions" Clinical Cancer Research 9(14): 5078-5084, (2003).
Neige, N. et al., "Abstract 258", 2000 Annual Meeting US and Canadian Academy of Pathology Meeting, Mar. 25-31, 2000, New Orleans, LA (2 pgs).
Nelson et al., "Comparison of HER-2/NEU Amplification Using Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH) with Immunohistochemically Determined Overexpression in Breast Cancers" Modern Pathology (abstract No. 106) 9(1):21A (Jan. 1996).
Norton; L., "Evolving Concepts in the Systemic Drug Therapy of Breast Cancer." Seminars in Oncology 24(4 Suppl 10):510-3-310-10 (Aug. 1997).
Pao et al., "EGF receptor gene mutations are common in lung cancers from "never smokers" and are associated with sensitivity of tumors to gefitinib and erlotinib", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 101(36): 13306-13311, (Sep. 7, 2004).
Park et al., "Amplification, Overexpression, and Rearrangement of the erbB-2 Protooncogene in Primary Human Stomach Carcinomas" Cancer Research 49(23): 6605-6609, (Dec. 1, 1989).
Park et al., "EGFR gene and protein expression in breast cancers" Eur. J. Surg. Oncol. in press, doi:10.1016/j.ejso.2007.01.033) pp. 1-5, (2007).
Paterson et al., "Correlation Between c-erbB-2 Amplification and Risk of Recurrent Disease in Node-Negative Breast Cancer" Cancer Research 51(2):556-567 (Jan. 15, 1991).
Pauletti et al., "Detection and quantitation of HER-2/neu gene' amplification in human breast cancer archival material using fluorescence in situ hybridization", Oncogene 13(1):63-72 (Jul. 4, 1996).
Pegram et al., "Inhibitory effects of combinations of HER-2/neu antibody and chemotherapeutic agents used for treatment of human breast cancers" Oncogene 18:2241-2251, (1999).
Pegram et al., "Phase II Study of Receptor-Enhanced Chemosensitivity Using Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185.HER^2/neu Monoclonal Antibody Plus Cisplatin in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer Refractory to Chemotherapy Treatment" Journal of Clinical Oncology 16(8): 2659-2671 (1998).
Perrotta and Abuel, "Response of Chronic Relapsing ITP of 10 Years Duration to Rituximab", Blood (Abstract #3360) 92(10 Suppl. 1 Part 1-2):88b (1998).

Persons, et al., "Fluorescence In Situ Hybridfiation (FISH) for Detection of HER-2/neu Amplification in Breast Cancer: A Multicenter Portability Study.", Annals of Clinical and Laboratory Science 30(1): 41-48(Jan. 2000).
Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair After Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells" Oncogene 9:1829-1838 (1994).
Plowman et al., "Heregulin Induces Tyrosine Phosphorylation of HER4/p180erraa" Nature (Letters to Nature) 366:473-475 (Dec. 2, 1993).
Plowman et al., "Ligand-Specific Activation of HER4/p180arba[4], A Fourth Member of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90: 1746-1750, (1993).
Presta et al., Humanization of an Anti-Vascular Endothelial-Growth Factor Monoclonal Antibody for the Therapy of Solid Tumors and Other Disorders Cancer Research 57(20): 4593-4599, (Oct. 15, 1997).
Product Approval Information—Licensing Action, FDA Archive (1 pg), Apr. 13, 2000.
Raefsky et al., "Phase II Trial of Docetaxel and Herceptin as First-or Second-Line Chemotherapy for Women with Metastatic Breast Cancer Whose Tumors Overexpress EER2", Proceedings of ASCO (Abstract ()523) 18:137a (1999).
Ravdin and Chamness, "The c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene as a prognostic and predictive marker in breast cancer: a paradigm for the development of other macromolecular markers—a review" Gene 159(1):19-27 (Jun. 14, 1995).
Riely et al., "Clinical course of patients with non-small cell lung cancer and epidermal growth factor receptor exon 19 and exon 21 mutations treated with gefitinib or erlotinib" Clinical Cancer Research 12(3 Pt 1):839-844, (Feb. 1, 2006).
Ro et al., "Amplified and overexpressed epidermal growth factor receptor gene in uncultured primary human breast carcinoma", Cancer Research 48(1):161-164 (Jan. 1, 1988).
Rodeck et al., "Interactions between growth factor receptors and corresponding monoclonal antibodies in human tumors" J. Cellular Biochem. 35(4): 315-320 (1987).
Ross et al., "HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status in Prostate Cancer BY Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization" Hum. Pathol. 28(7):827-833 (Jul. 1997).
Ross et al., "Prognostic Significance of HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization of Prostate Carcinoma" Cancer 79(11):2162-2170, (Jun. 1, 1997).
Ross, J. and J. Fletcher, "The HER-2/neu Oncogene in Breast Cancer: Prognostic Factor, Predictive Factor, and Target for Therapy." Stem Cells 6(6): 413-428 (1998).
Ross, Jeffrey S. et al., "The and HER-2/neu oncogene: prognostic factor, predictive factor and target for therapy", Seminars in Cancer Biology, vol. 9, pp. 125-138, (1999).
Sadasivan et al., "Overexpression of Her-2/Neu May Be an Indicator of Poor Prognosis in Prostate Cancer", J. Urol. 150:126-131 (Jul. 1993).
Sarup et al., "Characterization of an Anti-P185Aaa.d Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth" Growth Regulation 1: 72-82, (1991).
Schaefer et al., "A Discrete Three-amino Acid Segment (LVT) at the C-terminal End of Kinase-impaired ErbB3 is required for Transactivation of ErbB2" Journal of Biological Chemistry 274(2):859-866, (1999).
Schaefer et al., "y-Heregulin: A Novel Heregulin Isoform That is an Autocrine Growth Factor for the Human Breast Cancer Cell Line, MDA-M5-175" Oncogene 15: 1385-1394, (1997).
Scher et al., "Changing Pattern of Expression of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor and Transforming Growth Factor a in the Progression of Prostatic Neoplasms" Clinical Cancer Research 1: 545-550, (May 1995).
Schlom, "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think" Molecular Foundations of Oncology, Broder, S. ed., Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, chapter 6, pp. 95-134 (1991).
Scott et al., "p185aEaa Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells" Journal of Biological Chemistry 266(22): 14300-14305 (Aug. 5, 1991).
Seifert et al., "Dexrazoxane in the prevention of doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity", Annals of Pharmacotherapy 28(9): 1063-1072 (Sep. 1994).
Shawver et al., "Ligand-Like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB-2 Antibodies Do Not Correlate Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells", Cancer Research 54(5): 1367-1373, (1994).
Sheng et al , "Inhibition of Human Colon Cancer Cell Growth by gaective Inhibition of Cyclooxygenase-2", J. Clin. Invest. 99(9): 2254-2259, (May 1997).
Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the BER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic" J. Clin. Immunel 11(3): 117-127 (1991).
Singal and Iliskovic, "Doxorubicin-induced cardiomyopathy" New England J. of Medicine 339(13): 900-905, (Sep. 24, 1998).
Singel et al., Combination therapy with probucol prevents adriamycin-induced cardicmyopathy Journal of Molecular & Cellular Cardiology 27(4): 1055-1063, (Apr. 1995).
Skrepnik et al., "Recombinant Oncotoxin AR209 (anti-p185ernb[-2]) Diminishes Human Prostate Carcinoma Xenografts" Journal of Urology 161: 984-989 (1999).
Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" Science 235:177-182 (Jan. 9, 1987).
Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" Science 244: 707-712, (May 12, 1989).
Slamon et al., "Use of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses BER2" New England J. of Medicine 344(11): 783-792, (2001).
Sliwkowski at al., "A humanized monoclonal antibody for the treatment of HER2 overexpressing breast cancer" Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research (abstract only) 37: 625-626, (Mar. 1996).
Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin" Journal of Biological Chemistry 269(20): 14661-14665, (1994).
Stancovski at al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monoclonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sol. DSA 88(19): 8691-8695, (1991).
Statement Regarding HERCEPTIN Clinical Trials pp. 1 (2004).
Stern and Kamps., "EGF-Stimulated Tyrosine Phosphorylation of p185nen: A Potential Model for Receptor Interactions." EMBO Journal 7(4): 995-1001 (1988).
Strobel and Cannistra, "pl-integrins partly mediate binding of ovarian cancer cells to peritoneal mesothelium in vitro" Gynecologic Oncology 73(3} : 362-367 (Jun. 1999).
Tagliabue at al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of p185nER[2] and Growth Inhibition of Cells With HER2/NEU Gene Amplification", International Journal of Cancer 47(6): 933-937 (Apr. 1, 1991).
Tendon et al., "HER-2/neu oncogene protein and prognosis in breast cancer" Journal of Clinical Oncology 7(8): 1120-11213, (Aug. 1989).
Tetu, Bernard et al., "Prevalence and Clinical Significance of HER-2/neu, p53 and Rb Expression in Primary Superficial Bladder Cancer", The Journal of Urology, vol. 155, 1784-1788, (1996).
Thatcher et al., "Gefitinib plus best supportive care in previously treated patients with refractory advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre study (Iressa Survival Evaluation in Lung Cancer)" Lancet 366(9496): 1527-1537 (Oct. 29, 2005).
Tockman at al., "Considerations in Bringing a Cancer Biomarker to Clinical Application", Cancer Research 52:2711s-2718s (May 1, 1992).
Tokumo et al., "Double mutation an• gene copy number of EGFR in gefitinib refractory non-small-cell lung cancer" Lung Cancer 53: 117-121 (2006).
Tripp et al., "Relationship between EGFR overexpression and gene amplification status in central nervous system gliomas" Analytical & Quantitative Cytology & Histology 27(2):71-78 (Apr. 2005).
Tsao et al., "Erlotinib in lung cancer—molecular and clinical predictors of outcome", New England J. of Medicine 353(2): 133-144, (Jul. 14, 2005).

Vadlamudi et al., "Regulation of Cyclooxygenase-2 pathway by HER2 receptor" Oncogene, 18: 305-314, (1999).
Van de Vijver et al., "Neu-Protein Overexpression in Breast Cancer: Association With Comedo-Type Ductal Carcinoma In Situ and Limited Prognostic Value in Stage II Breast Cancer." New England J. of Medicine 319(19): 1239-1245 (Nov. 10, 1988).
Van Lom et al., "In Situ Hybridization on May-Grunwald Giemsa-Stained Bone Marrow and Blood Smears of Patients With Hematologic Disorders Allows Detection of Cell-Lineage-Specific Cytogenetic Abnormalities" Blood 82(3): 884-888, (Aug. 1, 1993).
Vitetta and Uhr, "Monoclonal Antibodies as Agonists: An Expanded Role for Their Use in Cancer Therapy", Cancer Research 54(20): 5301-5309, (Oct. 15, 1994).
Wada et al., "Intermolecular Association of the p185neu Protein and EGF Receptor Modulates EGF Receptor Function" Cell 61: 1339-1347 (Jun. 29, 1990).
Waha et al., "A polymerase chain reaction-based assay for the rapid detection of gene amplification in human tumors" Diagnostic Molecular Pathology 5(2):147-150 (Jun. 1996).
Walker et al., "An Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for c-erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short-Term Prognosis in Breast Cancer." British Journal of Cancer 60(3): 426-429, (1989).
Wang et al., "Epidermal growth factor receptor protein expression and gene amplification in small cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder", Clinical Cancer Research 13(3): 953-957, (2007).
Wang et al., "Laboratory Assessment of the Status of Her-2/neu Protein and oncogene in Breast Cancer Specimens: Comparison of Immunohistochemistry Assay with Fluorescence in Situ Hybridisation Assays." J. Clinical Pathology 53(5): 374-381 (May 2000).
Weiner et al., "Expression of the neu Gene-encoded Protein (P185nen) in Human Non-Small Cell Carcinomas of the Lung" Cancer Research 50(2): 421-425 (Jan. 15, 1990).
Werther et al., "Humanization of an Anti-Lymphocyte Function-Associated Antigen (LPA)-1 Monoclonal Antibody and Reengineering of the Humanized Antibody for Binding to Rhesus LFA-1" J. of Immunology 157: 4986-4995 (1996).
Williams et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 in Human Pancreatic Adenocarcinomas" Pathobiology 59(1): 46-52 (1991).
Winstanley et al., "The long term prognostic significance of c-erbB-2 in primary breast cancer" British Journal of Cancer 63(3): 447-450 (Mar. 1991).
Winter, "Antibody-based Therapy—Humanized Antibodies" TIPS, UK:Elsevier Science Publishers vol. 14: 139-143, (1993).
Wofsy et al., "Modification and Use of Antibodies to Label Cell Surface Antigens" Selected Methods in Cellular Immunology, Mishel and Schligi, eds., San Francisco:WJ Freeman Co., Chapter 13, pp. 287-304 (1980).
Wolff et al., "American society of clinical-oncology/college of American pathologists guideline recommendations for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 testing in breast cancer", Arch Pathol Lab Med 131: 18-43 (Jan. 2007).
Wolman et al., "An Approach to Definition. of Genetic Alterations in Prostate Cancer", Diagnostic Molecular Pathology 1(3):192-199 (Sep. 1992).
Worthylake et al., "Structural Aspects of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Required for Transmodulation of erbB-2/neu" Journal of Biological Chemistry 272(13): 8594-8601, (Mar. 28, 1997).
Wright et al., "An Incomplete Program of Cellular. Tyrosine Phosphorylations Induced by Kinase-defective Epidermal Growth Factor Receptors" Journal of Biological Chemistry 270(20):12085-12093, (1995).
Wright et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein: A Prognostic Indicator in Human Breast Cancer", Cancer Research 49(8): 2087-2090, (Apr. 15, 1989).
Wu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product p185" International Journal of Cancer 53(3):401-408 (Feb. 1, 1993).
Wu et al., "Apoptosis Induced by an Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Monoclonal Antibody in a Human Colorectal Carcinoma Cell Line and Its Delay by Insulin" Journal of Clinical Investigation 95(4): 1897-1905, (Apr. 1995).
Yeh at al., "From HER2/Neu signal cascade to androgen receptor and its coactivators: A novel pathway by induction of androgen target genes through MAP kinase in prostate cancer cells" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 96: 5458-5463, (May 1999).
Yokota at al., "Amplification of c-erbB-2 Oncogene in Human Adenocarcinomas in Vivo" Lancet 1(8484): 765-767 (Apr. 5, 1986).
Yonemura et al., "Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short Term Prognosis in Gastric Cancer" Cancer Research 51(3): 1034-1038, (1991).
Zhang et al., "Neuregulin-3 (NRG3): A novel neural tissue-enriched protein that binds activates ErbB4" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 94: 9562-9567 (Sep. 22, 1997).
Zhang et al., "Shared antigenic epitopes and pathobiological functions of anti-p186nerineu monoclonal antibodies" Experimental and Molecular Pathology 67: 15-25 (1999).
Zhau et al., "Amplification and Expression of the c-erb B-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Bladder Cancer", Molecular Carcinogenesis 3(5): 254-257 (1990).
Zitzelsberger at al., "Numerical Abnormalities of Chromosome 7 in Human Prostate Cancer Detected by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization (FISH) on Paraffin-Embedded Tissue Sections With Centromere-Specific DNA Probes" Journal of Pathology 172(4): 325-335 (Apr. 1994).
Ohnishi, et al., "Prolonged survival of mice with human gastric cancer treated with an anti-c-ErbB-2 monoclonal antibody", British Journal of Cancer, vol. 71, No. 5, pp. 969-973, (1995).
Sauter, et al., "Guidelines for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 testing: Biological and methodologic considerations", Journal of Clinical Oncology, 27: 1-11, (2009).
Summons to attend oral proceedings regarding Oppositions to EP 1210115 dated Sep. 21, 2011.
Sauter, et al., "Reply to E.H. Hammond", Journal of Clinical Oncology, 27930): e155-e157, (2009).
Mass, et al Abstract 291, ASCO 36th meeting, May 20-23, 2000 and opening page of abstract book.
Pegram, et al., "HER-2/neu as a predictive marker of response to breast cancer therapy", Breast Cancer Research and Treatment, 52: 65-77, (1998).
Ross, et al., "HER-2/neu gene amplification determined by fluorescence in-situ hybridization (FISH) is superior to immunohistochemistry (IHC) for risk-group assessment in node-negative breast cancer", Abstracts—poster session III 277, (1998).
Harbeck, et al., "HER-2/neu gene amplification by fluorescence in-situ hybridization allows risk-group assessment in node-negative breast cancer", International Journal of Oncology, 14: 663-671, (1999).
Ross, et al., "HER-2/neu (c-erb-B2) gene and protein in breast cancer", Am. J. Clin. Pathol., 114(Suppl.1): S53-S67, (1999).
Press, et al., "HER-2 gene amplification, HER-2 and epidermal growth factor receptor mRNA and protein expression, and Lapatinib efficacy in women with metastatic breast cancer", Cancer Therapy: clinical, 14(23): 7861-7870, (2008).
Herceptin revised US label 2002.
Herceptin revised US label 2010.
Her2-Diagnostik—Ein Leitfaden fur Brustkrebs-Patientinnen.
FDA/CBER Clinical Review Briefing document dated Nov. 5, 2001.
Sequence of webpages archived by the Wayback machine from the website of the ASCO conference in 2000. Apr. 26, 2012.
The webpage archived by the Wayback machine from the website of the ASCO conference in 2000 that adresses the availability of the Annual Meeting Abstracts at the conference. Apr. 26, 2012.

* cited by examiner

GENE DETECTION ASSAY FOR IMPROVING THE LIKELIHOOD OF AN EFFECTIVE RESPONSE TO A HER2 ANTIBODY CANCER THERAPY

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 11/690,304, filed Mar. 23, 2007 now U.S. Pat. No. 8,076,066, which is a continuation application of and claims priority to U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/863,101 filed May 18, 2001 (abandoned) which claims priority under 35 U.S.C. §119(e) of provisional application 60/205,754, filed May 19, 2000, all of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention concerns the treatment of cancers characterized by the overexpression of a tumor antigen, such as an ErbB receptor, particularly HER2. More specifically, the invention concerns more effective treatment of human patients susceptible to or diagnosed with cancer, in which the tumor cells overexpress ErbB as determined by a gene amplification assay, with an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody. The invention further provides pharmaceutical packages for such treatment.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Advancements in the understanding of genetics and developments in technology and epidemiology have allowed for the correlation of genetic abnormalities with certain malignancies as well as risk assessment of an individual for developing certain malignancies. However, most of the methodologies available for evaluation of tissue for the presence of genes associated with or predisposing an individual to a malignancy have well-known drawbacks. For example, methods that require disaggregation of the tissue, such as Southern, Northern, or Western blot analysis, are rendered less accurate by dilution of the malignant cells by the normal or otherwise non-malignant cells that are present in the same tissue. Furthermore, the resulting loss of tissue architecture precludes the ability to correlate malignant cells with the presence of genetic abnormalities in a context that allows morphological specificity. This issue is particularly problematic in tissue types known to be heterogeneous, such as in human breast carcinoma, where a significant percentage of the cells present in any area may be non-malignant.

The her2/neu gene encodes a protein product, often identified as p185HER2. The native p185HER2 protein is a membrane receptor-like molecule with homology to the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Amplification and overexpression of HER2 in human breast cancer has been correlated with shorter disease-free interval and shorter overall survival in some studies (van de Vijver et al. New Eng. J. Med. 317: 1239 (1988); Walker et al. Br. J. Cancer 60:426 (1989); Tandon et al. J. Clin. Invest. 7:1120 (1989); Wright et al. Cancer Res. 49:2087 (1989); McCann et al. Cancer Res 51:3296 (1991); Paterson et al. Cancer Res. 51:556 (1991); and Winstanley et al. Br. J. Cancer 63:447 (1991)) but not in others (Zhou et al. Oncogene 4:105 (1989); Heintz et al. Arch Path Lab Med 114:160 (1990); Kury et al. Eur. J. Cancer 26:946 (1990); Clark et al. Cancer Res. 51:944 (1991); and Ravdin et al. J. Clin. Oncol. 12:467-74 (1994)).

In an initial evaluation of 103 patients with breast cancer, those having more than three tumor cell positive axillary lymph nodes (node positive) were more likely to overexpress HER2 protein than patients with less than three positive nodes (Slamon et al. Science 235:177 (1987)). In a subsequent evaluation of 86 node-positive patients with breast cancer, there was a significant correlation among the extent of gene amplification, early relapse, and short survival. HER2 overexpression was determined using Southern and Northern blotting, which correlate with the HER2 oncoprotein expression evaluated by Western blotting and immunohistochemistry (IHC) (Slamon et al. Science 235:177 (1987); Slamon et al. Science 244:707 (1989)). The median period of survival was found to be approximately 5-fold shorter in patients with more than five copies of the her2 gene than in patients without gene amplification. This correlation was present even after correcting for nodal status and other prognostic factors in multivariate analyses. These studies were extended in 187 node-positive patients and indicated that gene amplification, increased amounts of mRNA (determined by Northern blotting), and increased protein expression (determined immunohistochemically) were also correlated with shortened survival time (Slamon et al. Science 244:707 (1989)); (see also U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). Nelson et al. have compared her2/neu gene amplification using FISH with immunohistochemically determined overexpression in breast cancer (Nelson et al. Modern Pathology 9 (1) 21A (1996)).

Immunohistochemical staining of tissue sections has been shown to be a reliable method of assessing alteration of proteins in a heterogeneous tissue. Immunohistochemistry (IHC) techniques utilize an antibody to probe and visualize cellular antigens in situ, generally by chromagenic or fluorescent methods. This technique excels because it avoids the unwanted effects of disaggregation and allows for evaluation of individual cells in the context of morphology. In addition, the target protein is not altered by the freezing process.

However, in the clinical trial assay (CTA), IHC of formaldehyde-fixed, paraffin embedded tissue samples only demonstrated 50%-80% sensitivity, relative to frozen IHC samples (Press, Cancer Research 54:2771 (1994)). Thus, IHC can lead to false negative results, excluding from treatment patients who might benefit from the treatment.

Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is a recently developed method for directly assessing the presence of genes in intact cells. FISH is an attractive means of evaluating paraffin-embedded tissue for the presence of malignancy because it provides for cell specificity, yet overcomes the cross-linking problems and other protein-altering effects caused by formalin fixation. FISH has historically been combined with classical staining methodologies in an attempt to correlate genetic abnormalities with cellular morphology (see, e.g., Anastasi et al., Blood 77:2456-2462 (1991); Anastasi et al., Blood 79:1796-1801 (1992); Anastasi et al., Blood 81:1580-1585 (1993); van Lom et al., Blood 82:884-888 (1992); Wolman et al., Diagnostic Molecular Pathology 1(3): 192-199 (1992); Zitzelberger, Journal of Pathology 172:325-335 (1994)).

To date, there has been no correlation of her2 gene amplification with anti-HER2 antibody treatment outcome, only with disease prognosis. The standard assay has been IHC on formalin fixed, paraffin embedded samples. These samples, when scored as 3+ or 2+, identify patients who are likely to benefit from treatment with an anti-HER2 antibody, like HERCEPTIN®. The 3+ and 2+ scores correlate with her2 gene amplification, e.g., as tested by FISH. However, there

remains a need for more effective identification of candidates for successful ErbB antagonist therapies, such as HERCEPTIN® treatment.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention advantageously provides a method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of an ErbB antagonist cancer treatment. The method comprises administering a cancer treating dose of the ErbB antagonist to a subject wherein an erbB gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject has been found to be amplified. Preferably the ErbB is HER2. In a specific embodiment, the method further comprises administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic, particularly a taxol.

In a specific preferred embodiment, exemplified herein, the invention provides a method for increasing likelihood of effectiveness of an anti-HER2 antibody to treat cancer. This method comprises administering a cancer treating dose of the anti-HER2 antibody to the subject in whom a her2 gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject have been found to be amplified.

The unexpected clinical results underlying the invention, in which gene amplification proved to be a more effective indication of antibody-based tumor therapy than protein detection by immunohistochemistry, extends to tumor antigens in general. Thus, any anti-tumor-specific antigen based antibody therapy can have increased likelihood of success in patients who are found to have gene amplification of the gene encoding the tumor antigen.

A particular advantage of the invention is that it permits selection of patients for treatment who, based on immunohistochemical criteria, would be excluded. Thus, in a specific embodiment, the subject has been found to have an antigen level corresponding to a 0 or 1+ score for HER2 by immunohistochemistry on a formaldehyde-fixed tissue sample.

The invention further provides a pharmaceutical package comprising an ErbB antagonist for treating a cancer, and instructions to administer the ErbB antagonist to a subject if an erbB gene in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the subject is amplified. Preferably the ErbB antagonist is an anti-ErbB antibody, such as an anti-HER2 antibody. In a further aspect, the instructions also teach administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic, e.g., a taxol. Such pharmaceutical packages, including the instructions for use, can be provided for any antibody-based therapeutic specific for a tumor-specific antigen.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

The present invention advantageously peimits treatment of patients who have a greater likelihood of responding to the treatment by administering therapeutic agents, i.e., anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibodies or ErbB receptor antagonists, to patients who are found to have an amplified gene encoding such a tumor antigen or ErbB receptor protein. The invention is based, in part, on the unexpected discovery that her2 gene amplification, e.g., as detected by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), although it correlates with HER2 expression as detected by immunohistochemistry (NC), provides a more accurate basis for selecting patients for treatment because FISH status unexpectedly correlates better with response to treatment. This outcome was surprising in part because FISH status has about the same rate of correlation with a clinical trial assay (CTA) NC assay as another NC assay (HERCEPTEST®). Based on this observation, FISH would be expected to have a similar correlation with treatment response. This outcome also surprises because direct measurement of protein (by immunoassay) would be expected to provide a more accurate assessment of a cancer therapy targeted to the protein than an indirect measure of expression, like gene amplification.

Evaluation of patient groups and subgroups demonstrates the power of gene amplification analysis for selecting patients more likely to respond to treatment. NC provides a score for HER2 expression on tumor cells: 0 (no expression) through 3+ (very high levels of expression). Clinical selection criteria exclude patients with 0 and 1+ scores and select patients with 2+ and 3+ scores. The data show that 14% of combined 2+/3+ patients respond to HERCEPTIN®, while 20% of FISH+ (amplified her2 gene) patients respond to HERCEPTIN®. The 3+ subgroup has a 17% response rate, which is very close to the FISH+ subjects' response rate. However, the 2+ subgroup has less than half the response rate of FISH+ subjects. Thus, gene amplification clearly differentiates large subpopulations within the 2+ subgroup, permitting more effective treatment for those who are FISH+, and quickly identifying patients for whom alternative treatment modalities are appropriate and should commence immediately.

Gene amplification analysis also identifies patients who are unnecessarily excluded because of anomalies in the IHC analysis, particularly when the tests are performed on formalyn fixed, paraffin embedded samples (such sample processing can disrupt or destroy antibody epitopes on the HER2 protein, but has much less impact on gene amplification assays). As shown in the examples, a subset of 0 and 1+ subjects are FISH+. These patients are likely to respond to anti-HER2 antibody therapy, e.g., with HERCEPTIN®, although by IHC criteria they would be excluded from receiving this treatment.

Thus, the present invention advantageously permits inclusion of patients who are more likely to benefit from treatment but who, by standard IHC criteria, would be excluded from treatment. At the same time, the invention permits exclusion of patients who should promptly seek an alternative mode of treatment because the anti-tumor antigen therapy (i.e., ErbB antagonist or tumor antigen-specific therapeutic antibody) is not likely to succeed.

In short, the present invention is a powerful adjunct to INC assays for target protein expression level-based selection of patients. It can also be employed on its own, i.e., without IHC, to provide initial screening and selection of patients. The invention significantly improves screening and selection for subjects to receive a cancer-treating dose of an anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibody treatment, ErbB receptor antagonist treatment, and other treatment targeted to overexpressed tumor antigens (or tumor-specific antigens), resulting in an increased likelihood of benefit from such treatments.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture or package, comprising a container, a composition within the container comprising an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody (or other anti-tumor-specific antigen antibody), optionally a label on or associated with the container that indicates that the composition can be used for treating a condition characterized by overexpression of ErbB receptor, and a package insert containing instructions to administer the antagonist to patients who have been found to have an amplified erbB gene.

DEFINITIONS

As used herein, an "ErbB receptor" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes EGFR, HER2, ErbB3, and ErbB4 receptors, as

well as TEGFR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,708,156) and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a native sequence ErbB receptor or an amino acid sequence variant thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

ErbB receptors are examples of tumor-specific antigens or tumor antigens. The term "tumor antigen" is used herein to refer to a protein that is expressed at a higher level on tumor cells compared to normal cells. Generally, the normal cells for comparison are of the same tissue type, particularly phenotype, as the tumor, or from which the tumor arose. A "tumor specific antigen" refers to an antigen expressed either preferentially or only on tumor cells. Examples of tumor-specific antigens include, in addition to the ErbB receptors, MART1/Melan A, gp-100, and tyrosinase (in melanoma); MAGE-1 and MAGE-3 (in bladder, head and neck, and non-small cell carcinoma); HPV EG and E7 proteins (in cervical cancer); Mucin/MUC-1 (in breast, pancreas, colon, and prostate cancers); prostate specific antigen PSA (in prostate cancer); and caminoembryonic antigen/CEA (in colon, breast, and gastrointestinal cancers).

By "amplification" is meant the presence of one or more extra gene copies of erbB or other tumor antigen-encoding gene in a chromosome complement. Gene amplification can result in overexpression of protein, e.g., ErbB receptor protein. Gene amplification in cells from a tissue sample can be measured by many techniques, particularly Fluorescence in situ Hybridization (FISH), but also including and not limited to quantitative PCR, quantitative Southern hybridization, and the like.

By "tissue sample" is meant a collection of similar cells obtained from a tissue of a subject or patient, preferably containing nucleated cells with chromosomal material. The four main human tissues are (1) epithelium; (2) the connective tissues, including blood vessels, bone and cartilage; (3) muscle tissue; and (4) nerve tissue. The source of the tissue sample may be solid tissue as from a fresh, frozen and/or preserved organ or tissue sample or biopsy or aspirate; blood or any blood constituents; bodily fluids such as cerebral spinal fluid, amniotic fluid, peritoneal fluid, or interstitial fluid; cells from any time in gestation or development of the subject. The tissue sample may also be primary or cultured cells or cell lines. The tissue sample may contain compounds which are not naturally intermixed with the tissue in nature such as preservatives, anticoagulants, buffers, fixatives, nutrients, antibiotics, or the like. In one embodiment of the invention, the tissue sample is "non-hematologic tissue" (i.e., not blood or bone marrow tissue).

For the purposes herein a "section" of a tissue sample is meant a single part or piece of a tissue sample, e.g., a thin slice of tissue or cells cut from a tissue sample. It is understood that multiple sections of tissue samples may be taken and subjected to analysis according to the present invention, provided that it is understood that the present invention comprises a method whereby the same section of tissue sample may be analyzed at both morphological and molecular levels, or may be analyzed with respect to both protein and nucleic acid.

By "correlate" or "correlating" is meant comparing, in any way, the performance and/or results of a first analysis with the performance and/or results of a second analysis. For example, one may use the results of a first analysis in carrying out the second analysis and/or one may use the results of a first analysis to determine whether a second analysis should be performed and/or one may compare the results of a first analysis with the results of a second analysis. In relation to IHC combined with FISH, one may use the results of INC to determine whether FISH should be performed and/or one may compare the level of protein expression with gene amplification to further characterize a tumor biopsy (e.g. to compare HER2 protein expression with her2 gene amplification). One advantageous feature of the invention is the ability to identify patients likely to benefit from treatment using FISH even if IHC indicates that they are antigen low.

By "nucleic acid" is meant to include any DNA or RNA, for example, chromosomal, mitochondrial, viral and/or bacterial nucleic acid present in tissue sample. The term "nucleic acid" encompasses either or both strands of a double stranded nucleic acid molecule and includes any fragment or portion of an intact nucleic acid molecule.

By "gene" is meant any nucleic acid sequence or portion thereof with a functional role in encoding or transcribing an RNA (rRNA, tRNA, or mRNA, the latter capable of translation as a protein) or regulating other gene expression. The gene may consist of all the nucleic acids responsible for encoding a functional protein or only a portion of the nucleic acids responsible for encoding or expressing a protein. The nucleic acid sequence may contain a genetic abnormality within exons, introns, initiation or termination regions, promoter sequences, other regulatory sequences or unique adjacent regions to the gene.

By "ErbB ligand" is meant a polypeptide which binds to and/or activates an ErbB receptor. The ErbB ligand of particular interest herein is a native sequence human ErbB ligand such as Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF) (Savage et al., J. Biol. Chem. 247:7612-7621 (1972)); Tansforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha) (Marquardt et al., Science 223: 1079-1082 (1984)); amphiregulin, also known as schwanoma or keratinocyte autocrine growth factor (Shoyab et al. Science 243:1074-1076 (1989); Kimura et al. Nature 348:257-260 (1990); and Cook et al. Mol. Cell. Biol. 11:2547-2557 (1991)); betacellulin (Shing et al., Science 259:1604-1607 (1993); and Sasada et al. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 190:1173 (1993)); heparin-binding epidermal growth factor (HB-EGF) (Higashiyama et al., Science 251:936-939 (1991)); epiregulin (Toyoda et al., J. Biol. Chem. 270:7495-7500 (1995); and Komurasaki et al. Oncogene 15:2841-2848 (1997)), a heregulin (see below); neuregulin-2 (NRG-2) (Carraway et al., Nature 387:512-516 (1997)); neuregulin-3 (NRG-3) (Zhang et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 94:9562-9567 (1997)); or cripto (CR-1) (Kannan et al., J. Biol. Chem. 272 (6):3330-3335 (1997)). ErbB ligands that bind EGFR include EGF, TGF-alpha, amphiregulin, betacellulin, HB-EGF andepiregulin. ErbB ligands which bind HER3 include heregulins. ErbB ligands capable of binding HER4 include betacellulin, epiregulin, HB-EGF, NRG-2, NRG-3 and heregulins.

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence encoded by the heregulin gene product as disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,641, 869 or Marchionni et al., Nature, 362:312-318 (1993), and biologically active variants of such polypeptides. Examples of heregulins include heregulin-alpha, heregulin-beta1, heregulin-beta2, and heregulin-beta3 (Holmes et al., Science, 256:1205-1210 (1992); and U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869); neu differentiation factor (NDF) (Peles et al. Cell 69: 205-216 (1992)); acetylcholine receptor-inducing activity (ARIA) (Falls et al. Ce1172:801-815 (1993)); glial growth factors (GGFs) (Marchionni et al., Nature, 362:312-318 (1993)); sensory and motor neuron derived factor (SMDF) (Ho et al. J. Biol. Chem. 270:14523-14532 (1995)); gamma-heregulin

(Schaefer et al. Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)). An example of a biologically active fragment/amino acid sequence variant of a native sequence HRG polypeptide, is an EGF-like domain fragment (e.g., HRG-beta1, 177-244).

An "ErbB hetero-oligomer" herein is a noncovalently associated oligomer comprising at least two different ErbB receptors. Such complexes may form when a cell expressing two or more ErbB receptors is exposed to an ErbB ligand and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwkowski et al., (J. Biol. Chem., 269(20):14661-14665 (1994)), for example. Examples of such ErbB hetero-oligomers include EGFR-HER2, HER2-HER3, and HER3-HER4 complexes. Moreover, the ErbB hetero-oligomer may comprise two or more HER2 receptors combined with a different ErbB receptor, such as HER3, HER4, or EGFR. Other proteins, such as a cytokine receptor subunit (e.g., gp130), may be included in the hetero-oligomer.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. (Ann. Rev. Biochem. 56:881-914 (1987)), including variants thereof (e.g., a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 87:4207-4211 (1990)). ErbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product. Examples of antibodies which bind to EGFR include MAb 579 (ATCC CRL HB 8506), Mab 455 (ATCC CRL HB 8507), MAb 225 (ATCC CRL 8508), MAb 528 (ATCC CRL 8509) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,533) and variants thereof, such as chimerized 225 (C225) and reshaped human 225 (H225) (see, PCT Publication No. WO 96/40210).

The expressions "ErbB2" and "HER2" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence human HER2 protein described, for example, in Semba et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:6497-6501 (1985)) and Yamamoto et al. (Nature319:230-234 (1986)) (Genebank accession number X03363), and variants thereof. The term erbB2 refers to the gene encoding human HER2 and neu refers to the gene encoding rat p185neu. Preferred HER2 is native sequence human HER2. Examples of antibodies which bind HER2 include MAbs 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463), 2C4 (ATCC HB-12697), 7F3 (ATCC HB-12216), and 7C2 (ATCC HB-12215) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997; PCT Publication No. WO 98/17797; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,840,525, expressly incorporated herein by reference). Humanized anti-HER2 antibodies include huMAb4D5-1, huMAb4D5-2, huMAb4D5-3, huMAb4D5-4, huMAb4D5-5, huMAb4D5-6, huMAb4D5-7, and huMAb4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN®) as described in Table 3 of U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337, which is expressly incorporated herein by reference; and humanized 520C9 (PCT Publication No. WO 93/21319). Human anti-HER2 antibodies are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997 and PCT Publication No. WO 97/00271.

"ErbB3" and "HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968, as well as Kraus et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA) 86:9193-9197 (1989)), including variants thereof. Exemplary antibodies that bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511, e.g., the 8B8 antibody (ATCC BIB-12070) or a humanized variant thereof. The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in European Application No. EP 599,274; Plowman et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 90:1746-1750 (1993)); and Plowman et al., (Nature, 366:473-475 (1993)), including variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 99/19488.

An "ErbB antagonist" is any molecule that binds to an ErbB receptor and blocks ligand activation of the ErbB receptor. Such antagonists include, but are not limited to, modified ligands, ligand peptides (i.e., ligand fragments), soluble ErbB receptors, and, preferably, anti-ErbB antibodies.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the ErbB antagonist, e.g., anti-ErbB2 antibody, and more generally, any cancer in which administration of an antibody against an over-expressed antigen can treat the cancer. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic and other glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal and blastocoelic disorders; and inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" is used to refer to an amount having antiproliferative effect. Preferably, the therapeutically effective amount elicits antibody-mediated cytotoxicity, activates complement, has apoptotic activity, or is capable of inducing cell death, and preferably death of benign or malignant tumor cells, in particular cancer cells. Efficacy can be measured in conventional ways, depending on the condition to be treated. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time for disease progression (TTP), survival, tumor size, or determining the response rates (RR) (see the Example below).

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, melanoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small-cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung, squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, and various types of head and neck cancer.

An "ErbB-expressing cancer" is one comprising cells which have ErbB protein present at their cell surface, such that an anti-ErbB antibody is able to bind to the cancer.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90}, and Re^{186}), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or fragments thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclosphosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide,

triethylenethiophosphaoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibiotics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabicin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; antimetabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elformithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK®; razoxane; sizofuran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxoids, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and doxetaxel (Taxotere, Rhone-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; caminomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone; and anti-androgens such as flutamide and nilutamide; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB-overexpressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent is one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB overexpressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), TAXOL®, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (WB Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13. The 4D5 antibody (and functional equivalents thereof) can also be employed for this purpose.

ErbB Receptor Tyrosine Kinases

The ErbB receptor tyrosine kinases are important mediators of cell growth, differentiation and survival. The receptor family includes at least four distinct members including Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR or ErbB1), HER2 (ErbB2 or p185neu), HER3 (ErbB3), and HER4 (ErbB4 or tyro2).

EGFR, encoded by the ErbB1 gene, has been causally implicated in human malignancy. In particular, increased expression of EGFR has been observed in breast, bladder, lung, head, neck and stomach cancer, as well as glioblastomas. Increased EGFR receptor expression is often associated with increased production of the EGFR ligand, Transforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha), by the same tumor cells resulting inreceptor activation by an autocrine stimulatory pathway. Baselga and Mendelsohn Pharmac. Ther. 64:127-154 (1994). Monoclonal antibodies directed against the EGFR or its ligands, TGF-alpha and EGF, have been evaluated as therapeutic agents in the treatment of such malignancies. See, e.g., Baselga and Mendelsohn., supra; Masui et al. Cancer Research44:1002-1007 (1984); and Wu et al. J. Clin. Invest. 95:1897-1905 (1995).

The second member of the ErbB family, p185neu, was originally identified as the product of the transforming gene from neuroblastomas of chemically treated rats. The activated form of the neu proto-oncogene results from a point mutation (valine to glutamic acid) in the transmembrane region of the encoded protein. Amplification of the human homolog of neu is observed in breast and ovarian cancers and correlates with a poor prognosis (Slamon et al., Science, 235:177-182 (1987); Slamon et al., Science, 244:707-712 (1989); and U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). To date, no point mutation analogous to that in the neu proto-oncogene has been reported for human tumors. Overexpression of HER2 (frequently but not uniformly due to gene amplification) has also been observed in other carcinomas including carcinomas of the stomach, endometrium, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreas and bladder.

Antibodies directed against the rat p185neu and human HER2 protein products have been described. Drebin and colleagues have raised antibodies against the rat neu gene product, p185neu (see, for example, Drebin et al., Cell 41:695-706 (1985); Myers et al., Meth. Enzym. 198:277-290 (1991); and WO94/22478). Drebin et al. (Oncogene 2:273-277 (1988)) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions of p185neu result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice (see also U.S. Pat. No. 5,824,311).

Hudziak et al., (Mol. Cell. Biol. 9(3):1165-1172 (1989)) describe the generation of a panel of anti-HER2 antibodies, which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SKBR3. Relative cell proliferation of the SKBR3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5, which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel reduced cellular proliferation to

a lesser extent in this assay. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize HER2-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF-alpha (see, also, U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171). The anti-HER2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. were further characterized (Fendly et al. Cancer Research 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. In Vitro 26(3): 59A (1990); Sarup et al. Growth Regulation 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. J. Clin. Immunol. 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. Mol. Cell. Biol. 11(2):979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. CancerImmunol. Immunother. 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. Oncogene 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. Cancer Research 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sliwkowski et al. J. Biol. Chem. 269(20):14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. J. Biol. Chem. 266:14300-5 (1991); D'souza et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 91:7202-7206 (1994); Lewis et al. Cancer Research 56:1457-1465 (1996); and Schaefer et al. Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)).

A recombinant humanized IgG1 version of the murine anti-HER2 antibody 4D5 (rhuMAb HER2 or HERCEPTIN®; commercially available from Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco) is clinically active in patients with HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that have received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., J. Clin. Oncol. 14:737-744 (1996)). HERCEPTIN® received marketing approval from the Food and Drug Administration Sep. 25, 1998 for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer whose tumors overexpress the HER2 protein. The current treatment protocol employs IHC to determine HER2 protein overexpression.

Other anti-HER2 antibodies with various properties have been described (Tagliabue et al., Int. J. Cancer 47:933-937 (1991); McKenzie et al., Oncogene 4:543-548 (1989); Maier et al., Cancer Res. 51:5361-5369 (1991); Bacus et al., Molecular Carcinogenesis 3:350-362 (1990); Stancovski et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA) 88:8691-8695 (1991); Bacus et al., Cancer Research 52:2580-2589 (1992); Xu et al. Int. J. Cancer 53:401-408 (1993); PCT Publication No. WO94/00136; Kasprzyk et al., Cancer Research 52:2771-2776 (1992); Hancock et al., Cancer Res. 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al., Cancer Res. 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. Cancer Res. 54:3758-3765 (1994); Harwerth et al., J. Biol. Chem. 267:15160-15167 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,783,186; Klapper et al. Oncogene 14:2099-2109 (1997); and PCT Publication No. WO 98/17797).

Homology screening has resulted in the ErbB receptor family members: HER3 (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968; Kraus et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:9193-9197 (1989)) and HER4 (European Patent Application No. EP 599 274; Plowman et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., Nature, 366:473-475 (1993)). Both of these receptors display increased expression on at least some breast cancer cell lines.

The ErbB receptors are generally found in various combinations in cells and heterodimerization is thought to increase the diversity of cellular responses to a variety of ErbB ligands (Earp et al., Breast Cancer Research and Treatment 35: 115-132 (1995)). EGFR is bound by six different ligands: Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF), Transforming Growth Factor-alpha (TGF-alpha), amphiregulin, Heparin Binding Epidermal Growth Factor (HB-EGF), betacellulin, and epiregulin (Groenen et al. GrowthFactors 11:235-257 (1994)). A family of heregulin proteins resulting from alternative splicing of a single gene are ligands for HER3 and HER4. The heregulin family includes alpha, beta, and gamma heregulins (Holmes et al., Science, 256:1205-1210 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,869; and Schaefer et al., Oncogene 15:1385-1394 (1997)); neu differentiation factors (NDFs), glial growth factors (GGFs); acetylcholine receptor inducing activity (ARIA); and sensory and motorneuron derived factor (SMDF) (for a review, see Groenen et al., Growth Factors 11:235-257 (1994); Lemke, G. Molec. & Cell. Neurosci. 7:247-262 (1996) and Lee et al. Pharm. Rev. 47:51-85 (1995)). Recently, two additional ErbB ligands were identified: neuregulin-2 (NRG-2), which is reported to bind either HER3 or HER4 (Chang et al., Nature: 387 509-512 (1997); and Carraway et al Nature 387:512-516 (1997)) and neuregulin-3, which binds HER4 (Zhang et al., (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA) 94(18): 9562-7 (1997)). HB-EGF, betacellulin, and epiregulin also bind to HER4.

While EGF and TGF-alpha do not bind HER2, EGF stimulates EGFR and HER2 to form a heterodimer, which activates EGFR and results in transphosphorylation of HER2 in the heterodimer. Dimerization and/or transphosphorylation appears to activate the HER2 tyrosine kinase, (Earp et al., supra.) Likewise, when HER3 is co-expressed with HER2, an active signaling complex is formed and antibodies directed against HER2 are capable of disrupting this complex (Sliwkowski et al., J. Biol. Chem., 269(20):14661-14665 (1994)). Additionally, the affinity of HER3 for heregulin (HRG) is increased to a higher affinity state when co-expressed with HER2. See also, Levi et al., Journal of Neuroscience15: 1329-1340 (1995); Morrissey et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:1431-1435 (1995); and Lewis et al., Cancer Res., 56:1457-1465 (1996) with respect to the HER2-HER3 protein complex. HER4, like HER3, forms an active signaling complex with HER2 (Carraway and Cantley, Cell 78:5-8 (1994)).

Detecting Gene Amplification

The present invention contemplates using any technique to detect gene amplification. (see, Boxer, J. Clin. Pathol. 53: 19-21 (2000)). These techniques include in situ hybridization (Stoler, Clin. Lab. Med. 12:215-36 (1990), using radioisotope or fluorophore-labeled probes; polymerase chain reaction (PCR); quantitative Southern blotting, and other techniques for quantitating individual genes. Preferably probes or primers selected for gene amplification evaluation are highly specific, to avoid detecting closely related homologous genes.

The word "label" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which is conjugated or fused directly or indirectly to a reagent such as a nucleic acid probe or an antibody and facilitates detection of the reagent to which it is conjugated or fused. The label may itself be detectable (e.g., radioisotope labels or fluorescent labels) or, in the case of an enzymatic label, may catalyze chemical alteration of a substrate compound or composition which is detectable. A hapten or epitope that is immunospecifically bound by an antibody can also serve as a label.

The term "fluorescently labeled nucleic acid probe" refers to a probe comprising (1) a nucleic acid having a sequence rendering it capable of hybridizing with a target nucleic acid sequence and (2) a fluorescent label. Preferably such hybridization is specific, i.e., it can occur under high stringency conditions.

Sample Preparation

Any tissue sample from a subject may be used. Examples of tissue samples that may be used include, but are not limited to, breast, prostate, ovary, colon, lung, endometrium, stomach, salivary gland or pancreas. The tissue sample can be obtained by a variety of procedures including, but not limited to surgical excision, aspiration, or biopsy. The tissue may be

fresh or frozen. In one embodiment, the tissue sample is fixed and embedded in paraffin or the like.

The tissue sample may be fixed (i.e., preserved) by conventional methodology (See e.g., *Manual of Histological Staining Method of the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, 3rd Edition* Lee G. Luna, H T (ASCP) Editor, The Blakston Division McGraw-Hill Book Company: New York; (1960); *The Armed Forces Institute of Pathology Advanced Laboratory Methods in Histology and Pathology* (1994) Ulreka V. Mikel, Editor, Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, American Registry of Pathology, Washington, D.C.). One of skill in the art will appreciate that the choice of a fixative is determined by the purpose for which the tissue is to be histologically stained or otherwise analyzed. One of skill in the art will also appreciate that the length of fixation depends upon the size of the tissue sample and the fixative used. By way of example, neutral buffered formalin, Bouin's or paraformaldehyde, may be used to fix a tissue sample.

Generally, the tissue sample is first fixed and is then dehydrated through an ascending series of alcohols, infiltrated, and embedded with paraffin or other sectioning media so that the tissue sample may be sectioned. Alternatively, one may section the tissue and fix the sections obtained. By way of example, the tissue sample may be embedded and processed in paraffin by conventional methodology. Examples of paraffin that may be used include, but are not limited to, Paraplast, Broloid, and Tissuemay. Once the tissue sample is embedded, the sample may be sectioned by a microtome or the like. By way of example for this procedure, sections may range from about three microns to about five microns in thickness. Once sectioned, the sections may be attached to slides by several standard methods. Examples of slide adhesives include, but are not limited to, silane, gelatin, poly-L-lysine, and the like. For example, the paraffin embedded sections may be attached to positively charged slides, slides coated with poly-L-lysine.

If paraffin has been used as the embedding material, the tissue sections are generally deparaffinized and rehydrated to water. The tissue sections may be deparaffinized by several conventional standard methodologies. For example, xylenes and a gradually descending series of alcohols may be used. Alternatively, commercially available deparaffinizing non-organic agents such as Hemo-De7 (CMS, Houston, Tex.) may be used.

Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH)

In situ hybridization is generally carried out on cells or tissue sections fixed to slides. In situ hybridization may be performed by several conventional methodologies (see, e.g., Leitch et al., *In Situ Hybridization: A Practical Guide*, Oxford BIOS Scientific Publishers, Micropscopy Handbooks v. 27 (1994)). In one in situ procedure, fluorescent dyes (such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) which fluoresces green when excited by an Argon ion laser) are used to label a nucleic acid sequence probe that is complementary to a target nucleotide sequence in the cell. Each cell containing the target nucleotide sequence will bind the labeled probe producing a fluorescent signal upon exposure, of the cells to a light source of a wavelength appropriate for excitation of the specific fluorochrome used. A "target nucleotide sequence" is a sequence specific for a over-expressed tumor antigen, such as ErbB. FISH analysis can be used in conjunction with other assays, including without limitation morphological staining (of serial sections or the same section; see PCT Publication No. WO 00/20641, specifically incorporated herein by reference).

Various degrees of hybridization stringency can be employed. As the hybridization conditions become more stringent, a greater degree of complementarity is required between the probe and target to form and maintain a stable duplex. Stringency is increased by raising temperature, lowering salt concentration, or raising formamide concentration. Adding dextran sulfate or raising its concentration may also increase the effective concentration of labeled probe to increase the rate of hybridization and ultimate signal intensity. After hybridization, slides are washed in a solution generally containing reagents similar to those found in the hybridization solution with washing time varying from minutes to hours depending on required stringency. Longer or more stringent washes typically lower nonspecific background but run the risk of decreasing overall sensitivity.

Probes used in the FISH analysis may be either RNA or DNA oligonucleotides or polynucleotides and may contain not only naturally occurring nucleotides but their analogs like digoxygenin dCTP, biotin dcTP 7-azaguanosine, azidothymidine, inosine, or uridine. Other useful probes include peptide probes and analogues thereof, branched gene DNA, peptidometics, peptide nucleic acid (PNA), and/or antibodies.

Probes should have sufficient complementarity to the target nucleic acid sequence of interest so that stable and specific binding occurs between the target nucleic acid sequence and the probe. The degree of homology required for stable hybridization varies with the stringency of the hybridization medium and/or wash medium. Preferably, completely homologous probes are employed in the present invention, but persons of skill in the art will readily appreciate that probes exhibiting lesser but sufficient homology can be used in the present invention (see e.g., Sambrook, J., et al., *Molecular Cloning A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Press, (1989)).

One of skill in the art will appreciate that the choice of probe depends on the characteristics of the target gene of interest. Examples of amplification include, but are not limited to, her2/neu in breast and ovarian cancer, n-myc in neuroblastoma, c-myc in small cell lung cancer. By way of example for evaluating her2/neu amplification a probe spanning a 140 kb region on the long arm of chromosome 17 containing the her2/neu gene (17q 11.2-17q12) may be used. A probe for the -satellite sequences in the centromeric region of chromosome 17(D1721) may be used to evaluate for aneusomy of chromosome 17 as a source or cause for her2/neu amplification. For example, a cocktailed version of these probes may be obtained from Vysis, Inc. where each probe is directly labeled with easily distinguishable fluorophores, such as SPECTRUM ORANGE® and SPECTRUM GREEN®.

Probes may also be generated and chosen by several means including, but not limited to, mapping by in situ hybridization, somatic cell hybrid panels, or spot blots of sorted chromosomes; chromosomal linkage analysis; or cloned and isolated from sorted chromosome libraries from human cell lines or somatic cell hybrids with human chromosomes, radiation somatic cell hybrids, microdissection of a chromosome region, or from yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs) identified by PCR primers specific for a unique chromosome locus or other suitable means like an adjacent YAC clone. Probes may be genomic DNA, cDNA, or RNA cloned in a plasmid, phage, cosmid, YAC, Bacterial Artificial Chromosomes (BACs), viral vector, or any other suitable vector. Probes may be cloned or synthesized chemically by conventional methods. When cloned, the isolated probe nucleic acid fragments are typically inserted into a vector, such as lambda phage,

pBR322, M13, or vectors containing the SP6 or T7 promoter and cloned as a library in a bacterial host (see, e.g., Sambrook, supra).

Probes are preferably labeled with a fluorophor. Examples of fluorophores include, but are not limited to, rare earth chelates (europium chelates), Texas Red, rhodamine, fluorescein, dansyl, Lissamine, umbelliferone, phycocrytherin, phycocyanin, or commercially available fluorophors such SPECTRUM ORANGE® and SPECTRUM GREEN®, and/or derivatives of any one or more of the above. Multiple probes used in the assay may be labeled with more than one distinguishable fluorescent or pigment color. These color differences provide a means to identify the hybridization positions of specific probes. Moreover, probes that are not separated spatially can be identified by a different color light or pigment resulting from mixing two other colors (e.g., light red+green=yellow), pigment (e.g., blue+yellow=green), or by using a filter set that passes only one color at a time.

Probes can be labeled directly or indirectly with the fluorophor, utilizing conventional methodology. Additional probes and colors may be added to refine and extend this general procedure to include more genetic abnormalities or serve as internal controls. By way of example the her2/neu gene is in chromosome 17, and as an internal control a probe for satellite sequences specific for chromosome 17 (D17Z1) may be used (Vysis, Inc.) to prove diploidy in areas of non-malignant cells and/or to establish the presence or absence of chromosome 17 aneusomy in areas of her2/neu amplification.

After processing for FISH, the slides may be analyzed by standard techniques of fluorescence microscopy (see, e.g., Ploem and Tanke, Introduction to Fluorescence Microscopy, Oxford University Press: New York (1987)). Briefly, each slide is observed using a microscope equipped with appropriate excitation filters, dichromic, and barrier filters. Filters are chosen based on the excitation and emission spectra of the fluorochromes used. Photographs of the slides may be taken with the length of time of film exposure depending on the fluorescent label used, the signal intensity and the filter chosen. For FISH analysis the physical loci of the cells of interest determined in the morphological analysis are recalled and visually conformed as being the appropriate area for FISH quantification.

In order to correlate IHC with FISH, one may use a computer-driven, motorized stage which stores location of coordinates. This may be used to evaluate the same area by two different analytical techniques. For example, color images of the morphologically stained areas may be captured and saved using a computer-assisted cooled CCD camera. The same section may be subsequently taken through the FISH procedure, the stored locations recalled, and the designated areas scored for the presence of fluorescent nuclear signals. A similar procedure for IHC followed by FISH is contemplated.

Typically, hundreds of cells are scanned in a tissue sample and quantification of the specific target nucleic acid sequence is determined in the form of fluorescent spots, which are counted relative to the number of cells. Deviation of the number of spots in a cell from a norm (e.g., such as probing for the her2/neu gene in a normal cell will produce two copies, abnormal greater than two) is indicative of a greater likelihood of benefit from a tumor antigen-specific antibody therapy, e.g., an ErbB antagonist therapy. As exemplified infra, her2 gene amplification provides a much more effective indication of the likelihood that an anti-HER2 antibody therapy will be effective.

Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antagonists, e.g., antibodies, used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 17th edition, Osol, A. Ed.), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2 antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein be reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies which bind to EGFR, ErbB2, ErbB3, ErbB4, vascular endothelial factor (VEGF), or an antibody that binds to a different epitope on the target ErbB, in the one formulation. Alternatively, or in addition, the composition may comprise a cytotoxic agent, a chemotherapeutic, a cytokine, growth inhibitory agent and/or cardioprotectant. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 17th edition, Osol, A. Ed.

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration are preferably, and in the case of humans, must be, sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(−)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over

100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37° C., resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S—S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

Treatment with the Anti-ErbB Antagonists

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB antibodies or other antagonists may be used to treat various conditions characterized by overexpression and/or activation of the ErbB receptor in patients who have been found to have an amplified erbB gene. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors (e.g. renal, liver, kidney, bladder, breast, gastric, ovarian, colorectal, prostate, pancreatic, lung, vulval, thyroid, hepatic carcinomas; sarcomas; glioblastomas; and various head and neck tumors); leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic, glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal, blastocoelic, inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

The antibodies, chemotherapeutic agents and any other active agents of the invention are administered to a human patient in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerobrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

In one embodiment, the treatment of the present invention involves the combined administration of an anti-ErbB antibody and a chemotherapeutic agent, e.g., a taxoid. The present invention contemplates administration of cocktails of different chemotherapeutic agents. The combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in Chemotherapy Service Ed., M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992). The chemotherapeutic agent may precede, or follow administration of the antibody or may be given simultaneously therewith. The antibody may be combined with an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen or an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812) in dosages known for such molecules.

In addition to the above therapeutic regimes, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells (tumor resection) and/or radiation therapy.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of antagonist, e.g., antibody will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

Pharmaceutical Packages

Articles of Manufacture

In a related aspect of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container, optionally labeled, and a package insert. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials, such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition that is effective for treating the condition and preferably has a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-tumor antigen therapeutic antibody or an ErbB antagonist, e.g., an anti-ErbB antibody. A label on, or associated with, the container indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. The article of manufacture may further comprise a second container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. This second buffer can be used to reconstitute the active agent, if that is provided as a lyophilysate or dried powder, or to dilute a concentrated preparation of the active agent. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes.

In addition, the article of manufacture comprises a package insert or inserts with instructions for use in patients who have been found to have erbB gene amplification, e.g., by FISH testing. Such patients may be subjects who, by IHC, would be excluded from treatment with the ErbB antagonist, e.g., patients who score a 0 or 1+ using an anti-HER2 antibody.

Deposit of Materials

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, Md., USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990

Further details of the invention are illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

Example 1

Concordance Between the Clinical Trials Assay (CTA) and Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH) in the HERCEPTIN® Pivotal Trials

Overexpression of HER2 at the 2+ or 3+ level by immunohistochemistry (IHC) was required for enrollment in the pivotal HERCEPTIN® metastatic breast cancer trials. The Clinical Testing Assay (CTA) involves two separate IHC assays performed with either monoclonal antibodies 4D5 (after protease digestion of the formalin fixed sample) or CB11 (after heat treatment of the formalin fixed sample). Subjects were eligible if either assay was scored at 2+ or 3+. If both were performed, the final score was the higher of the two results.

Concordance between the CTA and another IHC, HERCEPTEST® (HT), is 79%. This was the basis for FDA approval of HT to aid in the selection of patients for HERCEPTIN® therapy.

This Example describes a similar concordance study, utilizing clinical material submitted for screening for the HERCEPTIN® pivotal trials, that compares the CTA to her2/neu gene amplification measured by the PathVysion FISH assay. In the pivotal trials, 5998 subjects were screened for HER2 expression; 1915 (32%) were positive by the CTA and 4083 (68%) were negative. A random sample of 623 specimens (1:1 ratio of positive:negative) were selected for this analysis, 317 CTA+ and 306 CTA−. Specimens were not freshly cut from blocks. They had been stored between 2 and 4 years as 4-6μ sections on glass slides. Each section was assayed for her2/neu amplification using the protocol specified in the package insert of the PathVysion assay. Amplification was defined as a signal ratio of greater than or equal to 2. The results are shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1

FISH/CTA Concordance

		CTA				
		0	1+	2+	3+	
FISH	−	207	28	67	21	
	+	7	2	21	176	
		4%	7%	24%	89%	529

FISH+ = HER2:CEP17 signal ratio ≧2
Concordance = 82% (79-85%)

For the total 623 specimens tested, a FISH signal result was obtained in 529. Assay failure occurred in 19.9% of CTA− and 10.4% CTA+ samples. Amplification in the 0, 1+, 2, and 3+ groups was 4.2%, 6.7%, 23.9%, and 89.3%, respectively. The sample concordance was 81.3%, similar to the CTA/HT concordance of 79%. Single copy overexpression was 31%, predominantly in the 2+ group. Amplification was rarely (4.6%) noted in the CTA− group. The higher assay failure rate in the CTA− group may be due to non-assay related factors such as tissue fixation. These may have also resulted in false negative results for IHC.

These data were closely interpreted to suggest that her2/neu amplification status may have unexpectedly superior predictive value for identifying patients who are more likely to benefit from HERCEPTIN® treatment as compared to HERCEPTEST®. The observation that only 24% of 2+ patients are FISH+ suggest that this sub-group may have less predictable treatment outcomes when selected by IHC only. Identification of FISH+ patients in the 1+ and 0 sub-groups might identify subjects who, though failing the IHC criteria for HERCEPTIN® treatment, would likely benefit from HERCEPTIN® treatment. A direct analysis of HERCEPTIN® benefit based on FISH score compared to IHC score is presented in Example 2.

Example 2

FISH/Clinical Outcome Study

This example links the results from three HERCEPTIN® Trials with FISH status. In this study, 805 subjects were selected at random from all three trials. Of these, 167 lacked slides. Another 78 assays (9.7%) failed. Thus, formalin-fixed cut sections stored between 2.5 and 4.5 years from 540 subjects provided the sample pool for this study. There were no imbalances in demographics or prognostic indicators in these samples. Results are reported for different treatment groups.

Correlation of FISH status with response was evaluated for patients who received HERCEPTIN® as a second or third line therapy. These data are reported for 2+ and 3+ (by CTA) subjects in Table 2.

TABLE 2

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 2+/3+ Combined

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	21	0
No response	84	37
response rate	20%	0%
	(12.5-27.5%)	(0.7%)

N = 142

The 20% response rate of FISH+ subjects unexpectedly exceeds the 15% response rate of 2+ and 3+ patients in this study and 14% response rate observed in patients selected by CTA with a 2+ or 3+ immunohistochemistry score during the pivotal trials. Thus, while FISH correlates well with NC to about the same degree as another NC assay, the Hercep Test, as shown in Example 1, it unexpectedly is superior in identifying patients who are more likely to benefit from HERCEPTIN® therapy.

When these data were broken down into the components 3+ and 2+ subjects, the same 20% response rate of FISH+ subjects was seen (Tables 3 and 4).

TABLE 3

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 3+ subgroup

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	18	0
No response	72	17
response rate	20%	0%
	(12-28%)	(0-14%)

N = 107

TABLE 4

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ®, 2nd or 3rd line therapy, 2+ subgroup

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	3	0
No response	12	20
response rate	20% (1-40%)	0% (0-14%)

N = 35

In the 3+ sub-group, the FISH+ response rate (20%) was very close but still exceeded the 17% response rate of 3+ subjects. The 2+ subgroup showed a much greater difference, with only a 9% response rate versus 20% by FISH+ selection. These data show that FISH+ status (her2 gene amplification) greatly increases the likelihood of response to HERCEPTIN®.

Data were also evaluated for patient responses to HERCEPTIN® as a first line therapy (Table 5).

TABLE 5

FISH/Response with single agent HERCEPTIN ® as 1st line therapy, 2+/3+ combined

	FISH+	FISH−
Response	17	1
No response	24	20
response rate	41% (26-56%)	20% (0-14%)

N = 62

The 41% response rate of FISH+ subjects was notably greater than the 27% response rate of 3+, 2+ subjects.

The surprising increase in likelihood of beneficial response based on FISH analysis extended to responses to chemotherapy plus HERCEPTIN®, as shown in Table 6. FISH+ subjects showed a much greater response to chemotherapy and HERCEPTIN® (54%) than FISH−(41%). Tables 7-9 contain more extensive data, broken down by different chemotherapeutic agents (adrinomycin and cyclophosphamide, AC; and Paditaxol, P) and different endpoints (response rate, time to progression, and survival) for HERCEPTIN® in combination with chemotherapy.

TABLE 6

FISH/Response rate to chemotherapy +/− HERCEPTIN ®, 1st line therapy; 2+/3+ combined

	C alone	C + H
FISH−	39% (26-52%)	41% (27-55%)
FISH+	27% (19-35%)	54% (45-63%)

N = 336

TABLE 7

Response rate of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	56*	42	41*	17	50*	32
3+	349	60*	42	49*	17	56*	31
FISH+	240	58*	40	49*	14	54*	27

*p < 0.05

TABLE 8

Time to progression (months) of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	7.8*	6.1	6.9*	2.7	7.4*	4.6
3+	349	8.1*	6.0	7.1*	3.0	7.8*	4.6
FISH+	240	7.8*	6.2	7.0*	3.2	7.3*	4.6

*p < 0.05

TABLE 9

Survival (months) of newly defined populations

		H + Ac (n = 143)	AC (n = 138)	H + P (n = 92)	P (n = 96)	H + CT (n = 235)	CT (n = 234)
2+/3+	469	27	21	22	18	25*	20
3+	349	31*	21	25	18	29*	20
FISH+	240	29*	20	25*	14	27*	18

*p < 0.05

These data uniformly confirm that FISH+ analysis, though correlating closely to IHC, provides a much more accurate indicator of likelihood of success with HERCEPTIN® treatment. Across the board, FISH+ selection has about ⅓ (30%) greater response rate than 2+/3+ IHC-selection. When focused on 2+ patients, FISH status provides a much more effective tool for patient selection. FISH states also identifies patients who, because of 0 or 1+ status as determined by IHC, would otherwise be excluded from treatment.

These observations have broad implications for ErbB receptor antagonist-based cancer therapies and anti-tumor antigen cancer therapies in general. Thus erbB antagonists, e.g., anti-erbB receptor antibodies like HERCEPTIN®, can have an increased likelihood of efficacy when administered to patients who are positive for erbB gene amplification, e.g., by a FISH test. This is certainly the case, based on these data, with HERCEPTIN®.

The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the specific embodiments described herein. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and the accompanying figures. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

It is further to be understood that all values are approximate, and are provided for description.

Patents, patent applications, publications, product descriptions, and protocols are cited throughout this application, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties for all purposes.

What is claimed:

1. A method for identifying and treating a patient disposed to respond favorably to a HER2 antibody, huMAb4D5-8, for treating breast cancer, which method comprises detecting her2 gene amplification in tumor cells in a tissue sample from the patient and treating the patient with her2 gene amplification with the HER2 antibody in an amount effective to treat the breast cancer, wherein the patient's tumor cells express HER2 at a 0 or 1+ level by immunohistochemistry.

2. The method of claim **1** wherein her2 gene amplification is detected by detecting fluorescence of a fluorescent-labeled nucleic acid probe hybridized to the gene.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein a formaldehyde-fixed sample of the patient's tumor cells has been subjected to an immunohistochemistry assay and found to express HER2 at a 0 or 1+ level.

4. The method of claim 3 wherein the immunohistochemistry assay is performed prior to detecting her2 gene amplification.

5. The method of claim 1 which further comprises administering a cancer treating dose of a chemotherapeutic drug.

6. The method of claim 5 wherein the chemotherapeutic drug is a taxoid.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT I

US008574869B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Kao et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 8,574,869 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: Nov. 5, 2013**

(54) **PREVENTION OF DISULFIDE BOND REDUCTION DURING RECOMBINANT PRODUCTION OF POLYPEPTIDES**

(75) Inventors: **Yung-Hsiang Kao**, San Mateo, CA (US); **Michael W. Laird**, San Ramon, CA (US); **Melody Trexler Schmidt**, San Carlos, CA (US); **Rita L. Wong**, Redwood City, CA (US); **Daniel P. Hewitt**, Sunnyvale, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Genentech, Inc.**, South San Francisco, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **13/354,223**

(22) Filed: **Jan. 19, 2012**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2013/0017598 A1 Jan. 17, 2013

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 12/217,745, filed on Jul. 8, 2008, now abandoned.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/948,677, filed on Jul. 9, 2007.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
C12P 1/00 (2006.01)
C12N 5/02 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**
USPC **435/41**; 435/325

(58) **Field of Classification Search**
None
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2004/0029229	A1 *	2/2004	Reeves et al.	435/69.1
2004/0138424	A1	7/2004	Takeda et al.	
2006/0143549	A1	6/2006	Yasumoto et al.	
2007/0292411	A1	12/2007	Salcedo et al.	
2009/0053786	A1	2/2009	Kao et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

WO	97/26357	7/1997

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Kock et al. (Biochem Soc Trans. Apr. 2004;32(Pt 2):273-5).*
Christiansen et al. (Biochemistry 1998, 37, 12611-12623).*
Bobovnikova et al., "Characterization of Soluble, Disulfide Bond-Stabilized Prokaryotically Expressed Human Thryotropin Receptor Ectodomain" Endocrinology 138(2):588-593 (1997).
Chaderjian et al., "Effect of Copper Sulfate on Performance of a Serum-Free CHO Cell Culture Process and the Level of Free Thiol in the Recombinant Antibody Expressed" Biotechnology Progress 21(2):550-553 (2005).
Gromer et al., "The Thioredoxin System: From Science to Clinic" Medicubak Research Reviews 24(1):40-89 (Jan. 2004).
Kao et al., "Mechanism of Antibody Reduction in Cell Culture Production Processes" Biotechnology and Bioengineering 107(4):622-632 (Nov. 2010).
Kerblat et al., "Importance of Thioredoxin in the Proteolysis of an Immunoglobulin G as Antigen by Lysosomal Cys-Proteases" Immunology 97(1):62-68 (1999).
Li et al., "Low Level Formation of Potent Catalytic IgG Fragments Mediated by Disulfide Bond Instability" Molecular Immunology 33(7-8):593-600 (1996).
Liu et al., "Study of Tioredoxin" Journal of Northeast Agricultural University 34(23):219-225 (Jun. 30, 2003).
Mun et al., "BIOT 245-Air Sparging of Harvested Cell Culture Fluid (HCCF) to Prevent Antibody Disulfide Bond Reduction" Abstracts of Papers American Chemical Society 238:245 (Aug. 2009).
Nordberg et al., "Reactive Oxygen Species, Antioxidants, and the Mammalian Thioredoxin System" Free Radical Biology & Medicine 31(11):1287-1312 (2001).
Powis et al., "Properties and Biological Activities of Thioredoxins" Annual Review of Pharmacology and Toxicology 41:261-295 (2001).
Powis et al., "Thioredoxin Redox Control of Cell Growth and Death and the Effects of Inhibitors" Chemico-Biologica llnteractions 111-112:23-34 (1998).
Salas-Solano et al., "Optimization and Validation of a Quantitative Capillary Electrophoresis Sodium Dodecyl Sulfate Method for Quality Control and Stability Monitoring of Monoclonal Antibodies" Analytical Chemistry 78(18):6583-6594 (2006).
Smith et al., "Specific Cleavage of Immunoglobulin G by Copper Ions" International Journal of Peptide and Protein Research 48(1):49-55 (1996).
Starks et al., "Atomic-Resolution Crystal Structure of Thioredoxin From the Acidophilic Bacterium Acetobacter Aceti" Protein Science 16(1):92-98 (Jan. 2007).
Teilum et al., "Disulfide Bond Formation and Folding of Plant Peroxidases Expressed as Inclusion Body Protein in *Escherichia coli* Thioredoxin Reductase Negative Strains" Protein Expression and Purification Academic Press 15(1):77-82 (1999).
Trexler-Schmidt et al., "Identification and Prevention of Antibody Disulfide Bond Reduction During Cell Culture Manufacturing" Biotechnology and Bioengineering 160(3):452-461 (2006).
Urig et al., "On the Potential of Thioredoxin Reductase Inhibitors for Cancer Therapy" Seminars in Cancer Biology 16(6):452-465 (2006).
Wipf et al., "New Inhibitors of the Thioredoxin-Thioredoxin Reducatase System Based on a Naphthoquinone Spiroketal Natural Product Lead" Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters(11):2637-2641 (2001).
Zhang et al., "Free sulfhydryl in recombinant monoclonal antibodies" Biotechnol. Prog. 18:509-513 (2002).
Lillig, C.H. et al. (Jan. 2007). "Thioredoxin and Related Molecules—From Biology to Health and Disease," *Antioxidants & Redox Signaling* 9(1):25-47.
Lydersen, B.K. et al. (Nov. 1994). "Acid Precipitation of Mammalian Cell Fermentation Broth," *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 745:222-231.
Roman, B. et al. (Sep. 2005). "Development of a Robust Clarification Process for MAb Purification," *Case Study presented at the BioProcess International 2005 Conference & Exhibition*, Sep. 19-22, 2005, Boston, MA, four pages particularly p. 4.
Roush, D.J. et al. (2008). "Advances in Primary Recovery: Centrifugation and Membrane Technology," *Biotechnol. Prog.* 24(3):488-495.

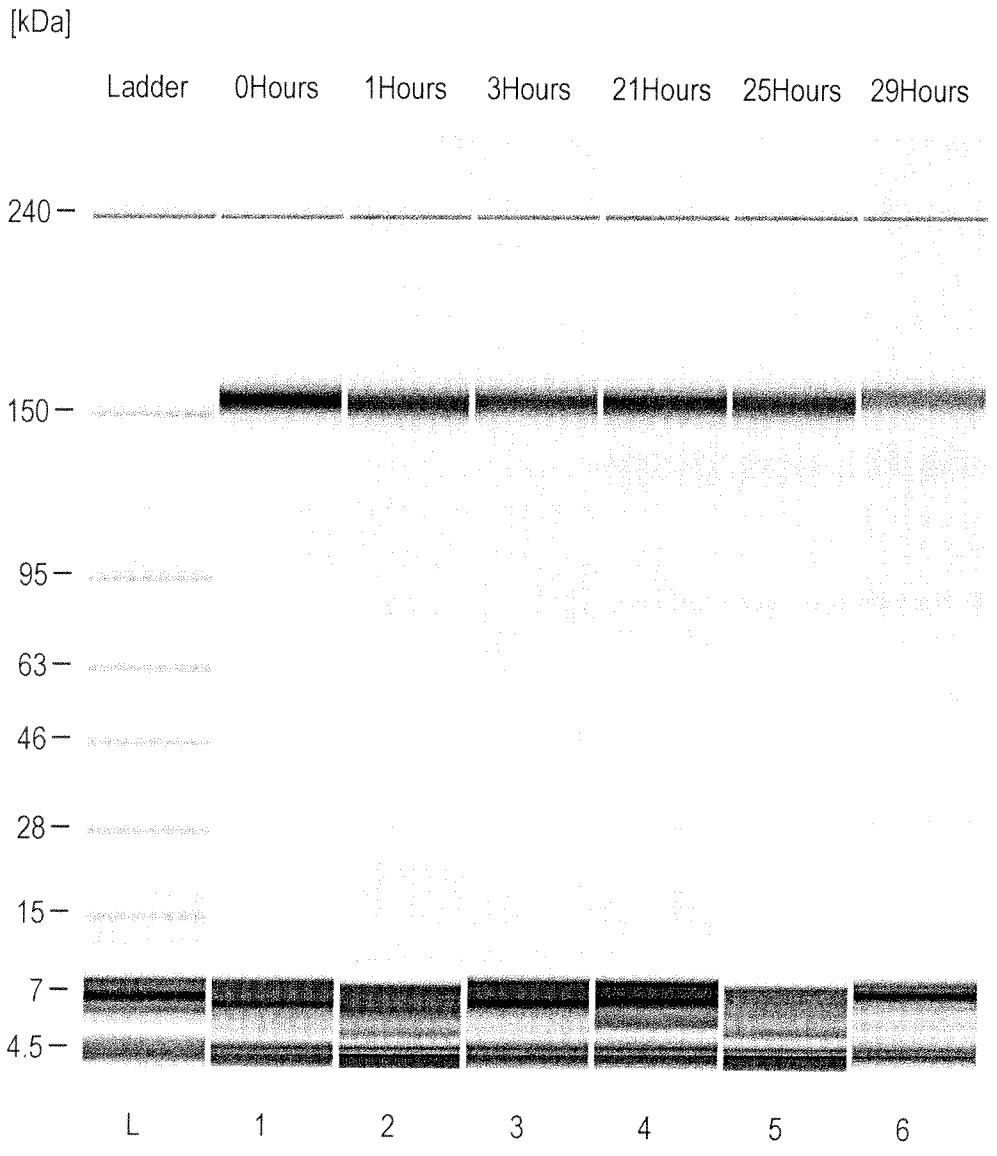
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner — Suzanne M Noakes
Assistant Examiner — Jae W Lee
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Morrison & Foerster LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

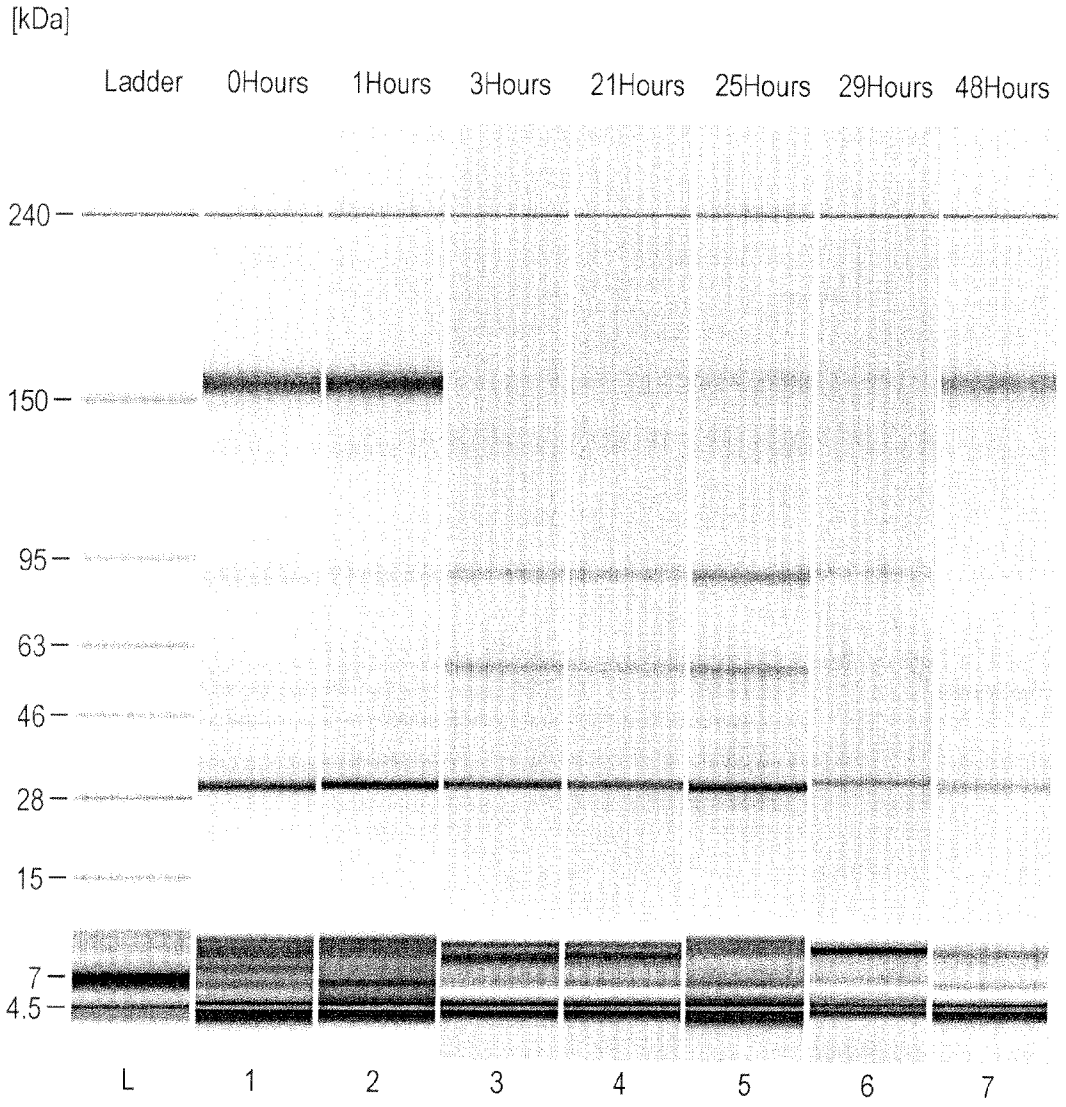
Provided herein are methods for preventing the reduction of disulfide bonds during the recombinant production of disulfide-containing polypeptides. In particular, the invention concerns the prevention of disulfide bond reduction during harvesting of disulfide-containing polypeptides, including antibodies, from recombinant host cell cultures.

10 Claims, 40 Drawing Sheets



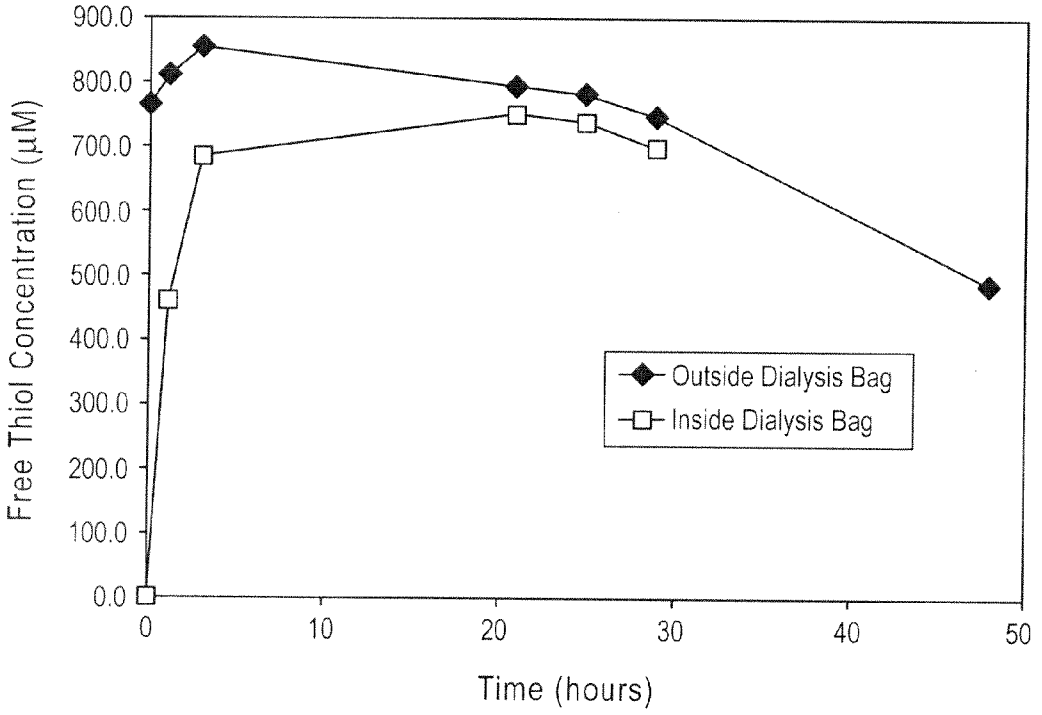
Dialysis Experiment

FIG. 1



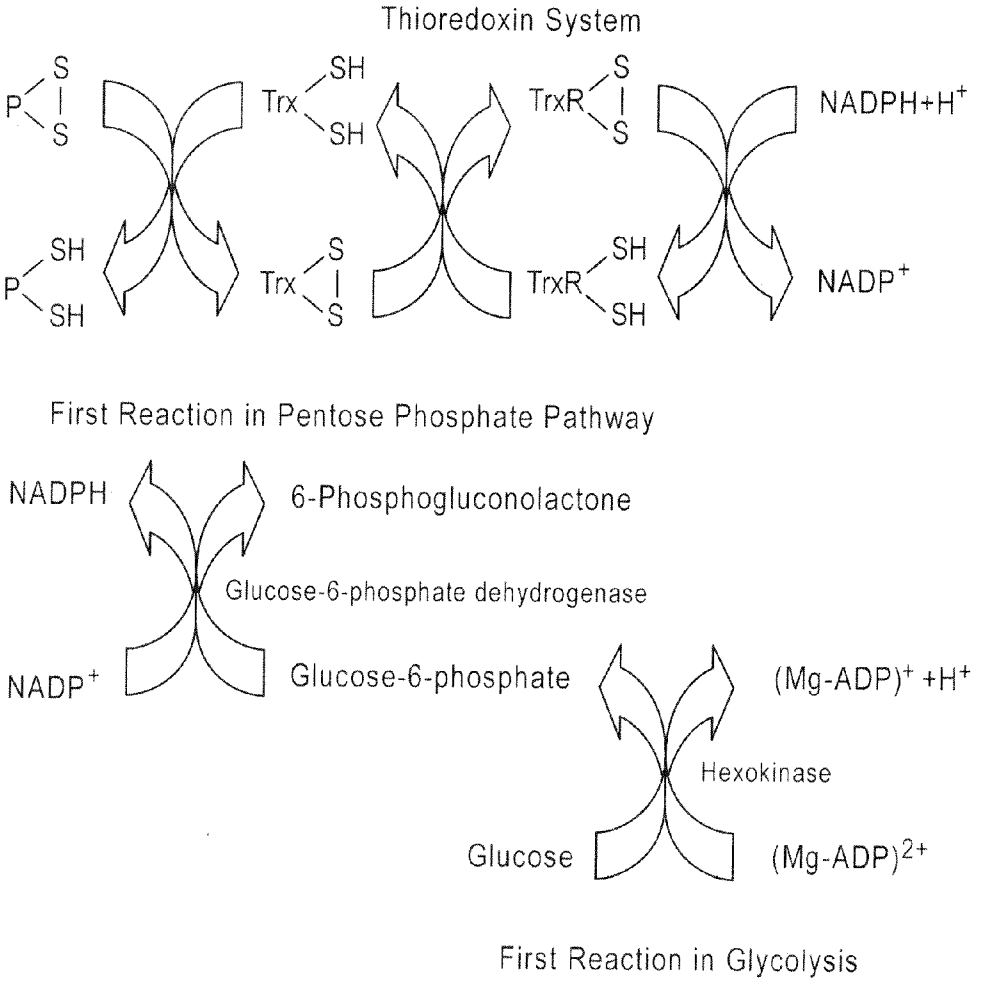
Dialysis Experiment

FIG. 2



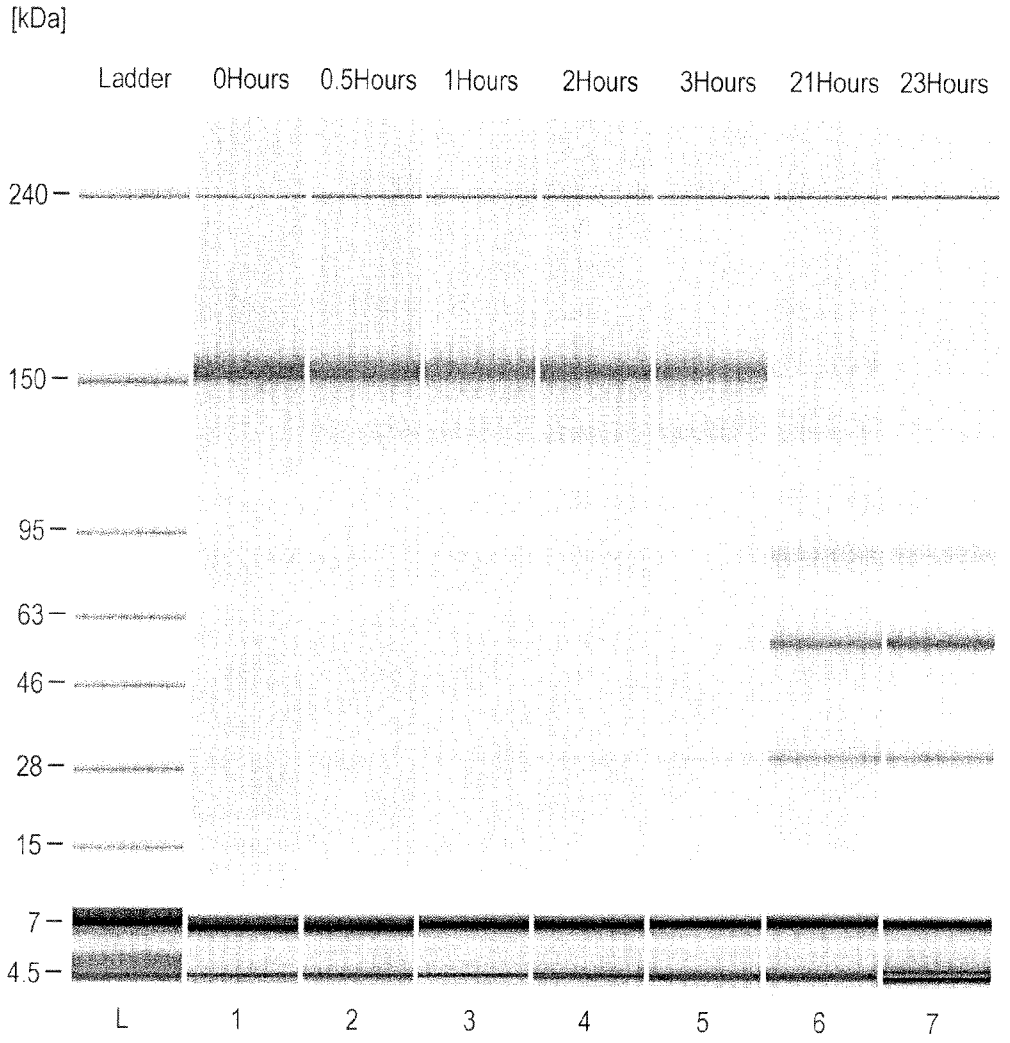
Free Thiol Levels from Dialysis Experiment

FIG. 3



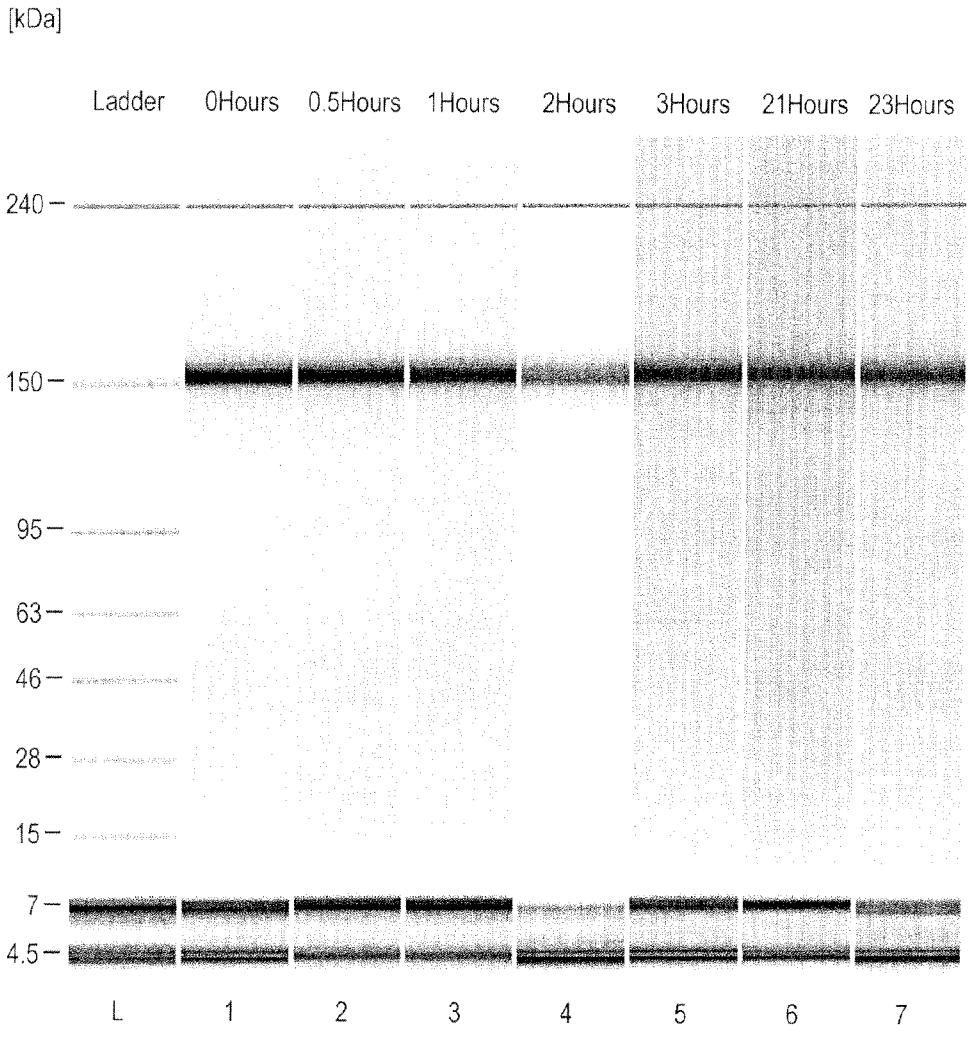
Thioredoxin System and Other Reactions Involved in Antibody Reduction

FIG. 4



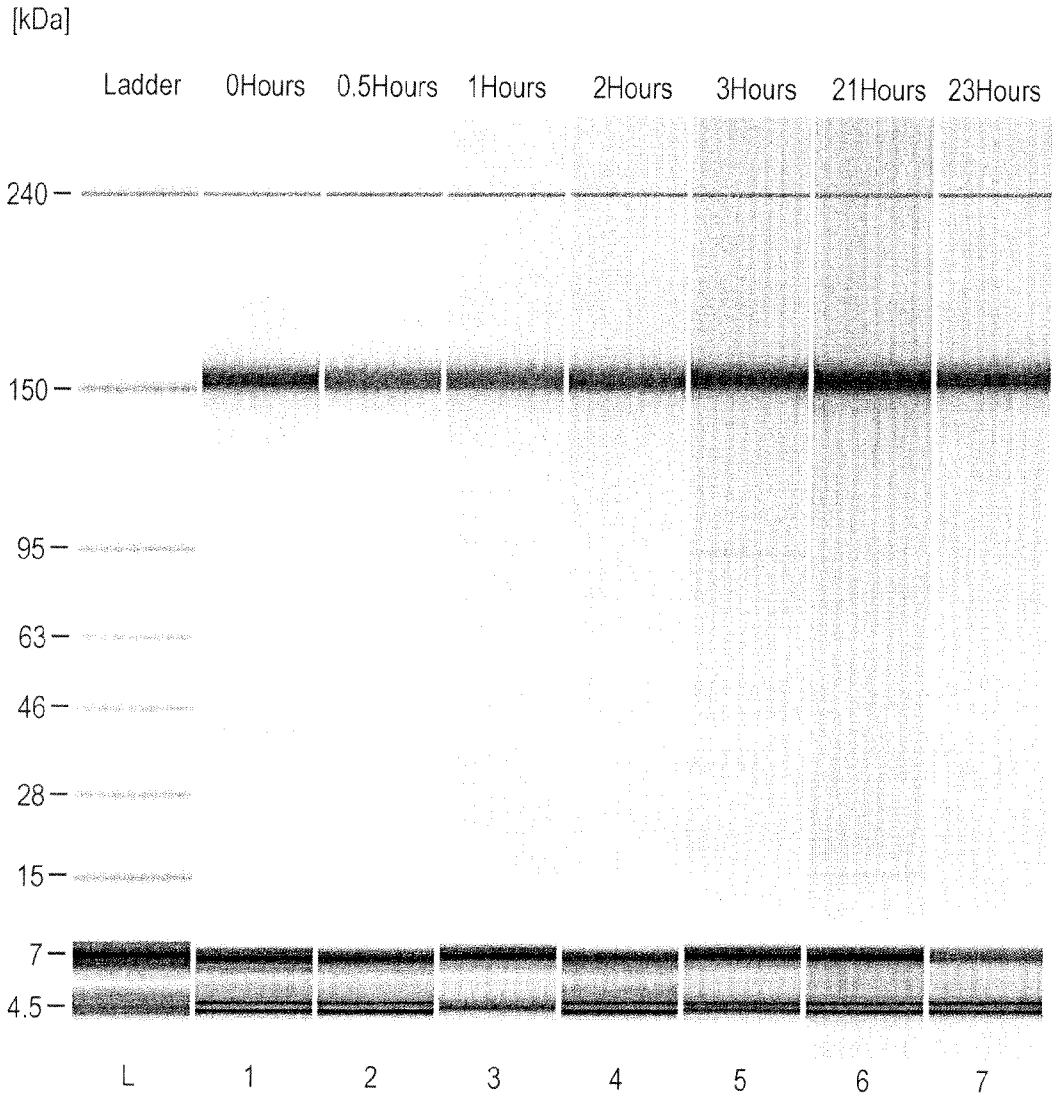
In *Vitro* Activity of Thioredoxin System

FIG. 5



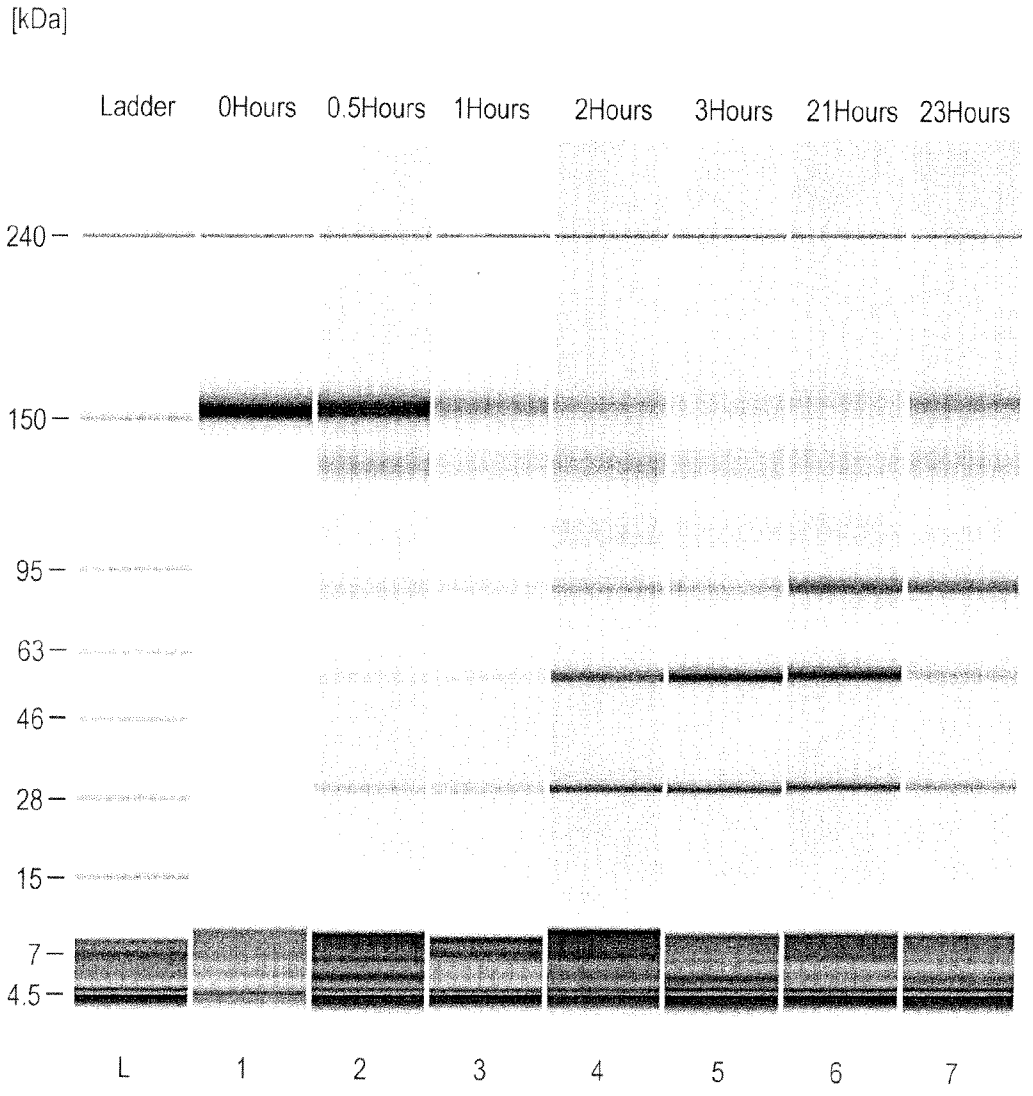
In *vitro* Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Aurothioglucose

FIG. 6



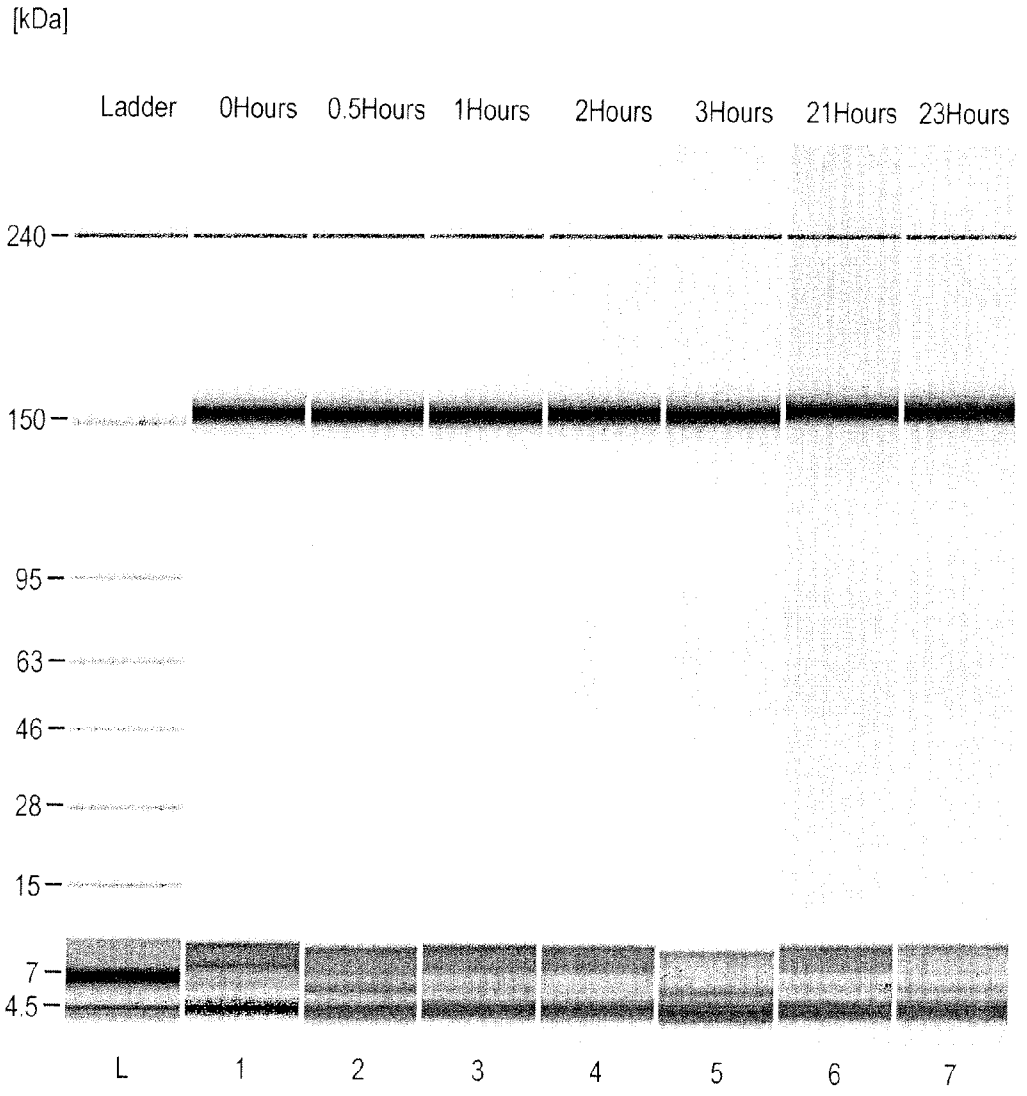
In *vitro* Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Aurothiomalate

FIG. 7



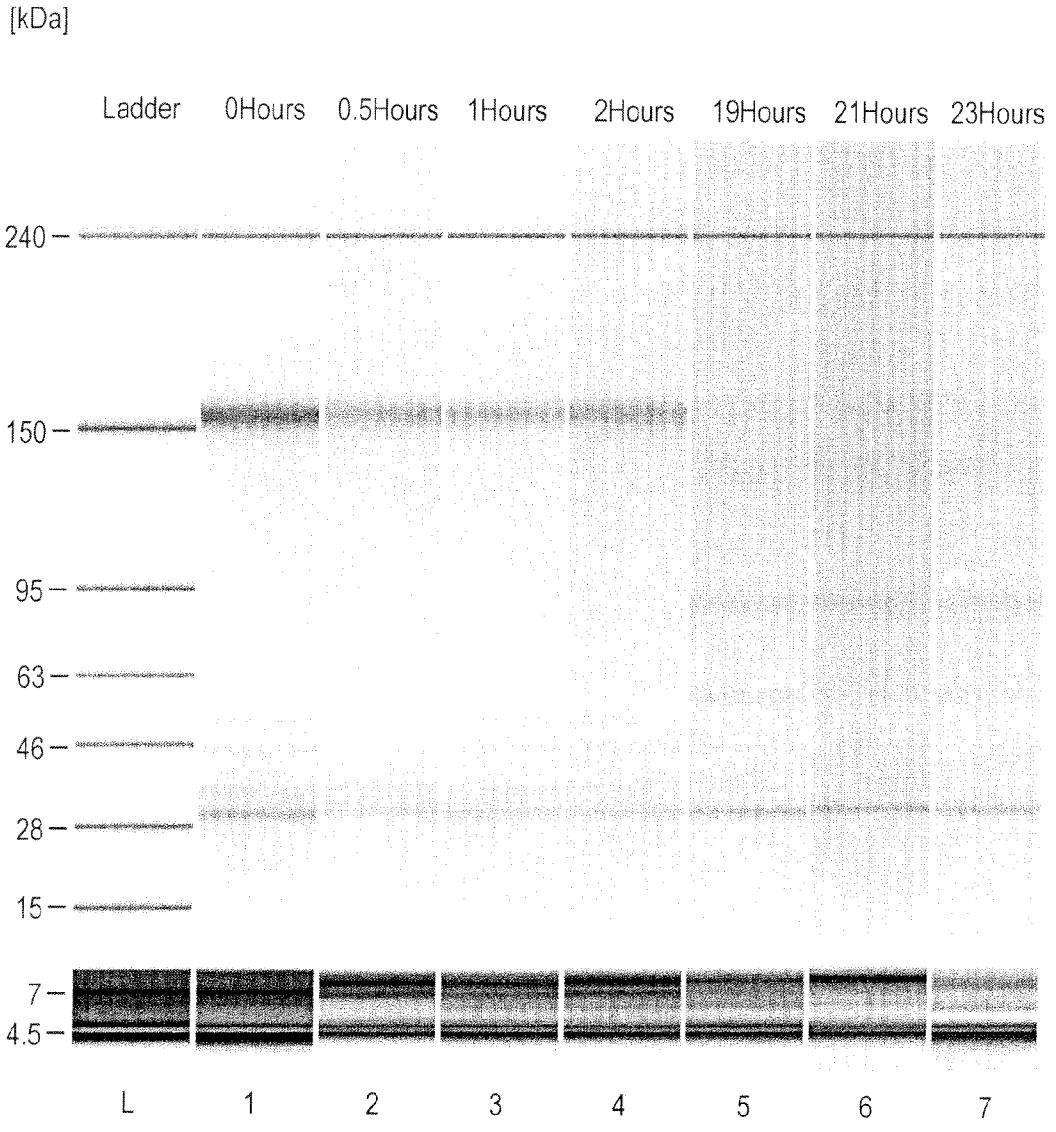
In *vitro* Activity of Thioredoxin System

FIG. 8



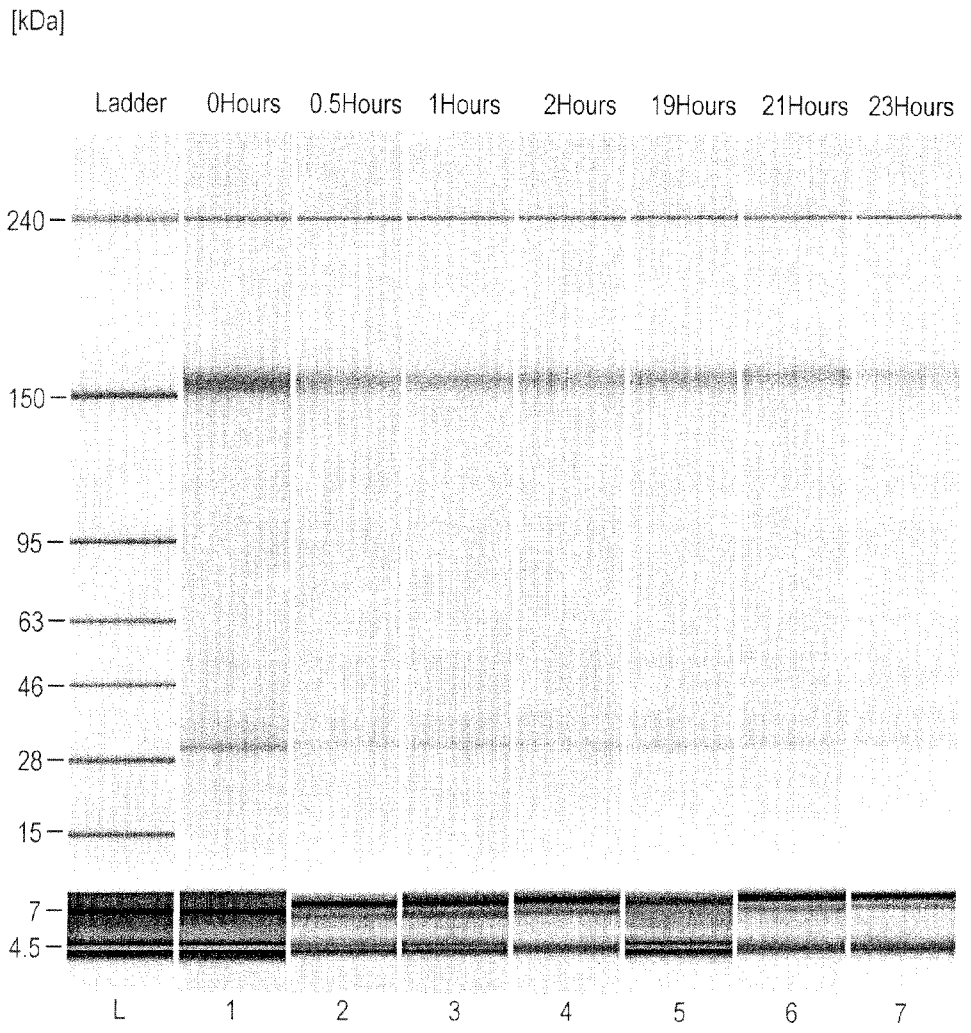
In *vitro* Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by $CuSO_4$

FIG. 9



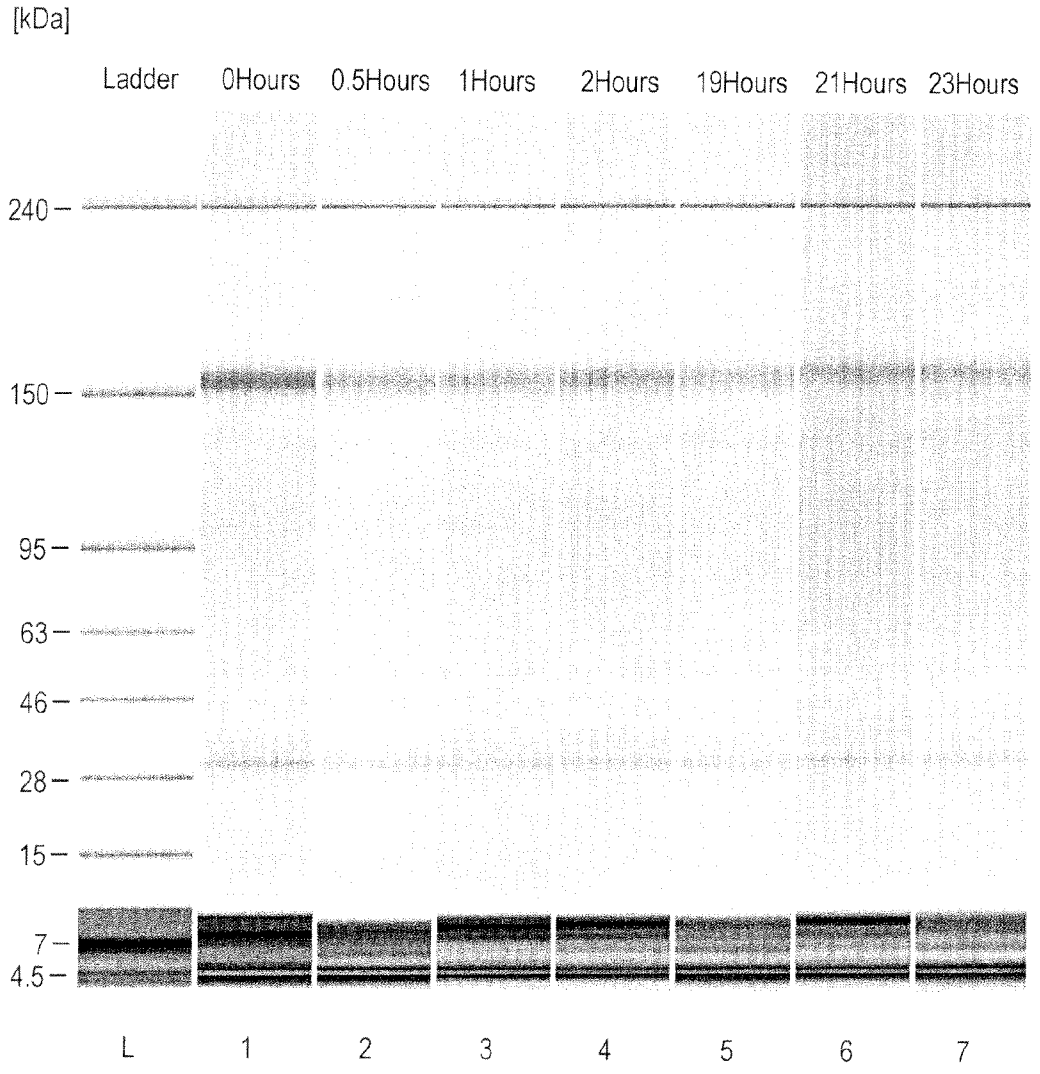
Ocrelizumab Reduction

FIG. 10



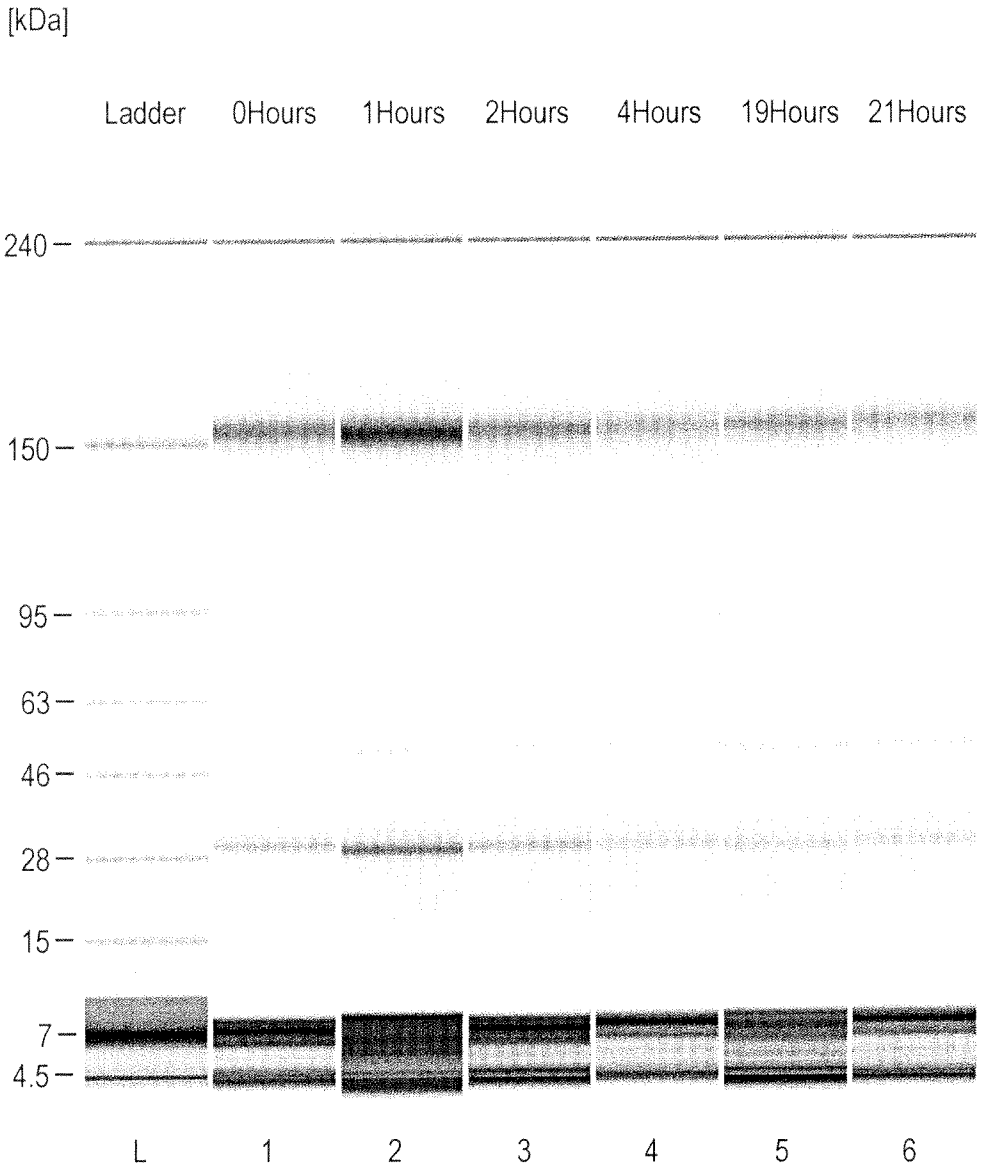
Inhibition of Ocrelizumab Reduction In HCCF by Aurothioglucose

FIG. 11



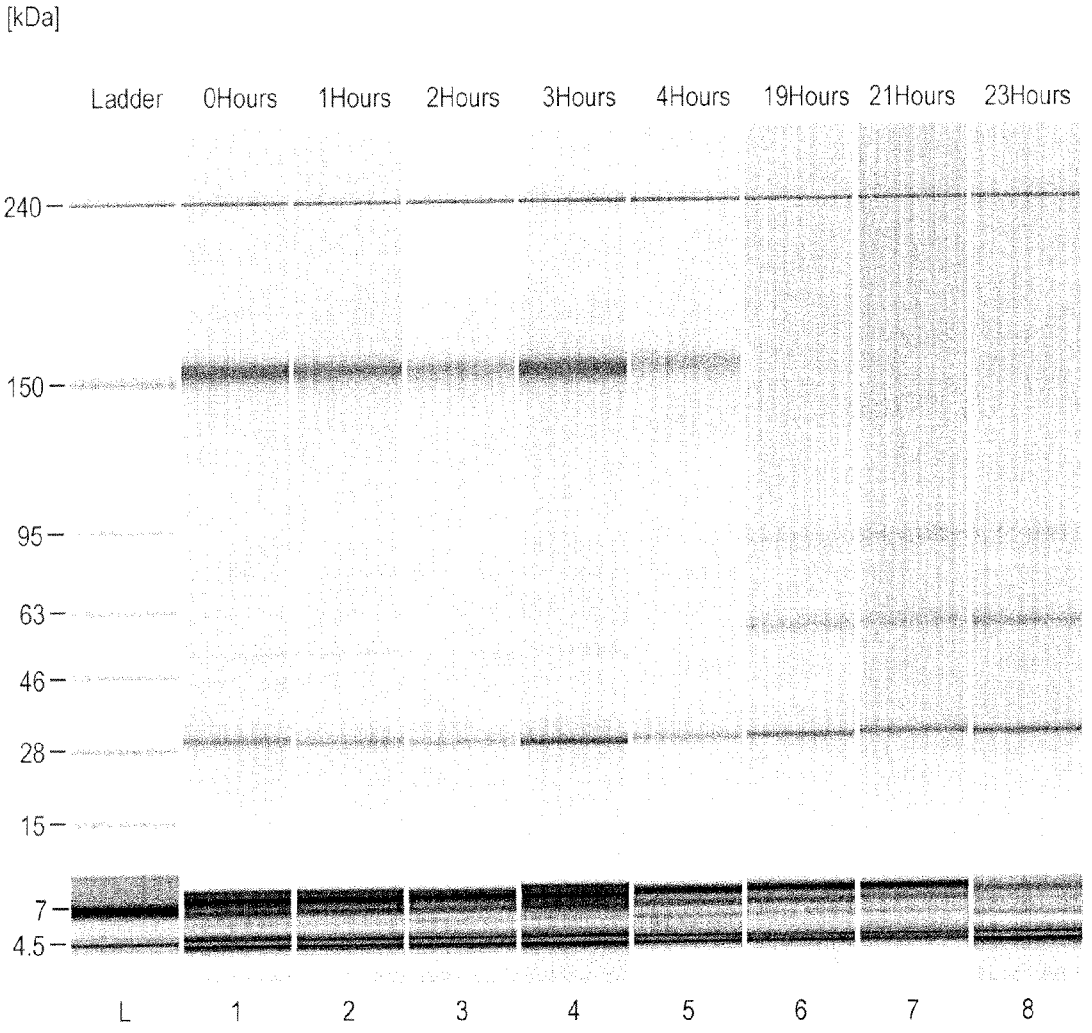
Inhibition of Ocrelizumab Reduction In HCCF by Aurothiomalate

FIG. 12



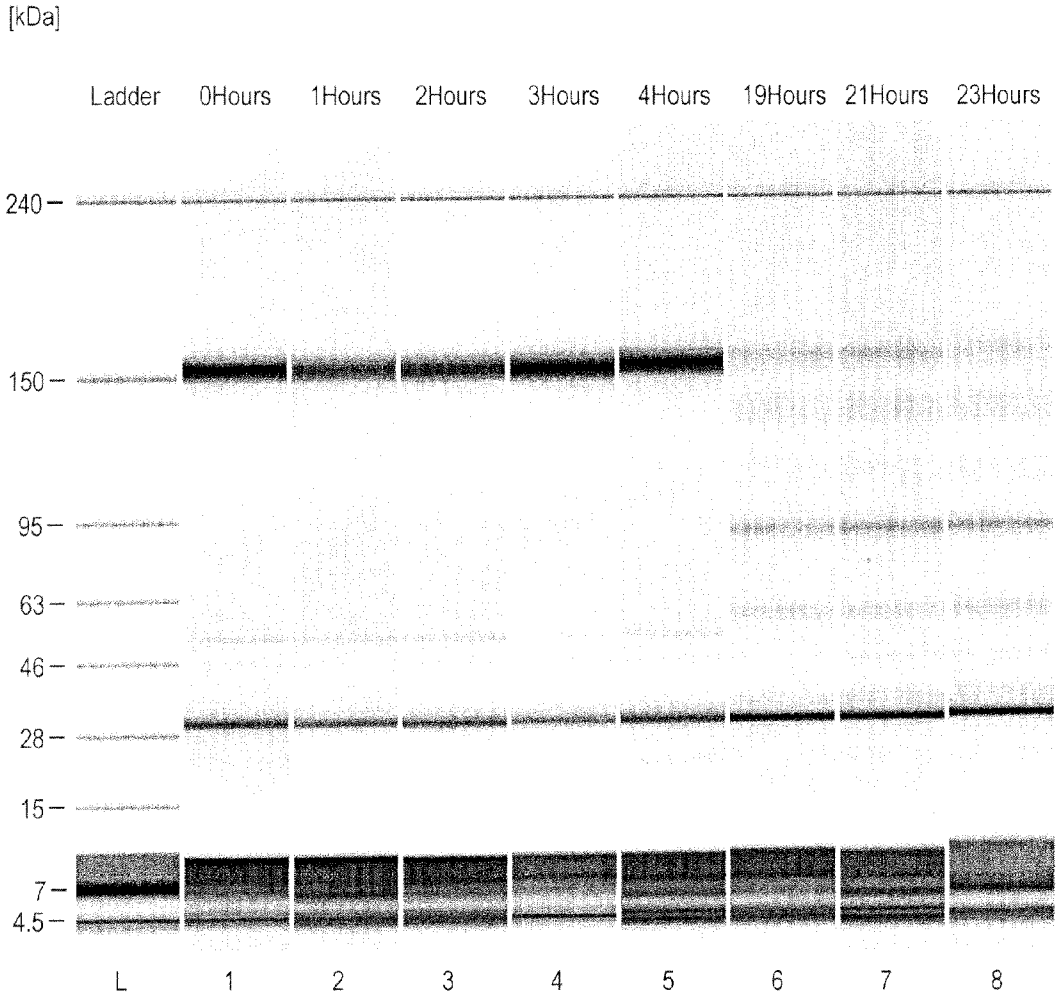
Losing Reduction Activity in HCCF

FIG. 13



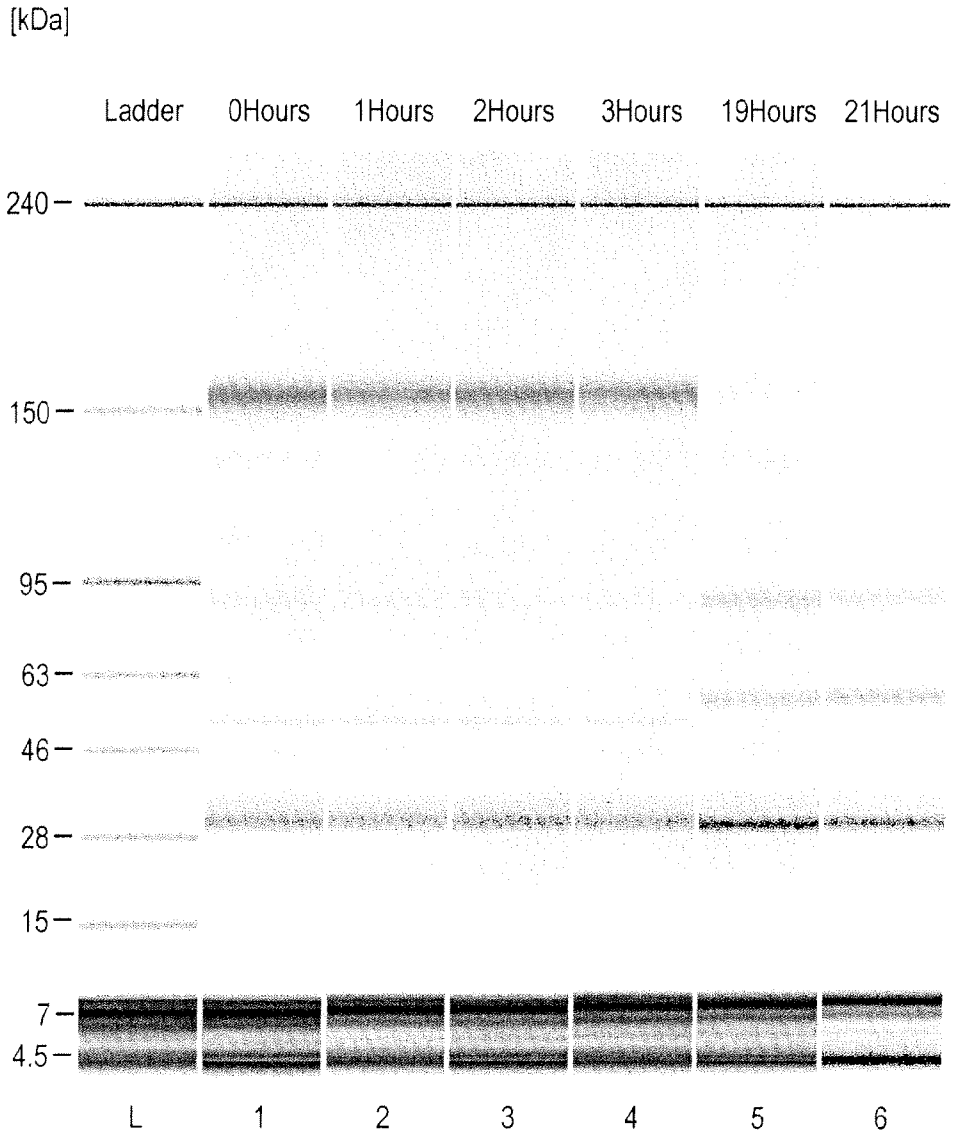
The Lost Reduction Activity in HCCF Restored by Addition of NADPH

FIG. 14



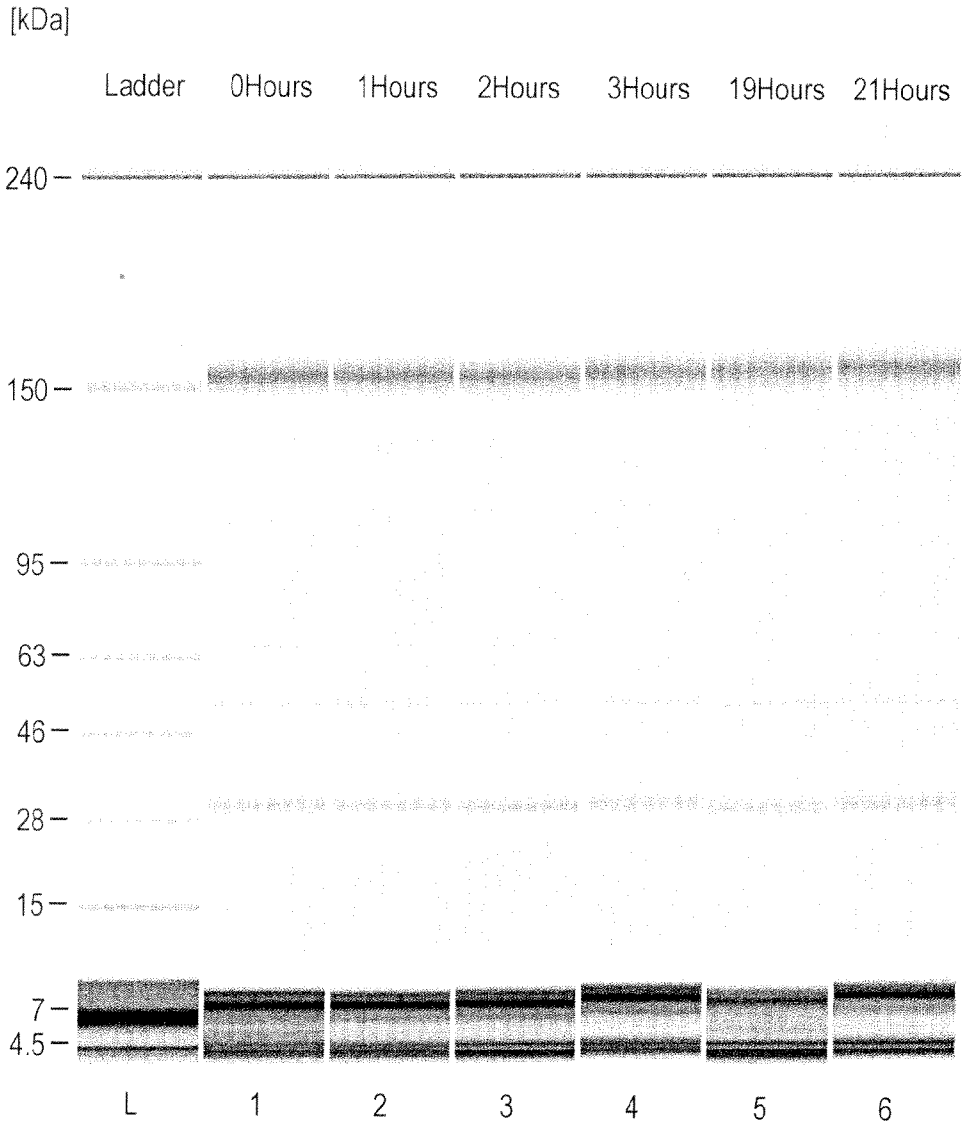
The Lost Reduction Activity in HCCF Restored by Addition of Glucose-6-Phosphate

FIG. 15



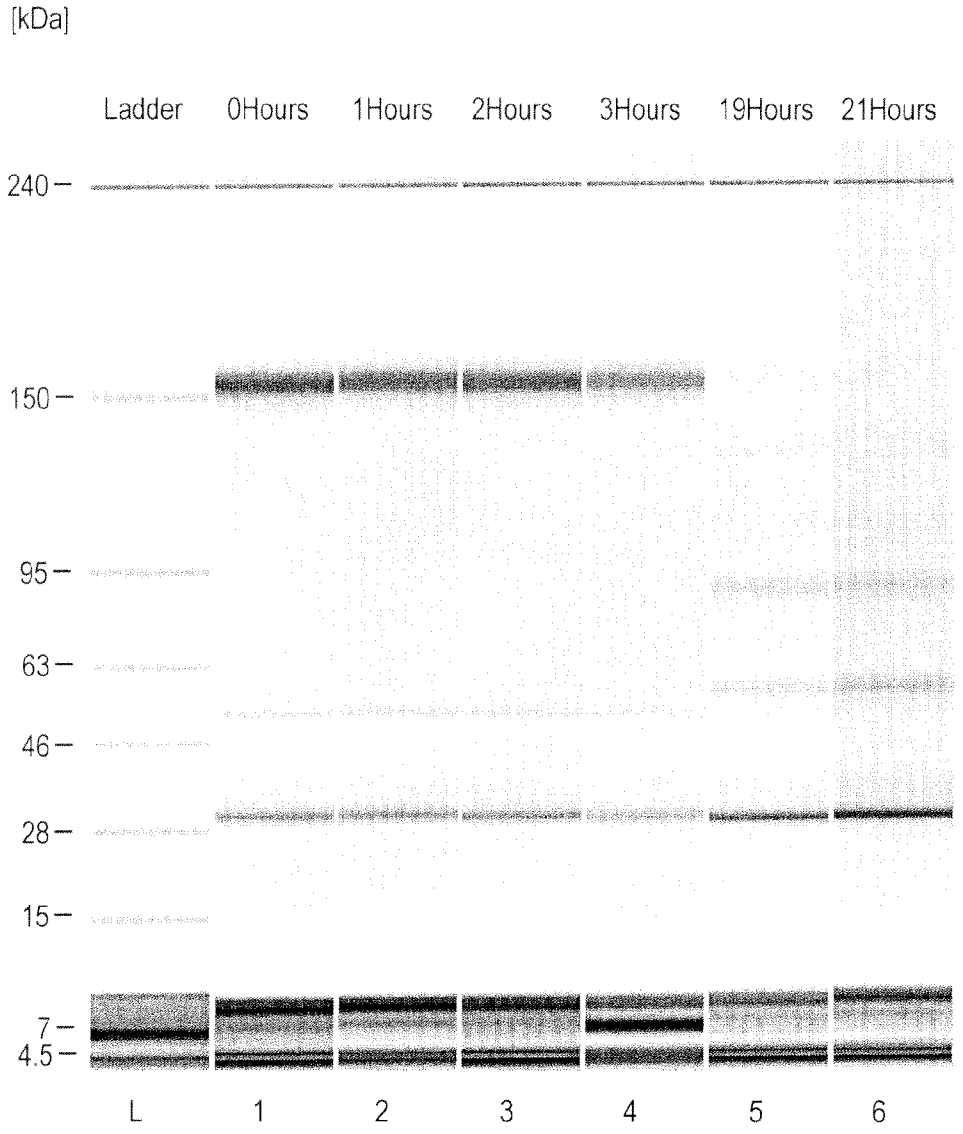
Ocrelizumab Reduction

FIG. 16



EDTA Inhibits Ocrelizumab Reduction

FIG. 17



The Lost Reduction Activity in Run 8 HCCF Restored by Addition of Glucose-6-Phosphate but No Inhibition of Reduction by EDTA

FIG. 18

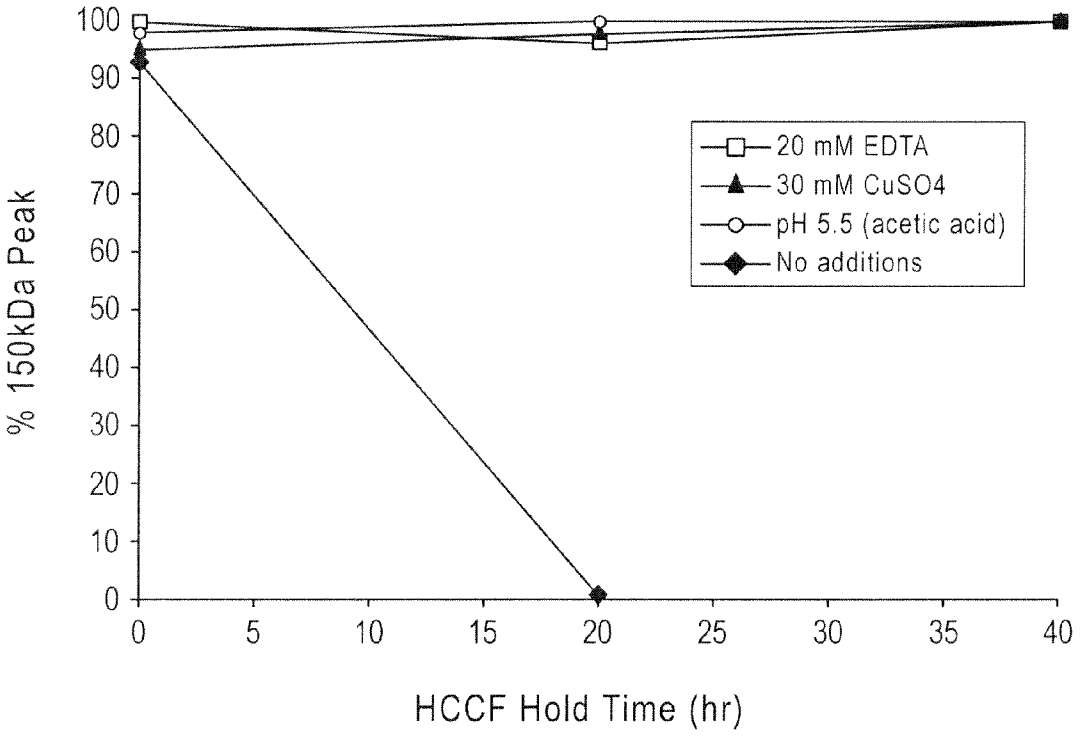

100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
% 150kDa Peak
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
HCCF Hold Time (hr)
20 mM EDTA
30 mM CuSO4
pH 5.5 (acetic acid)
No additions

FIG. 19

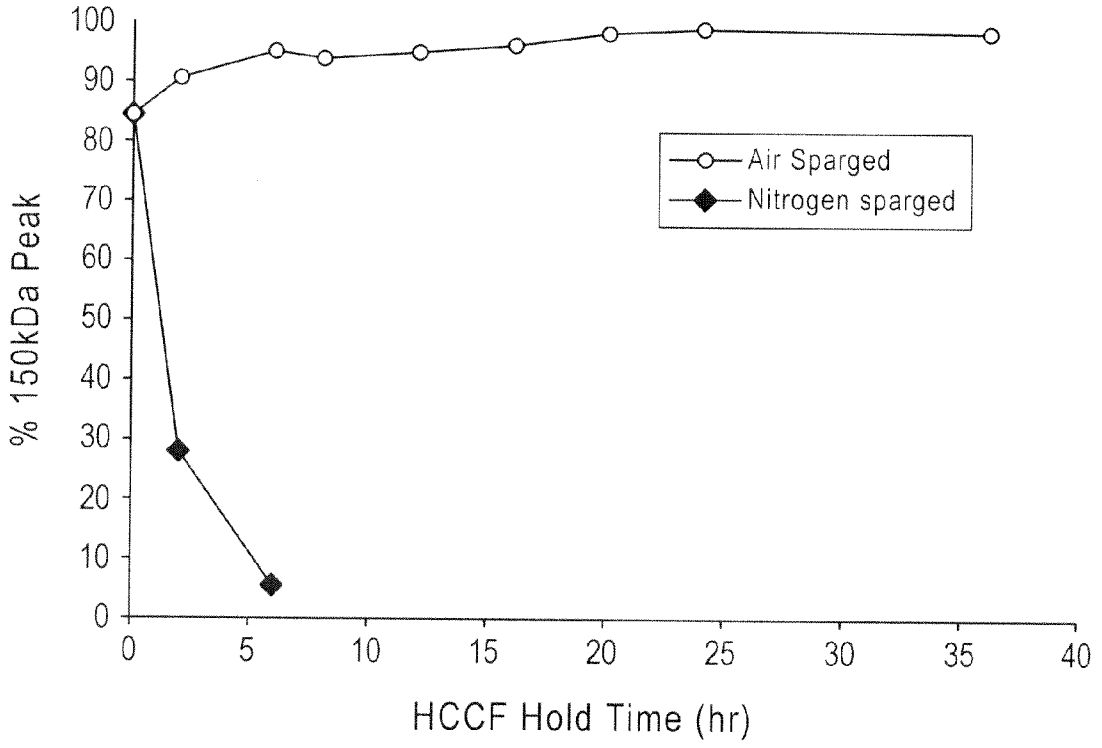

100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
% 150kDa Peak
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
HCCF Hold Time (hr)
Air Sparged
Nitrogen sparged

FIG. 20

Light Chain

```
1               15                  30                  45
DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVNTAVAWYQQKPGKAPK

46              60                  75                  90
LLIYSASFLYSGVPSRFSGSRSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQ

91            105
HYTTPPTFGQGTKVEIK
```

FIG. 21

Heavy Chain

```
1               15                  30                  45
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFNIKDTYIHWVRQAPGKGL

46              60                  75                  90
EWVARIYPTNGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAED

91            105                 120
TAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDYWGQGTLVTVSS
```

FIG. 22

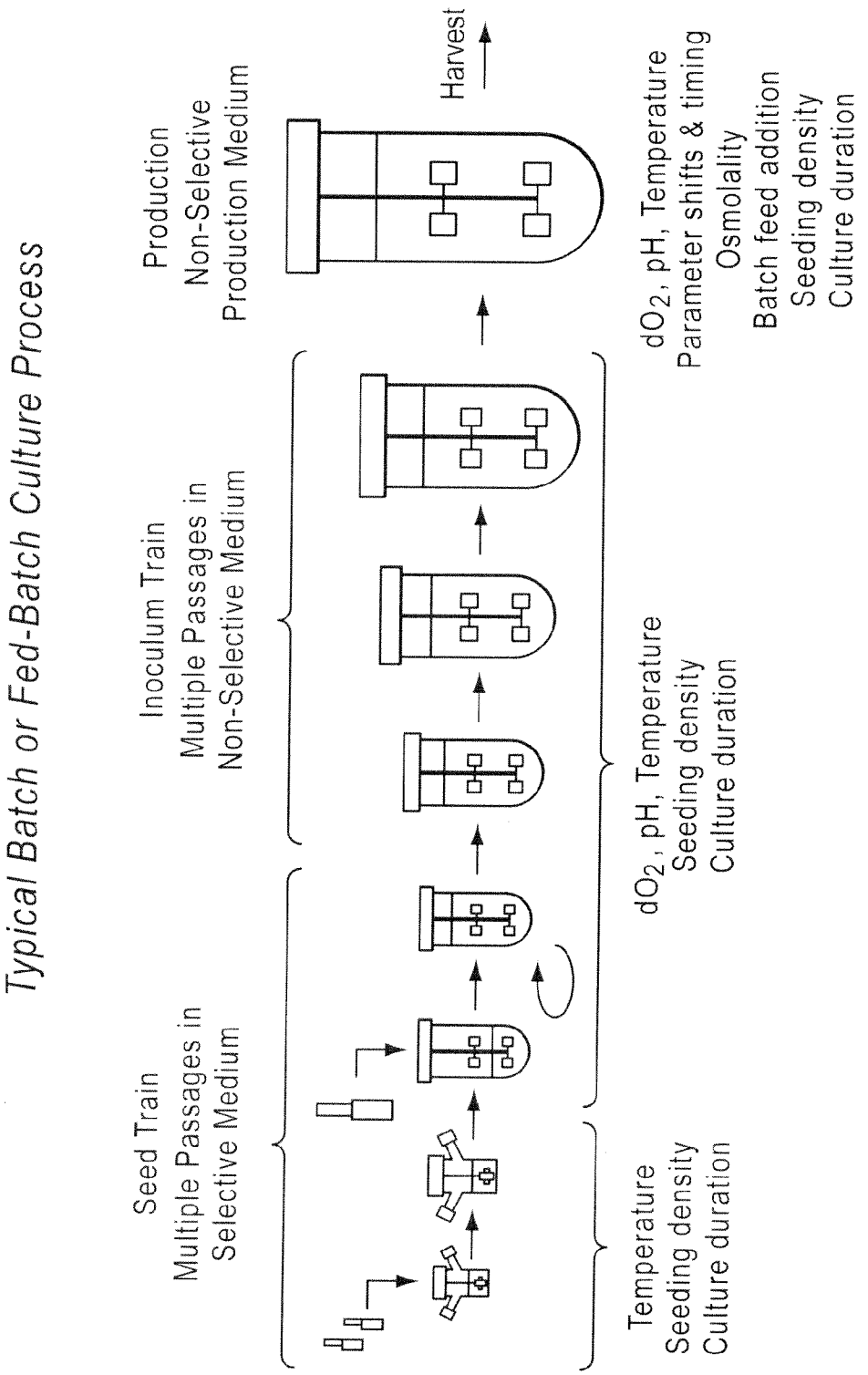

Typical Batch or Fed-Batch Culture Process
Seed Train
Multiple Passages in
Selective Medium
Inoculum Train
Multiple Passages in
Non-Selective Medium
Production
Non-Selective
Production Medium
Harvest
Temperature
Seeding density
Culture duration
dO2, pH, Temperature
Seeding density
Culture duration
dO2, pH, Temperature
Parameter shifts & timing
Osmolality
Batch feed addition
Seeding density
Culture duration

FIG. 23

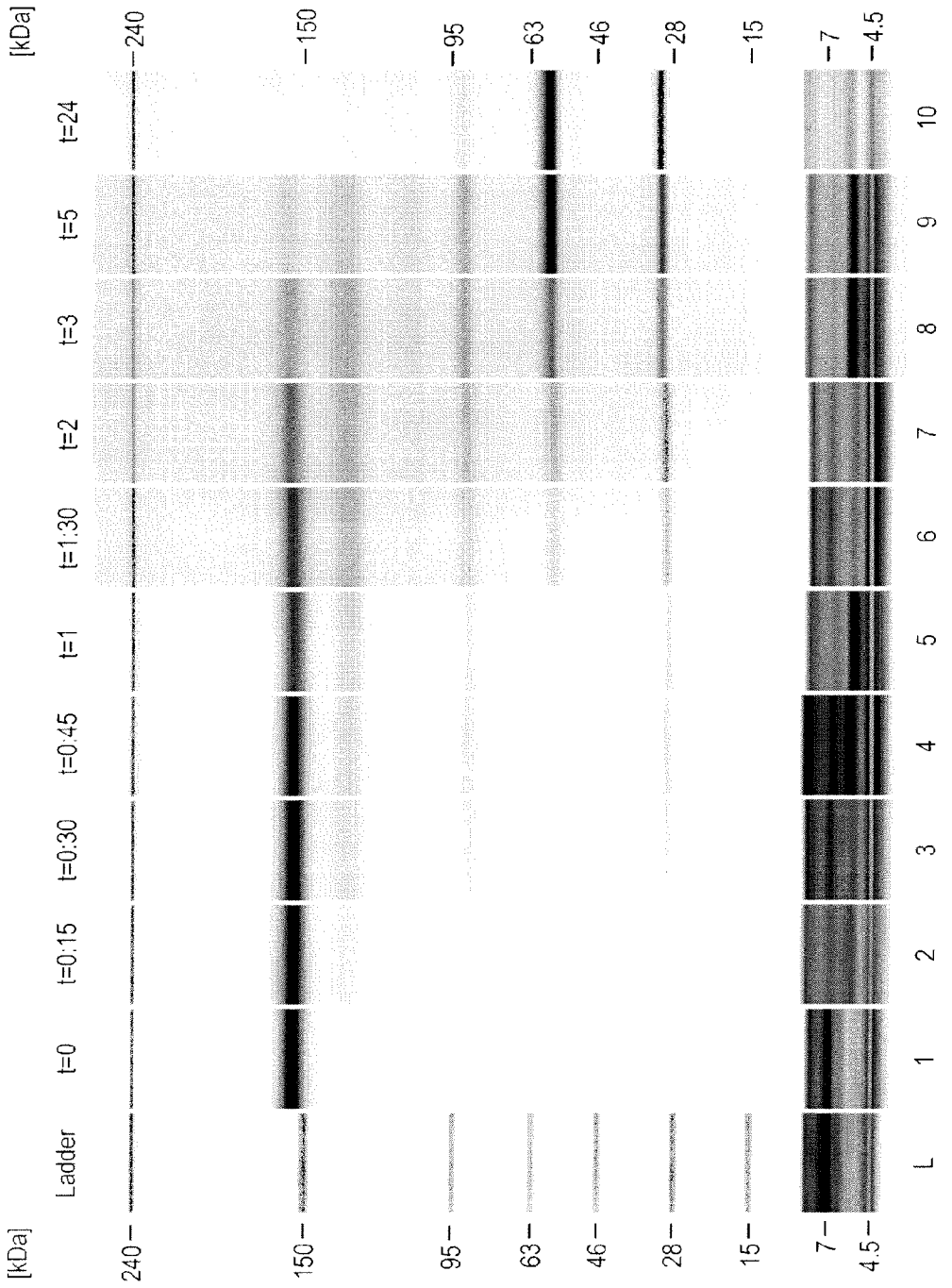

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
[kDa]
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 24

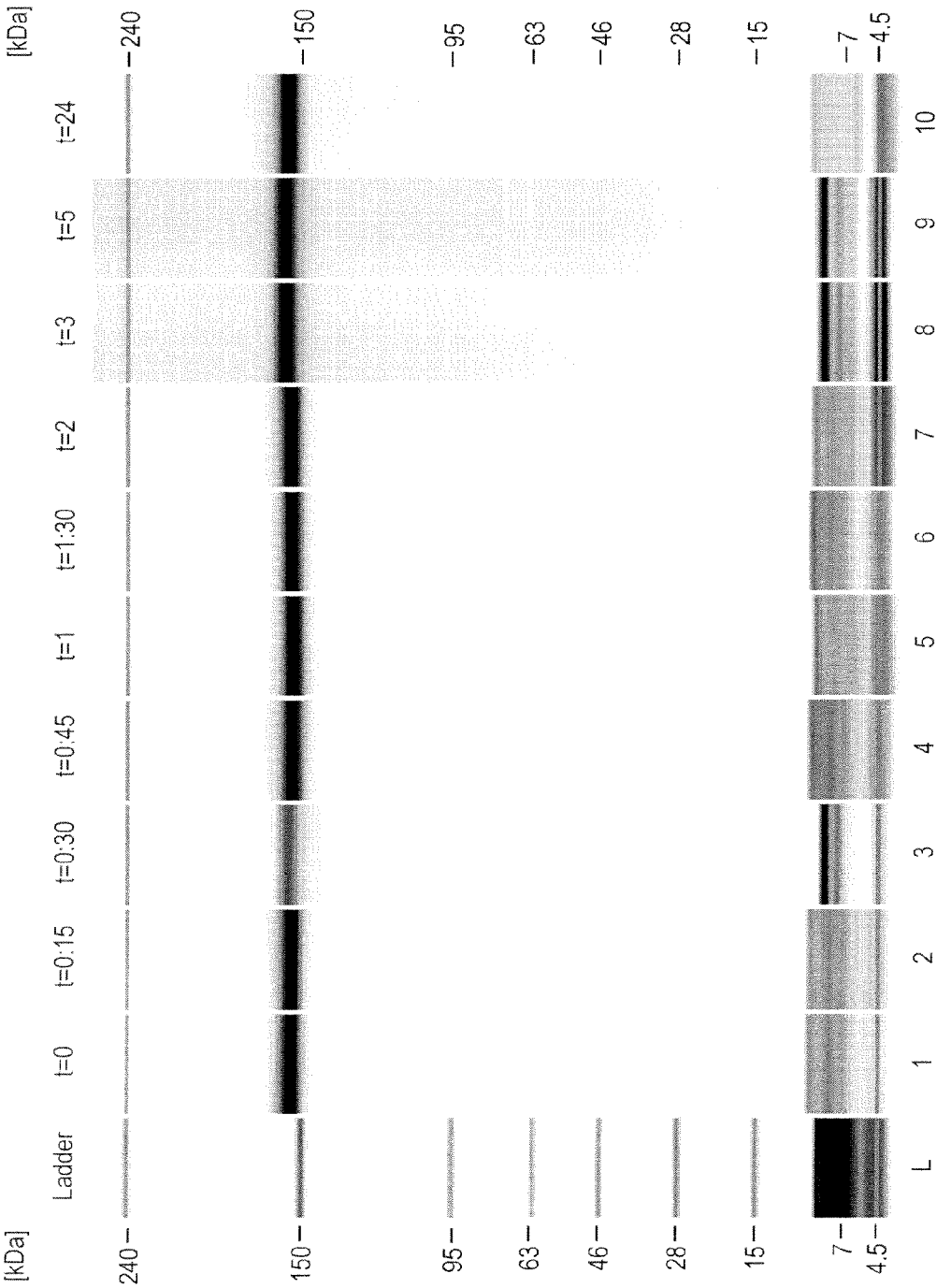

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 25

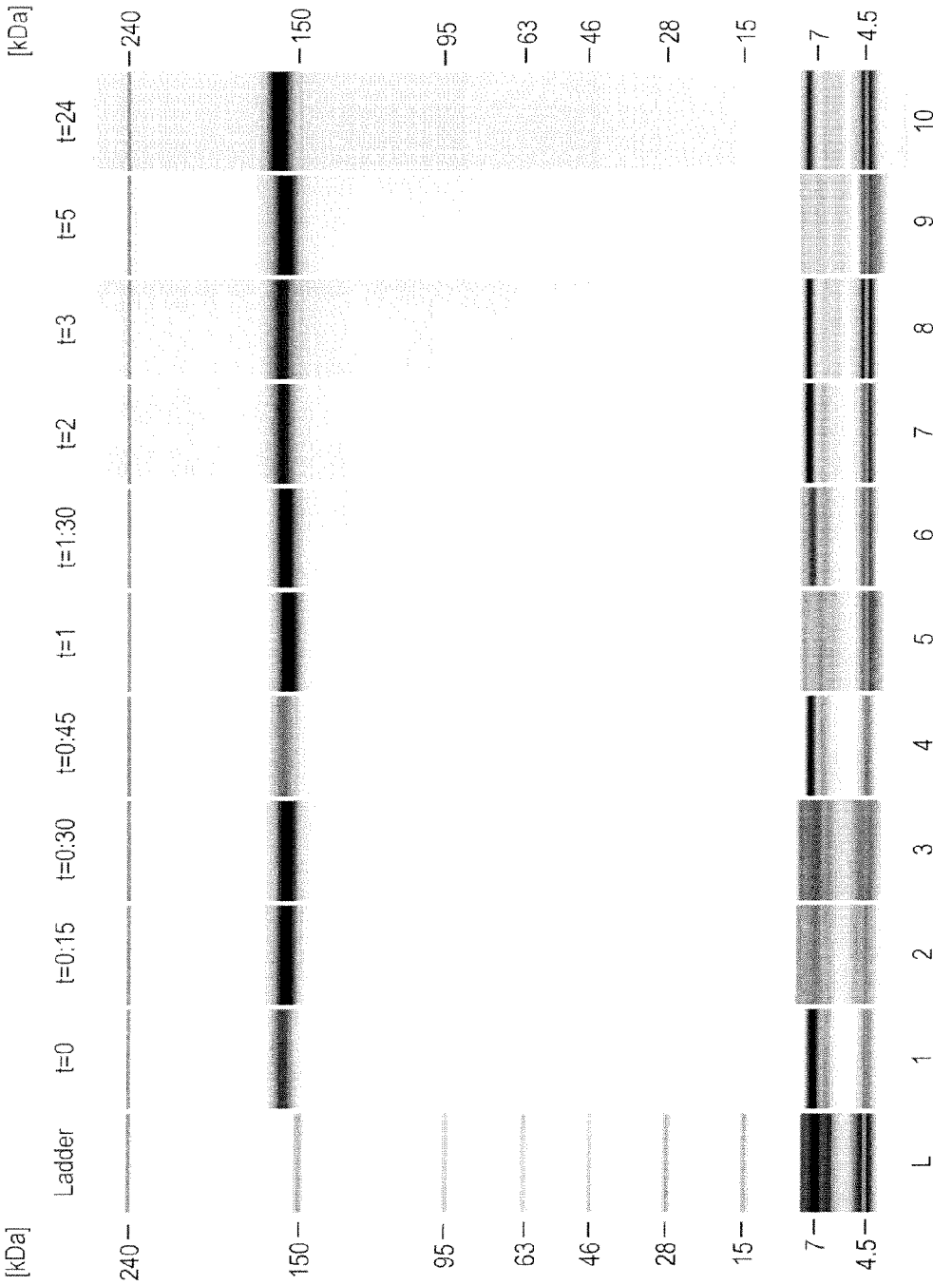

[kDa]
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 26

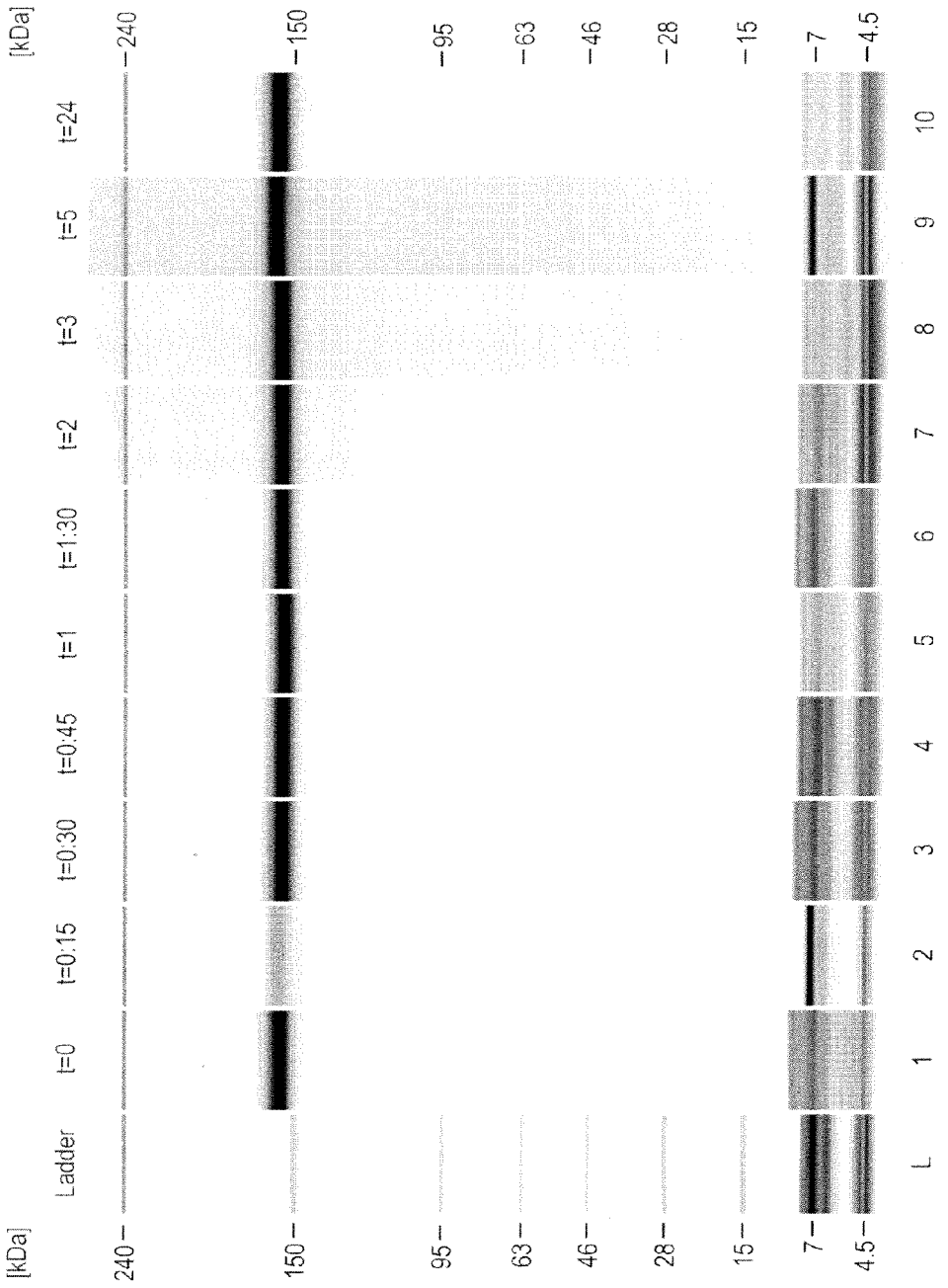

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 27

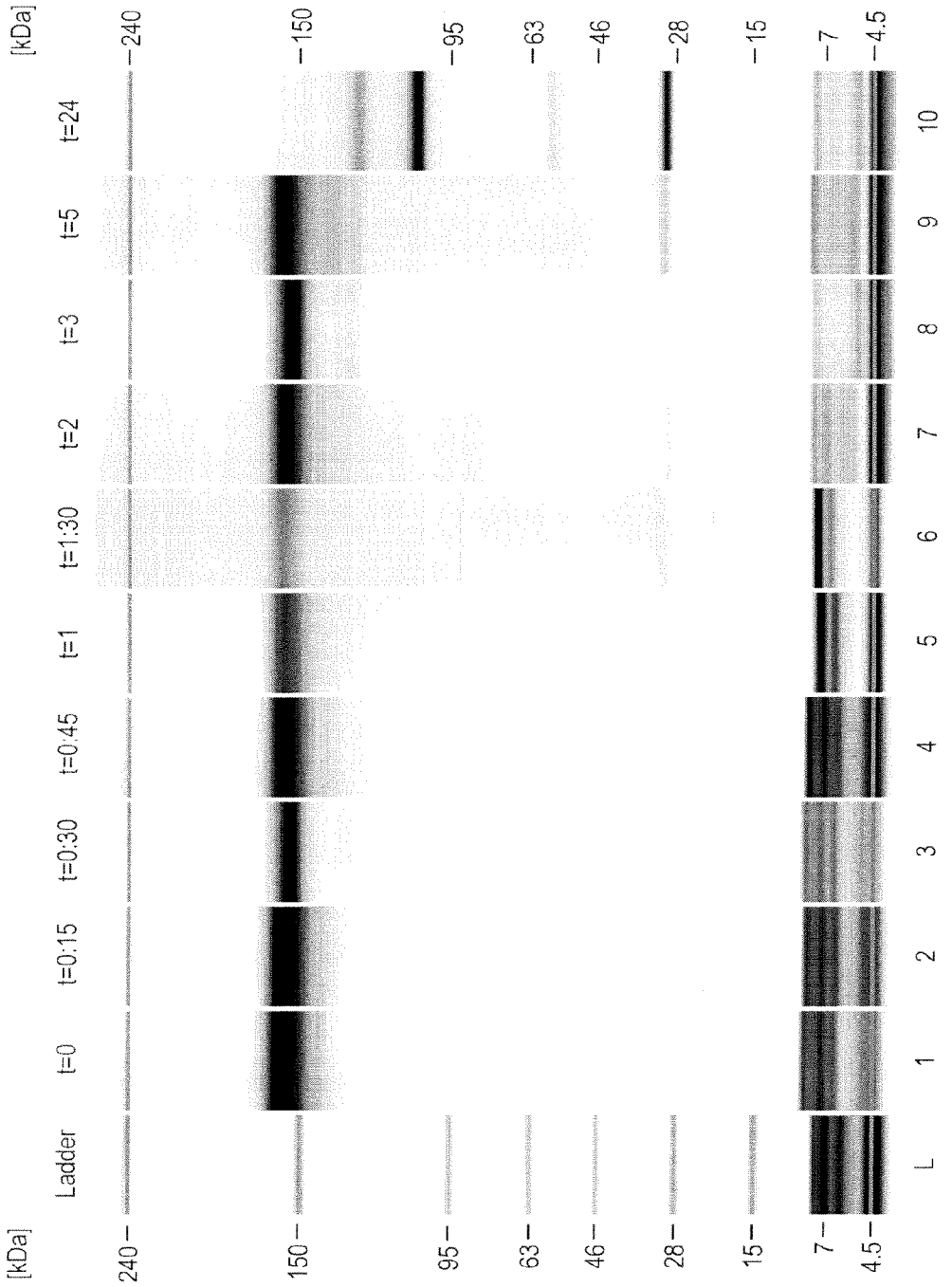

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 28

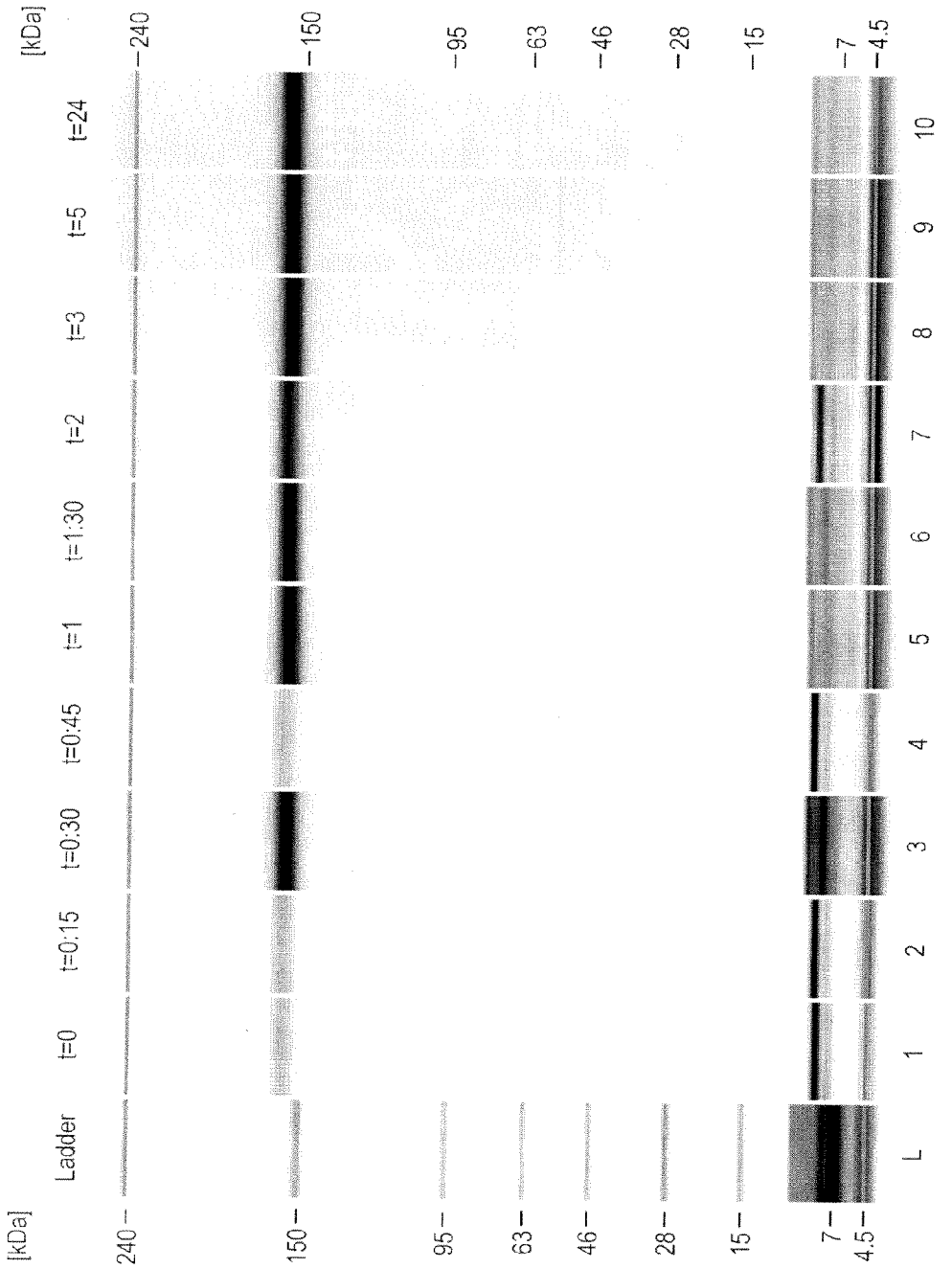

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 29

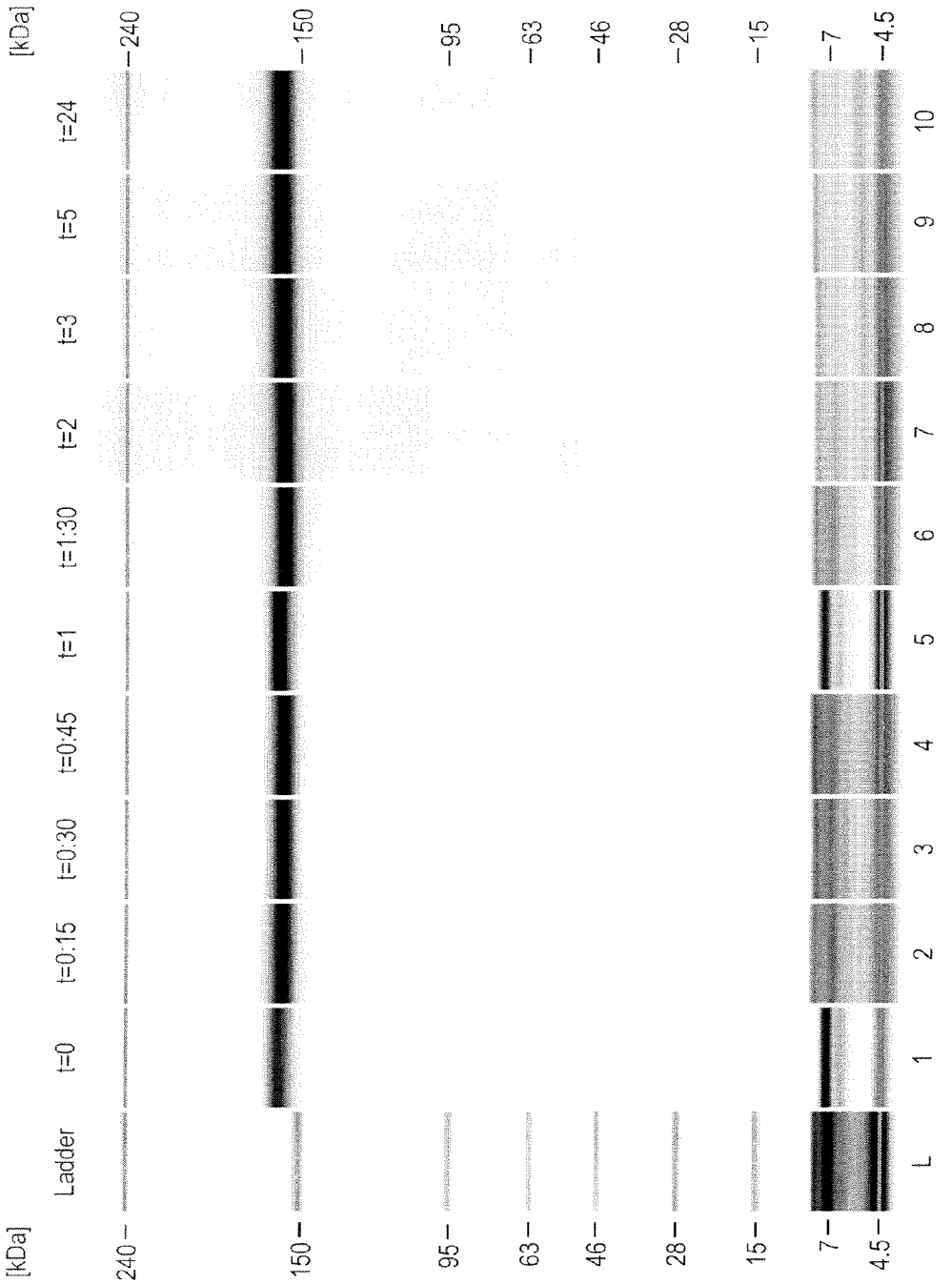

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 30

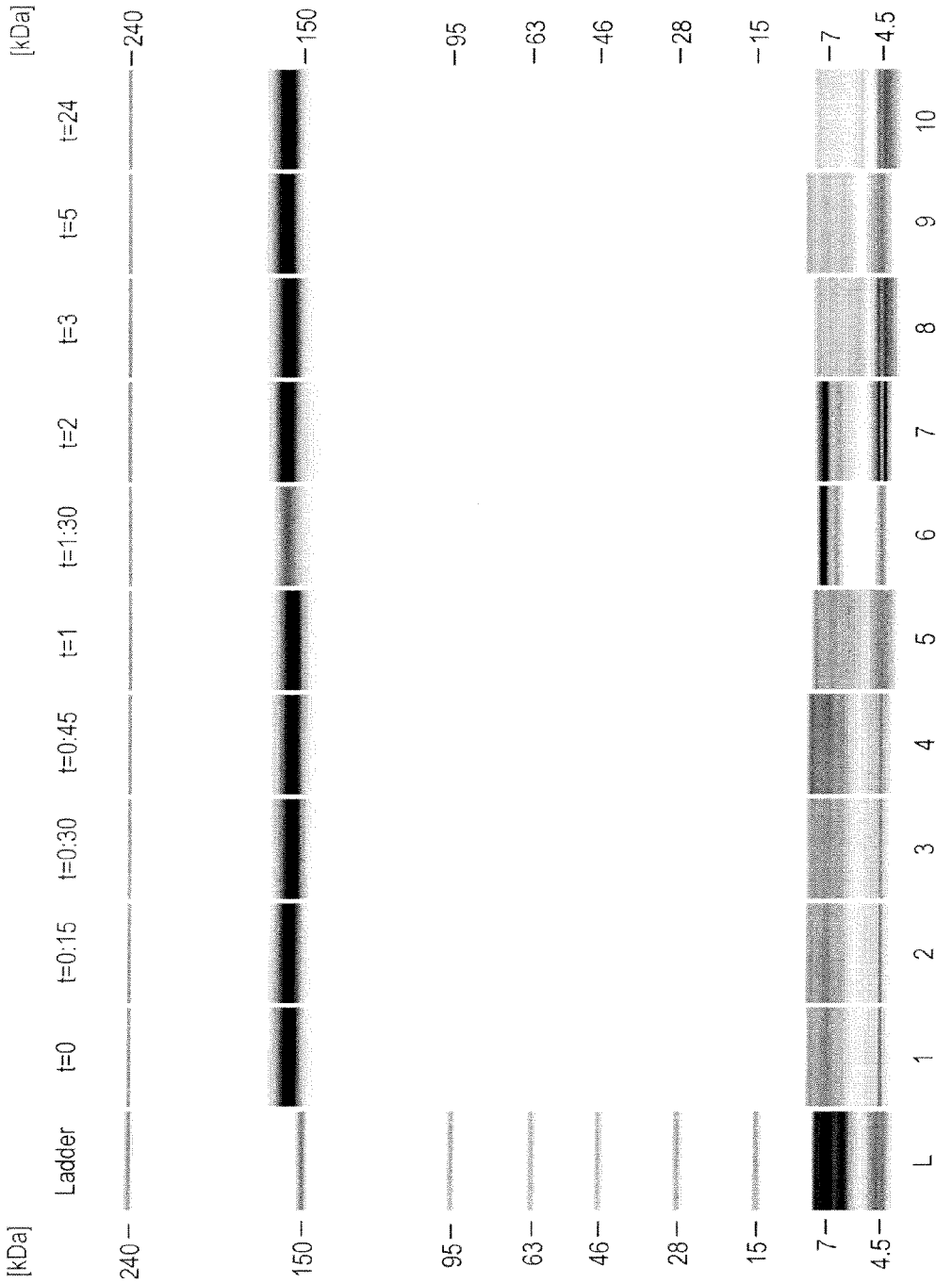

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 31

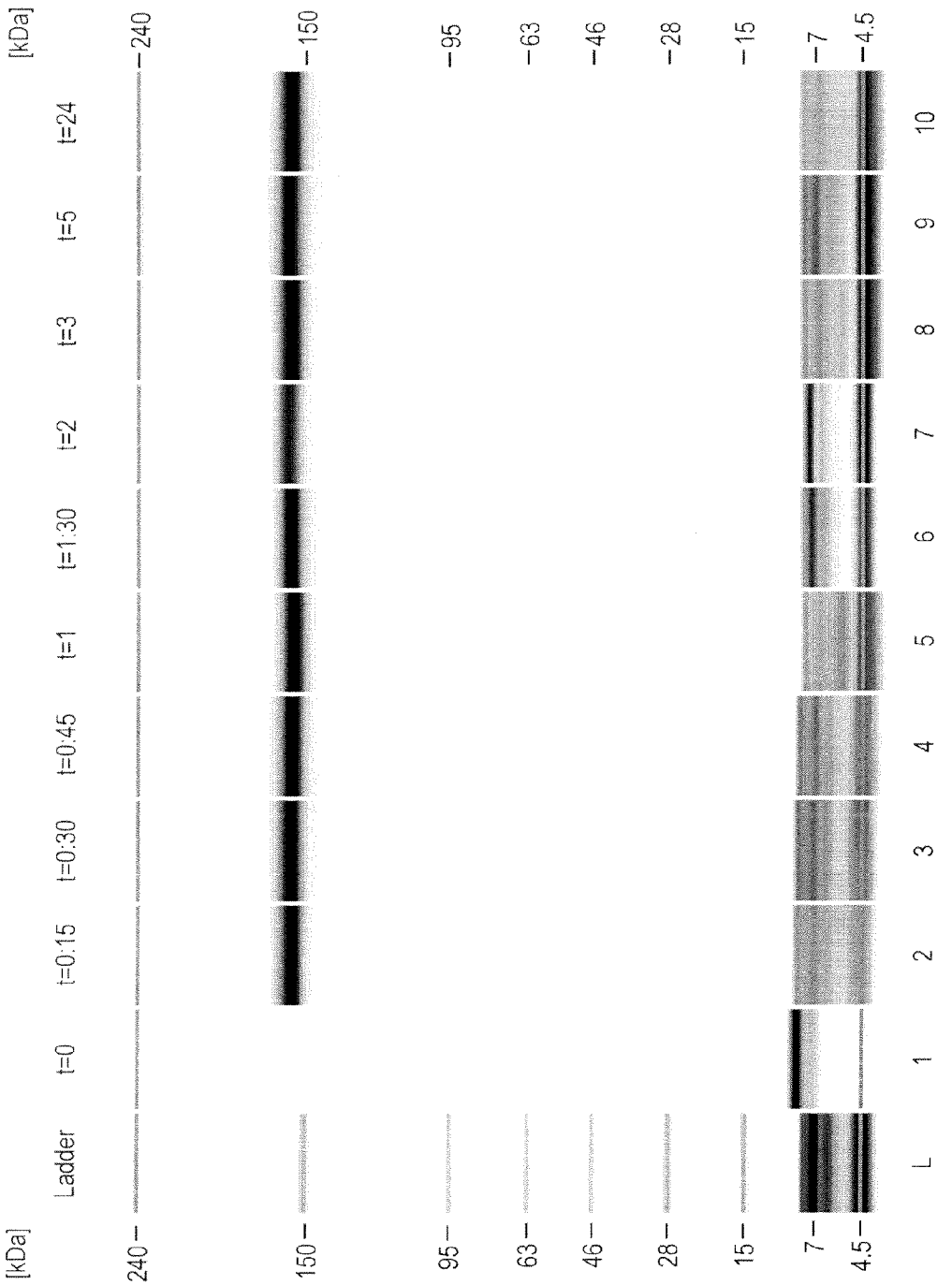

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
[kDa]
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 32

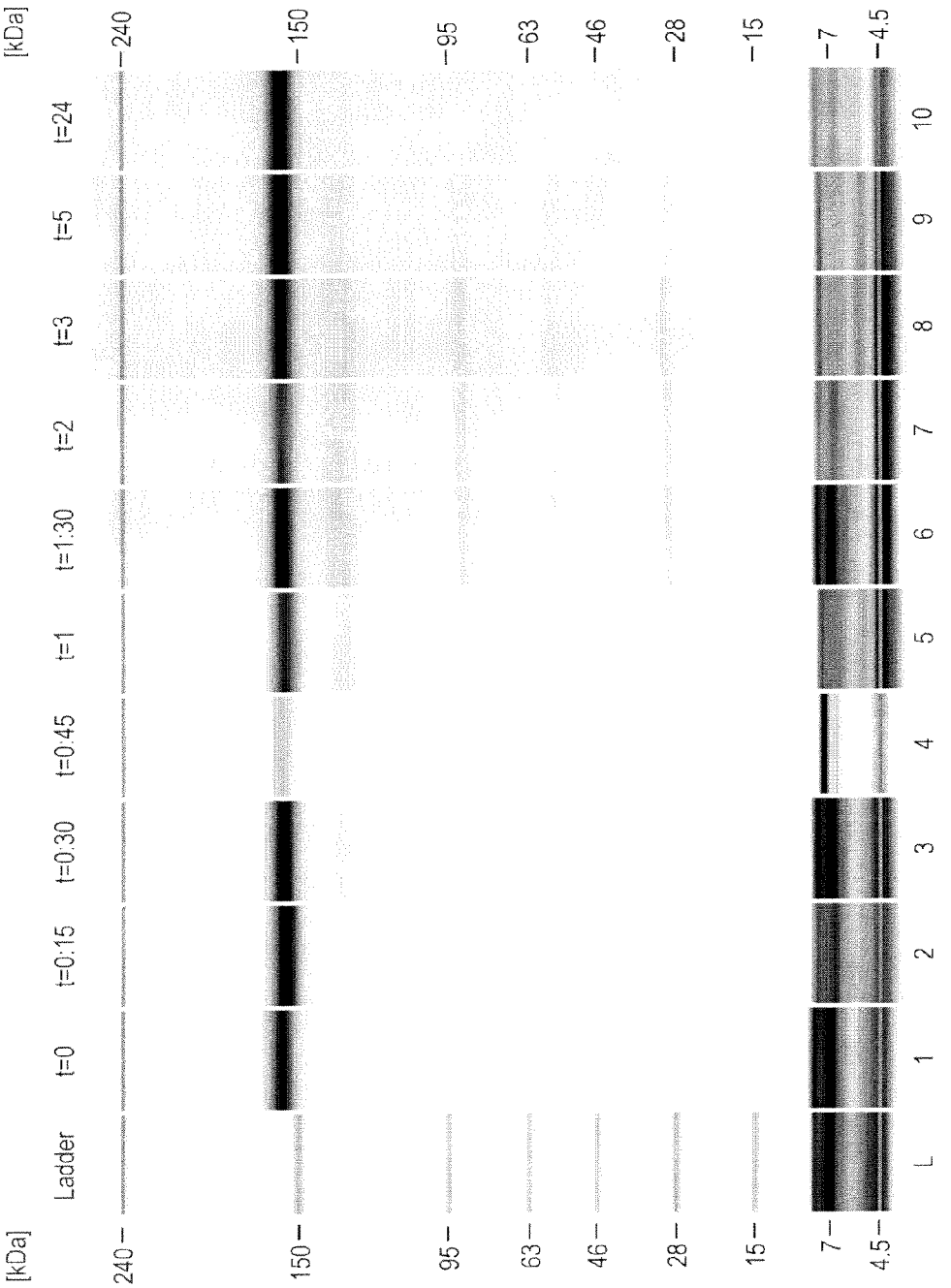

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 33

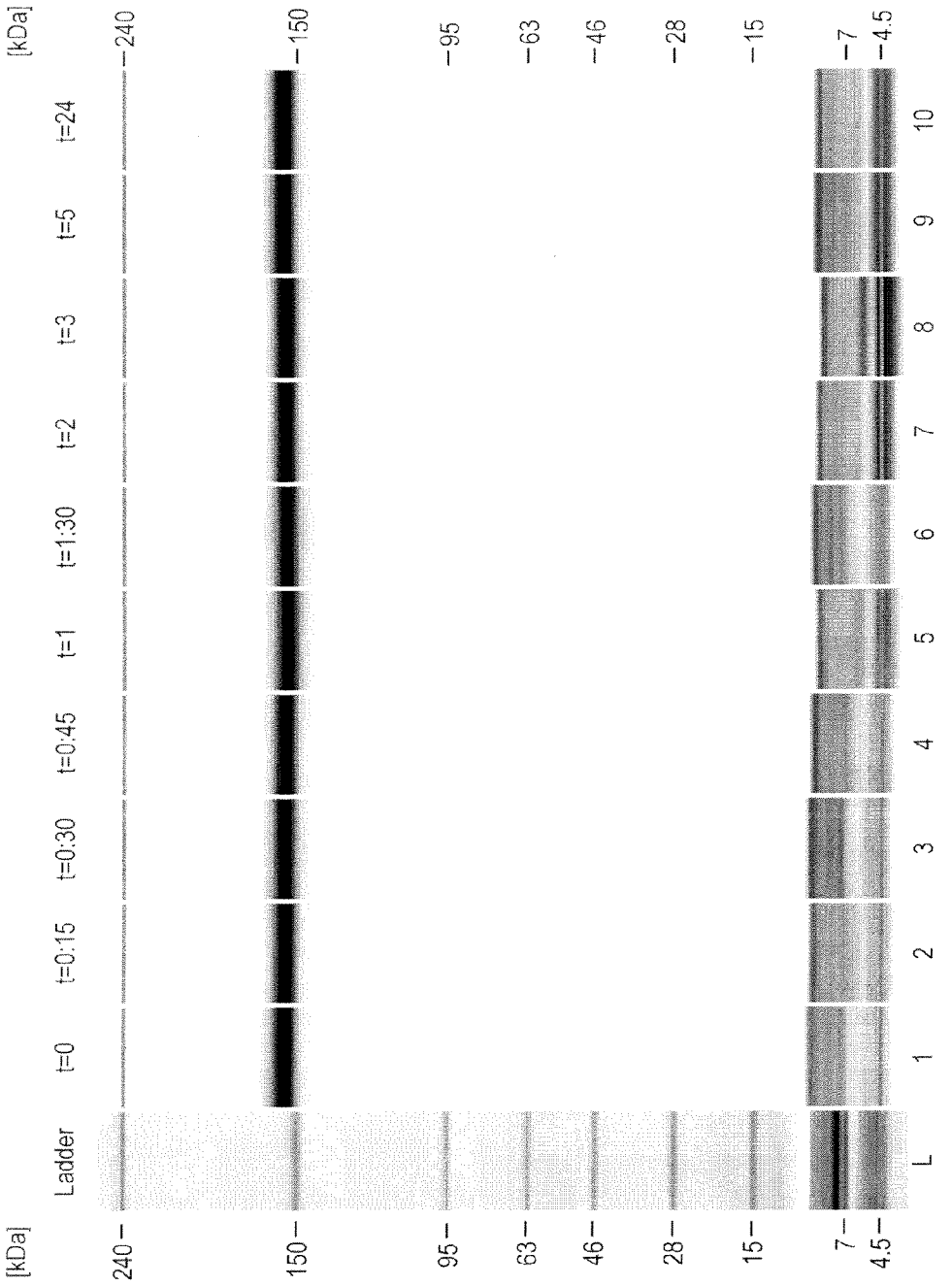

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 34

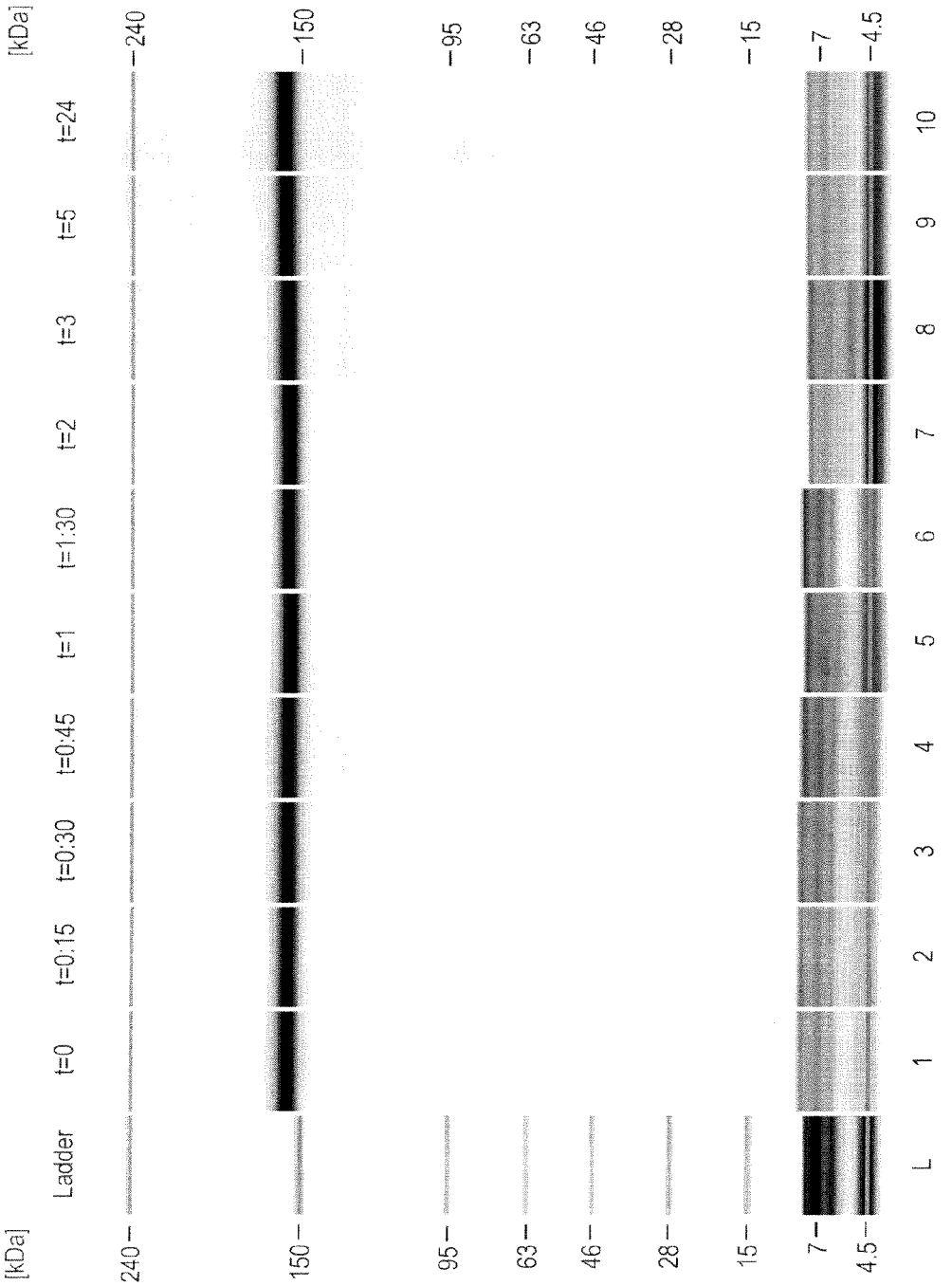

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 35

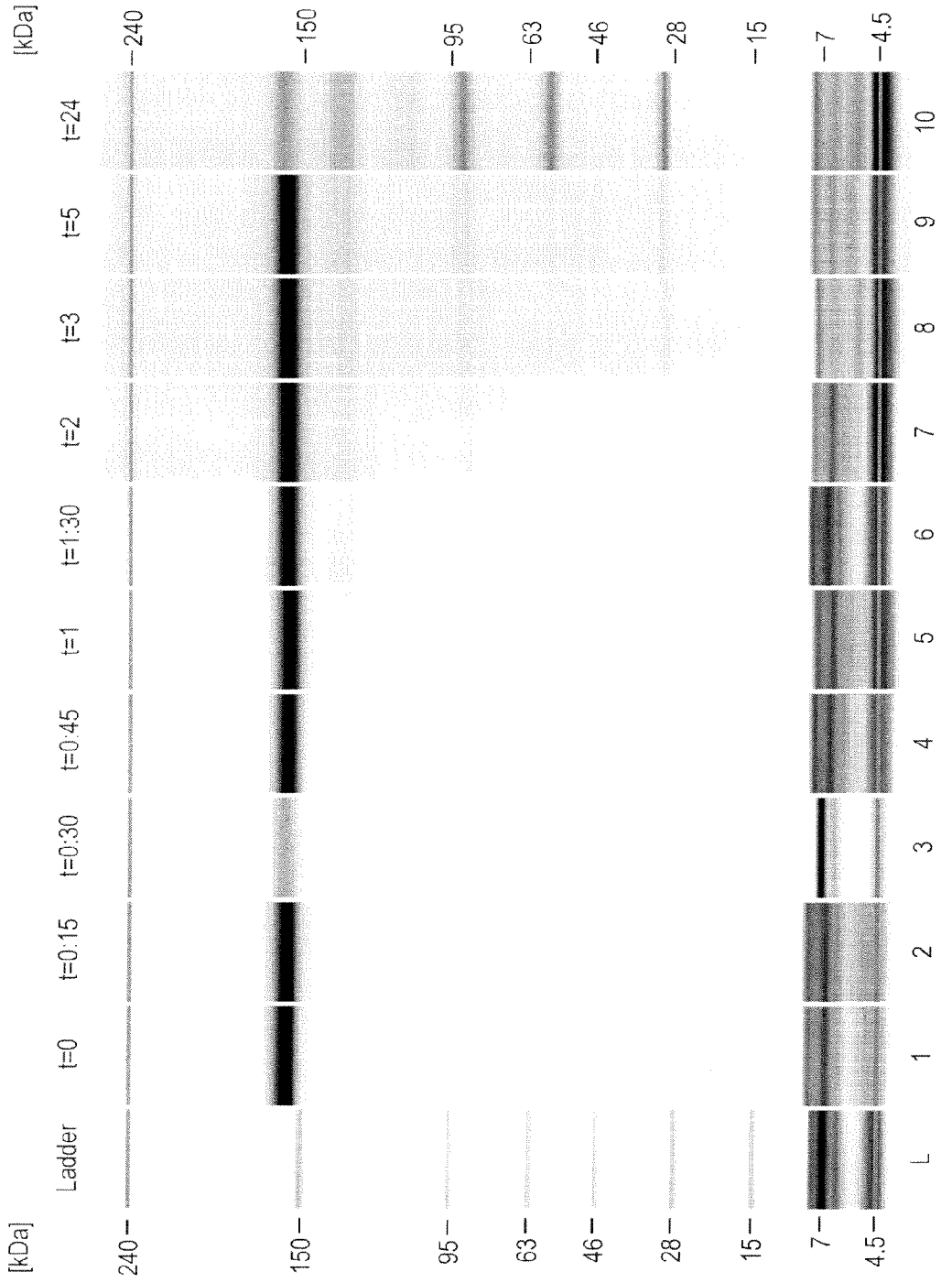

[kDa]
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 36

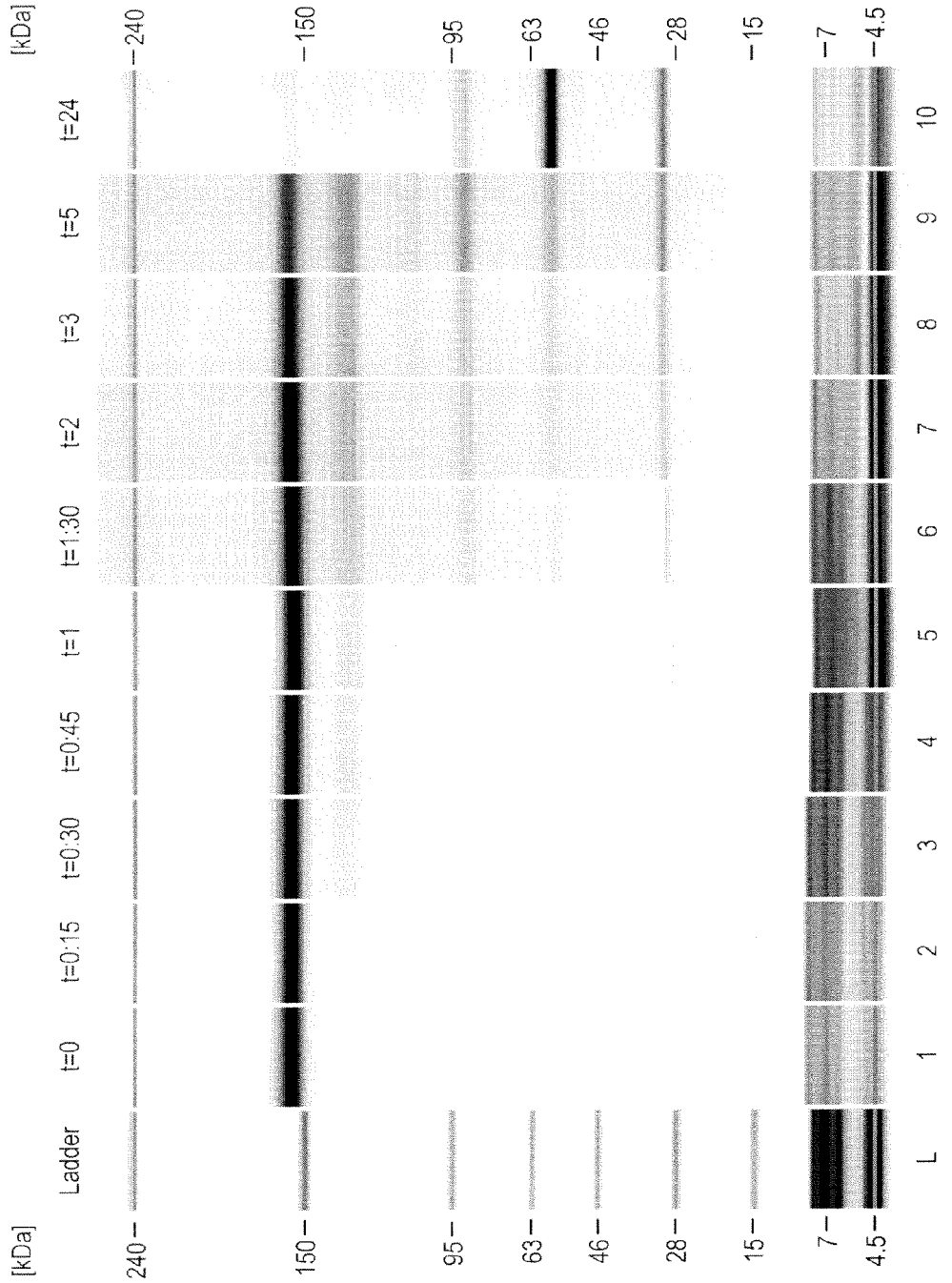

[kDa]
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

FIG. 37

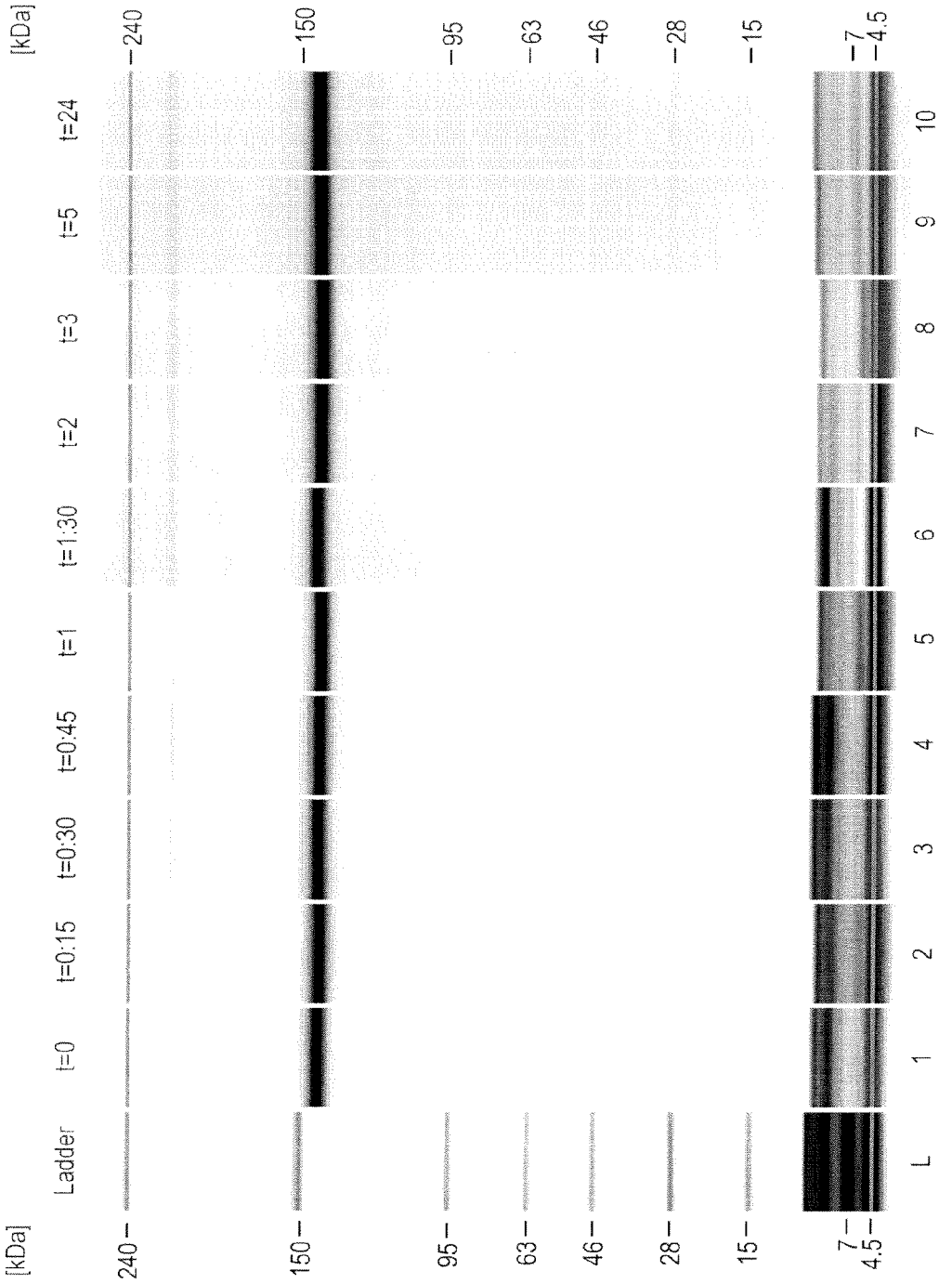

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=24
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 38

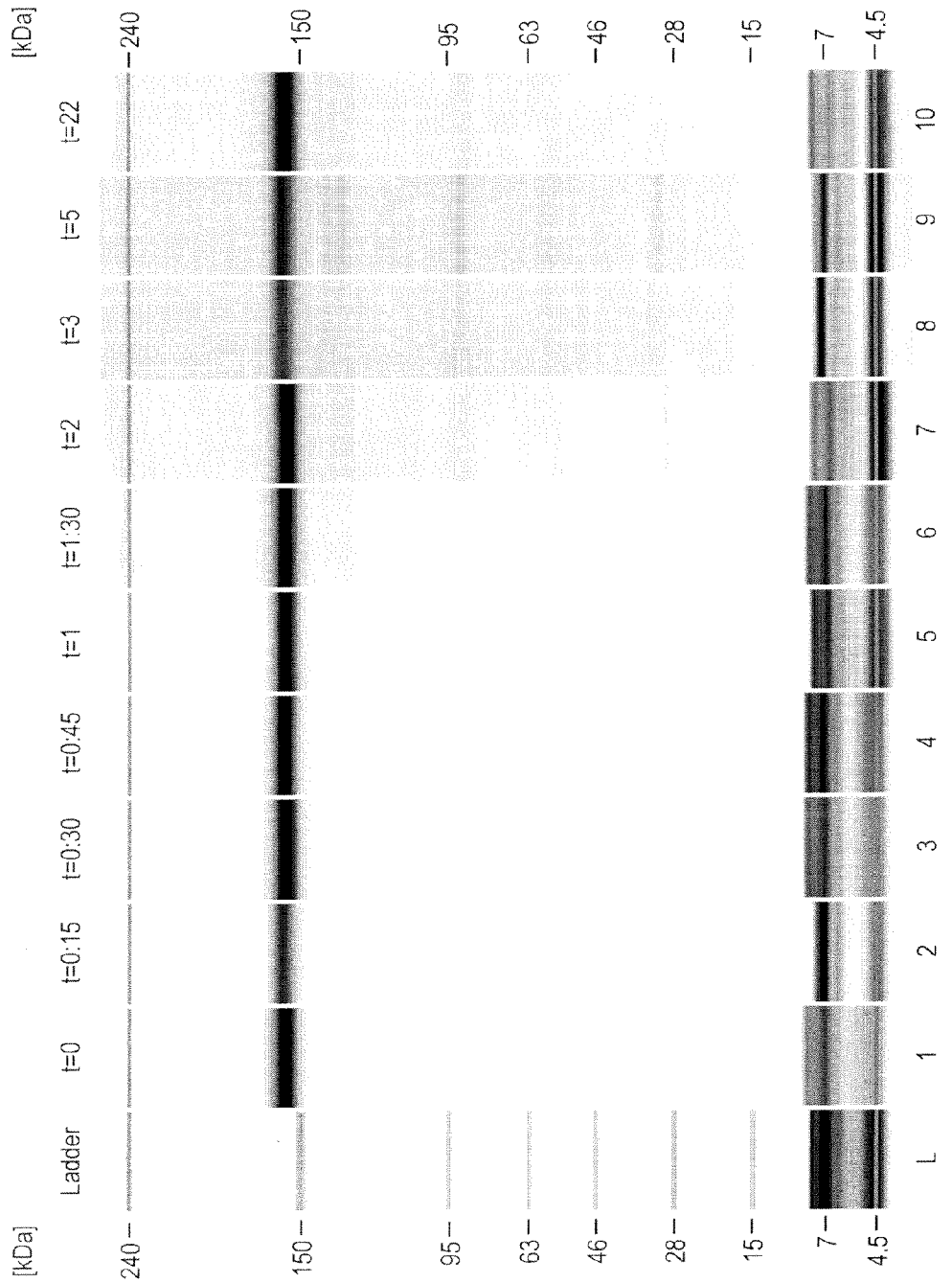

[kDa]
Ladder
t=0
t=0:15
t=0:30
t=0:45
t=1
t=1:30
t=2
t=3
t=5
t=22
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5

FIG. 39

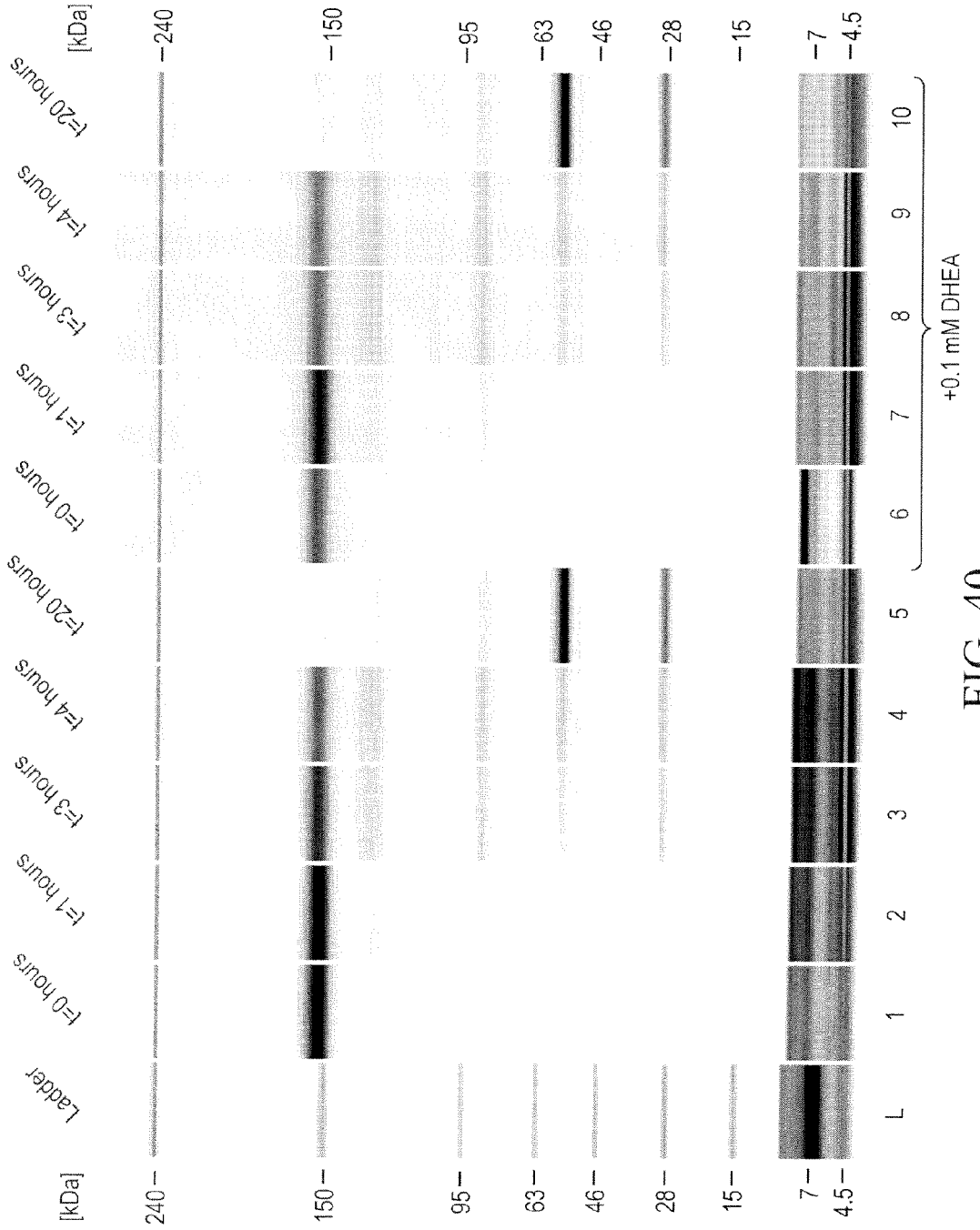

[kDa]
240
150
95
63
46
28
15
7
4.5
Ladder
t=0 hours
t=1 hours
t=3 hours
t=4 hours
t=20 hours
t=0 hours
t=1 hours
t=3 hours
t=4 hours
t=20 hours
L
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
+0.1 mM DHEA

FIG. 40

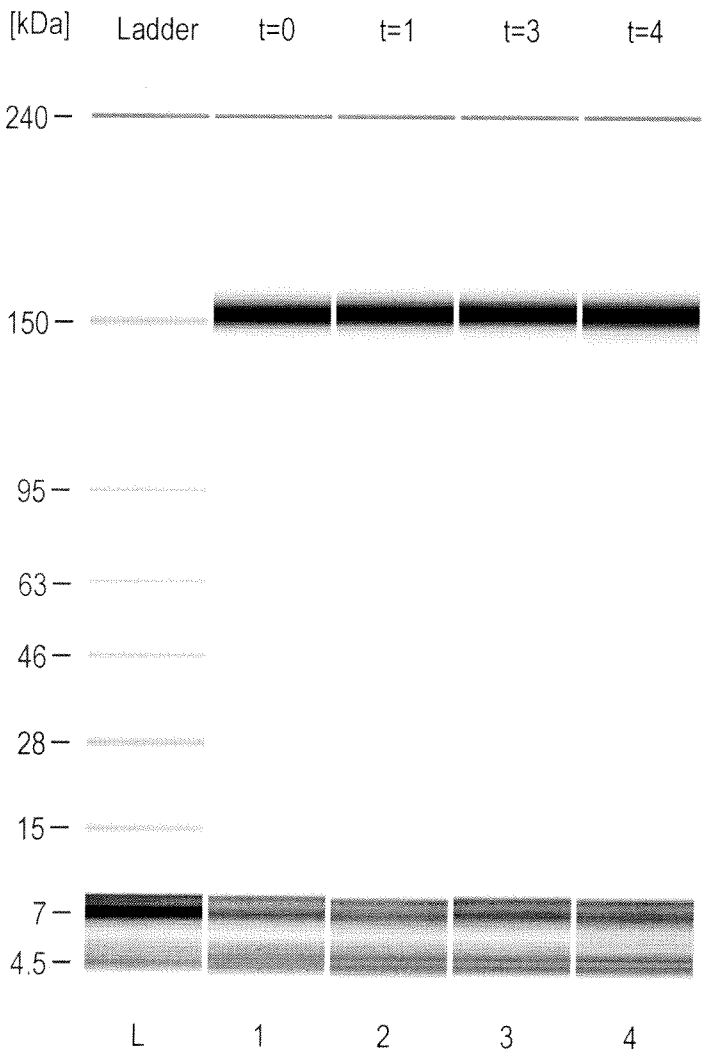


FIG. 41

PREVENTION OF DISULFIDE BOND REDUCTION DURING RECOMBINANT PRODUCTION OF POLYPEPTIDES

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation of U.S. application Ser. No. 12/217,745, filed Jul. 8, 2008, which is a non-provisional application filed under 37 CFR 1.53(b)(1), claiming priority under 35 USC 119(e) to provisional Application No. 60/948,677 filed Jul. 9, 2007, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The invention concerns methods and means for preventing the reduction of disulfide bonds during the recombinant production of disulfide-containing polypeptides. In particular, the invention concerns the prevention of disulfide bond reduction during harvesting of disulfide-containing polypeptides, including antibodies, from recombinant host cell cultures.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

In the biotechnology industry, pharmaceutical applications require a variety of proteins produced using recombinant DNA techniques. Generally, recombinant proteins are produced by cell culture, using either eukaryotic cells, such as mammalian cells, or prokaryotic cells, such as bacterial cells, engineered to produce the protein of interest by insertion of a recombinant plasmid containing the nucleic acid encoding the desired protein. For a protein to remain biologically active, the conformation of the protein, including its tertiary structure, must be maintained during its purification and isolation, and the protein's multiple functional groups must be protected from degradation.

Mammalian cells have become the dominant system for the production of mammalian proteins for clinical applications, primarily due to their ability to produce properly folded and assembled heterologous proteins, and their capacity for post-translational modifications. Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells, and cell lines obtained from various other mammalian sources, such as, for example, mouse myeloma (NS0), baby hamster kidney (BHK), human embryonic kidney (HEK-293) and human retinal cells, such as the PER.C6® cell line isolated from a human retinal cell, which provides human glycosylation characteristics, and is able to naturally produce antibodies that match human physiology, have been approved by regulatory agencies for the production of biopharmaceutical products.

Usually, to begin the production cycle, a small number of transformed recombinant host cells are allowed to grow in culture for several days (see, e.g., FIG. **23**). Once the cells have undergone several rounds of replication, they are transferred to a larger container where they are prepared to undergo fermentation. The media in which the cells are grown and the levels of oxygen, nitrogen and carbon dioxide that exist during the production cycle may have a significant impact on the production process. Growth parameters are determined specifically for each cell line and these parameters are measured frequently to assure optimal growth and production conditions.

When the cells grow to sufficient numbers, they are transferred to large-scale production tanks and grown for a longer period of time. At this point in the process, the recombinant protein can be harvested. Typically, the cells are engineered to secrete the polypeptide into the cell culture media, so the first step in the purification process is to separate the cells from the media. Typically, harvesting includes centrifugation and filtration to produce a Harvested Cell Culture Fluid (HCCF). The media is then subjected to several additional purification steps that remove any cellular debris, unwanted proteins, salts, minerals or other undesirable elements. At the end of the purification process, the recombinant protein is highly pure and is suitable for human therapeutic use.

Although this process has been the subject of much study and improvements over the past several decades, the production of recombinant proteins is still not without difficulties. Thus, for example, during the recombinant production of polypeptides comprising disulfide bonds, especially multi-chain polypeptides comprising inter-chain disulfide bonds such as antibodies, it is essential to protect and retain the disulfide bonds throughout the manufacturing, recovery and purification process, in order to produce properly folded polypeptides with the requisite biological activity.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The instant invention generally relates to a method for preventing reduction of a disulfide bond in a polypeptide expressed in a recombinant host cell, comprising supplementing the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid of the recombinant host cell with an inhibitor of thioredoxin or a thioredoxin-like protein.

In one embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is added to the pre-harvest culture fluid.

In another embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is added to the harvested culture fluid.

In a further embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is a direct inhibitor of thioredoxin.

In all embodiments, the thioredoxin inhibitor may, for example, be an alkyl-2-imidazolyl disulfide or a naphthoquinone spiroketal derivative.

In a further embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is a specific inhibitor of thioredoxin reductase.

In a still further embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is a gold complex, where the gold complex may, for example, be aurothioglucose (ATG) or aurothiomalate (ATM). While the effective inhibitory concentration may vary, it typically is between about 0.1 mM and 1 mM. Similarly, the minimum effective inhibitory concentration varies depending on the nature of the polypeptide and overall circumstances, and is typically reached when the ATG or ATG concentration is at least about four-times of thioreduxin concentration in the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid.

In another embodiment of this aspect of the invention, the thioredoxin inhibitor is a metal ion, where the metal ion, without limitation, may be selected from the group consisting of Hg^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, Co^{2+}, and Mn^{2+}. When the metal ion is added in the form of cupric sulfate, the effective inhibitory concentration generally is between about 5 μM and about 100 μM, or between about 10 μM and about 80 μM, or between about 15 μM and about 50 μM. The minimum inhibitory concentration of cupric sulfate also varies, but typically is reached when cupric sulfate is added at a concentration at least about two-times of thioredoxin concentration in the pre-harves or harvested culture fluid.

In different embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is an oxidizing agent, e.g., an inhibitor of G6PD, such as, for example, pyridoxal 5'-phosphate, 1 fluoro-2,4 dinitrobenzene, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) or epiandrosterone (EA); cystine or cysteine. Typical effective inhibitor concen-

trations of DHEA are between about 0.05 mM and about 5 mM, or between about 0.1 mM and about 2.5 mM.

In a further embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is an inhibitor of hexokinase activity, including, without limitation, chelators of metal ions, such as, for example, ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA). EDTA is typically added and effective at a concentration between about 5 mM and about 60 mM, or about 10 mM and about 50 mM, or about 20 mM and about 40 mM.

In other preferred embodiments, the inhibitor of hexokinase activity is selected from the group consisting of sorbose-1-phosphate, polyphosphates, 6-deoxy-6-fluoroglucose, 2-C-hydroxy-methylglucose, xylose, and lyxose.

Other inhibitors include cystine, cysteine, and oxidized glutathione which are typically added at a concentration at least about 40-times of the concentration of the polypeptide in question in the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid.

In a still further embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is an siRNA, an antisense nucleotide, or an antibody specifically binding to a thioredoxin reductase.

In another embodiment, the thioredoxin inhibitor is a measure indirectly resulting in the inhibition of thioredoxin activity. This embodiment includes, for example, air sparging the harvested culture fluid of the recombinant host cell, and/or lowering the pH of the harvested culture fluid of the recombinant host cell.

In various embodiments, indirect means for inhibiting thioredoxin activity, such as air sparging and/or lowering of the pH, can be combined with the use of direct thioredoxin inhibitors, such as those listed above.

In all embodiments, the polypeptide may, for example, be an antibody, or a biologically functional fragment of an antibody. Representative antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, scFv, $(scFv)_2$, dAb, complementarity determining region (CDR) fragments, linear antibodies, single-chain antibody molecules, minibodies, diabodies, and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

Therapeutic antibodies include, without limitation, anti-HER2 antibodies anti-CD20 antibodies; anti-IL-8 antibodies; anti-VEGF antibodies; anti-CD40 antibodies, anti-CD11a antibodies; anti-CD18 antibodies; anti-IgE antibodies; anti-Apo-2 receptor antibodies; anti-Tissue Factor (TF) antibodies; anti-human $\alpha_4\beta_7$ integrin antibodies; anti-EGFR antibodies; anti-CD3 antibodies; anti-CD25 antibodies; anti-CD4 antibodies; anti-CD52 antibodies; anti-Fc receptor antibodies; anti-carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) antibodies; antibodies directed against breast epithelial cells; antibodies that bind to colon carcinoma cells; anti-CD38 antibodies; anti-CD33 antibodies; anti-CD22 antibodies; anti-EpCAM antibodies; anti-GpIIb/IIIa antibodies; anti-RSV antibodies; anti-CMV antibodies; anti-HIV antibodies; anti-hepatitis antibodies; anti-CA 125 antibodies; anti-$\alpha v\beta 3$ antibodies; anti-human renal cell carcinoma antibodies; anti-human 17-1A antibodies; anti-human colorectal tumor antibodies; anti-human melanoma antibody R24 directed against GD3 ganglioside; anti-human squamous-cell carcinoma; and anti-human leukocyte antigen (HLA) antibodies, and anti-HLA DR antibodies.

In other embodiments, the therapeutic antibody is an antibody binding to a HER receptor, VEGF, IgE, CD20, CD11a, CD40, or DR5.

In a further embodiment, the HER receptor is HER1 and/or HER2, preferably HER2. The HER2 antibody may, for example, comprise a heavy and/or light chain variable domain sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO: 16, 17, 18, and 19.

In another embodiment, the therapeutic antibody is an antibody that binds to CD20. The anti-CD20 antibody may, for example, comprise a heavy and/or light chain variable domain sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOS: 1 through 15.

In yet another embodiment, the therapeutic antibody is an antibody that binds to VEGF. The anti-VEGF antibody may, for example, comprise a heavy and/or light chain variable domain sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOS: 20 through 25.

In an additional embodiment, the therapeutic antibody is an antibody that binds CD11a. The anti-CD11a antibody may, for example, comprise a heavy and/or light chain variable domain sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOS: 26 through 29.

In a further embodiment, the therapeutic antibody binds to a DR5 receptor. The anti-DR5 antibody may, for example, be selected from the group consisting of Apomabs 1.1, 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 6.1, 6.2, 6.3, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 8.1, 8.3, 9.1, 1.2, 2.2, 3.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2, 7.2, 8.2, 9.2, 1.3, 2.2, 3.3, 4.3, 5.3, 6.3, 7.3, 8.3, 9.3, and 25.3, and preferably is Apomab 8.3 or Apomab 7.3, and most preferably Apomab 7.3.

In other embodiments of the method of the present invention, the polypeptide expressed in the recombinant host cell is a therapeutic polypeptide. For example, the therapeutic polypeptide can be selected from the group consisting of a growth hormone, including human growth hormone and bovine growth hormone; growth hormone releasing factor; parathyroid hormone; thyroid stimulating hormone; lipoproteins; alpha-1-antitrypsin; insulin A-chain; insulin B-chain; proinsulin; follicle stimulating hormone; calcitonin; luteinizing hormone; glucagon; clotting factors such as factor VIIIC, factor IX, tissue factor, and von Willebrands factor; anti-clotting factors such as Protein C; atrial natriuretic factor; lung surfactant; a plasminogen activator, such as urokinase or human urine or tissue-type plasminogen activator (t-PA); bombesin; thrombin; hemopoietic growth factor; tumor necrosis factor-alpha and -beta; enkephalinase; RANTES (regulated on activation normally T-cell expressed and secreted); human macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP-1-alpha); a serum albumin such as human serum albumin; Muellerian-inhibiting substance; relaxin A-chain; relaxin B-chain; prorelaxin; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; a microbial protein, such as beta-lactamase; DNase; IgE; a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte associated antigen (CTLA), such as CTLA-4; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF); receptors for hormones or growth factors; Protein A or D; rheumatoid factors; a neurotrophic factor such as bone-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), neurotrophin-3, -4, -5, or -6 (NT-3, NT-4, NT-5, or NT-6), or a nerve growth factor such as NGF-β; platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF); fibroblast growth factor such as aFGF and bFGF; epidermal growth factor (EGF); transforming growth factor (TGF) such as TGF-alpha and TGF-beta, including TGF-β1, TGF-β2, TGF-β3, TGF-β4, or TGF-β5; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II (IGF-I and IGF-II); des(1-3)-IGF-I (brain IGF-I), insulin-like growth factor binding proteins; CD proteins such as CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD20, CD34, and CD40; erythropoietin; osteoinductive factors; immunotoxins; a bone morphogenetic protein (BMP); an interferon such as interferon-alpha, -beta, and -gamma; colony stimulating factors (CSFs), e.g., M-CSF, GM-CSF, and G-CSF; interleukins (ILs), e.g., IL-1 to IL-10; superoxide dismutase; T-cell receptors; surface membrane proteins; decay accelerating factor; viral antigen such as, for example, a portion of the AIDS envelope; transport proteins; homing receptors; addressins; regulatory proteins; integrins such as CD11a, CD11b, CD11c, CD18, an

ICAM, VLA-4 and VCAM; a tumor associated antigen such as HER2, HER3 or HER4 receptor; and fragments of said polypeptides.

In all embodiments, the recombinant host cell can be an eukaryotic host cell. such as a mammalian host cell, including, for example, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells.

In all embodiments, the recombinant host cell can also be a prokaryotic host cell, such as a bacterial cell, including, without limitation, *E. coli* cells.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1**. Dialysis Experiment: Digital gel-like imaging obtained from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) demonstrating that ocrelizumab (rhuMAb 2H7—Variant A) inside the dialysis bag remained intact during the incubation period.

FIG. **2**. Dialysis Experiment: Digital gel-like imaging obtained from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that ocrelizumab outside the dialysis bag was reduced during the incubation period. This is evidenced by the loss of intact antibody (~150 kDa) and the formation of antibody fragments depicted in the Figure. At the 48-hour time point (Lane 7), the reduced antibody appeared to be reoxidized, presumably as a result of loosing reduction activity in the Harvested Cell Culture Fluid (HCCF). The band appearing just above the 28 kDa marker arose from the light chain of antibody. There was a significant amount of free light already present in the HCCF before the incubation began. The presence of excess free light chain and dimers of light chain in the HCCF is typical for the cell line producing ocrelizumab.

FIG. **3**. Free Thiol Levels from Dialysis Experiment: Purified ocrelizumab in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) was inside the dialysis bag and HCCF containing ocrelizumab was outside the bag. Free thiols inside (boxes) and outside (diamonds) the dialysis bag reached comparable levels within a few hours, indicating a good exchange of small molecule components in the HCCF between inside and outside the dialysis bag.

FIG. **4**. Thioredoxin System and Other Reactions Involved in Antibody Reduction: The thioredoxin system, comprising thioredoxin (Trx), thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) and NADPH, functions as a hydrogen donor system for reduction of disulfide bonds in proteins. Trx is a small monomeric protein with a COX active site motif that catalyzes many redox reactions through thiol-disulfide exchange. The oxidized Trx can be reduced by NADPH via TrxR. The reduced Trx is then able to catalyze the reduction of disulfides in proteins. The NADPH required for thioredoxin system is provided via reactions in pentose phosphate pathway and glycolysis.

FIG. **5**. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System: Digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) demonstrating that incubation of intact ocrelizumab (1 mg/mL) with 0.1 mM TrxR (rat liver), 5 mM Trx (human), and 1 mM NADPH in PBS resulted in the complete reduction of ocrelizumab; the ocrelizumab was completely reduced in less than 21 hours.

FIG. **6**. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Aurothioglucose: The addition of aurothioglucose (ATG) to the same reaction mixture as described in the caption for FIG. **5**, above, effectively inhibited the ocrelizumab reduction. This is seen by the digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point).

FIG. **7**. In vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Aurothiomalate: The addition of aurothiomalate (ATM) at a concentration of 1 mM to the same reaction mixture as described in the caption for FIG. **5**, above, effectively inhibited the ocrelizumab reduction. This is seen by the digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point).

FIG. **8**. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System: Digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that incubation of intact ocrelizumab (1 mg/mL) with 0.1 mM TrxR (rat liver), 5 mM Trx (human), and 1 mM NADPH in 10 mM histidine sulfate buffer resulted in the reduction of ocrelizumab in less than 1 hour.

FIG. **9**. In vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by $CuSO_4$: The addition of $CuSO_4$ at a concentration of 50 μM to the same reaction mixture as described in the caption for FIG. **8** effectively inhibited the ocrelizumab reduction as shown in the digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point).

FIG. **10**. Ocrelizumab Reduction: Digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that ocrelizumab was reduced in an incubation experiment using HCCF from a homogenized CCF generated from a 3-L fermentor.

FIG. **11**. Inhibition of Ocrelizumab Reduction In HCCF by Aurothioglucose: Digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that the addition of 1 mM aurothioglucose to the same HCCF as used for the incubation experiment as shown in FIG. **10** inhibited the reduction of ocrelizumab.

FIG. **12**. Inhibition of Ocrelizumab Reduction In HCCF by Aurothiomalate: Digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer (each lane representing a time point) analysis indicating that the addition of 1 mM aurothiomalate to the same HCCF as used for the incubation experiment shown in FIG. **10** inhibited the reduction of ocrelizumab.

FIG. **13**. Losing Reduction Activity in HCCF: The HCCF from one of the large scale manufacturing runs for ocrelizumab (the "beta" run) that was subject to several freeze/thaw cycles demonstrated no ocrelizumab reduction when used in an incubation experiment. This was shown by Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point), and can be contrasted to the antibody reduction seen previously in the freshly thawed HCCF from the same fermentation batch.

FIG. **14**. The Lost Reduction Activity in HCCF Restored by Addition of NADPH: The reduction of ocrelizumab was observed again in the Bioanalyzer assay (each lane representing a time point) after the addition of NADPH at a concentration of 5 mM into the HCCF where the reduction activity has been eliminated under the conditions described above in FIG. **13**.

FIG. **15**. The Lost Reduction Activity in HCCF Restored by Addition of Glucose-6-Phosphate: The reduction of ocrelizumab was observed again in the Bioanalyzer assay (each lane representing a time point) after the addition of G6P at a concentration of 10 mM into the HCCF where the reduction activity has been eliminated due to the treatment described above in FIG. **13**.

FIG. **16**. Ocrelizumab Reduction: A digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis showing that ocrelizumab was reduced in an incubation experiment using a HCCF from a large scale manufacturing run (the "alpha" run).

FIG. **17**. EDTA Inhibits Ocrelizumab Reduction: Digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that the reduction of ocrelizumab was inhibited in an incubation experiment using a HCCF from the alpha run with EDTA added at a concentration of 20 mM to the HCCF whose reducing activity is demonstrated in FIG. **16**.

FIG. **18**. The Lost Reduction Activity in "Beta Run" HCCF Restored by Addition of Glucose-6-Phosphate but No Inhibition of Reduction by EDTA: The reduction of ocrelizumab was observed in the Bioanalyzer assay (each lane representing a time point) after the addition of G6P at a concentration of 5 mM and 20 mM EDTA into the HCCF whose reduction activity had been lost (see FIG. **13**). In contrast to the results shown in FIG. **17**, the presence of EDTA did not block the reduction of ocreliumab.

FIG. **19**. Inhibition of Ocrelizumab Reduction: by (i) addition of EDTA, (ii) addition of $CuSO_4$, or (iii) adjustment of pH to 5.5. All three different methods, (1) addition of EDTA, (2) addition of $CuSO_4$, and (3) adjustment of pH to 5.5, used independently, were effective in inhibiting ocrelizumab reduction. This was demonstrated by the depicted quantitative Bioanalyzer results that showed that nearly 100% intact (150 kDa) antibody remained in the protein A elution pools. In contrast, ocrelizumab was completely reduced in the control HCCF after 20 hours of HCCF hold time.

FIG. **20**. Inhibition of Ocrelizumab Reduction by Air Sparging: Sparging the HCCF with air was effective in inhibiting ocrelizumab disulfide bond reduction. This was demonstrated by the quantitative Bioanalyzer results showing that nearly 100% intact (150 kDa) antibody remained in the protein A elution pools. In contrast, ocrelizumab was almost completely reduced in the control HCCF after 5 hours of sparging with nitrogen.

FIG. **21** shows the V_L (SEQ ID NO. 24) amino acid sequence of an anti-Her2 antibody (Trastuzumab).

FIG. **22** shows the V_H (SEQ ID No. 25) amino acid sequence of an anti-Her2 antibody (Trastuzumab).

FIG. **23** is a schematic showing some steps of a typical large scale manufacturing process.

FIG. **24** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate.

FIG. **25** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 1 mM histidine sulfate+1 mM ATG.

FIG. **26** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+0.6 μM ATG (6:1 ATG:TrxR).

FIG. **27** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+0.4 μM ATG (4:1 ATG:TrxR).

FIG. **28** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+0.2 μM ATG (2:1 ATG:TrxR).

FIG. **29** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+0.1 mM autothiomalate (ATM).

FIG. **30** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+0.01 mM autothiomalate (ATM).

FIG. **31** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+20 μM $CuSO_4$ (4:1 Cu^{2+}:Trx).

FIG. **32** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+10 μM $CuSO_4$ (2:1 Cu^{2+}:Trx).

FIG. **33** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+5 μM $CuSO_4$ (1:1 Cu^{2+}:Trx).

FIG. **34** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+532 μM cystamine (20:1 cystamine:2H7 disulfide).

FIG. **35** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+266 μM cystamine (10:1 cystamine:2H7 disulfide).

FIG. **36** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+133 μM cystamine (5:1 cystamine:2H7 disulfide).

FIG. **37** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+26.6 μM cystamine (1:1 cystamine:2H7 disulfide).

FIG. **38** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate (pH=7.6)+2.6 mM cystine.

FIG. **39** is a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis: 2H7 (Variant A)+1 mM NADPH+5 μM thioredoxin+0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase (recombinant) in 10 mM histidine sulfate+2.6 mM GSSG (oxidized glutathione).

FIG. **40** Reconstructed enzymatic reduction system. 1 mg/ml 2H7 (Variant A)+10 μg/mL hexokinase, 50 μg/mL glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 5 μM thioredoxin, 0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase, 2 mM glucose, 0.6 mM ATP, 2 mM Mg^{2+}, and 2 mM NADP in 50 mM histidine sulfate buffer at pH=7.38.

FIG. **41** The thioredoxin system requires NADPH. 1 mg/ml 2H7 (Variant A)+5 μM thioredoxin, 0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase, and 2 mM NADP in 50 mM histidine sulfate buffer at pH=7.38.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

I. Definitions

In the present invention, in the context of proteins, including antibodies, in general, or with regard to any specific protein or antibody, the term "reduction" is used to refer to the reduction of one or more disulfide bonds of the protein or antibody. Thus, for example, the terms "ocrelizumab reduction" is used interchangeably with the term "ocrelizumab disulfide bond reduction" and the term "antibody (Ab) reduction" is used interchangeably with the term "antibody (Ab) disulfide bond reuction."

The terms "reduction" or "disulfide bond reduction" are used in the broadest sense, and include complete and partial reduction and reduction of some or all of the disulfide bonds, interchain or intrachain, present in a protein such as an antibody.

By "protein" is meant a sequence of amino acids for which the chain length is sufficient to produce the higher levels of tertiary and/or quaternary structure. This is to distinguish from "peptides" or other small molecular weight drugs that do not have such structure. Typically, the protein herein will have a molecular weight of at least about 15-20 kD, preferably at least about 20 kD. Examples of proteins encompassed

within the definition herein include all mammalian proteins, in particular, therapeutic and diagnostic proteins, such as therapeutic and diagnostic antibodies, and, in general proteins that contain one or more disulfide bonds, including multi-chain polypeptides comprising one or more inter- and/or intrachain disulfide bonds.

The term "therapeutic protein" or "therapeutic polypeptide" refers to a protein that is used in the treatment of disease, regardless of its indication or mechanism of action. In order for therapeutic proteins to be useful in the clinic it must be manufactured in large quantities. "Manufacturing scale" production of therapeutic proteins, or other proteins, utilize cell cultures ranging from about 400 L to about 80,000 L, depending on the protein being produced and the need. Typically such manufacturing scale production utilizes cell culture sizes from about 400 L to about 25,000 L. Within this range, specific cell culture sizes such as 4,000 L, about 6,000 L, about 8,000, about 10,000, about 12,000 L, about 14,000 L, or about 16,000 L are utilized.

The term "therapeutic antibody" refers to an antibody that is used in the treatment of disease. A therapeutic antibody may have various mechanisms of action. A therapeutic antibody may bind and neutralize the normal function of a target associated with an antigen. For example, a monoclonal antibody that blocks the activity of the of protein needed for the survival of a cancer cell causes the cell's death. Another therapeutic monoclonal antibody may bind and activate the normal function of a target associated with an antigen. For example, a monoclonal antibody can bind to a protein on a cell and trigger an apoptosis signal. Yet another monoclonal antibody may bind to a target antigen expressed only on diseased tissue; conjugation of a toxic payload (effective agent), such as a chemotherapeutic or radioactive agent, to the monoclonal antibody can create an agent for specific delivery of the toxic payload to the diseased tissue, reducing harm to healthy tissue. A "biologically functional fragment" of a therapeutic antibody will exhibit at least one if not some or all of the biological functions attributed to the intact antibody, the function comprising at least specific binding to the target antigen.

The term "diagnostic protein" refers to a protein that is used in the diagnosis of a disease.

The term "diagnostic antibody" refers to an antibody that is used as a diagnostic reagent for a disease. The diagnostic antibody may bind to a target antigen that is specifically associated with, or shows increased expression in, a particular disease. The diagnostic antibody may be used, for example, to detect a target in a biological sample from a patient, or in diagnostic imaging of disease sites, such as tumors, in a patient. A "biologically functional fragment" of a diagnostic antibody will exhibit at least one if not some or all of the biological functions attributed to the intact antibody, the function comprising at least specific binding to the target antigen.

"Purified" means that a molecule is present in a sample at a concentration of at least 80-90% by weight of the sample in which it is contained.

The protein, including antibodies, which is purified is preferably essentially pure and desirably essentially homogeneous (i.e. free from contaminating proteins etc.).

An "essentially pure" protein means a protein composition comprising at least about 90% by weight of the protein, based on total weight of the composition, preferably at least about 95% by weight.

An "essentially homogeneous" protein means a protein composition comprising at least about 99% by weight of protein, based on total weight of the composition.

As noted above, in certain embodiments, the protein is an antibody. "Antibodies" (Abs) and "immunoglobulins" (Igs) are glycoproteins having the same structural characteristics. While antibodies exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen, immunoglobulins include both antibodies and other antibody-like molecules which generally lack antigen specificity. Polypeptides of the latter kind are, for example, produced at low levels by the lymph system and at increased levels by myelomas.

The term "antibody" is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers monoclonal antibodies (including full length antibodies which have an immunoglobulin Fc region), antibody compositions with polyepitopic specificity, bispecific antibodies, diabodies, and single-chain molecules such as scFv molecules, as well as antibody fragments (e.g., Fab, $F(ab')_2$, and Fv).

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible mutations, e.g., naturally occurring mutations, that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies. In certain embodiments, such a monoclonal antibody typically includes an antibody comprising a polypeptide sequence that binds a target, wherein the target-binding polypeptide sequence was obtained by a process that includes the selection of a single target binding polypeptide sequence from a plurality of polypeptide sequences. For example, the selection process can be the selection of a unique clone from a plurality of clones, such as a pool of hybridoma clones, phage clones, or recombinant DNA clones. It should be understood that a selected target binding sequence can be further altered, for example, to improve affinity for the target, to humanize the target binding sequence, to improve its production in cell culture, to reduce its immunogenicity in vivo, to create a multispecific antibody, etc., and that an antibody comprising the altered target binding sequence is also a monoclonal antibody of this invention. In contrast to polyclonal antibody preparations which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody of a monoclonal antibody preparation is directed against a single determinant on an antigen. In addition to their specificity, monoclonal antibody preparations are advantageous in that they are typically uncontaminated by other immunoglobulins.

The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by a variety of techniques, including, for example, the hybridoma method (e.g., Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256: 495 (1975); Harlow et al., *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, (Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 2nd ed. 1988); Hammerling et al., in: *Monoclonal Antibodies and T-Cell Hybridomas* 563-681 (Elsevier, N.Y., 1981)), recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567), phage display technologies (see, e.g., Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352: 624-628 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 222: 581-597 (1992); Sidhu et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 338(2): 299-310 (2004); Lee et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 340(5): 1073-1093 (2004); Fellouse, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101 (34): 12467-12472 (2004); and Lee et al., *J. Immunol. Methods* 284(1-2): 119-132 (2004), and technologies for producing human or human-like antibodies in animals that have parts or all of the human immunoglobulin loci or genes

encoding human immunoglobulin sequences (see, e.g., WO98/24893; WO96/34096; WO96/33735; WO91/10741; Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90: 2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature* 362: 255-258 (1993); Bruggemann et al., *Year in Immunol.* 7:33 (1993); U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,545,807; 5,545,806; 5,569,825; 5,625,126; 5,633,425; 5,661,016; Marks et al., *BioTechnology* 10: 779-783 (1992); Lonberg et al., *Nature* 368: 856-859 (1994); Morrison, *Nature* 368: 812-813 (1994); Fishwild et al., *Nature Biotechnol.* 14: 845-851 (1996); Neuberger, *Nature Biotechnol.* 14: 826 (1996) and Lonberg and Huszar, *Intern. Rev. Immunol.* 13: 65-93 (1995).

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; and Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81:6851-6855 (1984)).

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric antibodies that contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. In one embodiment, a humanized antibody is a human immunoglobulin (recipient antibody) in which residues from a hypervariable region of the recipient are replaced by residues from a hypervariable region of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat, rabbit, or nonhuman primate having the desired specificity, affinity, and/or capacity. In some instances, framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues that are not found in the recipient antibody or in the donor antibody. These modifications may be made to further refine antibody performance. In general, a humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the hypervariable loops correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin, and all or substantially all the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optionally will also comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.* 2:593-596 (1992). See also the following review articles and references cited therein: Vaswani and Hamilton, *Ann. Allergy, Asthma & Immunol.* 1:105-115 (1998); Harris, *Biochem. Soc. Transactions* 23:1035-1038 (1995); Hurle and Gross, *Curr. Op. Biotech.* 5:428-433 (1994). The humanized antibody includes a Primatized™ antibody wherein the antigen-binding region of the antibody is derived from an antibody produced by immunizing macaque monkeys with the antigen of interest.

A "human antibody" is one which possesses an amino acid sequence which corresponds to that of an antibody produced by a human and/or has been made using any of the techniques for making human antibodies as disclosed herein. This definition of a human antibody specifically excludes a humanized antibody comprising non-human antigen-binding residues.

An "affinity matured" antibody is one with one or more alterations in one or more CDRs/HVRs thereof which result in an improvement in the affinity of the antibody for antigen, compared to a parent antibody which does not possess those alteration(s). Preferred affinity matured antibodies will have nanomolar or even picomolar affinities for the target antigen. Affinity matured antibodies are produced by procedures known in the art. Marks et al., Bio/Technology 10:779-783 (1992) describes affinity maturation by V_H and V_L domain shuffling. Random mutagenesis of CDR/HVR and/or framework residues is described by: Barbas et al., *Proc Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:3809-3813 (1994); Schier et al., *Gene* 169:147-155 (1995); Yelton et al., *J. Immunol.* 155:1994-2004 (1995); Jackson et al., *J. Immunol.* 154(7):3310-9 (1995); and Hawkins et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 226:889-896 (1992).

The "variable region" or "variable domain" of an antibody refers to the amino-terminal domains of the heavy or light chain of the antibody. The variable domain of the heavy chain may be referred to as "V_H." The variable domain of the light chain may be referred to as "V_L." These domains are generally the most variable parts of an antibody and contain the antigen-binding sites.

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) or hypervariable regions (HVRs) both in the light-chain and the heavy-chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework regions (FR). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FR regions, largely adopting a beta-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the beta-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FR regions and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, Fifth Edition, National Institute of Health, Bethesda, Md. (1991)). The constant domains are not involved directly in the binding of an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody-dependent cellular toxicity.

The "light chains" of antibodies (immunoglobulins) from any vertebrate species can be assigned to one of two clearly distinct types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequences of their constant domains.

Depending on the amino acid sequences of the constant domains of their heavy chains, antibodies (immunoglobulins) can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG_1, IgG_2, IgG_3, IgG_4, IgA_1, and IgA_2. The heavy chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called a, d, e, g, and m, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known and described generally in, for example, Abbas et al., Cellular and *Mol. Immunology,* 4th ed. (2000). An antibody may be part of a larger fusion molecule, formed by covalent or non-covalent association of the antibody with one or more other proteins or peptides.

The terms "full length antibody," "intact antibody" and "whole antibody" are used herein interchangeably to refer to an antibody in its substantially intact form, not antibody fragments as defined below. The terms particularly refer to an antibody with heavy chains that contain the Fc region.

"Antibody fragments" comprise only a portion of an intact antibody, wherein the portion retains at least one, and as many

as most or all, of the functions normally associated with that portion when present in an intact antibody. In one embodiment, an antibody fragment comprises an antigen binding site of the intact antibody and thus retains the ability to bind antigen. In another embodiment, an antibody fragment, for example one that comprises the Fc region, retains at least one of the biological functions normally associated with the Fc region when present in an intact antibody, such as FcRn binding, antibody half life modulation, ADCC function and complement binding. In one embodiment, an antibody fragment is a monovalent antibody that has an in vivo half life substantially similar to an intact antibody. For example, such an antibody fragment may comprise an antigen binding arm linked to an Fc sequence capable of conferring in vivo stability to the fragment.

Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen-binding fragments, called "Fab" fragments, each with a single antigen-binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. Pepsin treatment yields an $F(ab')_2$ fragment that has two antigen-combining sites and is still capable of cross-linking antigen.

The Fab fragment contains the heavy- and light-chain variable domains and also contains the constant domain of the light chain and the first constant domain (CH1) of the heavy chain. Fab' fragments differ from Fab fragments by the addition of a few residues at the carboxy terminus of the heavy chain CH1 domain including one or more cysteines from the antibody hinge region. Fab'-SH is the designation herein for Fab' in which the cysteine residue(s) of the constant domains bear a free thiol group. F(ab')2 antibody fragments originally were produced as pairs of Fab' fragments which have hinge cysteines between them. Other chemical couplings of antibody fragments are also known.

"Fv" is the minimum antibody fragment which contains a complete antigen-binding site. In one embodiment, a two-chain Fv species consists of a dimer of one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain in tight, non-covalent association. In a single-chain Fv (scFv) species, one heavy- and one light-chain variable domain can be covalently linked by a flexible peptide linker such that the light and heavy chains can associate in a "dimeric" structure analogous to that in a two-chain Fv species. It is in this configuration that the three CDRs of each variable domain interact to define an antigen-binding site on the surface of the V_H-V_L dimer. Collectively, the six CDRs confer antigen-binding specificity to the antibody. However, even a single variable domain (or half of an Fv comprising only three CDRs specific for an antigen) has the ability to recognize and bind antigen, although at a lower affinity than the entire binding site.

"Single-chain Fv" or "scFv" antibody fragments comprise the V_H and V_L domains of an antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Generally, the scFv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains which enables the scFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding. For a review of scFv see Pluckthun, in The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 269-315 (1994).

The term "diabodies" refers to small antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites, which fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) in the same polypeptide chain (V_H-V_L). By using a linker that is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain, the domains are forced to pair with the complementary domains of another chain and create two antigen-binding sites. Diabodies may be bivalent or bispecific. Diabodies are described more fully in, for example, EP 404,097; WO93/1161; Hudson et al., (2003) *Nat. Med.* 9:129-134; and Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90: 6444-6448 (1993). Triabodies and tetrabodies are also described in Hudson et al., (2003) *Nat. Med.* 9:129-134.

The antibody may bind to any protein, including, without limitation, a member of the HER receptor family, such as HER1 (EGFR), HER2, HER3 and HER4; CD proteins such as CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD20, CD21, CD22, and CD34; cell adhesion molecules such as LFA-1, Mol, p150, 95, VLA-4, ICAM-1, VCAM and av/p3 integrin including either α or β or subunits thereof (e.g. anti-CD11a, anti-CD18 or anti-CD11b antibodies); growth factors such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF); IgE; blood group antigens; flk2/flt3 receptor; obesity (OB) receptor; and protein C. Other exemplary proteins include growth hormone (GH), including human growth hormone (hGH) and bovine growth hormone (bGH); growth hormone releasing factor; parathyroid hormone; thyroid stimulating hormone; lipoproteins; α-1-antitrypsin; insulin A-chain; insulin B-chain; proinsulin; follicle stimulating hormone; calcitonin; luteinizing hormone; glucagon; clotting factors such as factor VIIIC, factor, tissue factor, and von Willebrands factor; anti-clotting factors such as Protein C; atrial natriuretic factor; lung surfactant; a plasminogen activator, such as urokinase or tissue-type plasminogen activator (t-PA); bombazine; thrombin; tumor necrosis factor-α and -β; enkephalinase; RANTES (regulated on activation normally T-cell expressed and secreted); human macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP-1-α); serum albumin such as human serum albumin (HSA); mullerian-inhibiting substance; relaxin A-chain; relaxin B-chain; prorelaxin; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; DNase; inhibin; activin; receptors for hormones or growth factors; an integrin; protein A or D; rheumatoid factors; a neurotrophic factor such as bone-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), neurotrophin-3, -4, -5, or -6 (NT-3, NT-4, NT-5, or NT-6), or a nerve growth factor such as NGF-β; platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF); fibroblast growth factor such as aFGF and bFGF; epidermal growth factor (EGF); transforming growth factor (TGF) such as TGF-α and TGF-β, including TGF-β1, TGF-β2, TGF-β3, TGF-β4, or TGF-β5; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II (IGF-I and IGF-II); des(1-3)-IGF-I (brain IGF-I); insulin-like growth factor binding proteins (IGFBPs); erythropoietin (EPO); thrombopoietin (TPO); osteoinductive factors; immunotoxins; a bone morphogenetic protein (BMP); an interferon such as interferon-α, -β, and -γ; colony stimulating factors (CSFs), e.g., M-CSF, GM-CSF, and G-CSF; interleukins (ILs), e.g., IL-1 to IL-10; superoxide dismutase; T-cell receptors; surface membrane proteins; decay accelerating factor (DAF); a viral antigen such as, for example, a portion of the AIDS envelope; transport proteins; homing receptors; addressins; regulatory proteins; immunoadhesins; antibodies; and biologically active fragments or variants of any of the above-listed polypeptides. Many other antibodies and/or other proteins may be used in accordance with the instant invention, and the above lists are not meant to be limiting.

A "biologically functional fragment" of an antibody comprises only a portion of an intact antibody, wherein the portion retains at least one, and as many as most or all, of the functions normally associated with that portion when present in an intact antibody. In one embodiment, a biologically functional fragment of an antibody comprises an antigen binding site of the intact antibody and thus retains the ability to bind antigen. In another embodiment, a biologically functional fragment of an antibody, for example one that comprises the Fc region, retains at least one of the biological functions normally asso-

ciated with the Fc region when present in an intact antibody, such as FcRn binding, antibody half life modulation, ADCC function and complement binding. In one embodiment, a biologically functional fragment of an antibody is a monovalent antibody that has an in vivo half life substantially similar to an intact antibody. For example, such a biologically functional fragment of an antibody may comprise an antigen binding arm linked to an Fc sequence capable of conferring in vivo stability to the fragment.

The terms "thioredoxin inhibitor" and "Trx inhibitor" are used interchangeably, and include all agents and measures effective in inhibiting thioredoxin activity. Thus, thioredoxin (Trx) inhibitors include all agents and measures blocking any component of the Trx, G6PD and/or hexokinase enzyme systems. In this context, "inhibition" includes complete elimination (blocking) and reduction of thioredoxin activity, and, consequently, complete or partial elimination of disulfide bond reduction in a protein, such as an antibody.

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with research, diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or non-proteinaceous solutes. In some embodiments, an antibody is purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by, for example, the Lowry method, and in some embodiments, to greater than 99% by weight; (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of, for example, a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using, for example, Coomassie blue or silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

The terms "Protein A" and "ProA" are used interchangeably herein and encompasses Protein A recovered from a native source thereof, Protein A produced synthetically (e.g. by peptide synthesis or by recombinant techniques), and variants thereof which retain the ability to bind proteins which have a C_H2/C_H3 region, such as an Fc region. Protein A can be purchased commercially from Repligen, GE Healthcare and Fermatech. Protein A is generally immobilized on a solid phase support material. The term "ProA" also refers to an affinity chromatography resin or column containing chromatographic solid support matrix to which is covalently attached Protein A.

The term "chromatography" refers to the process by which a solute of interest in a mixture is separated from other solutes in a mixture as a result of differences in rates at which the individual solutes of the mixture migrate through a stationary medium under the influence of a moving phase, or in bind and elute processes.

The term "affinity chromatography" and "protein affinity chromatography" are used interchangeably herein and refer to a protein separation technique in which a protein of interest or antibody of interest is reversibly and specifically bound to a biospecific ligand. Preferably, the biospecific ligand is covalently attached to a chromatographic solid phase material and is accessible to the protein of interest in solution as the solution contacts the chromatographic solid phase material. The protein of interest (e.g., antibody, enzyme, or receptor protein) retains its specific binding affinity for the biospecific ligand (antigen, substrate, cofactor, or hormone, for example) during the chromatographic steps, while other solutes and/or proteins in the mixture do not bind appreciably or specifically to the ligand. Binding of the protein of interest to the immobilized ligand allows contaminating proteins or protein impurities to be passed through the chromatographic medium while the protein of interest remains specifically bound to the immobilized ligand on the solid phase material. The specifically bound protein of interest is then removed in active form from the immobilized ligand with low pH, high pH, high salt, competing ligand, and the like, and passed through the chromatographic column with the elution buffer, free of the contaminating proteins or protein impurities that were earlier allowed to pass through the column. Any component can be used as a ligand for purifying its respective specific binding protein, e.g. antibody.

The terms "non-affinity chromatography" and "non-affinity purification" refer to a purification process in which affinity chromatography is not utilized. Non-affinity chromatography includes chromatographic techniques that rely on non-specific interactions between a molecule of interest (such as a protein, e.g. antibody) and a solid phase matrix.

A "cation exchange resin" refers to a solid phase which is negatively charged, and which thus has free cations for exchange with cations in an aqueous solution passed over or through the solid phase. A negatively charged ligand attached to the solid phase to form the cation exchange resin may, e.g., be a carboxylate or sulfonate. Commercially available cation exchange resins include carboxy-methyl-cellulose, sulphopropyl (SP) immobilized on agarose (e.g. SP-SEPHAROSE FAST FLOW™ or SP-SEPHAROSE HIGH PERFORMANCE™, from GE Healthcare) and sulphonyl immobilized on agarose (e.g. S-SEPHAROSE FAST FLOW™ from GE Healthcare). A "mixed mode ion exchange resin" refers to a solid phase which is covalently modified with cationic, anionic, and hydrophobic moieties. A commercially available mixed mode ion exchange resin is BAKERBOND ABX™ (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, N.J.) containing weak cation exchange groups, a low concentration of anion exchange groups, and hydrophobic ligands attached to a silica gel solid phase support matrix.

The term "anion exchange resin" is used herein to refer to a solid phase which is positively charged, e.g. having one or more positively charged ligands, such as quaternary amino groups, attached thereto. Commercially available anion exchange resins include DEAE cellulose, QAE SEPHADEX™ and FAST Q SEPHAROSE™ (GE Healthcare).

A "buffer" is a solution that resists changes in pH by the action of its acid-base conjugate components. Various buffers which can be employed depending, for example, on the desired pH of the buffer are described in *Buffers. A Guide for the Preparation and Use of Buffers in Biological Systems*, Gueffroy, D., ed. Calbiochem Corporation (1975). In one embodiment, the buffer has a pH in the range from about 2 to about 9, alternatively from about 3 to about 8, alternatively from about 4 to about 7 alternatively from about 5 to about 7. Non-limiting examples of buffers that will control the pH in this range include MES, MOPS, MOPSO, Tris, HEPES, phosphate, acetate, citrate, succinate, and ammonium buffers, as well as combinations of these.

The "loading buffer" is that which is used to load the composition comprising the polypeptide molecule of interest and one or more impurities onto the ion exchange resin. The loading buffer has a conductivity and/or pH such that the polypeptide molecule of interest (and generally one or more impurities) is/are bound to the ion exchange resin or such that the protein of interest flows through the column while the impurities bind to the resin.

The "intermediate buffer" is used to elute one or more impurities from the ion exchange resin, prior to eluting the polypeptide molecule of interest. The conductivity and/or pH of the intermediate buffer is/are such that one or more impurity is eluted from the ion exchange resin, but not significant amounts of the polypeptide of interest.

The term "wash buffer" when used herein refers to a buffer used to wash or re-equilibrate the ion exchange resin, prior to eluting the polypeptide molecule of interest. Conveniently, the wash buffer and loading buffer may be the same, but this is not required.

The "elution buffer" is used to elute the polypeptide of interest from the solid phase. The conductivity and/or pH of the elution buffer is/are such that the polypeptide of interest is eluted from the ion exchange resin.

A "regeneration buffer" may be used to regenerate the ion exchange resin such that it can be re-used. The regeneration buffer has a conductivity and/or pH as required to remove substantially all impurities and the polypeptide of interest from the ion exchange resin.

The term "substantially similar" or "substantially the same," as used herein, denotes a sufficiently high degree of similarity between two numeric values (for example, one associated with an antibody of the invention and the other associated with a reference/comparator antibody), such that one of skill in the art would consider the difference between the two values to be of little or no biological and/or statistical significance within the context of the biological characteristic measured by said values (e.g., Kd values). The difference between said two values is, for example, less than about 50%, less than about 40%, less than about 30%, less than about 20%, and/or less than about 10% as a function of the reference/comparator value.

The phrase "substantially reduced," or "substantially different," as used herein with regard to amounts or numerical values (and not as reference to the chemical process of reduction), denotes a sufficiently high degree of difference between two numeric values (generally one associated with a molecule and the other associated with a reference/comparator molecule) such that one of skill in the art would consider the difference between the two values to be of statistical significance within the context of the biological characteristic measured by said values (e.g., Kd values). The difference between said two values is, for example, greater than about 10%, greater than about 20%, greater than about 30%, greater than about 40%, and/or greater than about 50% as a function of the value for the reference/comparator molecule.

The term "vector," as used herein, is intended to refer to a nucleic acid molecule capable of transporting another nucleic acid to which it has been linked. One type of vector is a "plasmid," which refers to a circular double stranded DNA into which additional DNA segments may be ligated. Another type of vector is a phage vector. Another type of vector is a viral vector, wherein additional DNA segments may be ligated into the viral genome. Certain vectors are capable of autonomous replication in a host cell into which they are introduced (e.g., bacterial vectors having a bacterial origin of replication and episomal mammalian vectors). Other vectors (e.g., non-episomal mammalian vectors) can be integrated into the genome of a host cell upon introduction into the host cell, and thereby are replicated along with the host genome. Moreover, certain vectors are capable of directing the expression of genes to which they are operatively linked. Such vectors are referred to herein as "recombinant expression vectors," or simply, "expression vectors." In general, expression vectors of utility in recombinant DNA techniques are often in the form of plasmids. In the present specification, "plasmid" and "vector" may be used interchangeably as the plasmid is the most commonly used form of vector.

"Percent (%) amino acid sequence identity" with respect to a reference polypeptide sequence is defined as the percentage of amino acid residues in a candidate sequence that are identical with the amino acid residues in the reference polypeptide sequence, after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent sequence identity, and not considering any conservative substitutions as part of the sequence identity. Alignment for purposes of determining percent amino acid sequence identity can be achieved in various ways that are within the skill in the art, for instance, using publicly available computer software such as BLAST, BLAST-2, ALIGN or Megalign (DNASTAR) software. Those skilled in the art can determine appropriate parameters for aligning sequences, including any algorithms needed to achieve maximal alignment over the full length of the sequences being compared. For purposes herein, however, % amino acid sequence identity values are generated using the sequence comparison computer program ALIGN-2. The ALIGN-2 sequence comparison computer program was authored by Genentech, Inc., and the source code has been filed with user documentation in the U.S. Copyright Office, Washington D.C., 20559, where it is registered under U.S. Copyright Registration No. TXU510087. The ALIGN-2 program is publicly available from Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, Calif., or may be compiled from the source code. The ALIGN-2 program should be compiled for use on a UNIX operating system, preferably digital UNIX V4.0D. All sequence comparison parameters are set by the ALIGN-2 program and do not vary.

In situations where ALIGN-2 is employed for amino acid sequence comparisons, the % amino acid sequence identity of a given amino acid sequence A to, with, or against a given amino acid sequence B (which can alternatively be phrased as a given amino acid sequence A that has or comprises a certain % amino acid sequence identity to, with, or against a given amino acid sequence B) is calculated as follows:

100 times the fraction X/Y

where X is the number of amino acid residues scored as identical matches by the sequence alignment program ALIGN-2 in that program's alignment of A and B, and where Y is the total number of amino acid residues in B.

It will be appreciated that where the length of amino acid sequence A is not equal to the length of amino acid sequence B, the % amino acid sequence identity of A to B will not equal the % amino acid sequence identity of B to A. Unless specifically stated otherwise, all % amino acid sequence identity values used herein are obtained as described in the immediately preceding paragraph using the ALIGN-2 computer program.

"Percent (%) nucleic acid sequence identity" is defined as the percentage of nucleotides in a candidate sequence that are identical with the nucleotides in a reference Factor D-encoding sequence, after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent sequence identity. Alignment for purposes of determining percent nucleic acid sequence identity can be achieved in various ways that are within the skill in the art, for instance, using publicly available computer software such as BLAST, BLAST-2, ALIGN or Megalign (DNASTAR) software. Those skilled in the art can determine appropriate parameters for measuring alignment, including any algorithms needed to achieve maximal alignment over the full length of the sequences being compared. Sequence identity is then calculated relative to the longer sequence, i.e. even if a shorter

sequence shows 100% sequence identity with a portion of a longer sequence, the overall sequence identity will be less than 100%.

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented. "Treatment" herein encompasses alleviation of the disease and of the signs and symptoms of the particular disease.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the protein. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include carcinomas and allergies.

"Mammal" for purposes of treatment refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, non-human higher primates, other vertebrates, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as dogs, horses, cats, cows, etc. Preferably, the mammal is human.

An "interfering RNA" or "small interfering RNA (siRNA)" is a double stranded RNA molecule less than about 30 nucleotides in length that reduces expression of a target gene. Interfering RNAs may be identified and synthesized using known methods (Shi Y., Trends in Genetics 19(1):9-12 (2003), WO/2003056012 and WO2003064621), and siRNA libraries are commercially available, for example from Dharmacon, Lafayette, Colo. Frequently, siRNAs can be successfully designed to target the 5' end of a gene.

II. Compositions and Methods of the Invention

The practice of the present invention will employ, unless otherwise indicated, conventional techniques of molecular biology and the like, which are within the skill of the art. Such techniques are explained fully in the literature. See e.g., *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, (J. Sambrook et al., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., 1989); *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (F. Ausubel et al., eds., 1987 updated); *Essential Molecular Biology* (T. Brown ed., IRL Press 1991); *Gene Expression Technology* (Goeddel ed., Academic Press 1991); *Methods for Cloning and Analysis of Eukaryotic Genes* (A. Bothwell et al., eds., Bartlett Publ. 1990); *Gene Transfer and Expression* (M. Kriegler, Stockton Press 1990); *Recombinant DNA Methodology II* (R. Wu et al., eds., Academic Press 1995); PCR: *A Practical Approach* (M. McPherson et al., IRL Press at Oxford University Press 1991); *Oligonucleotide Synthesis* (M. Gait ed., 1984); *Cell Culture for Biochemists* (R. Adams ed., Elsevier Science Publishers 1990); *Gene Transfer Vectors for Mammalian Cells* (J. Miller & M. Calos eds., 1987); *Mammalian Cell Biotechnology* (M. Butler ed., 1991); *Animal Cell Culture* (J. Pollard et al., eds., Humana Press 1990); *Culture of Animal Cells,* 2nd Ed. (R. Freshney et al., eds., Alan R. Liss 1987); *Flow Cytometry and Sorting* (M. Melamed et al., eds., Wiley-Liss 1990); the series *Methods in Enzymology* (Academic Press, Inc.); Wirth M. and Hauser H. (1993); *Immunochemistry in Practice,* 3rd edition, A. Johnstone & R. Thorpe, Blackwell Science, Cambridge, Mass., 1996; *Techniques in Immunocytochemistry*, (G. Bullock & P. Petrusz eds., Academic Press 1982, 1983, 1985, 1989); Handbook of Experimental Immunology, (D. Weir & C. Blackwell, eds.); *Current Protocols in Immunology* (J. Coligan et al., eds. 1991); *Immunoassay* (E. P. Diamandis & T. K. Christopoulos, eds., Academic Press, Inc., 1996); Goding (1986) *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice* (2d ed) Academic Press, New York; Ed Harlow and David Lane, *Antibodies A laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., 1988; *Antibody Engineering,* 2nd edition (C. Borrebaeck, ed., Oxford University Press, 1995); and the series *Annual Review of Immunology*; the series *Advances in Immunology.*

1. Prevention of Disulfide Bond Reduction

The present invention concerns methods for the prevention of the reduction of disulfide bonds of proteins during recombinant production. In particular, the invention concerns methods for preventing the reduction of disulfide bonds of recombinant proteins during processing following fermentation. The methods of the invention are particularly valuable for large scale production of disulfide bond containing proteins, such as at a manufacturing scale. In one embodiment, the methods of the invention are useful for large scale protein production at a scale of greater than 5,000 L.

It has been experimentally found that disulfide bond reduction occurs during processing of the Harvested Cell Culture Fluid (HCCF) produced during manufacturing of recombinant proteins that contain disulfide bonds. Typically, this reduction is observed after cell lysis, especially mechanical cell lysis during harvest operations, when it reaches a certain threshold, such as, for example, from about 30% to about 70%, or from about 40% to about 60%, or from about 50% to about 60% total cell lysis. This threshold will vary, depending on the nature of the protein (e.g. antibody) produced, the recombinant host, the production system, production parameters used, and the like, and can be readily determined experimentally.

Theoretically, such reduction might result from a variety of factors and conditions during the manufacturing process, and might be caused by a variety of reducing agents. The present invention is based, at least in part, on the recognition that the root cause of this reduction is an active thioredoxin (Trx) or thioredoxin-like system in the HCCF.

The Trx enzyme system, composed of Trx, thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) and NADPH, is a hydrogen donor system for reduction of disulfide bonds in proteins. Trx is a small monomeric protein with a COX active site motif that catalyzes many redox reactions through thiol-disulfide exchange. The oxidized Trx can be reduced by NADPH via TrxR. The reduced Trx is then able to catalyze the reduction of disulfides in proteins. The NADPH required for thioredoxin system is provided via reactions in pentose phosphate pathway and glycolysis. The results presented herein demonstrate that NADPH, which is required for activity of the Trx system is provided by glucose-6-phosphate dehyrogenase (G6PD) activity, which generates NADPH from glucose and ATP by hexokinase (see FIG. **4**). These cellular enzymes (Trx system, G6PD, and hexokinase) along with their substrates are released into the CCF upon cell lysis, allowing reduction to occur. Accordingly, disulfide reduction can be prevented by inhibitors of the Trx enzyme system or upstream enzyme systems providing components for an active Trx system, such as G6PD and hexokinase activity.

For further details of these enzyme systems, or regarding other details of protein production, see, for example: Babson, A. L. and Babson, S. R. (1973) Kinetic Colorimetric Measurement of Serum Lactate Dehydrogenase Activity. *Clin. Chem.* 19: 766-769; Michael W. Laird et al., "Optimization of BLyS Production and Purification from *Eschericia coli*," *Protein Expression and Purification* 39:237-246 (2005); John C. Joly et al., "Overexpression of *Eschericia coli* Oxidoreductases Increases Recombinant Insulin-like Growth Factor-I Accumulation," Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 95:2773-2777 (March 1998); Dana C. Andersen et al., "Production Technologies for Monoclonal Antibodies and Their Fragments,"

Current Opinion in Biotechnology 15:456-462 (2004); Yariv Mazor et al., "Isolation of Engineered, Full-length Antibodies from Libraries Expressed in *Escherichia coli*," *Nature Biotech.* 25, 563-565 (1 Jun. 2007); Laura C. Simmons et al., "Expression of Full-length Immunoglobulins in *Escherichia coli*: Rapid and Efficient Production of Aglycosylated Antibodies," *Journal of Immunological Methods* 263:133-147 (2002); Paul H. Bessette et al., "Efficient Folding of Proteins with Multiple Disulfide Bonds in the *Escherichia coli* cytoplasm," Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 96(24):13703-08 (1999); Chaderjian, W. B., Chin, E. T., Harris, R. J., and Etcheverry, T. M., (2005) "Effect of copper sulfate on performance of a serum-free CHO cell culture process and the level of free thiol in the recombinant antibody expressed," *Biotechnol. Prog.* 21: 550-553; Gordon G., Mackow M. C., and Levy H. R., (1995) "On the mechanism of interaction of steroids with human glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase," Arch. Biochem. Biophys. 318: 25-29; Gromer S., Urig S., and Becker K., (2004) "TheTrx System—From Science to Clinic," Medicinal Research Reviews, 24: 40-89; Hammes G. G. and Kochavi D., (1962a) "Studies of the Enzyme Hexokinase. I. Steady State Kinetics at pH 8," J. Am. Chem. Soc. 84:2069-2073; Hammes G. G. and Kochavi D., (1962b) "Studies of the Enzyme Hexokinase. III. The Role of the Metal Ion," J. Am. Chem. Soc. 84:2076-2079; Johansson C., Lillig C. H., and Holmgren A., (2004) "Human Mitochondrial Glutaredoxin Reduces S-Glutathionylated Proteins with High Affinity Accepting Electrons from Either Glutathione or Thioredoxin Reductase," J. Biol. Chem. 279:7537-7543; Legrand, C., Bour, J. M., Jacob, C., Capiaumont J., Martial, A., Marc, A., Wudtke, M., Kretzmer, G., Demangel, C., Duval, D., and Hache J., (1992) "Lactate Dehydrogenase (LDH) Activity of the Number of Dead Cells in the Medium of Cultured Eukaryotic Cells as Marker," J. Biotechnol., 25: 231-243; McDonald, M. R., (1955) "Yeast Hexokinase: ATP+ Hexose→Hexose-6-phosphate+ADP," Methods in Enzymology, 1: 269-276, Academic Press, NY; Sols, A., DelaFuente, G., Villar-Palasi, C., and Asensio, C., (1958) "Substrate Specificity and Some Other Properties of Bakers' Yeast Hexokinase," Biochim Biophys Acta 30: 92-101; Kirkpatrick D. L., Kuperus M., Dowdeswell M., Potier N., Donald L. J., Kunkel M., Berggren M., Angulo M., and Powis G., (1998) "Mechanisms of inhibition of the Trx growth factor system by antitumor 2-imidazolyl disulfides," Biochem. Pharmacol. 55: 987-994; Kirkpatrick D. L., Watson S., Kunkel M., Fletcher S., Ulhaq S., and Powis G., (1999) "Parallel syntheses of disulfide inhibitors of the Trx redox system as potential antitumor agents," Anticancer Drug Des. 14: 421-432; Milhausen, M., and Levy, H. R., (1975) "Evidence for an Essential Lysine in G6PD from *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*," Eur. J. Biochem. 50: 453-461; Pleasants, J. C., Guo, W., and Rabenstein, D. L., (1989) "A comparative study of the kinetics of selenol/diselenide and thiol/disulfide exchange reactions," J. Am. Chem. Soc. 111: 6553-6558; Whitesides, G. M., Lilburn, J. E., and Szajewski, R. P., (1977) "Rates of thioldisulfide interchange reactions between mono- and dithiols and Ellman's reagent," J. Org. Chem. 42: 332-338; and Wipf P., Hopkins T. D., Jung J. K., Rodriguez S., Birmingham A., Southwick E. C., Lazo J. S., and Powis G, (2001) "New inhibitors of the Trx-TrxR system based on a naphthoquinone spiroketal natural product lead," *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* 11: 2637-2641.

According to one aspect of the present invention, disulfide bond reduction can be prevented by blocking any component of the Trx, G6PD and hexokinase enzyme systems. Inhibitors of these enzyme systems are collectively referred to herein as "thioredoxin inhibitors," or "Trx inhibitors." The Trx inhibitors are typically added to the cell culture fluid (CCF), which contains the recombinant host cells and the culture media, and/or to the harvested cell culture fluid (HCCF), which is obtained after harvesting by centrifugation, filtration, or similar separation methods. The HCCF lacks intact host cells but typically contains host cell proteins and other contaminants, including DNA, which are removed in subsequent purification steps. Thus, the Trx inhibitors may be added before harvest and/or during harvest, preferably before harvest.

Alternatively or in addition other, non-specific methods can also be used to prevent the reduction of disulfide bond reduction following fermentation during the recombinant production of recombinant proteins, such as air sparging or pH adjustment. Certain reduction inhibition methods contemplated herein are listed in the following Table 1.

TABLE 1

Reduction Inhibition Methods

Method[1]	Purpose
Addition of EDTA, EGTA, or citrate	To inhibit hexokinase
Addition of sorbose-1-phosphate, polyphosphates, 6-deoxy-6-fluoroglucose, 2-C-hydroxy-methylglucose, xylose, or lyxose	To inhibit hexokinase
Addition of epiandrosterone or dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)	To inhibit G6PD
Addition of pyridoxal 5'-phosphate or 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene	To inhibit G6PD
Addition of metal ions such as Cu^{2+}, Zn^{2+} Hg^{2+}, Co^{2+}, or Mn^{2+}	To inhibit Trx system
Addition of alkyl-2-imidazolyl disulfides and related compounds (e.g., 1 methylpropyl-2-imidazolyl disulfide[2]) or naphthoquinone spiroketal derivatives (e.g. palmarumycin CP_1[2])	To inhibit Trx
Addition of aurothioglucose (ATG) or aurothiomalate (ATM)	To inhibit TrxR
Air sparging	To deplete G6P and NADPH; oxidizing agent
Cystine	Oxidizing agent
Oxidized glutathione	Oxidizing agents
pH Adjustment to below 6.0	To reduce thiol-disulfide exchange rate and Trx system activity

[1]Applied to CCF prior to harvest or in HCCF immediately after harvest.
[2]Currently not available commercially.

"Trx inhibitors" for use in the methods of the present invention include, without limitation, (1) direct inhibitors of Trx, such as alkyl-2-imidazolyl disulfides and related compounds (e.g., 1 methylpropyl-2-imidazolyl disulfide) (Kirkpatrick et al., 1998 and 1999, supra) and naphthoquinone spiroketal derivatives (e.g., palmarumycin CP_1) (Wipf et al., 2001, supra); (2) specific inhibitors of TrxR, including gold complexes, such as aurothioglucose (ATG) and aurothiomalate (ATM) (see, e.g., the review by Gromer et al., 2004), which are examples of irreversible inhibitors of TrxR; (3) metal ions, such as Hg^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, Co^{2+}, and Mn^{2+}, which can form readily complexes with thiols and selenols, and thus can be used in embodiments of the instant invention as inhibitors of TrxR or Trx; (4) inhibitors of G6PD, such as, for example, pyridoxal 5'-phosphate and 1 fluoro-2,4 dinitrobenzene (Milhausen and Levy 1975, supra), certain steroids, such as dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and epiandrosterone (EA) (Gordon et al., 1995, supra); and (4) inhibitors of hexokinase activity (and thereby production of G6P for the G6PD), including chelators of metal ions, e.g. Mg^{2+}, such as EDTA, and compounds that react with SH groups, sorbose-1-phosphate, polyphosphates, 6-deoxy-6-fluoroglucose,

2-C-hydroxy-methylglucose, xylose and lyxose (Sols et al., 1958, supra; McDonald, 1955, supra); further hexokinase inhibitors are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,854,067 entitled "Hexokinase Inhibitors." It will be understood that these inhibitors are listed for illustration only. Other Trx inhibitors exists and can be used, alone or in various combinations, in the methods of the present invention.

"Trx inhibitors" for use in the methods of the present invention also include reagents whereby the reduction of recombinantly produced antibodies or proteins may be reduced or prevented by decreasing the levels of enzymes of the Trx system, the pentose phosphate pathway or hexokinase at various points during the production campaign. In some embodiments, this reduction of enzyme levels may be accomplished by the use of targeted siRNAs, antisense nucleotides, or antibodies. To design targeted siRNAs or antisense nucleotides to the genes as found in CHO cells, these gene sequences are available from public databases to select sequences for targeting enzymes in different organisms. See Example 9 below for examples of the genes of the *E. coli* and mouse Trx system.

In addition to using inhibitors discussed above, it is also possible in certain embodiments of the instant invention to prevent the reduction of a recombinant protein to be purified by sparging the HCCF with air to maintain an oxidizing redox potential in the HCCF. This is a non-directed measure that can deplete glucose, G6P and NADPH by continuously oxidizing the reduced forms of Trx and TrxR. Air sparging of the HCCF tank can be performed, for example, with an air flow of about 100 liters to about 200 liters, such as, for example, 150 liters per minutes. Air sparging can be performed to reach an endpoint percentage of saturation; for example, air sparging can be continued until the HCCF is about 100% saturated with air, or it can be continued until the HCCR is about 30% saturated with air, or until it is between about 100% saturated to about 30% saturated with air. The minimum amount of dissolved oxygen (dO_2) required for the desired inhibitory effect also depends on the antibody or other recombinant protein produced. Thus, for example, about 10% dO_2 (or about 10 sccm for continuous stream) will have the desired effect during the production of antibody 2H7 (Variant A), while Apomab might require a higher (about 30%) dO_2.

In further embodiments of the instant invention, another non-directed method usable to block the reduction of the recombinant protein is lowering the pH of the HCCF. This embodiment takes advantage of particularly slow thiol-disulfide exchange at lower pH values (Whitesides et al., 1977, supra; Pleasants et al., 1989, supra). Therefore, the activity of the Trx system is significantly lower at pH values below 6, and thus the reduction of the recombinant protein, such as ocrelizumab, can be inhibited.

The non-directed approaches can also be combined with each other and/or with the use of one or more Trx inhibitors.

Disulfide bond reduction can be inhibited (i.e., partially or fully blocked) by using one or more Trx inhibitors and/or applying non-directed approaches following completion of the cell culture process, preferably to CCF prior to harvest or in the HCCF immediately after harvest. The optimal time and mode of application and effective amounts depend on the nature of the protein to be purified, the recombinant host cells, and the specific production method used. Determination of the optimal parameters is well within the skill of those of ordinary skill in the art.

For example, in a mammalian cell culture process, such as the CHO antibody production process described in the Examples herein, if cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$ in the form of pentahydrate or the anhydrous form) is used as a Trx inhibitor, it can be added to supplement the CCF or HCCF in the concentration range of from about 5 μM to about 100 μM, such as from about 10 μM to about 80 μM, preferably from about 15 μM to about 50 μM. Since some cell cultures already contain copper (e.g. about 0.04 μM $CuSO_4$ for the CHO cell cultures used in the Examples herein), this amount is in addition to the copper, if any, already present in the cell culture. Any copper (II) salt can be used instead of $CuSO_4$ as long as solubility is not an issue. For example, copper acetate and copper chloride, which are both soluble in water, can be used instead of $CuSO_4$. The minimum effective concentration may also depend on the antibody produced and the stage where the inhibitor is used. Thus, for example, when cupric sulfate is added pre-lysis, for antibody 2H7 (Variant A) the minimum effective concentration is about 30 μM, for Apomab is about 75 μM, and for antibody Variant C (see Table 2) is about 50 μM. When cupric sulfate is added in CC medium, for antibody 2H7 (Variant A) the minimum effective concentration is about 15 μM, for Apomab is about 25 μM, and for antibody Variant C is about 20 μM. One typical minimal $CuSO_4$ inhibitor concentration of 2×Trx concentration (or Trx equivalence).

EDTA can be used in a wide concentration range, depending on the extent of cell lysis, the recombinant host cell used, and other parameters of the production process. For example, when using CHO or other mammalian host cells, EDTA can be typically added in a concentration of between about 5 mM to about 60 mM, such as from about 10 mM to about 50 mM, or from about 20 mM to about 40 mM, depending on the extent of cell lysis. For lower degree of cell lysis, lower concentrations of EDTA will suffice, while for a cell lysis of about 75%-100%, the required EDTA concentration is higher, such as, for example, from about 20 mM to about 40 mM. The minimum effective concentration may also depend on the antibody produced. Thus, for example, for antibody 2H7 (Variant A) the minimum effective EDTA concentration is about 10 mM.

DHEA as a Trx inhibitor is typically effective at a lower concentration, such as for example, in the concentration range from about 0.05 mM to about 5 mM, preferably from about 0.1 mM to about 2.5 mM.

Other Trx inhibitors, such as aurothioglucose (ATG) and aurothiomalate (ATM) inhibit reduction of disulfide bonds in the μM concentration range. Thus, for example, ATG or ATM may be added in a concentration between about 0.1 mM to about 1 mM. While the minimum inhibitory concentration varies depending on the actual conditions, for ATG and ATM typically it is around 4×TrxR concentration.

It is noted that all inhibitors can be used in an excess amount, therefore, it is not always necessary to know the amount of Trx or TrxR in the system.

In a preferred embodiment, the mammalian host cell used in the manufacturing process is a chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell (Urlaub et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 77:4216 (1980)). Other mammalian host cells include, without limitation, monkey kidney CV1 line transformed by SV40 (COS-7, ATCC CRL 1651); human embryonic kidney line (293 or 293 cells subcloned for growth in suspension culture), Graham et al., *J. Gen Virol.* 36:59 (1977)); baby hamster kidney cells (BHK, ATCC CCL 10); mouse sertoli cells (TM4, Mather, *Biol. Reprod.* 23:243-251 (1980)); monkey kidney cells (CV1 ATCC CCL 70); African green monkey kidney cells (VERO-76, ATCC CRL-1587); human cervical carcinoma cells (HELA, ATCC CCL 2); canine kidney cells (MDCK, ATCC CCL 34); buffalo rat liver cells (BRL 3A, ATCC CRL 1442); human lung cells (W138, ATCC CCL 75); human liver cells (Hep G2, HB 8065); mouse mammary

tumor (MMT 060562, ATCC CCL51); TR1 cells (Mather et al., *Annals N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 383:44-68 (1982)); MRC 5 cells; FS4 cells; a human hepatoma line (Hep G2); and myeloma or lymphoma cells (e.g. Y0, J558L, P3 and NS0 cells) (see U.S. Pat. No. 5,807,715).

A preferred host cell for the production of the polypeptides herein is the CHO cell line DP12 (CHO K1 dhfr$^-$). This is one of the best known CHO cell lines, widely used in laboratory practice (see, for example, EP 0,307,247, published Mar. 15, 1989). In addition, other CHO-K1 (dhfr$^-$) cell lines are known and can be used in the methods of the present invention.

The mammalian host cells used to produce peptides, polypeptides and proteins can be cultured in a variety of media. Commercially available media such as Ham's F10 (Sigma), Minimal Essential Medium ((MEM), Sigma), RPMI-1640 (Sigma), and Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium ((DMEM, Sigma) are suitable for culturing the host cells. In addition, any of the media described in Ham and Wallace (1979), Meth. in Enz. 58:44, Barnes and Sato (1980), Anal. Biochem. 102:255, U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,767,704; 4,657,866; 4,927,762; or 4,560,655; WO 90/03430; WO 87/00195; U.S. Pat. No. Re. 30,985; or U.S. Pat. No. 5,122,469, the disclosures of all of which are incorporated herein by reference, may be used as culture media for the host cells. Any of these media may be supplemented as necessary with hormones and/or other growth factors (such as insulin, transferrin, or epidermal growth factor), salts (such as sodium chloride, calcium, magnesium, and phosphate), buffers (such as HEPES), nucleosides (such as adenosine and thymidine), antibiotics (such as Gentamycin™ drug), trace elements (defined as inorganic compounds usually present at final concentrations in the micromolar range), and glucose or an equivalent energy source. Any other necessary supplements may also be included at appropriate concentrations that would be known to those skilled in the art. The culture conditions, such as temperature, pH, and the like, are those previously used with the host cell selected for expression, and will be apparent to the ordinarily skilled artisan.

A protocol for the production, recovery and purification of recombinant antibodies in mammalian, such as CHO, cells may include the following steps:

Cells may be cultured in a stirred tank bioreactor system and a fed batch culture, procedure is employed. In a preferred fed batch culture the mammalian host cells and culture medium are supplied to a culturing vessel initially and additional culture nutrients are fed, continuously or in discrete increments, to the culture during culturing, with or without periodic cell and/or product harvest before termination of culture. The fed batch culture can include, for example, a semi-continuous fed batch culture, wherein periodically whole culture (including cells and medium) is removed and replaced by fresh medium. Fed batch culture is distinguished from simple batch culture in which all components for cell culturing (including the cells and all culture nutrients) are supplied to the culturing vessel at the start of the culturing process. Fed batch culture can be further distinguished from perfusion culturing insofar as the supernate is not removed from the culturing vessel during the process (in perfusion culturing, the cells are restrained in the culture by, e.g., filtration, encapsulation, anchoring to microcarriers etc. and the culture medium is continuously or intermittently introduced and removed from the culturing vessel).

Further, the cells of the culture may be propagated according to any scheme or routine that may be suitable for the particular host cell and the particular production plan contemplated. Therefore, a single step or multiple step culture procedure may be employed. In a single step culture the host cells are inoculated into a culture environment and the processes are employed during a single production phase of the cell culture. Alternatively, a multi-stage culture can be used. In the multi-stage culture cells may be cultivated in a number of steps or phases. For instance, cells may be grown in a first step or growth phase culture wherein cells, possibly removed from storage, are inoculated into a medium suitable for promoting growth and high viability. The cells may be maintained in the growth phase for a suitable period of time by the addition of fresh medium to the host cell culture.

In certain embodiments, fed batch or continuous cell culture conditions may be devised to enhance growth of the mammalian cells in the growth phase of the cell culture. In the growth phase cells are grown under conditions and for a period of time that is maximized for growth. Culture conditions, such as temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen (dO_2) and the like, are those used with the particular host and will be apparent to the ordinarily skilled artisan. Generally, the pH is adjusted to a level between about 6.5 and 7.5 using either an acid (e.g., CO_2) or a base (e.g., $Na2CO_3$ or NaOH). A suitable temperature range for culturing mammalian cells such as CHO cells is between about 30° C. to 38° C., and a suitable dO_2 is between 5-90% of air saturation.

At a particular stage the cells may be used to inoculate a production phase or step of the cell culture. Alternatively, as described above the production phase or step may be continuous with the inoculation or growth phase or step.

The cell culture environment during the production phase of the cell culture is typically controlled. Thus, if a glycoprotein is produced, factors affecting cell specific productivity of the mammalian host cell may be manipulated such that the desired sialic acid content is achieved in the resulting glycoprotein. In a preferred aspect, the production phase of the cell culture process is preceded by a transition phase of the cell culture in which parameters for the production phase of the cell culture are engaged. Further details of this process are found in U.S. Pat. No. 5,721,121, and Chaderjian et al., *Biotechnol. Prog.* 21(2):550-3 (2005), the entire disclosures of which are expressly incorporated by reference herein.

Following fermentation proteins are purified. Procedures for purification of proteins from cell debris initially depend on the site of expression of the protein. Some proteins can be caused to be secreted directly from the cell into the surrounding growth media; others are made intracellularly. For the latter proteins, the first step of a purification process involves lysis of the cell, which can be done by a variety of methods, including mechanical shear, osmotic shock, or enzymatic treatments. Such disruption releases the entire contents of the cell into the homogenate, and in addition produces subcellular fragments that are difficult to remove due to their small size. These are generally removed by differential centrifugation or by filtration. The same problem arises, although on a smaller scale, with directly secreted proteins due to the natural death of cells and release of intracellular host cell proteins and components in the course of the protein production run.

Once a clarified solution containing the protein of interest has been obtained, its separation from the other proteins produced by the cell is usually attempted using a combination of different chromatography techniques. These techniques separate mixtures of proteins on the basis of their charge, degree of hydrophobicity, or size. Several different chromatography resins are available for each of these techniques, allowing accurate tailoring of the purification scheme to the particular protein involved. The essence of each of these separation methods is that proteins can be caused either to move at different rates down a long column, achieving a

physical separation that increases as they pass further down the column, or to adhere selectively to the separation medium, being then differentially eluted by different solvents. In some cases, the desired protein is separated from impurities when the impurities specifically adhere to the column, and the protein of interest does not, that is, the protein of interest is present in the "flow-through." Thus, purification of recombinant proteins from the cell culture of mammalian host cells may include one or more affinity (e.g. protein A) and/or ion exchange chomarographic steps.

Ion exchange chromatography is a chromatographic technique that is commonly used for the purification of proteins. In ion exchange chromatography, charged patches on the surface of the solute are attracted by opposite charges attached to a chromatography matrix, provided the ionic strength of the surrounding buffer is low. Elution is generally achieved by increasing the ionic strength (i.e. conductivity) of the buffer to compete with the solute for the charged sites of the ion exchange matrix. Changing the pH and thereby altering the charge of the solute is another way to achieve elution of the solute. The change in conductivity or pH may be gradual (gradient elution) or stepwise (step elution). In the past, these changes have been progressive; i.e., the pH or conductivity is increased or decreased in a single direction.

For further details of the industrial purification of therapeutic antibodies see, for example, Fahrner et al., *Biotechnol. Genet. Eng. Rev.* 18:301-27 (2001), the entire disclosure of which is expressly incorporated by reference herein.

In addition to mammalian host cells, other eukaryotic organisms can be used as host cells for expression of the recombinant protein. For expression in yeast host cells, such as common baker's yeast or *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, suitable vectors include episomally-replicating vectors based on the 2-micron plasmid, integration vectors, and yeast artificial chromosome (YAC) vectors. Other yeast suitable for recombinant production of heterologous proteins include *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (Beach and Nurse, Nature, 290: 140 (1981); EP 139,383 published 2 May 1985); *Kluyveromyces* hosts (U.S. Pat. No. 4,943,529; Fleer et al., Bio/Technology, 2: 968 975 (1991)) such as, e.g., *K. lactis* (MW98-8C, CBS683, CBS4574; Louvencourt et al., J. Bacteriol., 737 (1983)), *K. fragilis* (ATCC 12,424), *K. bulgaricus* (ATCC 16,045), *K. wickeramii* (ATCC 24,178), *K. waltii* (ATCC 56,500), *K. drosophilarum* (ATCC 36,906; Van den Berg et al., Bio/Technology, 8: 135 (1990)), *K. thermotolerans*, and *K. marxianus; yarrowia* (EP 402,226); *Pichia pastoris* (EP 183,070; Sreekrishna et al., J. Basic Microbiol., 28: 265 278 (1988)); *Candida; Trichoderma reesia* (EP 244,234); *Neurospora crassa* (Case et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 76: 5259 5263 (1979)); *Schwanniomyces* such as *Schwanniomyces occidentalis* (EP 394,538 published 31 Oct. 1990); and filamentous fungi such as, e.g., *Neurospora, Penicillium, Tolypocladium* (WO 91/00357 published 10 Jan. 1991), and *Aspergillus* hosts such as *A. nidulans* (Ballance et al., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun., 112: 284 289 (1983); Tilburn et al., Gene, 26: 205 221 (1983); Yelton et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 81: 1470 1474 (1984)) and *A. niger* (Kelly and Hynes, EMBO J., 4: 475 479 (1985)). Methylotropic yeasts are suitable herein and include, but are not limited to, yeast capable of growth on methanol selected from the genera consisting of *Hansenula, Candida, Kloeckera, Pichia, Saccharomyces, Torulopsis*, and *Rhodotorula*. A list of specific species that are exemplary of this class of yeasts may be found in C. Anthony, The Biochemistry of Methylotrophs, 269 (1982). Expression systems for the listed and other yeasts are well known in the art and/or are commercially available.

For expression in insect host cells, such as Sf9 cells, suitable vectors include baculoviral vectors. For expression in plant host cells, particularly dicotyledonous plant hosts, such as tobacco, suitable expression vectors include vectors derived from the Ti plasmid of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens.*

The methods of the present invention also extend to cultures of prokaryotic host cells. Prokaryotic host cells suitable for expressing antibodies and other proteins to be protected by means of the instant invention include Archaebacteria and Eubacteria, such as Gram-negative or Gram-positive organisms. Examples of useful bacteria include *Escherichia* (e.g., *E. coli*), *Bacilli* (e.g., *B. subtilis*), *Enterobacteria, Pseudomonas* species (e.g., *P. aeruginosa*), *Salmonella typhimurium, Serratia marcescans, Klebsiella, Proteus, Shigella, Rhizobia, Vitreoscilla*, or *Paracoccus*. In one embodiment, gram-negative cells are used. Examples of *E. coli* strains include strain W3110 (Bachmann, Cellular and Molecular Biology, vol. 2 (Washington, D.C.: American Society for Microbiology, 1987), pp. 1190-1219; ATCC Deposit No. 27,325) and derivatives thereof, including strain 33D3 having genotype W3110 ΔfhuA (ΔtonA) ptr3 lac Iq lacL8 ΔompTΔ(nmpc-fepE) degP41 kanR (U.S. Pat. No. 5,639,635). Other strains and derivatives thereof, such as *E. coli* 294 (ATCC 31,446), *E. coli* B, *E. coli* 1776 (ATCC 31,537) and *E. coli* RV308 (ATCC 31,608) are also suitable. These examples are illustrative rather than limiting. Methods for constructing derivatives of any of the above-mentioned bacteria having defined genotypes are known in the art and described in, for example, Bass et al., Proteins, 8:309-314 (1990). It is generally necessary to select the appropriate bacteria taking into consideration replicability of the replicon in the cells of a bacterium. For example, *E. coli, Serratia*, or *Salmonella* species can be suitably used as the host when well known plasmids such as pBR322, pBR325, pACYC177, or pKN410 are used to supply the replicon. Typically the host cell should secrete minimal amounts of proteolytic enzymes, and additional protease inhibitors may desirably be incorporated in the cell culture.

Methods for the production, recovery and purification of recombinant proteins from non-mammalian host cell cultures are also well known in the art. If the polypeptide is produced in a non-mammalian cell, e.g., a microorganism such as fungi or *E. coli*, the polypeptide will be recovered inside the cell or in the periplasmic space (Kipriyanov and Little, *Molecular Biotechnology,* 12: 173 201 (1999); Skerra and Pluckthun, *Science,* 240: 1038 1040 (1988)). Hence, it is necessary to release the protein from the cells to the extracellular medium by extraction such as cell lysis. Such disruption releases the entire contents of the cell into the homogenate, and in addition produces subcellular fragments that are difficult to remove due to their small size. These are generally removed by differential centrifugation or by filtration.

Cell lysis is typically accomplished using mechanical disruption techniques such as homogenization or head milling. While the protein of interest is generally effectively liberated, such techniques have several disadvantages (Engler, *Protein Purification Process Engineering*, Harrison eds., 37 55 (1994)). Temperature increases, which often occur during processing, may result in inactivation of the protein. Moreover, the resulting suspension contains a broad spectrum of contaminating proteins, nucleic acids, and polysaccharides. Nucleic acids and polysaccharides increase solution viscosity, potentially complicating subsequent processing by centrifugation, cross-flow filtration, or chromatography. Complex associations of these contaminants with the protein of interest can complicate the purification process and result in unacceptably low yields. Improved methods for purification of heterologous polypeptides from microbial fermentation

broth or homogenate are described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 7,169,908, the entire disclosure of which is expressly incorporated herein by reference.

It is emphasized that the fermentation, recovery and purification methods described herein are only for illustration purposes. The methods of the present invention can be combined with any manufacturing process developed for the production, recovery and purification of recombinant proteins.

2. Antibodies

In a preferred embodiment, the methods of the present invention are used to prevent the reduction of inter- and/or intrachain disulfide bonds of antibodies, including therapeutic and diagnostic antibodies. Antibodies within the scope of the present invention include, but are not limited to: anti-HER2 antibodies including Trastuzumab (HERCEPTIN®) (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 89:4285-4289 (1992), U.S. Pat. No. 5,725,856); anti-CD20 antibodies such as chimeric anti-CD20 "C2B8" as in U.S. Pat. No. 5,736,137 (RITUXAN®), a chimeric or humanized variant of the 2H7 antibody as in U.S. Pat. No. 5,721,108B1, or Tositumomab (BEXXAR®); anti-IL-8 (St John et al., *Chest,* 103:932 (1993), and International Publication No. WO 95/23865); anti-VEGF antibodies including humanized and/or affinity matured anti-VEGF antibodies such as the humanized anti-VEGF antibody huA4.6.1 AVASTIN® (Kim et al., *Growth Factors,* 7:53-64 (1992), International Publication No. WO 96/30046, and WO 98/45331, published Oct. 15, 1998); anti-PSCA antibodies (WO01/40309); anti-CD40 antibodies, including S2C6 and humanized variants thereof (WO00/75348); anti-CD11a (U.S. Pat. No. 5,622,700, WO 98/23761, Steppe et al., *Transplant Intl.* 4:3-7 (1991), and Hourmant et al., *Transplantation* 58:377-380 (1994)); anti-IgE (Presta et al., *J. Immunol.* 151:2623-2632 (1993), and International Publication No. WO 95/19181); anti-CD18 (U.S. Pat. No. 5,622,700, issued Apr. 22, 1997, or as in WO 97/26912, published Jul. 31, 1997); anti-IgE (including E25, E26 and E27; U.S. Pat. No. 5,714,338, issued Feb. 3, 1998 or U.S. Pat. No. 5,091,313, issued Feb. 25, 1992, WO 93/04173 published Mar. 4, 1993, or International Application No. PCT/US98/13410 filed Jun. 30, 1998, U.S. Pat. No. 5,714,338); anti-Apo-2 receptor antibody (WO 98/51793 published Nov. 19, 1998); anti-TNF-α antibodies including cA2 (REMICADE®), CDP571 and MAK-195 (See, U.S. Pat. No. 5,672,347 issued Sep. 30, 1997, Lorenz et al., *J. Immunol.* 156(4):1646-1653 (1996), and Dhainaut et al., *Crit. Care Med.* 23(9):1461-1469 (1995)); anti-Tissue Factor (TF) (European Patent No. 0 420 937 B1 granted Nov. 9, 1994); anti-human $\alpha_4\beta_7$ integrin (WO 98/06248 published Feb. 19, 1998); anti-EGFR (chimerized or humanized 225 antibody as in WO 96/40210 published Dec. 19, 1996); anti-CD3 antibodies such as OKT3 (U.S. Pat. No. 4,515,893 issued May 7, 1985); anti-CD25 or anti-tac antibodies such as CHI-621 (SIMULECT®) and (ZENAPAX®) (See U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,762 issued Dec. 2, 1997); anti-CD4 antibodies such as the cM-7412 antibody (Choy et al., *Arthritis Rheum* 39(1):52-56 (1996)); anti-CD52 antibodies such as CAMPATH-1H (Riechmann et al., *Nature* 332:323-337 (1988)); anti-Fc receptor antibodies such as the M22 antibody directed against FcγRI as in Graziano et al., *J. Immunol.* 155(10):4996-5002 (1995); anti-carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) antibodies such as hMN-14 (Sharkey et al., *Cancer Res.* 55(23 Suppl): 5935s-5945s (1995); antibodies directed against breast epithelial cells including huBrE-3, hu-Mc 3 and CHL6 (Ceriani et al., *Cancer Res.* 55(23): 5852s-5856s (1995); and Richman et al., *Cancer Res.* 55(23 Supp): 5916s-5920s (1995)); antibodies that bind to colon carcinoma cells such as C242 (Litton et al., *Eur J. Immunol.* 26(1):1-9 (1996)); anti-CD38 antibodies, e.g. AT 13/5 (Ellis et al., *J. Immunol.* 155(2):925-937 (1995)); anti-CD33 antibodies such as Hu M195 (Jurcic et al., *Cancer Res* 55(23 Suppl): 5908s-5910s (1995) and CMA-676 or CDP771; anti-CD22 antibodies such as LL2 or LymphoCide (Juweid et al., *Cancer Res* 55(23 Suppl): 5899s-5907s (1995)); anti-Ep-CAM antibodies such as 17-1A (PANOREX®); anti-GpIIb/IIIa antibodies such as abciximab or c7E3 Fab (REOPRO®); anti-RSV antibodies such as MEDI-493 (SYNAGIS®); anti-CMV antibodies such as PROTOVIR®; anti-HIV antibodies such as PRO542; anti-hepatitis antibodies such as the anti-Hep B antibody OSTAVIR®; anti-CA 125 antibody OvaRex; anti-idiotypic GD3 epitope antibody BEC2; anti-αvβ3 antibody VITAXIN®; anti-human renal cell carcinoma antibody such as ch-G250; ING-1; anti-human 17-1A antibody (3622W94); anti-human colorectal tumor antibody (A33); anti-human melanoma antibody R24 directed against GD3 ganglioside; anti-human squamous-cell carcinoma (SF-25); and anti-human leukocyte antigen (HLA) antibodies such as Smart ID10 and the anti-HLA DR antibody Oncolym (Lym-1). The preferred target antigens for the antibody herein are: HER2 receptor, VEGF, IgE, CD20, CD11a, and CD40.

Many of these antibodies are widely used in clinical practice to treat various diseases, including cancer.

In certain specific embodiments, the methods of the present invention are used for the production of the following antibodies and recombinant proteins.

Anti-CD20 Antibodies

Rituximab (RITUXAN®) is a genetically engineered chimeric murine/human monoclonal antibody directed against the CD20 antigen. Rituximab is the antibody called "C2B8" in U.S. Pat. No. 5,736,137 issued Apr. 7, 1998 (Anderson et al.). Rituximab is indicated for the treatment of patients with relapsed or refractory low-grade or follicular, CD20-positive, B cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. In vitro mechanism of action studies have demonstrated that rituximab binds human complement and lyses lymphoid B cell lines through complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) (Reff et al., *Blood* 83(2):435-445 (1994)). Additionally, it has significant activity in assays for antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). More recently, rituximab has been shown to have anti-proliferative effects in tritiated thymidine incorporation assays and to induce apoptosis directly, while other anti-CD19 and CD20 antibodies do not (Maloney et al., *Blood* 88(10):637a (1996)). Synergy between rituximab and chemotherapies and toxins has also been observed experimentally. In particular, rituximab. sensitizes drug-resistant human B cell lymphoma cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of doxorubicin, CDDP, VP-1 6, diphtheria toxin and ricin (Demidem et al., *Cancer Chemotherapy & Radiopharmaceuticals* 12(3):177-186 (1997)). In vivo preclinical studies have shown that rituximab depletes B cells from the peripheral blood, lymph nodes, and bone marrow of cynomolgus monkeys, presumably through complement and cell-mediated processes (Reff et al., *Blood* 83(2):435-445 (1994)).

Patents and patent publications concerning CD20 antibodies include U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,776,456, 5,736,137, 6,399,061, and 5,843,439, as well as U.S. patent application Nos. US 2002/0197255A1, US 2003/0021781A1, US 2003/0082172 A1, US 2003/0095963 A1, US 2003/0147885 A1 (Anderson et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 6,455,043B1 and WO00/09160 (Grillo-Lopez, A.); WO00/27428 (Grillo-Lopez and White); WO00/27433 (Grillo-Lopez and Leonard); WO00/44788 (Braslawsky et al.); WO01/10462 (Rastetter, W.); WO01/10461 (Rastetter and White); WO01/10460 (White and Grillo-Lopez); U.S. application No. US2002/0006404 and WO02/04021 (Hanna and Hariharan); U.S. application No. US2002/0012665 A1 and WO01/74388 (Hanna, N.); U.S. application

No. US 2002/0058029 A1 (Hanna, N.); U.S. application No. US 2003/0103971 A1 (Hariharan and Hanna); U.S. application No. US2002/0009444A1, and WO01/80884 (Grillo-Lopez, A.); WO01/97858 (White, C.); U.S. application No. US2002/0128488A1 and WO02/34790 (Reff, M.); WO 02/060955 (Braslawsky et al.); WO2/096948 (Braslawsky et al.); WO02/079255 (Reff and Davies); U.S. Pat. No. 6,171,586B1, and WO98/56418 (Lam et al.); WO98/58964 (Raju, S.); WO99/22764 (Raju, S.); WO99/51642, U.S. Pat. No. 6,194,551B1, U.S. Pat. No. 6,242,195B1, U.S. Pat. No. 6,528,624B1 and U.S. Pat. No. 6,538,124 (Idusogie et al.); WO00/42072 (Presta, L.); WO00/67796 (Curd et al.); WO01/03734 (Grillo-Lopez et al.); U.S. application No. US 2002/0004587A1 and WO01/77342 (Miller and Presta); U.S. application No. US2002/0197256 (Grewal, I.); U.S. application No. US 2003/0157108 A1 (Presta, L.); U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,090,365B1, 6,287,537B1, 6,015,542, 5,843,398, and 5,595,721, (Kaminski et al.); U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,500,362, 5,677,180, 5,721,108, and 6,120,767 (Robinson et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 6,410,391B1 (Raubitschek et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 6,224,866B1 and WO00/20864 (Barbera-Guillem, E.); WO01/13945 (Barbera-Guillem, E.); WO00/67795 (Goldenberg); U.S. application No. US 2003/01339301 A1 and WO00/74718 (Goldenberg and Hansen); WO00/76542 (Golay et al.); WO01/72333 (Wolin and Rosenblatt); U.S. Pat. No. 6,368,596B1 (Ghetie et al.); U.S. application No. US2002/0041847 A1, (Goldenberg, D.); U.S. application No. US2003/0026801A1 (Weiner and Hartmann); WO02/102312 (Engleman, E.); U.S. patent application No. 2003/0068664 (Albitar et al.); WO03/002607 (Leung, S.); WO 03/049694 and US 2003/0185796 A1 (Wolin et al.); WO03/061694 (Sing and Siegall); US 2003/0219818 A1 (Bohen et al.); US 2003/0219433 A1 and WO 03/068821 (Hansen et al.) each of which is expressly incorporated herein by reference. See, also, U.S. Pat. No. 5,849,898 and EP application no. 330,191 (Seed et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 4,861,579 and EP332,865A2 (Meyer and Weiss); U.S. Pat. No. 4,861,579 (Meyer et al.) and WO95/03770 (Bhat et al.).

Publications concerning therapy with Rituximab include: Perotta and Abuel "Response of chronic relapsing ITP of 10 years duration to Rituximab" Abstract #3360 *Blood* 10(1) (part 1-2): p. 88B (1998); Stashi et al., "Rituximab chimeric anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody treatment for adults with chronic idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura" *Blood* 98(4): 952-957 (2001); Matthews, R. "Medical Heretics" New Scientist (7 Apr. 2001); Leandro et al., "Clinical outcome in 22 patients with rheumatoid arthritis treated with B lymphocyte depletion" *Ann Rheum Dis* 61:833-888 (2002); Leandro et al., "Lymphocyte depletion in rheumatoid arthritis: early evidence for safety, efficacy and dose response. *Arthritis & Rheumatism* 44(9): 5370 (2001); Leandro et al., "An open study of B lymphocyte depletion in systemic lupus erythematosus", *Arthritis & Rheumatism* 46(1):2673-2677 (2002); Edwards and Cambridge "Sustained improvement in rheumatoid arthritis following a protocol designed to deplete B lymphocytes" *Rheumatology* 40:205-211 (2001); Edwards et al., "B-lymphocyte depletion therapy in rheumatoid arthritis and other autoimmune disorders" *Biochem. Soc. Trans.* 30(4):824-828 (2002); Edwards et al., "Efficacy and safety of Rituximab, a B-cell targeted chimeric monoclonal antibody: A randomized, placebo controlled trial in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis & Rheumatism* 46(9): S197 (2002); Levine and Pestronk "IgM antibody-related polyneuropathies: B-cell depletion chemotherapy using Rituximab" *Neurology* 52: 1701-1704 (1999); DeVita et al., "Efficacy of selective B cell blockade in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis" *Arthritis & Rheumatism* 46:2029-2033 (2002); Hidashida et al., "Treatment of DMARD-Refractory rheumatoid arthritis with rituximab." Presented at the Annual Scientific Meeting of the American College of Rheumatology; October 24-29; New Orleans, La. 2002; Tuscan, J. "Successful treatment of Infliximab-refractory rheumatoid arthritis with rituximab" Presented at the Annual Scientific Meeting of the American College of Rheumatology; October 24-29; New Orleans, La. 2002. Sarwal et al., *N. Eng. J. Med.* 349(2):125-138 (Jul. 10, 2003) reports molecular heterogeneity in acute renal allograft rejection identified by DNA microarray profiling.

In various embodiments, the invention provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising humanized 2H7 anti-CD20 antibodies. In specific embodiments, the humanized 2H7 antibody is an antibody listed in Table 2.

TABLE 2

Humanized anti-CD20 Antibody and Variants Thereof

2H7 variant	V_L SEQ ID NO.	V_H SEQ ID NO.	Full L chain SEQ ID NO.	Full H chain SEQ ID NO.
A	1	2	6	7
B	1	2	6	8
C	3	4	9	10
D	3	4	9	11
F	3	4	9	12
G	3	4	9	13
H	3	5	9	14
I	1	2	6	15

Each of the antibody variants A, B and I of Table 2 comprises the light chain variable sequence (V_L):

(SEQ ID NO: 1)

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASSSVSYMHWYQQKPGKAPKPLIYA

PSNLASGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQWSFNPPTFG

QGTKVEIKR;
and

the heavy chain variable sequence (V_H):

(SEQ ID NO: 2)

EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA

IYPGNGDTSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV

YYSNSYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSS.

Each of the antibody variants C, D, F and G of Table 2 comprises the light chain variable sequence (V_L):

(SEQ ID NO: 3)

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASSSVSYLHWYQQKPGKAPKPLIYAP

SNLASGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQWAFNPPTFGQG

TKVEIKR,
and

the heavy chain variable sequence (V_H):

(SEQ ID NO: 4)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSASYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSS.

The antibody variant H of Table 2 comprises the light chain variable sequence (V_L) of SEQ ID NO:3 (above) and the heavy chain variable sequence (V_H):

(SEQ ID NO: 5)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSYRYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSS

Each of the antibody variants A, B and I of Table 2 comprises the full length light chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 6)
DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASSSVSYMHWYQQKPGKAPKPLIYAP
SNLASGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQWSFNPPTFGQG
TKVEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVD
NALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKDSTYSLSSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGL
SSPVTKSFNRGEC.

Variant A of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 7)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGDTSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSNSYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Variant B of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 8)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGDTSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSNSYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALPAPIAATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Variant I of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 15)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGDTSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSNSYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNAALPAPIAATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Each of the antibody variants C. D, F, G and H of Table 2 comprises the full length light chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 9)
DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASSSVSYLHWYQQKPGKAPKPLIYAP
SNLASGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQWAFNPPTFGQG
TKVEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVD
NALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKDSTYSLSSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGL
SSPVTKSFNRGEC.

Variant C of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 10)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSASYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALPAPIAATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Variant D of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 11)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSASYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCAVSNKALPAPIEATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Variant F of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 12)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSASYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNAALPAPIAATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Variant G of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 13)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSASYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNAALPAPIAATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHWHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

Variant H of Table 2 comprises the full length heavy chain sequence:

(SEQ ID NO: 14)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYTFTSYNMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVGA
IYPGNGATSYNQKFKGRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARVV
YYSYRYWYFDVWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCL
VKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGT
QTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPP
KPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQ
YNATYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNAALPAPIAATISKAKGQPRE
PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP
PVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSP
GK.

In certain embodiments, the humanized 2H7 antibody of the invention further comprises amino acid alterations in the IgG Fc and exhibits increased binding affinity for human FcRn over an antibody having wild-type IgG Fc, by at least 60 fold, at least 70 fold, at least 80 fold, more preferably at least 100 fold, preferably at least 125 fold, even more preferably at least 150 fold to about 170 fold.

The N-glycosylation site in IgG is at Asn297 in the C_H2 domain. Humanized 2H7 antibody compositions of the present invention include compositions of any of the preceding humanized 2H7 antibodies having a Fc region, wherein about 80-100% (and preferably about 90-99%) of the antibody in the composition comprises a mature core carbohydrate structure which lacks fucose, attached to the Fc region of the glycoprotein. Such compositions were demonstrated herein to exhibit a surprising improvement in binding to FcγRIIIA(F158), which is not as effective as FcγRIIIA (V158) in interacting with human IgG. FcγRIIIA (F158) is more common than FcγRIIIA (V158) in normal, healthy African Americans and Caucasians. See Lehrnbecher et al., *Blood* 94:4220 (1999). Historically, antibodies produced in Chinese Hamster Ovary Cells (CHO), one of the most commonly used industrial hosts, contain about 2 to 6% in the population that are nonfucosylated. YB2/0 and Lec13, however, can produce antibodies with 78 to 98% nonfucosylated species. Shinkawa et al., *J Bio. Chem.* 278 (5), 3466-347 (2003), reported that antibodies produced in YB2/0 and Lec13 cells, which have less FUT8 activity, show significantly increased ADCC activity in vitro. The production of antibodies with reduced fucose content are also described in e.g., Li et al., (GlycoFi) "Optimization of humanized IgGs in glycoengineered *Pichia pastoris*" in Nature Biology online publication 22 Jan. 2006; Niwa R. et al., *Cancer Res.* 64(6):2127-2133 (2004); US 2003/0157108 (Presta); U.S. Pat. No. 6,602,684 and US 2003/0175884 (Glycart Biotechnology); US 2004/0093621, US 2004/0110704, US 2004/0132140 (all of Kyowa Hakko Kogyo).

A bispecific humanized 2H7 antibody encompasses an antibody wherein one arm of the antibody has at least the antigen binding region of the H and/or L chain of a humanized 2H7 in antibody of the invention, and the other arm has V region binding specificity for a second antigen. In specific embodiments, the second antigen is selected from the group consisting of CD3, CD64, CD32A, CD16, NKG2D or other NK activating ligands.

Anti-HER2 Antibodies

A recombinant humanized version of the murine HER2 antibody 4D5 (huMAb4D5-8, rhuMAb HER2, trastuzumab or HERCEPTIN®; U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337) is clinically active in patients with HER2-overexpressing metastatic breast cancers that have received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14:737-744 (1996)). Trastuzumab received marketing approval from the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Sep. 25, 1998 for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer whose tumors overexpress the HER2 protein. In November 2006, the FDA approved Herceptin as part of a treatment regimen containing doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide and paclitaxel, for the adjuvant treatment of patients with HER2-positive, node-positive breast cancer.

In one embodiment, the anti-HER2 antibody comprises the following V_L and V_H domain sequences:

humanized 2C4 version 574 antibody V_L (SEQ ID NO: 16)

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITC**KASQDVSIGVA**WYQQKPGKAPKLLIYS

ASYRYTGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYC**QQYYIYPYT**FGQ

GTKVEIK.

and humanized 2C4 version 574 antibody V_H (SEQ ID NO: 17)

EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAS**GFTFTDYTMD**WVRQAPGKGLEWVA**D**

VNPNSGGSIYNQRFKGRFTLSVDRSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARN**L**

GPSFYFDYWGQGTLVTVSS.

In another embodiment, the anti-HER2 antibody comprises the V_L (SEQ ID NO:18) and V_H (SEQ ID NO:19) domain sequences of trastuzumab as shown in FIG. **21** and FIG. **22**, respectively.

Other HER2 antibodies with various properties have been described in Tagliabue et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933-937 (1991); McKenzie et al., *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989); Maier et al., *Cancer Res.* 51:5361-5369 (1991); Bacus et al., *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350-362 (1990); Stancovski et al., *PNAS (USA)* 88:8691-8695 (1991); Bacus et al., *Cancer Research* 52:2580-2589 (1992); Xu et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401-408 (1993); WO94/00136; Kasprzyk et al., *Cancer Research* 52:2771-2776 (1992); Hancock et al., *Cancer Res.* 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al., *Cancer Res.* 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al., *Cancer Res.* 54:3758-3765 (1994); Harwerth et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:15160-15167 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,783,186; and Klapper et al., *Oncogene* 14:2099-2109 (1997).

Anti-VEGF Antibodies

The anti-VEGF antibodies may, for example, comprise the following sequences:

In one embodiment, the anti-VEGF antibody comprises the following V_L sequence (SEQ ID NO:20):

DIQMTQTTSS LSASLGDRVI ISCSASQDIS NYLNWYQQKP

DGTVKVLIYF TSSLHSGVPS RFSGSGSGTD YSLTISNLEP

EDIATYYCQQ YSTVPWTFGG GTKLEIKR;
and

the following V_H sequence (SEQ ID NO:21):

EIQLVQSGPE LKQPGETVRI SCKASGYTFT NYGMNWVKQA

PGKGLKWMGW INTYTGEPTY AADFKRRFTF SLETSASTAY

LQISNLKNDD TATYFCAKYP HYYGSSHWYF DVWGAGTTVT VSS.

In another embodiment, the anti-VEGF antibody comprises the following V_L sequence (SEQ ID NO:22):

DIQMTQSPSS LSASVGDRVT ITCSASQDIS NYLNWYQQKP

GKAPKVLIYF TSSLHSGVPS RFSGSGSGTD FTLTISSLQP

EDFATYYCQQ YSTVPWTFGQ GTKVEIKR;
and

the following V_H sequence (SEQ ID NO:23):

EVQLVESGGG LVQPGGSLRL SCAASGYTFT NYGMNWVRQA

PGKGLEWVGW INTYTGEPTY AADFKRRFTF SLDTSKSTAY

LQMNSLRAED TAVYYCAKYP HYYGSSHWYF DVWGQGTLVT VSS.

In a third embodiment, the anti-VEGF antibody comprises the following V_L sequence (SEQ ID NO:24):

DIQLTQSPSS LSASVGDRVT ITCSASQDIS NYLNWYQQKP

GKAPKVLIYF TSSLHSGVPS RFSGSGSGTD FTLTISSLQP

EDFATYYCQQ YSTVPWTFGQ GTKVEIKR;
and

the following V_H sequence (SEQ ID NO:25):

EVQLVESGGG LVQPGGSLRL SCAASGYDFT HYGMNWVRQA

PGKGLEWVGW INTYTGEPTY AADFKRRFTF SLDTSKSTAY

LQMNSLRAED TAVYYCAKYP YYYGTSHWYF DVWGQGTLVT VSS.

Anti-CD11a Antibodies

The humanized anti-CD11a antibody efalizumab or Raptiva® (U.S. Pat. No. 6,037,454) received marketing approval from the Food and Drug Administration on Oct. 27, 2003 for the treatment for the treatment of psoriasis. One embodiment provides for an anti-human CD11a antibody comprising the V_L and V_H sequences of HuMHM24 below:

V_L (SEQ ID NO: 26):
DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASKTISKYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYS

GSTLQSGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHNEYPLTFGQ

GTKVEIKR;
and

V_H (SEQ ID NO: 27):
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYSFTGHWMNWVRQAPGKGLEWVGM

IHPSDSETRYNQKFKDRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARGI

YFYGTTYFDYWGQGTLVTVSS.

The anti-human CD11a antibody may comprise the V_H of SEQ ID NO:27 and the full length L chain of HuMHM24 having the sequence of:

(SEQ ID NO: 28)
DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASKTISKYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYS

GSTLQSGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHNEYPLTFGQ

GTKVEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKV

DNALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKDSTYSLSSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQG

LSSPVTKSFNRGEC,
or

the L chain above with the H chain having the sequence of:

(SEQ ID NO: 29)
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGYSFTGHWMNWVRQAPGKGLEWVGM

IHPSDSETRYNQKFKDRFTISVDKSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCARGI

YFYGTTYFDYWGQGTLVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLV

KDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGTQ

TYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPPK

PKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQY

NSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTISKAKGQPREP

QVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTPP

VLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPG

K.

Antibodies to the DR5 receptor (anti-DR5) antibodies can also be produced in accordance with the present invention. Such anti-DR5 antibodies specifically include all antibody variants disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 2006/083971, such as the anti-DR5 antibodies designated Apomabs 1.1, 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 6.1, 6.2, 6.3, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 8.1, 8.3, 9.1, 1.2, 2.2, 3.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2, 7.2, 8.2, 9.2, 1.3, 2.2, 3.3, 4.3, 5.3, 6.3, 7.3, 8.3, 9.3, and 25.3, especially Apomab 8.3 and Apomab 7.3, preferably Apomab 7.3. The entire content of WO 2006/083971 is hereby expressly incorporated by reference.

3. Other Disulfide-Containing Proteins

In addition to antibodies, the methods of the present invention find utility in the manufacturing of other polypeptides including disulfide bonds. Representative examples of such polypeptides include, without limitation, the following therapeutic proteins: tissue plasminogen activators (t-PAs), such as human tissue plasminogen activator (htPA, alteplase, ACTIVASE®), a thrombolytic agent for the treatment of myocardial infarction; a TNKase™, a ht-PA variant with extended half-life and fibrin specificity for single-bolus administration; recombinant human growth hormone (rhGH, somatropin, NUTROPIN®, PROTROPIN®) for the treatment of growth hormone deficiency in children and adults; and recombinant human deoxyribonuclease I (DNase I) for the treatment of cystic fibrosis (CF).

Examples of disulfide-containing biologically important proteins include growth hormone, including human growth hormone and bovine growth hormone; growth hormone releasing factor; parathyroid hormone; thyroid stimulating hormone; lipoproteins; alpha-1-antitrypsin; insulin A-chain; insulin B-chain; proinsulin; follicle stimulating hormone; calcitonin; luteinizing hormone; glucagon; clotting factors such as factor VIIIC, factor IX, tissue factor, and von Willebrands factor; anti-clotting factors such as Protein C; atrial natriuretic factor; lung surfactant; a plasminogen activator, such as urokinase or human urine or tissue-type plasminogen activator (t-PA); bombesin; thrombin; hemopoietic growth factor; tumor necrosis factor-alpha and -beta; enkephalinase; RANTES (regulated on activation normally T-cell expressed and secreted); human macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP-1-alpha); a serum albumin such as human serum albumin; Muellerian-inhibiting substance; relaxin A-chain; relaxin B-chain; prorelaxin; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; a microbial protein, such as beta-lactamase; DNase; IgE; a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte associated antigen (CTLA), such as CTLA-4; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF); receptors for hormones or growth factors; Protein A or D; rheumatoid factors; a neurotrophic factor such as bone-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), neurotrophin-3, -4, -5, or -6 (NT-3, NT-4, NT-5, or NT-6), or a nerve growth factor such as NGF-β; platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF); fibroblast growth factor such as aFGF and bFGF; epidermal growth factor (EGF); transforming growth factor (TGF) such as TGF-alpha and TGF-beta, including TGF-β1, TGF-β2, TGF-β3, TGF-β4, or TGF-β5; insulin-like growth factor-I and -II (IGF-I and IGF-II); des(1-3)-IGF-I (brain IGF-I), insulin-like growth factor binding proteins; CD proteins such as CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD20, CD34, and CD40; erythropoietin; osteoinductive factors; immunotoxins; a bone morphogenetic protein (BMP); an interferon such as interferon-alpha, -beta, and -gamma; colony stimulating factors (CSFs), e.g., M-CSF, GM-CSF, and G-CSF; interleukins (ILs), e.g., IL-1 to IL-10; superoxide dismutase; T-cell receptors; surface membrane proteins; decay accelerating factor; viral antigen such as, for example, a portion of the AIDS envelope; transport proteins; homing receptors; addressins; regulatory proteins; integrins such as CD11a, CD11b, CD11c, CD18, an ICAM, VLA-4 and VCAM; a tumor associated antigen such as HER2, HER3 or HER4 receptor; and fragments of any of the above-listed polypeptides.

4. General Methods for the Recombinant Production of Antibodies

The antibodies and other recombinant proteins herein can be produced by well known techniques of recombinant DNA technology. Thus, aside from the antibodies specifically identified above, the skilled practitioner could generate antibodies directed against an antigen of interest, e.g., using the techniques described below.

Antigen Selection and Preparation

The antibody herein is directed against an antigen of interest. Preferably, the antigen is a biologically important polypeptide and administration of the antibody to a mammal suffering from a disease or disorder can result in a therapeutic benefit in that mammal. However, antibodies directed against nonpolypeptide antigens (such as tumor-associated glycolipid antigens; see U.S. Pat. No. 5,091,178) are also contemplated. Where the antigen is a polypeptide, it may be a transmembrane molecule (e.g. receptor) or ligand such as a growth factor. Exemplary antigens include those proteins described in section (3) below. Exemplary molecular targets for antibodies encompassed by the present invention include CD proteins such as CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD20, CD22, CD34, CD40; members of the ErbB receptor family such as the EGF receptor, HER2, HER3 or HER4 receptor; cell adhesion molecules such as LFA-1, Mac1, p150, 95, VLA-4, ICAM-1, VCAM and αv/133 integrin including either α or β subunits thereof (e.g. anti-CD11a, anti-CD18 or anti-CD11b antibodies); growth factors such as VEGF; IgE; blood group

antigens; flk2/flt3 receptor; obesity (OB) receptor; mpl receptor; CTLA-4; protein C, or any of the other antigens mentioned herein. Antigens to which the antibodies listed above bind are specifically included within the scope herein.

Soluble antigens or fragments thereof, optionally conjugated to other molecules, can be used as immunogens for generating antibodies. For transmembrane molecules, such as receptors, fragments of these (e.g. the extracellular domain of a receptor) can be used as the immunogen. Alternatively, cells expressing the transmembrane molecule can be used as the immunogen. Such cells can be derived from a natural source (e.g. cancer cell lines) or may be cells which have been transformed by recombinant techniques to express the transmembrane molecule.

Other antigens and forms thereof useful for preparing antibodies will be apparent to those in the art.

Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl_2$, or $R^1N{=}C{=}NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 μg or 5 μg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with ⅕ to 1/10 the original amount of antigen or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature,* 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster or macaque monkey, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 (Academic Press, 1986)).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.,* 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 (Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987)).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 (Academic Press, 1986)). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, Protein A-Sepharose, hydroxyapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography. Preferably the Protein A chromatography procedure described herein is used.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of the monoclonal antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 81:6851 (1984)), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

In a further embodiment, monoclonal antibodies can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature,* 348:552-554 (1990). Clackson et al., *Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology,* 10:779-783 (1992)), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.,* 21:2265-2266 (1993)). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

Humanized and Human Antibodies

A humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature,* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature,* 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., *Science,* 239:1534-1536 (1988)), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human FR for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2296 (1993)). Another method uses a particular framework derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immunol.,* 151:2623 (1993)).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production.

Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature,* 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., *Year in Immuno.,* 7:33 (1993); and Duchosal et al., *Nature* 355:258 (1992). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 227:381 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.,* 222:581-597 (1991); Vaughan et al., *Nature Biotech* 14:309 (1996)).

Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al., *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107-117 (1992) and Brennan et al., *Science,* 229:81 (1985)). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form $F(ab')_2$ fragments (Carter et al., Bio/Technology 10:163-167 (1992)). According to another approach, $F(ab')_2$ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv) (see WO 93/16185).

Multispecific Antibodies

Multispecific antibodies have binding specificities for at least two different antigens. While such molecules normally will only bind two antigens (i.e. bispecific antibodies, BsAbs), antibodies with additional specificities such as trispecific antibodies are encompassed by this expression when used herein.

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature,* 305:537-539 (1983)). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.,* 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to another approach described in WO96/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first

antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science,* 229: 81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate $F(ab')_2$ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli*, which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.,* 175: 217-225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody $F(ab')_2$ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.,* 148(5):1547-1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 90:6444-6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.,* 152:5368 (1994). Alternatively, the antibodies can be "linear antibodies" as described in Zapata et al., *Protein Eng.* 8(10):1057-1062 (1995). Briefly, these antibodies comprise a pair of tandem Fd segments (V_H-C_H1-V_H-C_H1) which form a pair of antigen binding regions. Linear antibodies can be bispecific or monospecific.

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al., *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

Immunoadhesins

The simplest and most straightforward immunoadhesin design combines the binding domain(s) of the adhesin (e.g. the extracellular domain (ECD) of a receptor) with the hinge and Fc regions of an immunoglobulin heavy chain. Ordinarily, when preparing the immunoadhesins of the present invention, nucleic acid encoding the binding domain of the adhesin will be fused C-terminally to nucleic acid encoding the N-terminus of an immunoglobulin constant domain sequence, however N-terminal fusions are also possible.

Typically, in such fusions the encoded chimeric polypeptide will retain at least functionally active hinge, C_H2 and C_H3 domains of the constant region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain. Fusions are also made to the C-terminus of the Fc portion of a constant domain, or immediately N-terminal to the C_H1 of the heavy chain or the corresponding region of the light chain. The precise site at which the fusion is made is not critical; particular sites are well known and may be selected in order to optimize the biological activity, secretion, or binding characteristics of the immunoadhesin.

In a preferred embodiment, the adhesin sequence is fused to the N-terminus of the Fc domain of immunoglobulin G_1 (IgG_1). It is possible to fuse the entire heavy chain constant region to the adhesin sequence. However, more preferably, a sequence beginning in the hinge region just upstream of the papain cleavage site which defines IgG Fc chemically (i.e. residue 216, taking the first residue of heavy chain constant region to be 114), or analogous sites of other immunoglobulins is used in the fusion. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the adhesin amino acid sequence is fused to (a) the hinge region and C_H2 and C_H3 or (b) the C_H1, hinge, C_H2 and C_H3 domains, of an IgG heavy chain.

For bispecific immunoadhesins, the immunoadhesins are assembled as multimers, and particularly as heterodimers or heterotetramers. Generally, these assembled immunoglobulins will have known unit structures. A basic four chain structural unit is the form in which IgG, IgD, and IgE exist. A four chain unit is repeated in the higher molecular weight immunoglobulins; IgM generally exists as a pentamer of four basic units held together by disulfide bonds. IgA globulin, and occasionally IgG globulin, may also exist in multimeric form in serum. In the case of multimer, each of the four units may be the same or different.

Various exemplary assembled immunoadhesins within the scope herein are schematically diagrammed below:

AC_L-AC_L;

AC_H-(AC_H, AC_L-AC_H, AC_L-V_HC_H, or V_LC_L-AC_H);

AC_L-AC_H-(AC_L-AC_H, AC_L-V_HC_H, V_LC_L-AC_H, or V_LC_L-V_HC_H)

AC_L-V_HC_H-(AC_H, or AC_L-V_HC_H, or V_LC_L-AC_H);

V_LC_L-AC_H-(AC_L-V_HC_H, or V_LC_L-AC_H); and

$(A\text{-}Y)_n$-(V_LC_L-V_HC_H)$_2$,

wherein each A represents identical or different adhesin amino acid sequences;

V_L is an immunoglobulin light chain variable domain;

V_H is an immunoglobulin heavy chain variable domain;

C_L is an immunoglobulin light chain constant domain;

C_H is an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain;

n is an integer greater than 1;

Y designates the residue of a covalent cross-linking agent.

In the interests of brevity, the foregoing structures only show key features; they do not indicate joining (J) or other domains of the immunoglobulins, nor are disulfide bonds shown. However, where such domains are required for binding activity, they shall be constructed to be present in the ordinary locations which they occupy in the immunoglobulin molecules.

Alternatively, the adhesin sequences can be inserted between immunoglobulin heavy chain and light chain sequences, such that an immunoglobulin comprising a chimeric heavy chain is obtained. In this embodiment, the adhesin sequences are fused to the 3' end of an immunoglobulin heavy chain in each arm of an immunoglobulin, either between the hinge and the C_H2 domain, or between the C_H2 and C_H3 domains. Similar constructs have been reported by Hoogenboom, et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 28:1027-1037 (1991).

Although the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain is not required in the immunoadhesins of the present invention, an immunoglobulin light chain might be present either covalently associated to an adhesin-immunoglobulin heavy chain fusion polypeptide, or directly fused to the adhesin. In the former case, DNA encoding an immunoglobulin light chain is typically coexpressed with the DNA encoding the adhesin-immunoglobulin heavy chain fusion protein. Upon secretion, the hybrid heavy chain and the light chain will be covalently associated to provide an immunoglobulin-like structure comprising two disulfide-linked immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs. Methods suitable for the preparation of such structures are, for example, disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567, issued 28 Mar. 1989.

Immunoadhesins are most conveniently constructed by fusing the cDNA sequence encoding the adhesin portion in-frame to an immunoglobulin cDNA sequence. However, fusion to genomic immunoglobulin fragments can also be used (see, e.g. Aruffo et al., *Cell* 61:1303-1313 (1990); and Stamenkovic et al., Cell 66:1133-1144 (1991)). The latter type of fusion requires the presence of Ig regulatory sequences for expression. cDNAs encoding IgG heavy-chain constant regions can be isolated based on published sequences from cDNA libraries derived from spleen or peripheral blood lymphocytes, by hybridization or by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques. The cDNAs encoding the "adhesin" and the immunoglobulin parts of the immunoadhesin are inserted in tandem into a plasmid vector that directs efficient expression in the chosen host cells.

The following examples are offered for illustrative purposes only, and are not intended to limit the scope of the present invention in any way.

All patent and literature references cited in the present specification are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

EXAMPLES

Commercially available reagents referred to in the examples were used according to manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated. The source of those cells identified in the following examples, and throughout the specification, by ATCC accession numbers is the American Type Culture Collection, Manassas, Va.

Example 1

Description of Materials and Methods

The following materials and methods were used in Examples 2-8 below.

Materials

Materials and devices used in the experiments described in the experimental examples include: stainless steel vials (mini-tanks, Flow Components, Dublin, Calif.; short (50 cc) and tall (55 cc)); dialysis tubing (Spectra/Por, 6-8000 MWCO, cat. #132645), 0.22 μm filter (Millipore Millipak Gamma Gold cat. # MPGL04GH2); phosphate buffered saline (PBS, EMD, cat. #6506); ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA, Sigma, cat. # E4884); α-nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH, Calbiochem, cat. #481973); dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA, TCI, cat. # D0044); cupric sulfate (Sigma, cat. # C8027), glucose-6-phosphate (G6P, Calbiochem, cat. #346764); aurothioglucose (ATG, USP, cat. #1045508); aurothiomalate (ATM, Alfa Aesar, cat. #39740); reduced glutathione (GSH, J. T. Baker, cat. # M770-01); monobromobimane (mBB, Fluka, cat. #69898); histidine (J. T. Baker, cat. #2080-05); sodium sulfate (J. T. Baker, cat. #3897-05); Trx (Sigma, cat. # T8690); TrxR (Sigma, cat. # T9698). All chemicals and reagents were used as received with no further purification. Stock solutions of EDTA (250 mM, pH 7.5), $CuSO_4$ (10 mM), ATG (30 mM), ATM (30 mM), NADPH (75 mM), G6P (300 mM) were prepared for use in the mini-tank time course studies.

Generation of Cell Culture Fluid (CCF)

In order to generate ocrelizumab CCF for the various reduction studies, a representative small-scale fermentation process was utilized similar to the methods described previously (Chaderjian et al., 2005). Briefly, 3 liter glass stirred-tank Applikon® bioreactors fitted with pitched blade impellers were used for the inoculum-train and production cultures with the ocrelizumab media components. The bioreactors were outfitted with calibrated dissolved oxygen (DO), pH and temperature probes. DO, pH, temperature, and agitation rate were controlled using digital control units to the defined parameters of the ocrelizumab manufacturing process. The working volume for both the inoculum-train and production cultures was 1.5 L. Daily samples were analyzed on a NOVA Bioprofile blood gas analyzer to ensure the accuracy of the on-line value for pH and dissolved oxygen as well as to monitor the glucose, lactate, ammonium, glutamine, glutamate, and sodium concentrations in the cultures. Daily samples were also taken to monitor cell growth, viability, and titer. Cell growth was measured both by viable cell counts using a ViCell as well as on a packed cell volume (PCV) basis. Culture viability was determined by trypan blue exclusion on a ViCell instrument. Supernatant samples were assayed by an HPLC-based method to measure ocrelizumab titer values.

Harvested Cell Culture Fluid (HCCF) Preparation

Complete lysis of CCF was achieved by high pressure homogenization using a Microfluidics HC-8000 homogenizer. The pressure regulator of the instrument was set to 4,000-8,000 psi, and the CCF was pulled in through the homogenizer to obtain complete cell lysis (membrane breakage) after a single pass. The CCF homogenate was collected once water was purged through the system. The homogenate was transferred to centrifuge bottles and centrifuged in a Sorval RC-3B rotor centrifuge at 4,500 rpm for 30 minutes at 20° C. The centrate was decanted and then depth filtered followed by 0.22 μm sterile filtration using a peristaltic pump with silicon tubing to generate the final HCCF from the homogenized CCF (100% cell lysis). Alternatively, the CCF

was centrifuged straight from the fermentor without any homogenization and then the centrate was filtered with a sterile 0.22 μm filter to generate the HCCF.

Mini-Tank Handling

A laminar flow hood was used in handling all mini-tanks and all materials used in the HCCF incubation experiments were either autoclaved or rinsed using 70% isopropanol to minimize bacterial contamination.

Lactate Dehydrogenase Assay

For lactate dehydrogenase assay, see Babson & Babson (1973) and Legrand et al., (1992), which are hereby incorporated by reference.

Dialysis Experiment

A dialysis experiment was carried out in order to determine whether the components causing reduction of ocrelizumab were small molecules or macromolecules (i.e. enzymes). A sample of 3 mL of purified and formulated ocrelizumab (30.2 mg/mL) was dialyzed against 1 L of phosphate buffered saline (PBS, 10 mM pH 7.2) for 24 hours and the PBS was changed after 8 hours. The concentration of the ocrelizumab sample was then adjusted to 1 mg/mL using the absorbance at 280 nm. Aliquots were stored at −70° C. prior to use. Dialysis tubing was hydrated overnight in a 0.05% azide solution and rinsed with sterile water prior to use. The HCCF obtained from homogenization of CCF from a 3-L fermentor was thawed and filtered through a 0.22 μm Millipak filter using a peristaltic pump. Six short mini-tanks were filled with 30 mL of HCCF each. To each mini-tank, 500 μL of ocrelizumab sample in sealed dialysis tubing was added. The mini-tanks were sealed and loaded into a bench top mixer (Barnstead Lab-Line MAX Q 4000) operating at 35 rpm and ambient temperature. For each time-point, one mini-tank was removed from the mixer, and aliquots of the HCCF (in the mini-tank) and ocrelizumab sample (in the dialysis bag) were taken and stored at −70° C. until analyzed with the free thiol assay and the Bioanalyzer assay (described below).

Test Inhibitors for Reduction in a Small-Scale In Vitro System

A tall mini-tank was filled with 27 mL of HCCF. Depending on the experiment design, various reagents (NADPH, G6P, inhibitors of G6PD or TrxR) were added to the desired concentration, and the final volume in the mini-tank was brought to 30 mL with PBS (10 mM pH 7.2). The mini-tanks were sealed and loaded into a bench top mixer running at 35 rpm and ambient temperature. At each-time point for sampling, the exteriors of the mini-tanks were sterilized with 70% IPA and opened in a laminar flow hood for the removal of an aliquot. The mini-tanks were then re-sealed and loaded back into the bench top mixer. All aliquots were stored at −70° C. until analyzed with the free thiol assay and Bioanalyzer assay (described below).

In Vitro Trx/TrxRreductase Studies

A commercial TrxR (rat liver) solution (4 μM) was diluted with water to yield a 2.86 μM solution. Lyophilized Trx (human) was reconstituted with PBS (10 mM, pH 7.2) yielding a 500 μM solution. A solution of 20 mM NADPH and 10 mM ATG and ATM solutions were prepared in water.

In a black polypropylene 1.5 mL micro centrifuge tube, 437 μL PBS, 25 μL NADPH, 16 μL formulated ocrelizumab solution (30.2 mg/mL) and 5 μL Trx were gently mixed. The reaction was initiated by the addition of 17.5 μL TrxR. The reaction was incubated at room temperature for 24 hours. Aliquots of 20 μL were taken at each sampling time-point and stored at −70° C. until analyzed by the Bioanalyzer assay (see below). Controls were performed to determine if the enzymatic pathway was active when an enzyme was omitted by substituting an equal volume of PBS for either Trx and/or TrxR in the reaction mixture.

Inhibition of the Trx system was demonstrated using the same reaction conditions described above with the addition of 5 μL ATG or ATM. To demonstrate the inhibition of Trx system by Cu^{2+}, 2.5 μL of $CuSO_4$ (10 mM) was added to reaction mixture using the same enzymes but a different buffer (10 mM histidine, 10 mM Na_2SO_4, 137 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM KCl, pH 7.0) to prevent formation of insoluble $Cu_3(PO_4)_2$.

Free Thiol Assay

A standard curve using GSH was generated in PBS (10 mM, pH 6.0±0.05). From a 110 mM GSH solution, standards were prepared at concentrations of 0, 5.5, 11, 22, 44, 55, 110 and 550 μM through serial dilution. From an acetonitrile stock solution of mBB (10 mM stored at −20° C.), a 100 μM solution of mBB was prepared in PBS (10 mM, pH 10.0±0.05) and stored away from light.

In a black, flat bottomed 96 well plate, 100 μL of mBB was dispensed into each well. For the standard curve, 10 μL of standard GSH solution was added yielding a working pH of 8.0±0.2. For samples, 10 μL of sample was added to the wells. All wells were prepared in triplicate. The plate was incubated at room temperature for 1 hour in the dark then read using a fluorescence plate reader (Molecular Devices SpectraMax® Gemini XS) with an excitation wavelength of 390 nm and an emission wavelength of 490 nm. A linear standard curve was generated using the average result of the three standard wells plotted versus GSH concentration. Free thiol levels in samples were calculated from the linear equation of the standard curve using the average value of the three sample wells.

Bioanalyzer Assay

Capillary electrophoresis measurements were acquired using the Agilent 2100 Bioanalyzer. Sample preparation was carried out as described in the Agilent Protein 230 Assay Protocol (manual part number G2938-90052) with minor changes. HCCF samples were diluted, 1:4 and Protein A samples were diluted to 1.0 g/L with water prior to preparation. For HCCF samples at the denaturing step, 24 μL of a 50 mM iodoacetamide (IAM), 0.5% SDS solution was added in addition to the 2 μL of denaturing solution provided. For Protein A samples, 0.5% SDS with no JAM and 2 μL of denaturing solution were used. Digital gel-like images were generated using Agilent 2100 Expert software.

Stock Solutions for HCCF Hold Time Studies

Three separate stock solutions were used in the lab scale HCCF hold time studies: (1) 250 mM stock solution of EDTA (pH 7.4) prepared using EDTA, disodium dihydrate (Mallinckrodt, cat. #7727-06 or Sigma, cat. # E-5134) and EDTA, tetrasodium dihydrate (Sigma, cat. #E-6511), (2) 50 mM stock solution of cupric sulfate pentahydrate ($CuSO_4$, Sigma, cat. # C-8027), and (3) 1 M acetic acid solution (Mallinckrodt, cat. # V193).

Inhibitor Additions and Cell Culture Fluid (CCF) Blending

A stock solution of either 250 mM EDTA or 50 mM $CuSO_4$ was added to the CCF prior to homogenization to evaluate a range of final concentrations to prevent antibody disulfide reduction. Once the final HCCF was generated from the homogenized CCF, these solutions were then mixed with the HCCF generated from the non-homogenized CCF (also containing EDTA or $CuSO_4$) in order to dilute and decrease the total level of cell lysis to below the 100% maximum. Alternatively, a stock solution of 1 M acetic acid was added to a final blended HCCF solution (homogenized CCF and non-homogenized CCF) to decrease the pH of the solution to prevent antibody disulfide reduction.

Approximately 30-50 mL of each HCCF solution (containing EDTA, $CuSO_4$, acetic acid, or no addition for the control) was held in a 50 mL 316L stainless steel vial. The vial was sealed with a clamp, and the solution was not aerated or agitated. The vial was stored at room temperature (18-22° C.). At pre-determined time points, the solution was removed and purified over a lab scale protein A affinity resin.

Similar results can be obtained with other oxidizing agents, such as, for example, cystine and oxidized glutathione.

Air Sparging

To evaluate air sparging of the HCCF generated from homogenized CCF to prevent antibody disulfide reduction, 3-L glass or 15-L stainless steel vessels were utilized. Approximately 1-5 L of HCCF was 0.22 μm sterile filtered into each sterilized vessel. Experimental conditions were maintained at 18-22° C. and 50 (15-L fermentor) or 275 rpm (3-L fermentor) agitation either with or without pH control by the addition of carbon dioxide. Solutions were either sparged with air to increase the dissolved oxygen level to air saturation or with nitrogen (control) to remove any dissolved oxygen in solution. Gas flow to each vessel was variable dependent upon whether a constant aeration rate was used or a minimum level of dissolved oxygen was maintained. At pre-determined time points, 25-50 mL samples were removed from both vessels and purified over a lab scale protein A affinity resin prior to analysis.

Protein A Processing

Antibody in harvested cell culture fluid samples can be captured and purified using a specific affinity chromatography resin. Protein A resin (Millipore, Prosep-vA High Capacity) was selected as the affinity resin for antibody purification. The resin was packed in a 0.66 cm inner diameter glass column (Omnifit®) with a 14 cm bed height resulting in a 4.8 mL final column volume. Chromatography was performed using an AKTA Explorer 100 chromatography system (GE Healthcare).

The resin was exposed to buffers and HCCF at a linear flow rate between 350-560 cm/hr. The resin was equilibrated with 25 mM Tris, 25 mM NaCl, 5 mM EDTA, pH 7.1. For each purification, the resin was loaded between 5-15 mg antibody per mL of resin. The antibody concentration in the HCCF was determined using an immobilized protein A HPLC column (Applied Biosystems, POROS A). After loading, the resin was washed with 25 mM Tris, 25 mM NaCl, 5 mM EDTA, 0.5 M TMAC, pH 7.1, and then the antibody was eluted using 0.1M acetic acid, pH 2.9. Elution pooling was based on UV absorbance at 280 nm measured inline after the column. The purified elution pools were pH-adjusted using 1 M Sodium HEPES to pH 5.0-5.5. After regeneration of the resin with 0.1M phosphoric acid, the same or similar packed resins were used for subsequent purification of other HCCF solutions.

The antibody concentration in the purified protein A pool was measured using UV spectrometry at 280 nm. The purified protein A elution pools were analyzed by the Bioanalyzer assay to quantitate the percentage of intact antibody at 150 kDa molecular weight.

Example 2

Dialysis Experiment

A dialysis experiment was designed and carried out to determine if the reduction of ocrelizumab was caused by small reducing molecules or macromolecules (e.g., enzymes). In this dialysis experiment, purified intact ocrelizumab was placed in a dialysis bag with a molecular weight cut off (MWCO) of 7000 and incubated the dialysis bag in HCCF containing ocrelizumab in a stainless steel mini-tank. As shown in FIGS. **1** and **2**, the ocrelizumab inside the bag was not reduced after the incubation period (FIG. **1**), whereas the ocrelizumab outside the bag in the HCCF was significantly reduced soon after the incubation started. This was evidenced by the loss of intact ocrelizumab (~150 kDa) and the formation of ocrelizumab fragments (various combinations of heavy and light chains) (FIG. **2**). The mass spectrometry analysis of the ocrelizumab in the protein A elution pools from the reduced manufacturing runs indicated that those observed fragments were formed by reduction of only the inter-chain disulfide bonds.

The free thiol measurement showed that no free thiols were present inside the dialysis bag at the beginning of the incubation; however the levels of free thiols inside and outside the dialysis bag become comparable in less than five hours after the incubation started, indicating that the small molecule components in the HCCF are fully equilibrated inside and outside the dialysis bag (FIG. **3**). Since the reduction was observed only outside but not inside the dialysis bag with a MWCO of 7000 Da, the molecular weight of the reducing molecule(s) must be greater than 7000 Da. Thus, an enzymatic reaction is responsible for the reduction of ocrelizumab.

Example 3

Reduction of Ocrelizumab (rhuMAb 2H7, Variant A) by Trx/TrxR In Vitro

The Trx system was tested for its ability to reduce ocrelizumab in vitro by incubating intact ocrelizumab with Trx, TrxR, and NADPH. The Bioanalyzer results indicate that ocrelizumab was reduced in vitro by the Trx system (FIG. **5**). The rate of reduction in this in vitro system appears to be slower than that in the HCCF (for example when compared to the reduction shown in FIG. **2**). This is likely due to lower concentrations of the enzymes (Trx and Trx-R) and/or the buffer system used in the in vitro reaction because reaction rate of Trx system is dependent on both the enzyme concentrations and buffer systems.

Example 4

Inhibitors of the Trx System

(i) Inhibition of Reduction of Recombinant Antibody by Cupric Sulfate

Cupric sulfate is known for its ability to provide oxidizing redox potential and has been used in the cell culture processes to minimize free thiol (i.e., minimize unpaired cysteine) levels in recombinant antibody molecules (Chaderjian et al., 2005, supra). Cupric sulfate was tested for efficacy in inhibiting the Trx system in vitro and the subsequent reduction of ocrelizumab. In this in vitro reduction experiment, the buffer system was changed from PBS to histidine sulfate to avoid the formation of insoluble $Cu_3(PO_4)_2$. FIG. **8** shows that ocrelizumab was readily reduced by the Trx system in the histidine sulfate buffer (even faster than in PBS buffer). The addition of $CuSO_4$ to this reaction clearly inhibits the ocrelizumab reduction (FIG. **9**).

(ii) Inhibition of Reduction of Recombinant Antibody in HCCF by ATG and ATM

Two commercially available specific inhibitors of TrxR, aurothioglucose (ATG) and aurothiomalate (ATM), were tested for their ability to inhibit the Trx system in vitro and the reduction of ocrelizumab. Both ATG and ATM can effectively

inhibit the reduction of ocrelizumab in the assay described above (see FIGS. **6** and **7**). The addition of aurothioglucose or aurothiomalate, at a concentration of 1 mM to the same reaction mixture as described in the caption for FIG. **5** effectively inhibited the ocrelizumab reduction as shown in the digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis.

If the Trx system was active in the HCCF and reduced ocrelizumab as observed in the manufacturing runs resulting in reduced antibody molecules or in the lab scale experiments, both gold compounds (ATG and ATM) should be able to inhibit the reduction of ocrelizumab in HCCF. FIG. **10** shows that ocrelizumab was readily reduced in an HCCF from homogenized CCT generated from a 3-L fermentor after a period of incubation. However, the ocrelizumab reduction event was completely inhibited when either 1 mM ATG or ATM was added to the HCCF (FIGS. **11** and **12**). These results demonstrated that the Trx system is active in the HCCF and is directly responsible for the reduction of ocrelizumab.

Example 5

The Source of NADPH for Trx System Activity and the Roles of G6P and Glucose in Reduction Mechanism

The reduction of disulfides by the Trx system requires the reducing equivalents from NADPH (FIG. **4**). The main cellular metabolic pathway that provides NADPH for all reductive biosynthesis reactions is the pentose phosphate pathway. For the antibody reduction event to occur, the enzymes in this pathway must be still active in the HCCF in order to keep the Trx system active. At a minimum, the first step in the pentose phosphate pathway (catalyzed by G6PD) must be active to reduce $NADP^+$ to NADPH while converting G6P to 6-phosphogluconolactone. In addition, G6P is most likely produced from glucose and adenosine 5'-triphosphate (ATP) by the hexokinase activity in HCCF. The overall mechanism of ocrelizumab reduction is summarized in FIG. **4**.

The reducing activity in the HCCF appeared to be transitory in some cases and may be inhibited over time under certain storage conditions or after multiple freeze/thaw cycles. HCCF that has fully lost reducing activity provided an opportunity to explore the role of NADPH and G6P in the reduction of ocrelizumab by Trx system.

An HCCF from a large scale manufacturing run (the "beta" run) was subjected to several freeze/thaw cycles and used in an experiment designed to measure reduction; no ocrelizumab reduction was observed (FIG. **13**) despite its ability to bring about antibody reduction seen previously in freshly-thawed HCCF from this same fermentation. NADPH was added to this non-reducing HCCF at a concentration of 5 mM and the reduction event returned (FIG. **14**). Therefore, the Trx system is still intact and active in the HCCF where reduction no longer occurs, and capable of reducing protein and/or antibody if supplied with cofactors. Additionally, the reducing activity was lost over time as the NADPH source was depleted (presumably due to the oxidation of NADPH by all of the reductive reactions that compete for NADPH), and not because the Trx system was degraded or inactivated.

This was verified by another experiment. 10 mM G6P was added to a HCCF that had been repeatedly freeze-thawed from the beta run. This G6P addition reactivated the Trx system which subsequently reduced ocrelizumab in the HCCF incubation experiment (FIG. **15**). This demonstrated that the reduction of ocrelizumab in the HCCF was caused by the activities of both the Trx system and G6PD. Furthermore, G6PD is still active in a repeatedly freeze/thawed HCCF of the beta run; the loss of reduction activity in this a repeatedly freeze/thawed HCCF beta run appears to be due to the depletion of G6P, which thus eliminated the conversion of $NADP^+$ to NADPH.

In our studies, we have observed that EDTA can effectively inhibit the ocrelizumab reduction in the HCCF incubation experiment. As shown in FIG. **16**, the ocrelizumab was reduced after incubating the HCCF from a 12,000 L scale ocrelizumab manufacturing run (not repeatedly freeze/thawed and no loss of reducing activity) at ambient temperature for more than 19 hours. However, the reduction was completely inhibited when 20 mM EDTA was added to the 12 kL HCCF and held in a separate stainless steel minitank (FIG. **17**). In the first step of glycolysis, the hexokinase catalyzes the transfer of phosphate group from Mg2+-ATP to glucose, a reaction that requires the complexation of Mg2+ with ATP (Hammes & Kochavi, 1962a & 1962b, supra). Since EDTA is a metal ion chelator, especially for Mg2+, it can be an effective inhibitor of hexokinase. The observation that an excess amount of EDTA can effectively block the reduction indicates the involvement of hexokinase (i.e. providing G6P) in the mechanism of ocrelizumab reduction. Without being bound by this, or any other theory, EDTA blocks the reduction of ocrelizumab by eliminating the hexokinase activity and thereby reducing the G6P level available for G6PD, and subsequently the NADPH level available for the Trx system.

Although EDTA is every effective in blocking the reduction of ocrelizumab in fresh HCCF, it was unable to prevent the reduction of ocerlizumab in the beta run HCCF in which the Trx system activity was lost then reactivated by the addition of G6P. For example, the reduction of ocrelizumab was observed in an HCCF incubation experiment in which 5 mM G6P and 20 mM EDTA (final concentrations) were added to the beta run HCCF that had fully lost reducing activity (FIG. **18**). However, no reduction was seen in the control incubation experiment in which no G6P and EDTA were added. Without being bound by this or any other theory, the EDTA used in this manner may therefore inhibit neither the Trx system nor the G6PD, and may function as an inhibitor for hexokinase, which produces the G6P for the G6PD. Without G6P, the Trx system would not be supplied with the necessary NADPH for activity.

Example 6

Inhibition of Reduction of Recombinant Antibody by DHEA

Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), as well as other similar G6PD inhibitors, effectively blocks G6PD activity (Gordon et al., 1995, supra). G6PD inhibitors also prevent the reduction of an antibody in HCCF, for example, ocrelizumab, by blocking the generation of NADPH. The ability of DHEA to inhibit the reduction of orcelizumab is demonstrated in an HCCF incubation experiment. Adding DHEA to a HCCF prevents antibody reduction.

DHEA is typically used in the concentration range from about 0.05 mM to about 5 mM. DHEA is also typically used in the concentration range from about 0.1 mM to about 2.5 mM.

Example 7

Inhibition of Reduction of Recombinant Antibody by (i) EDTA, (ii) Cupric Sulfate, and (iii) Acetic Acid Additions

Four different HCCFs were stored and held in the stainless steel vials. The solutions were similar in the amount of cell

lysis, which were generated by diluting HCCF from homogenized CCF with HCCF from non-homogenized CCF. For example, 150 mL of the first lysed solution was mixed with 50 mL of the second solution, respectively. The four HCCF mixtures evaluated in this study contained either: (1) 20 mM EDTA, (2) 30 μM $CuSO_4$, (3) 15 mM acetic acid (pH 5.5), and (4) no chemical inhibitor was added for the control solution. The ocrelizumab antibody from all four mixtures was purified immediately (t=0 hr) using protein A chromatography and then again after 20 hr and 40 hr of storage in the stainless steel vials. Purified protein A elution pools were analyzed by the Bioanalyzer assay to quantitate the percentage of intact antibody (150 kDa). The results showed that greater than 90% intact antibody was present in all four mixtures at the initial time point (FIG. **19**). However, at the 20 hr time point, intact antibody was not detected in the control mixture (without any addition) indicating reduction of the antibody disulfide bonds. In the three other mixtures, over 90% intact antibody was still detected at both 20 hr and 40 hr time points, demonstrating the prevention of disulfide bond reduction by all three inhibitors tested.

Example 8

Inhibition of Reduction of Recombinant Antibody by Air Sparging the HCCF

One HCCF mixture generated from homogenized CCF was stored and held in two separate 10 L stainless steel fermentors. One vessel was sparged with air while the other vessel was sparged with nitrogen gas. The ocrelizumab antibody was purified immediately (t=0 hr) from the initial mixture using protein A chromatography. At selected time points, 50 mL samples were removed from each vessel and the antibody was purified using protein A chromatography. Purified protein A elution pools were then analyzed by the Bioanalyzer assay to quantitate the percentage of intact antibody at 150 kDa. The results showed that approximately 85% intact antibody was present in the initial solution (FIG. **20**), indicating some early reduction of the antibody disulfide bonds prior to exposure to oxygen (i.e. sparged air in the fermentor). Once the mixture was sparged with air for two hours, greater than 90% intact antibody was measured for the remainder of the 36 hr study. In contrast, when the mixture was sparged with nitrogen gas, the antibody reduction event continued as measured at 2 hr (28% 150 kDa peak) and 6 hr (5% 150 kDa peak). These results demonstrated the prevention of disulfide bond reduction in the antibody when the HCCF mixture generated from homogenized CCF was exposed to oxygen.

Example 9

Design of Targeted siRNA or Antisense Nucleotide Trx Inhibitors

The design of targeted siRNAs or antisense nucleotides to the genes as found in CHO cells may be done by using publicly available sequences such as those for *E. coli* thioredoxin TrxA (SEQ ID NO:30), *E. coli* thioredoxin reductase TrxB (SEQ ID NO:31); mouse thioredoxin 1 (SEQ ID NO:32), mouse thioreodoxin 2 (SEQ ID NO:33), mouse thioredoxin reductase 1 (SEQ ID NO:34), and mouse thioredoxin reductase 2 (SEQ ID NO:35). One of ordinary skill in the art can use these sequences to select sequences to design Trx inhibitors for targeting enzymes in different organisms and/or cells, such as CHO cells.

The sequence of *E. coli* Thioredoxin TrxA is:

(SEQ ID NO: 30)

```
ATG TTA CAC CAA CAA CGA AAC CAA CAC GCC AGG CTT ATT CCT GTG GAG

TTA TAT ATG AGC GAT AAA ATT ATT CAC CTG ACT GAC GAC AGT TTT GAC ACG

GAT GTA CTC AAA GCG GAC GGG GCG ATC CTC GTC GAT TTC TGG GCA GAG

TGG TGC GGT CCG TGC AAA ATG ATC GCC CCG ATT CTG GAT GAA ATC GCT

GAC GAA TAT CAG GGC AAA CTG ACC GTT GCA AAA CTG AAC ATC GAT CAA

AAC CCT GGC ACT GCG CCG AAA TAT GGC ATC CGT GGT ATC CCG ACT CTG CTG

CTG TTC AAA AAC GGT GAA GTG GCG GCA ACC AAA GTG GGT GCA CTG TCT

AAA GGT CAG TTG AAA GAG TTC CTC GAC GCT AAC CTG GCG TAA.
```

The sequence of *E. coli* Thioredoxin TrxB is:

(SEQ ID NO: 31)

```
ATG GGC ACG ACC AAA CAC AGT AAA CTG CTT ATC CTG GGT TCA GGC CCG

GCG GGA TAC ACC GCT GCT GTC TAC GCG GCG CGC GCC AAC CTG CAA CCT

GTG CTG ATT ACC GGC ATG GAA AAA GGC GGC CAA CTG ACC ACC ACC ACG

GAA GTG GAA AAC TGG CCT GGC GAT CCA AAC GAT CTG ACC GGT CCG TTA

TTA ATG GAG CGC ATG CAC GAA CAT GCC ACC AAG TTT GAA ACT GAG ATC

ATT TTT GAT CAT ATC AAC AAG GTG GAT CTG CAA AAC CGT CCG TTC CGT CTG

AAT GGC GAT AAC GGC GAA TAC ACT TGC GAC GCG CTG ATT ATT GCC ACC

GGA GCT TCT GCA CGC TAT CTC GGC CTG CCC TCT GAA GAA GCC TTT AAA GGC
```

-continued

CGT GGG GTT TCT GCT TGT GCA ACC TGC GAC GGT TTC TTC TAT CGC AAC CAG

AAA GTT GCG GTC ATC GGC GGC GGC AAT ACC GCG GTT GAA GAG GCG TTG

TAT CTG TCT AAC ATC GCT TCG GAA GTG CAT CTG ATT CAC CGC CGT GAC GGT

TTC CGC GCG GAA AAA ATC CTC ATT AAG CGC CTG ATG GAT AAA GTG GAG

AAC GGC AAC ATC ATT CTG CAC ACC AAC CGT ACG CTG GAA GAA GTG ACC

GGC GAT CAA ATG GGT GTC ACT GGC GTT CGT CTG CGC GAT ACG CAA AAC

AGC GAT AAC ATC GAG TCA CTC GAC GTT GCC GGT CTG TTT GTT GCT ATC GGT

CAC AGC CCG AAT ACT GCG ATT TTC GAA GGG CAG CTG GAA CTG GAA AAC

GGC TAC ATC AAA GTA CAG TCG GGT ATT CAT GGT AAT GCC ACC CAG ACC

AGC ATT CCT GGC GTC TTT GCC GCA GGC GAC GTG ATG GAT CAC ATT TAT CGC

CAG GCC ATT ACT TCG GCC GGT ACA GGC TGC ATG GCA GCA CTT GAT GCG

GAA CGC TAC CTC GAT GGT TTA GCT GAC GCA AAA TAA.

The sequence of mouse thioredoxin 1 is:

(SEQ ID NO: 32)

ATGGTGAAGCTGATCGAGAGCAAGGAAGCTTTTCAGGAGGCCCTGGCCGC

CGCGGGAGACAAGCTTGTCGTGGTGGACTTCTCTGCTACGTGGTGTGGAC

CTTGCAAAATGATCAAGCCCTTCTTCCATTCCCTCTGTGACAAGTATTCC

AATGTGGTGTTCCTTGAAGTGGATGTGGATGACTGCCAGGATGTTGCTGC

AGACTGTGAAGTCAAATGCATGCCGACCTTCCAGTTTTATAAAAAGGGTC

AAAAGGTGGGGGAGTTCTCCGGTGCTAACAAGGAAAAGCTTGAAGCCTCT

ATTACTGAATATGCCTAA.

The sequence of mouse thioreodoxin 2 is:

(SEQ ID NO: 33)

ATGGCTCAGCGGCTCCTCCTGGGGAGGTTCCTGACCTCAGTCATCTCCAG

GAAGCCTCCTCAGGGTGTGTGGGCTTCCCTCACCTCTAAGACCCTGCAGA

CCCCTCAGTACAATGCTGGTGGTCTAACAGTAATGCCCAGCCCAGCCCGG

ACAGTACACACCACCAGAGTCTGTTTGACGACCTTTAACGTCCAGGATGG

ACCTGACTTTCAAGACAGAGTTGTCAACAGTGAGACACCAGTTGTTGTGG

ACTTTCATGCACAGTGGTGTGGCCCCTGCAAGATCCTAGGACCGCGGCTA

GAGAAGATGGTCGCCAAGCAGCACGGGAAGGTGGTCATGGCCAAAGTGGA

CATTGACGATCACACAGACCTTGCCATTGAATATGAGGTGTCAGCTGTGC

CTACCGTGCTAGCCATCAAGAACGGGGACGTGGTGGACAAGTTTGTGGGG

ATCAAGGACGAGGACCAGCTAGAAGCCTTCCTGAAGAAGCTGATTGGCTG

A.

The sequence of mouse thioredoxin reductase 1 is:

(SEQ ID NO: 34)

ATGAATGGCTCCAAAGATCCCCCTGGGTCCTATGACTTCGACCTGATCAT

CATTGGAGGAGGCTCAGGAGGACTGGCAGCAGCTAAGGAGGCAGCCAAAT

TTGACAAGAAAGTGCTGGTCTTGGATTTTGTCACACCGACTCCTCTTGGG

-continued

ACCAGATGGGGTCTCGGAGGAACGTGTGTGAATGTGGGTTGCATACCTAA

GAAGCTGATGCACCAGGCAGCTTTGCTCGGACAAGCTCTGAAAGACTCGC

GCAACTATGGCTGGAAAGTCGAAGACACAGTGAAGCATGACTGGGAGAAA

ATGACGGAATCTGTGCAGAGTCACATCGGCTCGCTGAACTGGGGCTACCG

CGTAGCTCTCCGGGAGAAAAAGGTCGTCTATGAGAATGCTTACGGGAGGT

TCATTGGTCCTCACAGGATTGTGGCGACAAATAACAAAGGTAAAGAAAAA

ATCTATTCAGCAGAGCGGTTCCTCATCGCCACAGGTGAGAGGCCCCGCTA

CCTGGGCATCCCTGGAGACAAAGAGTACTGCATCAGCAGTGATGATCTTT

TCTCCTTGCCTTACTGCCCGGGGAAGACCCTAGTAGTTGGTGCATCCTAT

GTCGCCTTGGAATGTGCAGGATTTCTGGCTGGTATCGGCTTAGACGTCAC

TGTAATGGTGCGGTCCATTCTCCTTAGAGGATTTGACCAAGACATGGCCA

ACAAAATCGGTGAACACATGGAAGAACATGGTATCAAGTTTATAAGGCAG

TTCGTCCCAACGAAAATTGAACAGATCGAAGCAGGAACACCAGGCCGACT

CAGGGTGACTGCTCAATCCACAAACAGCGAGGAGACCATAGAGGGCGAAT

TTAACACAGTGTTGCTGGCGGTAGGAAGAGATTCTTGTACGAGAACTATT

GGCTTAGAGACCGTGGGCGTGAAGATAAACGAAAAAACCGGAAAGATACC

CGTCACGGATGAAGAGCAGACCAATGTGCCTTACATCTACGCCATCGGTG

ACATCCTGGAGGGGAAGCTAGAGCTGACTCCCGTAGCCATCCAGGCGGGG

AGATTGCTGGCTCAGAGGCTGTATGGAGGCTCCAATGTCAAATGTGACTA

TGACAATGTCCCAACGACTGTATTTACTCCTTTGGAATATGGCTGTTGTG

GCCTCTCTGAAGAAAAAGCCGTAGAGAAATTTGGGGAAGAAAATATTGAA

GTTTACCATAGTTTCTTTTGGCCATTGGAATGGACAGTCCCATCCCGGGA

TAACAACAAATGTTATGCAAAAATAATCTGCAACCTTAAAGACGATGAAC

GTGTCGTGGGCTTCCACGTGCTGGGTCCAAACGCTGGAGAGGTGACGCAG

GGCTTTGCGGCTGCGCTCAAGTGTGGGCTGACTAAGCAGCAGCTGGACAG

CACCATCGGCATCCACCCGGTCTGTGCAGAGATATTCACAACGTTGTCAG

TGACGAAGCGCTCTGGGGGAGACATCCTCCAGTCTGGCTGCTGA

The sequence of mouse thioredoxin reductase 2 is:

(SEQ ID NO: 35)

ATGGCGGCGATGGTGGCGGCGATGGTGGCGGCGCTGCGTGGACCCAGCAG

GCGCTTCCGGCCGCGGACACGGGCTCTGACACGCGGGACAAGGGGCGCGG

CGAGTGCAGCGGGAGGGCAGCAGAGCTTTGATCTCTTGGTGATCGGTGGG

GGATCCGGTGGCCTAGCTTGTGCCAAGGAAGCTGCTCAGCTGGGAAAGAA

GGTGGCTGTGGCTGACTATGTGGAACCTTCTCCCCGAGGCACCAAGTGGG

GCCTTGGTGGCACCTGTGTCAACGTGGGTTGCATACCCAAGAAGCTGATG

CATCAGGCTGCACTGCTGGGGGGCATGATCAGAGATGCTCACCACTATGG

CTGGGAGGTGGCCCAGCCTGTCCAACACAACTGGAAGACAATGGCAGAAG

CCGTGCAAAACCATGTGAAATCCTTGAACTGGGGTCATCGCGTCCAACTG

CAGGACAGGAAAGTCAAGTACTTTAACATCAAAGCCAGCTTTGTGGATGA

GCACACAGTTCGCGGTGTGGACAAAGGCGGGAAGGCGACTCTGCTTTCAG

CTGAGCACATTGTCATTGCTACAGGAGGACGGCCAAGGTACCCCACACAA

GTCAAAGGAGCCCTGGAATATGGAATCACAAGTGACGACATCTTCTGGCT

GAAGGAGTCCCCTGGGAAAACGTTGGTGGTTGGAGCCAGCTATGTGGCCC

TAGAGTGTGCTGGCTTCCTCACTGGAATTGGACTGGATACCACTGTCATG

ATGCGCAGCATCCCTCTCCGAGGCTTTGACCAGCAAATGTCATCTTTGGT

CACAGAGCACATGGAGTCTCATGGCACCCAGTTCCTGAAAGGCTGTGTCC

CCTCCCACATCAAAAAACTCCCAACTAACCAGCTGCAGGTCACTTGGGAG

GATCATGCTTCTGGCAAGGAAGACACAGGCACCTTTGACACTGTCCTGTG

GGCCATAGGGCGAGTTCCAGAAACCAGGACTTTGAATCTGGAGAAGGCTG

GCATCAGTACCAACCCTAAGAATCAGAAGATTATTGTGGATGCCCAGGAG

GCTACCTCTGTTCCCCACATCTATGCCATTGGAGATGTTGCTGAGGGGCG

GCCTGAGCTGACGCCCACAGCTATCAAGGCAGGAAAGCTTCTGGCTCAGC

GGCTCTTTGGGAAATCCTCAACCTTAATGGATTACAGCAATGTTCCCACA

ACTGTCTTTACACCACTGGAGTATGGCTGTGTGGGGCTGTCTGAGGAGGA

GGCTGTGGCTCTCCATGGCCAGGAGCATGTAGAGGTTTACCATGCATATT

ATAAGCCCCTAGAGTTCACGGTGGCGGATAGGGATGCATCACAGTGCTAC

ATAAAGATGGTATGCATGAGGGAGCCCCCACAACTGGTGCTGGGCCTGCA

CTTCCTTGGCCCCAACGCTGGAGAAGTCACCCAAGGATTTGCTCTTGGGA

TCAAGTGTGGGGCTTCATATGCACAGGTGATGCAGACAGTAGGGATCCAT

CCCACCTGCTCTGAGGAGGTGGTCAAGCTGCACATCTCCAAGCGCTCCGG

CCTGGAGCCTACTGTGACTGGTTGCTGA.

Example 10

In Vitro Trx/Trx Reductase Studies

Materials and Methods

A commercial TrxR (rat liver) solution (4 μM) was diluted with water to yield a 2.86 μM solution. Lyophilized Trx (human) was reconstituted with PBS (10 mM, pH 7.2) yielding a 500 μM solution. A solution of 20 mM NADPH and 10 mM ATG and ATM solutions were prepared in water.

In a black polypropylene 1.5 mL micro centrifuge tube, 437 μL reaction buffer (10 mM histidine, 10 mM Na2SO4, 137 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM KCl, pH 7.0), 25 μL NADPH, 16 μL formulated ocrelizumab solution (30.2 mg/mL) and 5 μL Trx were gently mixed. The reaction was initiated by the addition of 17.5 μL TrxR. The reaction was incubated at room temperature for 24 hours. Aliquots of 20 μL were taken at each sampling time-point and stored at −70° C. until analyzed by the Bioanalyzer assay.

Inhibition of the Trx system was demonstrated using the same reaction conditions described above with the addition of various inhibitors.

1. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System

FIG. **24** shows a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that incubation of intact ocrelizumab ("2H7," a humanized anti-CD20 antibody, referred to as "Variant A" above) (1 mg/mL) with 0.1 μM TrxR (rat liver), 5 μM Trx (human) and 1 mM NADPH in 10 mM histidine sulfate buffer results in the reduction of ocrelizumab in less than one hour.

2. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Aurothioglucose

Aurothioglucose (ATG) was added to the ocrelizumab mixture described above, at the following concentrations: 1 mM; 0.6 μM (6:1 ATG:TrxR); 0.4 μM (4:1 ATG:TrxR); and 0.2 μM (2:1 ATG:TrxR).

As attested by the digital gel-like images from Bioanalyzer analysis shown in FIGS. **25-27**, aurothioglucose added at concentrations 1 mM, 0.6 μM, and 0.4 μM effectively inhibits the reduction of ocrelizumab by the thioredoxin system. However, as shown in FIG. **28**, under these experimental conditions aurothioglucose added at a concentration of 0.2 μM cannot inhibit ocrelizumab reduction after 24 hours.

3. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Aurothiomalate

Aurothiomalate (ATM) was added to the ocrelizumab mixture described above, at concentrations of 0.1 mM and 0.01 mM. As attested by the digital gel-like images from Bioanalyzer analysis shown in FIGS. **29** and **30**, ATM effectively inhibits the reduction of ocrelizumab by the thioredoxin system at both concentrations tested.

4. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by $Cuso_4$

$CuSO_4$ was added to the ocrelizumab mixture described above, at concentrations of 20 μM (4:1 Cu^{2+}:Trx); 10 μm (2:1 Cu^{2+}:Trx); and 5 μM (1:1 Cu^{2+}:Trx). As shown in FIGS. **31-33**, $CuSO_4$ effectively inhibits thioredoxin-induced reduction of ocrelizumab at concentrations of 20 μM and 10 μM (FIGS. **31** and **32**), but the 5 μM concentration is insufficient to result in a complete inhibition of reduction (FIG. **33**).

5. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Cystamine

Cystamine was added to the ocrelizumab mixture describe above at the following concentrations: 532 μM (20:1 cystamine:2H7 (Variant A) disulfide); 266 μM (10:1 cystamine: 2H7 (Variant A) disulfide); 133 μM (5:1 cystamine:2H7 disulfide); and 26.6 μM (1:1 cystamine:2H7 (Variant A) disulfide). As shown in FIGS. **34-37**, cystamine effectively inhibits thioredoxin-induced reduction of ocrelizumab at concentrations of 532 μM (20:1 cystamine:2H7 (Variant A) disulfide) and 266 μM (10:1 cystamine:2H7 (Variant A)) (FIGS. **34** and **35**) but the 133 μM (5:1 cystamine:2H7 (Variant A) disulfide) and 26.6 μM (1:1 cystamine:2H7 (Variant A) disulfide) concentrations are insufficient to inhibit the reduction of ocrelizumab after 24 hours (FIGS. **36** and **37**).

6. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Cystine

Cystine was added to the ocrelizumab mixture described above at a concentration of 2.6 mM. As shown in FIG. **38**, at this concentration cystine effectively inhibits reduction of ocrelizumab by the thioredoxin system. It is noted that the minimum effective concentration of cystine (just as the effective minimum concentration of other inhibitors) depends on the actual circumstances, and might be different for different proteins, such as antibodies, and might vary depending on the timing of addition. Thus, for example, if cystine is added pre-lysis, the minimum effective concentration for antibody 2H7 (Variant A) is about 1.3 mM, for Apomab about 1 mM and for antibody Variant C about 4.5 mM. When cystine is added in the cell culture medium, the minimum effective concentration typically is somewhat higher, and is about 5.2 mM for 2H7 (Variant A), 6 mM for Apomab and 9 mM for antibody Variant C. Usually, for cystine, cystamine and oxidized glutathione (see below) the minimum effective inhibitory concentration is about 40× of the antibody concentration (in μM).

7. In Vitro Activity of Thioredoxin System Inhibited by Oxidized Glutathione (GSSG)

GSSG was added to the ocrelizumab mixture described above at a concentration of 2.6 mM. As shown in FIG. **39**, at this concentration GSSG effectively inhibits reduction of ocrelizumab by the thioredoxin system. It is noted, however, that the minimum effective concentration of oxidize glutathione (just as that of the other inhibitors) depends on the actual circumstances, such as, for example, on the nature of the protein (e.g. antibody) produced and the timing of addition. For example, for antibody 2H7 (Variant A) the minimum effective concentration is about 1.3 mM for addition prior to lysis.

8. In Vitro Activity of Enzymatic Reduction System

FIG. **40** shows a digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis (each lane representing a time point) showing that incubation of intact ocrelizumab ("2H7," a humanized anti-CD20 antibody, Variant A) (1 mg/mL) with 10 μg/mL hexokinase, 50 μg/mL glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 5 μM thioredoxin, 0.1 μM thoredoxin reductase, 2 mM glucose, 0.6 mM ATP, 2 mM Mg^{2+}, and 2 mM NADP in 50 mM histidine sulfate buffered at pH 7.38 results in the reduction of ocrelizumab in about one hour. Addition of 0.1 mM HDEA, a known glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase inhibitor does not inhibit the reduction.

9. In Vitro Activity of Enzymatic Reduction System Requires NADPH

As shown in the digital gel-like image from Bioanalyzer analysis of FIG. **41**, incubation of intact ocrelizumab (1 mg/mL) with 5 μM thioredoxin, 0.1 μM thioredoxin reductase, and 2 mM NADP in 50 mM histidine sulfate buffer at pH 7.38 does not result in the reduction of the ocrelizumab antibody. Reduction of ocrelizumab could not occur without hexokinase and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase and their substrates to generate NADPH.

The invention illustratively described herein can suitably be practiced in the absence of any element or elements, limitation or limitations that is not specifically disclosed herein. Thus, for example, the terms "comprising," "including," "containing," etc. shall be read expansively and without limitation. Additionally, the terms and expressions employed herein have been used as terms of description and not of limitation, and there is no intention in the use of such terms and expressions of excluding any equivalent of the invention shown or portion thereof, but it is recognized that various modifications are possible within the scope of the invention claimed. Thus, it should be understood that although the present invention has been specifically disclosed by preferred embodiments and optional features, modifications and variations of the inventions embodied herein disclosed can be readily made by those skilled in the art, and that such modifications and variations are considered to be within the scope of the inventions disclosed herein. The inventions have been described broadly and generically herein. Each of the narrower species and subgeneric groupings falling within the generic disclosure also form the part of these inventions. This includes within the generic description of each of the inventions a proviso or negative limitation that will allow removing any subject matter from the genus, regardless or whether or not the material to be removed was specifically recited. In addition, where features or aspects of an invention are described in terms of the Markush group, those schooled in the art will recognize that the invention is also thereby described in terms of any individual member or subgroup of members of the Markush group. Further, when a reference to an aspect of the invention lists a range of individual members, as for example, 'SEQ ID NO:1 to SEQ ID NO:100, inclusive,' it is intended to be equivalent to listing every member of the list individually, and additionally it should be understood that every individual member may be excluded or included in the claim individually.

The steps depicted and/or used in methods herein may be performed in a different order than as depicted and/or stated. The steps are merely exemplary of the order these steps may occur. The steps may occur in any order that is desired such that it still performs the goals of the claimed invention.

From the description of the invention herein, it is manifest that various equivalents can be used to implement the concepts of the present invention without departing from its scope. Moreover, while the invention has been described with specific reference to certain embodiments, a person of ordinary skill in the art would recognize that changes can be made in form and detail without departing from the spirit and the scope of the invention. The described embodiments are considered in all respects as illustrative and not restrictive. It should also be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described herein, but is capable of many equivalents, rearrangements, modifications, and substitutions without departing from the scope of the invention. Thus, additional embodiments are within the scope of the invention and within the following claims.

All U.S. patents and applications; foreign patents and applications; scientific articles; books; and publications mentioned herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety as if each individual patent or publication was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference, including any drawings, figures and tables, as though set forth in full.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 35

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: light chain variable

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Ser Ser Val Ser Tyr Met
20 25 30

His Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Pro Leu Ile Tyr
35 40 45

Ala Pro Ser Asn Leu Ala Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser
50 55 60

Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu
65 70 75 80

Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Trp Ser Phe Asn Pro Pro Thr
85 90 95

Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg
100 105

<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 122
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: heavy chain variable

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
20 25 30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
35 40 45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Asp Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
50 55 60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
85 90 95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Asn Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
100 105 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
115 120

<210> SEQ ID NO 3
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: light chain variable

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Ser Ser Val Ser Tyr Leu
20 25 30

His Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Pro Leu Ile Tyr
35 40 45

-continued

```
Ala Pro Ser Asn Leu Ala Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser
    50                  55                  60

Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu
65                  70                  75                  80

Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Trp Ala Phe Asn Pro Pro Thr
                85                  90                  95

Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg
            100                 105


<210> SEQ ID NO 4
<211> LENGTH: 122
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: heavy chain variable

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115                 120


<210> SEQ ID NO 5
<211> LENGTH: 122
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: heavy chain variable

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115                 120
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
<211> LENGTH: 213
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length light chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Ser Ser Val Ser Tyr Met
20 25 30

His Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Pro Leu Ile Tyr
35 40 45

Ala Pro Ser Asn Leu Ala Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser
50 55 60

Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu
65 70 75 80

Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Trp Ser Phe Asn Pro Pro Thr
85 90 95

Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro
100 105 110

Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr
115 120 125

Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys
130 135 140

Val Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu
145 150 155 160

Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser
165 170 175

Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr Ala
180 185 190

Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser Phe
195 200 205

Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
210

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
20 25 30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
35 40 45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Asp Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
50 55 60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
85 90 95

```
Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Asn Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ser Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450


<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
```

-continued

```
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Asp Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Asn Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Ala Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430
```

```
Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 213
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length light chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Ser Ser Val Ser Tyr Leu
            20                  25                  30

His Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Pro Leu Ile Tyr
        35                  40                  45

Ala Pro Ser Asn Leu Ala Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser
    50                  55                  60

Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu
65                  70                  75                  80

Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Trp Ala Phe Asn Pro Pro Thr
                85                  90                  95

Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro
            100                 105                 110

Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr
        115                 120                 125

Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys
    130                 135                 140

Val Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu
145                 150                 155                 160

Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser
                165                 170                 175

Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr Ala
            180                 185                 190

Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser Phe
        195                 200                 205

Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
    210
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 10
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 10

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60
```

-continued

```
Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Ala Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450


<210> SEQ ID NO 11
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
```

<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 11

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Ala Val Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Glu Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400
```

-continued

```
Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450


<210> SEQ ID NO 12
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 12

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
```

```
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Ala Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Ala Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450


<210> SEQ ID NO 13
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 13

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220
```

```
Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Ala Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Ala Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Trp His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450


<210> SEQ ID NO 14
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 14

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Ala Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125
```

-continued

```
Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Ala Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Ala Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450


<210> SEQ ID NO 15
<211> LENGTH: 452
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: full length heavy chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 15

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Ser Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Asn Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
```

-continued

```
        35                  40                  45

Gly Ala Ile Tyr Pro Gly Asn Gly Asp Thr Ser Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Val Val Tyr Tyr Ser Asn Ser Tyr Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp
            100                 105                 110

Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro
        115                 120                 125

Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr
    130                 135                 140

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr
145                 150                 155                 160

Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro
                165                 170                 175

Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr
            180                 185                 190

Val Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        195                 200                 205

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser
    210                 215                 220

Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu
                245                 250                 255

Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser
            260                 265                 270

His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu
        275                 280                 285

Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ala Thr
    290                 295                 300

Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
305                 310                 315                 320

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Ala Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro
                325                 330                 335

Ile Ala Ala Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln
            340                 345                 350

Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val
        355                 360                 365

Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val
    370                 375                 380

Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr
                405                 410                 415

Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val
            420                 425                 430

Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
        435                 440                 445

Ser Pro Gly Lys
    450
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 16
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 16

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser Ile Gly
20 25 30

Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
35 40 45

Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
50 55 60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65 70 75 80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr
85 90 95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys
100 105

<210> SEQ ID NO 17
<211> LENGTH: 119
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 17

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr Asp Tyr
20 25 30

Thr Met Asp Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
35 40 45

Ala Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr Asn Gln Arg Phe
50 55 60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Leu Ser Val Asp Arg Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
85 90 95

Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
100 105 110

Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
115

<210> SEQ ID NO 18
<211> LENGTH: 107
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: light chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 18

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn Thr Ala
20 25 30

```
Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
        35                  40                  45

Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Leu Tyr Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys
            100                 105


<210> SEQ ID NO 19
<211> LENGTH: 120
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: heavy chain

<400> SEQUENCE: 19

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys Asp Thr
            20                  25                  30

Tyr Ile His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Ala Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val
    50                  55                  60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr Ala Met Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln
            100                 105                 110

Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115                 120


<210> SEQ ID NO 20
<211> LENGTH: 108
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 20

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Asp Arg Val Ile Ile Ser Cys Ser Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Ser Asn Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asp Gly Thr Val Lys Val Leu Ile
        35                  40                  45

Tyr Phe Thr Ser Ser Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile Ser Asn Leu Glu Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Ser Thr Val Pro Trp
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu Ile Lys Arg
            100                 105
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 21
<211> LENGTH: 123
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 21

Glu Ile Gln Leu Val Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Lys Gln Pro Gly Glu
1 5 10 15

Thr Val Arg Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Asn Tyr
20 25 30

Gly Met Asn Trp Val Lys Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Lys Trp Met
35 40 45

Gly Trp Ile Asn Thr Tyr Thr Gly Glu Pro Thr Tyr Ala Ala Asp Phe
50 55 60

Lys Arg Arg Phe Thr Phe Ser Leu Glu Thr Ser Ala Ser Thr Ala Tyr
65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Ile Ser Asn Leu Lys Asn Asp Asp Thr Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys
85 90 95

Ala Lys Tyr Pro His Tyr Tyr Gly Ser Ser His Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val
100 105 110

Trp Gly Ala Gly Thr Thr Val Thr Val Ser Ser
115 120

<210> SEQ ID NO 22
<211> LENGTH: 108
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 22

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1 5 10 15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Ser Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Ser Asn Tyr
20 25 30

Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Val Leu Ile
35 40 45

Tyr Phe Thr Ser Ser Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
50 55 60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65 70 75 80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Ser Thr Val Pro Trp
85 90 95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg
100 105

<210> SEQ ID NO 23
<211> LENGTH: 123
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 23

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Asn Tyr

```
            20                  25                  30

Gly Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Trp Ile Asn Thr Tyr Thr Gly Glu Pro Thr Tyr Ala Ala Asp Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Arg Arg Phe Thr Phe Ser Leu Asp Thr Ser Lys Ser Thr Ala Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Lys Tyr Pro His Tyr Tyr Gly Ser Ser His Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val
            100                 105                 110

Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115                 120


<210> SEQ ID NO 24
<211> LENGTH: 108
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 24

Asp Ile Gln Leu Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Ser Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Ser Asn Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Val Leu Ile
        35                  40                  45

Tyr Phe Thr Ser Ser Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Ser Thr Val Pro Trp
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg
            100                 105


<210> SEQ ID NO 25
<211> LENGTH: 123
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 25

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Asp Phe Thr His Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Gly Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Trp Ile Asn Thr Tyr Thr Gly Glu Pro Thr Tyr Ala Ala Asp Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Arg Arg Phe Thr Phe Ser Leu Asp Thr Ser Lys Ser Thr Ala Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Lys Tyr Pro Tyr Tyr Tyr Gly Thr Ser His Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val
```

```
            100                 105                 110

Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115                 120


<210> SEQ ID NO 26
<211> LENGTH: 108
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 26

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
        35                  40                  45

Tyr Ser Gly Ser Thr Leu Gln Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln His Asn Glu Tyr Pro Leu
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg
            100                 105


<210> SEQ ID NO 27
<211> LENGTH: 121
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 27

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr Gly His
            20                  25                  30

Trp Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Met Ile His Pro Ser Asp Ser Glu Thr Arg Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Gly Ile Tyr Phe Tyr Gly Thr Thr Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly
            100                 105                 110

Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
        115                 120


<210> SEQ ID NO 28
<211> LENGTH: 214
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 28
```

-continued

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Tyr
            20                  25                  30

Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
        35                  40                  45

Tyr Ser Gly Ser Thr Leu Gln Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln His Asn Glu Tyr Pro Leu
                85                  90                  95

Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala
            100                 105                 110

Pro Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly
        115                 120                 125

Thr Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala
    130                 135                 140

Lys Val Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln
145                 150                 155                 160

Glu Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser
                165                 170                 175

Ser Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr
            180                 185                 190

Ala Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser
        195                 200                 205

Phe Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
    210


<210> SEQ ID NO 29
<211> LENGTH: 451
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Artificial
<220> FEATURE:
<223> OTHER INFORMATION: antibody

<400> SEQUENCE: 29

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
1               5                   10                  15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr Gly His
            20                  25                  30

Trp Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
        35                  40                  45

Gly Met Ile His Pro Ser Asp Ser Glu Thr Arg Tyr Asn Gln Lys Phe
    50                  55                  60

Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
65                  70                  75                  80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
                85                  90                  95

Ala Arg Gly Ile Tyr Phe Tyr Gly Thr Thr Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly
            100                 105                 110

Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser
        115                 120                 125

Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr Ala
    130                 135                 140

Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr Val
```

-continued

```
145                 150                 155                 160

Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala
                165                 170                 175

Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val
            180                 185                 190

Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn His
        195                 200                 205

Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser Cys
    210                 215                 220

Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu Gly
225                 230                 235                 240

Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met
                245                 250                 255

Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His
            260                 265                 270

Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val
        275                 280                 285

His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ser Thr Tyr
    290                 295                 300

Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly
305                 310                 315                 320

Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile
                325                 330                 335

Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val
            340                 345                 350

Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser
        355                 360                 365

Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu
    370                 375                 380

Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro
385                 390                 395                 400

Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val
                405                 410                 415

Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
            420                 425                 430

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu Ser
        435                 440                 445

Pro Gly Lys
    450
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 30
<211> LENGTH: 384
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: E. coli Thioredoxin TrxA

<400> SEQUENCE: 30

```
atgttacacc aacaacgaaa ccaacacgcc aggcttattc ctgtggagtt atatatgagc     60

gataaaatta ttcacctgac tgacgacagt tttgacacgg atgtactcaa agcggacggg    120

gcgatcctcg tcgatttctg ggcagagtgg tgcggtccgt gcaaaatgat cgccccgatt    180

ctggatgaaa tcgctgacga atatcagggc aaactgaccg ttgcaaaact gaacatcgat    240

caaaaccctg gcactgcgcc gaaatatggc atccgtggta tcccgactct gctgctgttc    300

aaaaacggtg aagtggcggc aaccaaagtg ggtgcactgt ctaaaggtca gttgaaagag    360

ttcctcgacg ctaacctggc gtaa                                           384
```

<210> SEQ ID NO 31
<211> LENGTH: 966
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: E. coli thioredoxin reductase TrxB

<400> SEQUENCE: 31

atgggcacga ccaaacacag taaactgctt atcctgggtt caggcccggc gggatacacc 60

gctgctgtct acgcggcgcg cgccaacctg caacctgtgc tgattaccgg catggaaaaa 120

ggcggccaac tgaccaccac cacggaagtg gaaaactggc ctggcgatcc aaacgatctg 180

accggtccgt tattaatgga gcgcatgcac gaacatgcca ccaagtttga aactgagatc 240

atttttgatc atatcaacaa ggtggatctg caaaaccgtc cgttccgtct gaatggcgat 300

aacggcgaat acacttgcga cgcgctgatt attgccaccg gagcttctgc acgctatctc 360

ggcctgccct ctgaagaagc ctttaaaggc cgtggggttt ctgcttgtgc aacctgcgac 420

ggtttcttct atcgcaacca gaaagttgcg gtcatcggcg gcggcaatac cgcggttgaa 480

gaggcgttgt atctgtctaa catcgcttcg gaagtgcatc tgattcaccg ccgtgacggt 540

ttccgcgcgg aaaaaatcct cattaagcgc ctgatggata aagtggagaa cggcaacatc 600

attctgcaca ccaaccgtac gctggaagaa gtgaccggcg atcaaatggg tgtcactggc 660

gttcgtctgc gcgatacgca aaacagcgat aacatcgagt cactcgacgt tgccggtctg 720

tttgttgcta tcggtcacag cccgaatact gcgattttcg aagggcagct ggaactggaa 780

aacggctaca tcaaagtaca gtcgggtatt catggtaatg ccacccagac cagcattcct 840

ggcgtctttg ccgcaggcga cgtgatggat cacatttatc gccaggccat tacttcggcc 900

ggtacaggct gcatggcagc acttgatgcg gaacgctacc tcgatggttt agctgacgca 960

aaataa 966

<210> SEQ ID NO 32
<211> LENGTH: 318
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 32

atggtgaagc tgatcgagag caaggaagct tttcaggagg ccctggccgc cgcgggagac 60

aagcttgtcg tggtggactt ctctgctacg tggtgtggac cttgcaaaat gatcaagccc 120

ttcttccatt ccctctgtga caagtattcc aatgtggtgt tccttgaagt ggatgtggat 180

gactgccagg atgttgctgc agactgtgaa gtcaaatgca tgccgacctt ccagttttat 240

aaaaagggtc aaaaggtggg ggagttctcc ggtgctaaca aggaaaagct tgaagcctct 300

attactgaat atgcctaa 318

<210> SEQ ID NO 33
<211> LENGTH: 501
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 33

atggctcagc ggctcctcct ggggaggttc ctgacctcag tcatctccag gaagcctcct 60

cagggtgtgt gggcttccct cacctctaag accctgcaga cccctcagta caatgctggt 120

ggtctaacag taatgcccag cccagcccgg acagtacaca ccaccagagt ctgtttgacg 180

acctttaacg tccaggatgg acctgacttt caagacagag ttgtcaacag tgagacacca 240

gttgttgtgg actttcatgc acagtggtgt ggcccctgca agatcctagg accgcggcta 300

gagaagatgg tcgccaagca gcacgggaag gtggtcatgg ccaaagtgga cattgacgat 360

cacacagacc ttgccattga atatgaggtg tcagctgtgc ctaccgtgct agccatcaag 420

aacggggacg tggtggacaa gtttgtgggg atcaaggacg aggaccagct agaagccttc 480

ctgaagaagc tgattggctg a 501

<210> SEQ ID NO 34
<211> LENGTH: 1494
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 34

atgaatggct ccaaagatcc ccctgggtcc tatgacttcg acctgatcat cattggagga 60

ggctcaggag gactggcagc agctaaggag gcagccaaat ttgacaagaa agtgctggtc 120

ttggattttg tcacaccgac tcctcttggg accagatggg gtctcggagg aacgtgtgtg 180

aatgtgggtt gcatacctaa gaagctgatg caccaggcag ctttgctcgg acaagctctg 240

aaagactcgc gcaactatgg ctggaaagtc gaagacacag tgaagcatga ctgggagaaa 300

atgacggaat ctgtgcagag tcacatcggc tcgctgaact ggggctaccg cgtagctctc 360

cgggagaaaa aggtcgtcta tgagaatgct tacgggaggt tcattggtcc tcacaggatt 420

gtggcgacaa ataacaaagg taaagaaaaa atctattcag cagagcggtt cctcatcgcc 480

acaggtgaga ggccccgcta cctgggcatc cctggagaca aagagtactg catcagcagt 540

gatgatcttt tctccttgcc ttactgcccg gggaagaccc tagtagttgg tgcatcctat 600

gtcgccttgg aatgtgcagg atttctggct ggtatcggct tagacgtcac tgtaatggtg 660

cggtccattc tccttagagg atttgaccaa gacatggcca acaaaatcgg tgaacacatg 720

gaagaacatg gtatcaagtt tataaggcag ttcgtcccaa cgaaaattga acagatcgaa 780

gcaggaacac caggccgact cagggtgact gctcaatcca caaacagcga ggagaccata 840

gagggcgaat ttaacacagt gttgctggcg gtaggaagag attcttgtac gagaactatt 900

ggcttagaga ccgtgggcgt gaagataaac gaaaaaaccg gaaagatacc cgtcacggat 960

gaagagcaga ccaatgtgcc ttacatctac gccatcggtg acatcctgga ggggaagcta 1020

gagctgactc ccgtagccat ccaggcgggg agattgctgg ctcagaggct gtatggaggc 1080

tccaatgtca aatgtgacta tgacaatgtc ccaacgactg tatttactcc tttggaatat 1140

ggctgttgtg gcctctctga agaaaaagcc gtagagaaat ttggggaaga aaatattgaa 1200

gtttaccata gtttcttttg gccattggaa tggacagtcc catcccggga taacaacaaa 1260

tgttatgcaa aaataatctg caaccttaaa gacgatgaac gtgtcgtggg cttccacgtg 1320

ctgggtccaa acgctggaga ggtgacgcag ggctttgcgg ctgcgctcaa gtgtgggctg 1380

actaagcagc agctggacag caccatcggc atccacccgg tctgtgcaga gatattcaca 1440

acgttgtcag tgacgaagcg ctctgggggga gacatcctcc agtctggctg ctga 1494

<210> SEQ ID NO 35
<211> LENGTH: 1578
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: mus musculus

<400> SEQUENCE: 35

atggcggcga tggtggcggc gatggtggcg gcgctgcgtg gacccagcag gcgcttccgg 60

ccgcggacac gggctctgac acgcgggaca aggggcgcgg cgagtgcagc gggagggcag 120

cagagctttg atctcttggt gatcggtggg ggatccggtg gcctagcttg tgccaaggaa 180

-continued

```
gctgctcagc tgggaaagaa ggtggctgtg gctgactatg tggaaccttc tccccgaggc    240

accaagtggg gccttggtgg cacctgtgtc aacgtgggtt gcatacccaa gaagctgatg    300

catcaggctg cactgctggg gggcatgatc agagatgctc accactatgg ctgggaggtg    360

gcccagcctg tccaacacaa ctggaagaca atggcagaag ccgtgcaaaa ccatgtgaaa    420

tccttgaact ggggtcatcg cgtccaactg caggacagga aagtcaagta ctttaacatc    480

aaagccagct ttgtggatga gcacacagtt cgcggtgtgg acaaaggcgg gaaggcgact    540

ctgctttcag ctgagcacat tgtcattgct acaggaggac ggccaaggta ccccacacaa    600

gtcaaaggag ccctggaata tggaatcaca agtgacgaca tcttctggct gaaggagtcc    660

cctgggaaaa cgttggtggt tggagccagc tatgtggccc tagagtgtgc tggcttcctc    720

actggaattg gactggatac cactgtcatg atgcgcagca tccctctccg aggctttgac    780

cagcaaatgt catctttggt cacagagcac atggagtctc atggcaccca gttcctgaaa    840

ggctgtgtcc cctcccacat caaaaaactc ccaactaacc agctgcaggt cacttgggag    900

gatcatgctt ctggcaagga agacacaggc acctttgaca ctgtcctgtg ggccataggg    960

cgagttccag aaaccaggac tttgaatctg gagaaggctg gcatcagtac caaccctaag   1020

aatcagaaga ttattgtgga tgcccaggag gctacctctg ttccccacat ctatgccatt   1080

ggagatgttg ctgaggggcg gcctgagctg acgcccacag ctatcaaggc aggaaagctt   1140

ctggctcagc ggctctttgg gaaatcctca accttaatgg attacagcaa tgttcccaca   1200

actgtcttta caccactgga gtatggctgt gtggggctgt ctgaggagga ggctgtggct   1260

ctccatggcc aggagcatgt agaggtttac catgcatatt ataagcccct agagttcacg   1320

gtggcggata gggatgcatc acagtgctac ataaagatgg tatgcatgag ggagccccca   1380

caactggtgc tgggcctgca cttccttggc cccaacgctg gagaagtcac ccaaggattt   1440

gctcttggga tcaagtgtgg ggcttcatat gcacaggtga tgcagacagt agggatccat   1500

cccacctgct ctgaggaggt ggtcaagctg cacatctcca agcgctccgg cctggagcct   1560

actgtgactg gttgctga                                                 1578
```

What is claimed is:

1. A method for the prevention of the reduction of a disulfide bond in an antibody expressed in a recombinant host cell, comprising, following fermentation, sparging the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid of said recombinant host cell with air, wherein the amount of dissolved oxygen (dO_2) in the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid is at least 10%.

2. The method of claim **1** wherein said air sparging is continued until the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid is at least 30% saturated with air.

3. The method of claim **1** wherein said air sparging is continued until the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid is between about 100% saturated to about 30% saturated with air.

4. The method of claim **1** wherein the amount of dissolved oxygen (dO_2) in the pre-harvest or harvested culture fluid is at least 30%.

5. The method of claim **1** wherein the antibody is a therapeutic antibody.

6. The method of claim **1** wherein the antibody is a biologically functional fragment of an antibody.

7. The method of claim **1** wherein the host cell is eukaryotic host cell.

8. The method of claim **7** wherein the eukaryotic host cell is a mammalian host cell.

9. The method of claim **1** wherein the host cell is prokaryotic host cell.

10. The method of claim **9** wherein the prokaryotic host cell is a bacterial cell.

* * * * *